

# imageCLASS D1650/D1620

# SERVICE MANUAL



# Canon

August 28, 2018  
Rev. 3

# Important Notices

## Application

This manual has been issued by Canon Inc. for qualified persons to learn technical theory, installation, maintenance, and repair of products.

This manual covers all localities where the products are sold. For this reason, there may be information in this manual that does not apply to your locality.

## Corrections

This manual may contain technical inaccuracies or typographical errors due to improvements or changes in products. When changes occur in applicable products or in the contents of this manual, Canon will release technical information as the need arises. In the event of major changes in the contents of this manual over a long or short period, Canon will issue a new edition of this manual.

The following paragraph does not apply to any countries where such provisions are inconsistent with local law.

## Trademarks

The product names and company names used in this manual are the registered trademarks of the individual companies.

## Copyright

The copyright of this document belongs to Canon Inc. This document may not be copied, reproduced or translated into another language, in whole or in part, without the prior consent of Canon Inc.




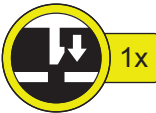
Copyright CANON INC. 2017

















## Caution

Use of this manual should be strictly supervised to avoid disclosure of confidential information.



## Explanation of Symbols

The following symbols are used throughout this Service Manual.

Symbols	Explanation	Symbols	Explanation
	Check.		Remove the claw.
	Check visually.		Insert the claw.

Symbols	Explanation	Symbols	Explanation
	Check a sound.		Push the part.
	Disconnect the connector.		Connect the power cable.
	Connect the connector.		Disconnect the power cable.
	Remove the cable/wire from the cable guide or wire saddle.		Turn on the power.
	Install the cable/wire to the cable guide or wire saddle.		Turn off the power.
	Remove the screw.		Loosen the screw.
	Install the screw.		Tighten the screw.
	Cleaning is needed.		Measurement is needed.

The following rules apply throughout this Service Manual:

- Each chapter contains sections explaining the purpose of specific functions and the relationship between electrical and mechanical systems with reference to the timing of operation.  
In the diagrams,  represents the path of mechanical drive; where a signal name accompanies the symbol, the arrow  indicates the direction of the electric signal.  
The expression "turn on the power" means flipping on the power switch, closing the front door, and closing the delivery unit door, which results in supplying the machine with power.
- In the digital circuits, '1' is used to indicate that the voltage level of a given signal is "High", while '0' is used to indicate "Low". (The voltage value, however, differs from circuit to circuit.) In addition, the asterisk (\*) as in "DRMD\*" indicates that the DRMD signal goes on when '0'.  
In practically all cases, the internal mechanisms of a microprocessor cannot be checked in the field. Therefore, the operations of the microprocessors used in the machines are not discussed: they are explained in terms of from sensors to the input of the DC controller PCB and from the output of the DC controller PCB to the loads.

The descriptions in this Service Manual are subject to change without notice for product improvement or other purposes, and major changes will be communicated in the form of Service Information bulletins.

All service persons are expected to have a good understanding of the contents of this Service Manual and all relevant Service Information bulletins and be able to identify and isolate faults in the machine.

# Contents

<b>Safety Precautions</b> .....	<b>1</b>
Laser Safety.....	2
How to Handle the Laser Scanner Unit.....	2
Power Supply.....	3
Toner Safety.....	3
About Toner.....	3
Handling Adhered Toner.....	3
Notes When Handling a Lithium Battery.....	3
Notes Before it Works Serving.....	4
Points to Note at Cleaning.....	4
Notes on Assembly/Disassembly.....	4
<b>1. Product Overview</b> .....	<b>5</b>
Product Lineup.....	6
Host Machine.....	6
Option.....	7
Features.....	8
Specifications.....	9
Product Specifications.....	9
Reader Specifications.....	10
ADF finished stamp function.....	11
FAX specification.....	11
Paper Type.....	12
Paper Size.....	12
Parts Name.....	14
Front side of the machine.....	14
Rear side of the machine.....	15
Inside of the Host Machine.....	15
Host Machine.....	16
ADF/Reader Unit.....	16
Control Panel.....	17
<b>2. Technical Explanation (Device)</b> .....	<b>18</b>
Basic Configuration.....	19
Functional Configuration.....	19
Original Exposure/Feed System.....	20
Original Exposure System.....	20
Original Feed System.....	21
Controller System.....	24
Configuration/Function.....	24
Main Controller PCB.....	24
DC controller PCB.....	26
Motor control.....	27
Door Open Detection.....	28

Fan Control.....	29
Low-voltage Power Supply Control.....	30
Protection Function.....	31
Power-saving mode.....	31
Laser Exposure System.....	33
Functional Configuration.....	33
Failure Detection.....	33
Image Formation System.....	35
Functional Configuration.....	35
Image Formation Process.....	35
Cartridge.....	36
High Voltage Power Supply Control.....	39
Fixing System.....	40
Overview/Configuration.....	40
Fixing Temperature Control.....	40
Protective Functions.....	41
Fixing Assembly failure detection.....	41
Pickup Feed System.....	43
Functional Configuration.....	43
Cassette Detection.....	44
Lifter control.....	44
Cassette Pickup Control.....	45
Cassette Double Feed Prevention Mechanism.....	46
Paper Detection.....	46
Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Control.....	46
Skew Correction.....	47
Paper Width Detection.....	48
Paper Length Detection.....	49
Feed Speed Control.....	49
Delivery Tray Full Detection.....	50
Jam Detection.....	50

### **3. Technical Explanation (System)..... 53**

Overview of System Management.....	54
Version Upgrade.....	55
Function Overview.....	55
Version Upgrade Using UST.....	56
Version Upgrade via Internet.....	56
<b>Version Upgrade Using a USB Flash Drive (Released Only in Special Cases).....</b>	<b>57</b>
Setting Information Export/Import Function (DCM).....	59
Overview.....	59
Import/Export Procedure from [Settings/Registration] of Remote UI.....	61
Procedure for Exporting/Importing Service Mode Setting Information.....	65
Monitoring Function (e-Maintenance/imageWARE Remote).....	69
Overview of System.....	69
Servicing Notes.....	70
Setting Procedure.....	70
Maintenance.....	71
Security Functions.....	73
Security Policy Function.....	73

<b>4. Periodical Service.....</b>	<b>77</b>
Periodically Replaced Parts.....	78
Consumable Parts.....	79
Periodical Service.....	80
<b>5. Parts Replacement and Cleaning.....</b>	<b>81</b>
List of Parts.....	82
Major Units.....	82
External Cover.....	84
Electrical Components List.....	86
Removing from the connection equipment.....	92
Disengaging the Paper Feeder.....	92
External Cover System.....	94
Removing the Rear Door Unit.....	94
Removing the Cartridge.....	97
Removing the Right Cover Unit.....	98
Removing the Left Cover Unit.....	105
Removing the Rear Top Cover.....	109
Removing the USB Cover.....	110
Removing the Right Front Cover.....	111
Removing the Upper Cover Unit.....	111
Removing the Delivery Tray Cover.....	113
Removing the Cartridge Door Unit.....	116
Original Exposure/Feed System.....	118
Removing the ADF Unit + Reader Unit.....	118
Separating the ADF Unit + Reader Unit.....	120
Removing the ADF Roller Unit.....	122
Removing the ADF Pickup Roller.....	124
Removing the ADF Separation Roller.....	125
Removing the ADF Separation Pad Unit.....	127
Removing the ADF Upper Cover Unit.....	128
Removing the ADF Feed Unit.....	130
Removing the ADF CIS Unit.....	132
Removing the ADF Drive Unit.....	136
Removing the Reader Upper Cover Unit.....	137
Removing the Reader CIS Unit.....	138
Removing the Reader CIS Timing Belt.....	140
Removing the Reader Scanner Motor.....	141
Controller System.....	143
Removing the Wireless LAN PCB.....	143
Removing the Speaker.....	143
Removing the Main Controller PCB.....	145
Removing the NCU PCB.....	147
Removing the Off-hook PCB.....	148
Removing the Controller Box.....	149
Removing the DC Controller PCB.....	150
Removing the Fixing Power Supply PCB.....	151
Removing the Low Voltage Power Supply Unit.....	153
Removing the High Voltage Power Supply PCB.....	154

Removing the Control Panel Unit.....	156
Removing the Main Fan.....	159
Removing the Sub Fan.....	159
Removing the USB PCB.....	161
Removing the Power Switch Unit.....	162
Laser Exposure System.....	164
Removing the Laser Scanner Unit.....	164
Image Formation System.....	166
Removing the Transfer Roller Unit.....	166
Fixing System.....	167
Removing the Fixing Assembly.....	167
Pickup Feed Delivery System.....	169
Removing the Registration Unit.....	169
Removing the Main Motor.....	172
Removing the Main Drive Unit.....	175
Removing the Cassette Pickup Unit.....	179
Removing the Cassette Separation Roller Unit.....	180
Removing the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Roller.....	181
Removing the Multi-purpose Tray Separation Pad.....	181
<b>6. Adjustment.....</b>	<b>184</b>
Checking the Location Where the Service Label Is Affixed.....	185
Adjustment at Parts Replacement.....	186
After Replacing the Control Panel.....	186
Before Replacing the Main Controller PCB.....	186
After Replacing the Main Controller PCB.....	186
After Replacing the Reader Unit.....	195
After Replacing the ADF Unit.....	200
After Replacing the Reader Upper Cover Unit.....	204
After Replacing the Reader CIS Unit.....	208
After Replacing the ADF CIS Unit.....	210
<b>7. Troubleshooting.....</b>	<b>214</b>
Test Print.....	215
Engine Test Print.....	215
Controller test print.....	215
Cartridge Log Report.....	221
Troubleshooting Items.....	223
Remedy for Image Failure.....	223
Repetitive Image Defects Ruler.....	223
Checking the Amount of Fixing Nip.....	223
Debug Log.....	225
Function Overview.....	225
Conditions for collecting logs.....	225
Collection procedure.....	225
<b>8. Error/Jam/Alarm.....</b>	<b>227</b>
Overview.....	228
Outline.....	228

Error Code.....	231
E000-0000---: Error in temperature rising of the Fixing Assembly .....	231
E001-0000---: Abnormal high temperature of the Fixing Assembly .....	231
E003-0000---: Abnormal low temperature of the Fixing Assembly .....	231
E004-0000---: Drive circuit error .....	231
E004-0005---: Fixing Relay fusion error.....	231
E014-0000---: Error in startup of the Main Motor .....	231
E014-0001---: Error in startup of the Main Motor .....	231
E015-0001---: Cassette 1 lift-up error.....	232
E015-0002---: Cassette 2 lift-up error.....	232
E015-0003---: Cassette 3 lift-up error.....	233
E015-0004---: Cassette 4 lift-up error.....	233
E052-0000---: Duplex Feed Unit absent error .....	233
E066-0000---: Environment Sensor error.....	233
E100-0000---: BD error.....	233
E110-0000---: Error in startup of the Scanner Motor.....	234
E110-0001---: Scanner Motor rotation error.....	234
E196-0000---: DC Controller error .....	234
E196-1000---: ROM writing/reading error (Main ROM).....	234
E196-2000---: ROM writing/reading error (ROM for storing setting values).....	234
E196-3000---: ROM writing/reading error (eMMC).....	234
E196-3001---: ROM-ID mismatch (eMMC).....	234
E202-0001---: CIS Unit HP error (outward) .....	234
E202-0002---: CIS Unit HP error (homeward) .....	234
E246-0000---: System error.....	235
E247-0000---: System error.....	235
E302-0001---: Paper front light intensity error.....	235
E302-0002---: Error in image sampling for shading.....	235
E350-0000---: System error.....	235
E351-0000---: Main Controller PCB error (Scanner system).....	235
E354-0000---: System error.....	235
E355-0000---: System error.....	235
E355-0004---: System error.....	235
E355-0005---: System error.....	235
E719-0000---: Error in communication with the new Card Reader (serial communication).....	235
E732-0001---: Scanner communication error .....	235
E736-0000---: Fax communication error.....	235
E736-0001---: Error in ROM for backing up fax data.....	236
E743-0000---: DDI communication error.....	236
E744-0001---: Invalid combination of language file versions.....	236
E744-0002---: Language file error.....	236
E744-1001---: Version mismatch between BOOTABLE and BOOTROM.....	236
E744-4000---: Engine ID error.....	236
E744-5000---: Panel microcomputer error.....	236
E744-6000---: Error in communication with the Wireless LAN Board.....	236
E744-7000---: Backup microcomputer error.....	236
E746-0000---: Main Controller PCB error (others).....	236
E766-9000---: Scanner power state error.....	236
E805-0001---: Fan Motor 1 error .....	237
E805-0002---: Fan Motor 2 error .....	237
E808-0000---: Low voltage power supply failure .....	237



Jam Code.....	238
Alarm Code.....	240
10-0404: Toner Bottle empty alarm (BK).....	240
<b>9. Service Mode.....</b>	<b>241</b>
Overview.....	242
Entering Service Mode.....	242
Backing up Service Mode.....	242
Service Label.....	242
Remote UI Service Mode.....	243
COPIER (Service mode for printer).....	245
DISPLAY.....	245
I/O (I/O display mode).....	248
ADJUST (Adjustment mode).....	248
FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode).....	291
OPTION (Specification setting mode).....	307
COUNTER (Counter mode).....	318
FEEDER (ADF service mode).....	324
ADJUST (Adjustment mode).....	324
FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode).....	325
FAX (FAX service mode).....	326
SSSW (Bit switch registration mode).....	326
MENU (Menu switch registration mode).....	327
NUM (Numeric parameter setting mode).....	328
NCU (NCU parameter setting mode).....	328
TESTMODE (Service mode for test print, operation check, etc.).....	332
PRINT (Print test mode).....	332
FAX (FAX test mode).....	334
<b>10. Installation.....</b>	<b>339</b>
How to Utilize This Installation Procedure.....	340
Symbols.....	340
MiCARD Attachment Kit-B1.....	341
Points to Note at Installation.....	341
Checking the Contents.....	341
Check Item When Turning OFF the Main Power.....	341
Installation Outline Drawing.....	341
Installation Procedure.....	341
Copy Card Reader-F1.....	353
Points to Note at Installation.....	353
Check Item When Turning OFF the Main Power.....	353
Installation Outline Drawing.....	353
Checking the Contents.....	353
Installation Procedure.....	354
Setting after Installation.....	367
Copy Control Interface Kit-C1.....	368
Points to Note at Installation.....	368
Checking the Contents.....	368
Check Item When Turning OFF the Main Power.....	368

Installation Outline Drawing.....368  
 Installation Procedure..... 368

**APPENDICES..... 380**

Service Tools.....381  
     Special Tools..... 381  
     Solvents and Oil List.....381  
 General Circuit Diagram.....382  
     General Circuit Diagram (1/2).....382  
     General Circuit Diagram (2/2).....383  
 List of Items Which Can Be Imported.....384  
     Service mode items which can be imported.....384  
 Backup Data List..... 390  
 Soft counter specifications..... 392

# Safety Precautions

Laser Safety.....	2
How to Handle the Laser Scanner Unit .....	2
Power Supply.....	3
Toner Safety.....	3
Notes When Handling a Lithium Battery.....	3
Notes Before it Works Serving.....	4
Points to Note at Cleaning.....	4
Notes on Assembly/Disassembly.....	4

## Laser Safety

Since radiation emitted inside this machine is completely confined with protective housings and external covers, the laser beam cannot escape from the machine during any phase of normal use by users.

Therefore, this machine is classified as a Class 1 laser product under the international standard IEC60825-1 that is regarded as safe during normal use.

## How to Handle the Laser Scanner Unit

This machine is classified as a Class 1 laser product.

However, the laser scanner unit contains source of Class 3B laser beam and exposure to the beam may cause eye injuries.

Therefore, be sure not to disassemble the laser scanner unit. No adjustment can be made to the laser scanner unit in the machine in the field.

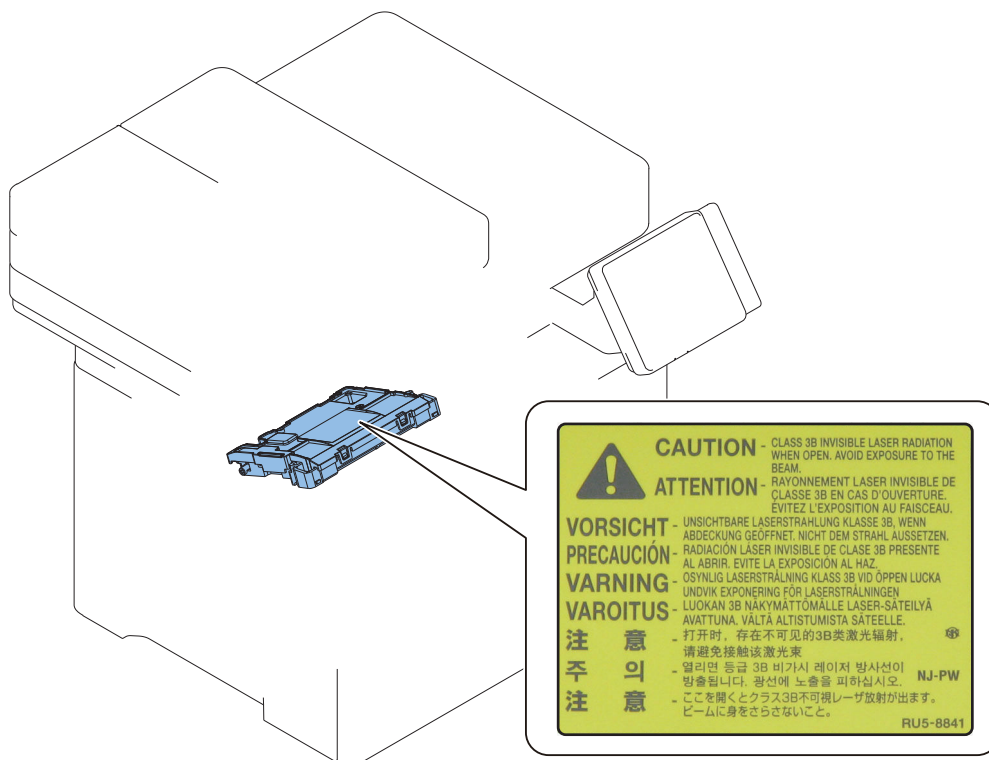
The mark or the warning label shown in the following figure is affixed on the laser scanner unit.

Dieses Gerät ist der Klasse 1 der Laserprodukte zugeordnet.

Allerdings enthält die Laserscannereinheit eine Laserstrahlquelle der Klasse 3B, die Augenschäden verursachen kann, wenn man in diesen Strahl blickt.

Deshalb darf die Laserscannereinheit nicht zerlegt werden. An der Laserscannereinheit kann keine Justage vor Ort vorgenommen werden.

Das in dem folgenden Bild dargestellte Kennzeichen bzw. der Warenaufkleber ist auf der Laserscannereinheit angebracht.



## Power Supply

- As a general rule, do not use extension cords.  
If an extension cord must be used, however, use one for local rated voltage and over, untie the cord binding, and insert the power plug completely into the extension cord outlet to ensure a firm connection between the power cord and the extension cord.

### CAUTION:

Do not plug multiple cords together to an extension cord. It may cause a fire or electrical shock.

- The socket-outlet shall be installed near the equipment and shall be easily accessible.

## Toner Safety

### About Toner

Toner is a nontoxic matter composed of plastic, iron and a trace of pigments.

### CAUTION:

Never throw toner in flames to avoid explosion.

### Handling Adhered Toner

- Use dry tissue paper to wipe off toner adhered to skin or clothes and wash in water.
- Never use warm water for cleaning up toner to prevent toner particles from being gelated to soak into fibers permanently.
- Toner particles are reactive with vinyl polymers. Avoid contacting these materials.

## Notes When Handling a Lithium Battery

Dispose of used batteries according to the instructions.

### CAUTION:

Risk of explosion if battery is replaced by an incorrect type.

The following warnings are given to comply with Safety Principles (EN60950-1).

### CAUTION:

Wenn mit dem falschen Typ ausgewechselt, besteht Explosionsgefahr.  
Gebrauchte Batterien gemäß der Anleitung beseitigen.

### 警告

如果更換不正確之電池型式會有爆炸的風險  
請依製造商說明書處理用過之電池

## Notes Before it Works Serving

- At servicing, be sure to turn OFF the power source according to the specified steps and disconnect the power plug.
- Be sure to disconnect the power plug on a regular basis and remove dust and dirt accumulated around the outlet with dry cloth.

### CAUTION:

Leaving the power plug connected for a long time in an environment having a lot of dust, moisture, or oily smoke will cause a fire. (Because dust accumulated in the surrounding area will absorb moisture and cause an insulation failure)

## Points to Note at Cleaning

When performing cleaning using organic solvent such as alcohol, be sure to check that the component of solvent is vaporized completely before assembling.

## Notes on Assembly/Disassembly

Follow the items below to assemble/disassemble the device.

1. Disconnect the power plug to avoid any potential dangers during assembling/disassembling works.
2. If not specially instructed, reverse the order of disassembly to reinstall.
3. Ensure to use the right screw type (length, diameter, etc.) at the right position when assembling.
4. To keep electric conduction, binding screws with washers are used to attach the grounding wire and the varistor. Ensure to use the right screw type when assembling.
5. Unless it is specially needed, do not operate the device with some parts removed.
6. Never remove the paint-locked screws when disassembling.

### CAUTION:

#### English

##### CAUTION

The fuse may be in the neutral, and that the mains shall be disconnected to de-energize the phase conductors.

#### German

##### VORSICHT

Die Sicherung kann sich im Nulleiter befinden und das Hauptnetz muss abgetrennt werden, um die Phasenleiter stromlos zu machen.



# Product Overview

Product Lineup.....	6
Features.....	8
Specifications.....	9
Parts Name.....	14

## Product Lineup

### Host Machine

imageCLASS MF525dw / i-SENSYS MF525x / imageCLASS MF525x / imageCLASS D1650



i-SENSYS MF522x / imageCLASS D1620



	<b>imageCLASS MF525dw</b> <b>i-SENSYS MF525x</b> <b>imageCLASS MF525x</b> <b>imageCLASS D1650</b>	<b>i-SENSYS MF522x</b> <b>imageCLASS D1620</b>
Copy	Yes	Yes
Print	Yes	Yes
Fax	Yes	-
Remote UI	Yes	Yes
ADF	Simultaneous duplex scanning	Simultaneous duplex scanning
2-sided printing	Yes	Yes
Control Panel	5-inch Color Touch Panel	5-inch Color Touch Panel
NFC	Yes	-
MEAP	-	-



	imageCLASS MF525dw i-SENSYS MF525x imageCLASS MF525x imageCLASS D1650	i-SENSYS MF522x imageCLASS D1620
Wired LAN	Yes	Yes
Wireless LAN	Yes	Yes

## PDL

	imageCLASS MF525dw i-SENSYS MF525x imageCLASS MF525x i-SENSYS MF522x imageCLASS D1650 imageCLASS D1620
PS	Yes
PCL	Yes
UFR II	Yes



Name	Description
PAPER FEEDER PF-C1	Except TW model
Copy Card Reader Attachment-J1	Except KOR model
HANDSET-J1	CN model only
CONTROL I/F KIT-C1	Except KOR model
Copy Card Reader-F1	Except KOR model
MiCARD Attachment Kit-B1	Attachment kit for MiCARD Reader Except KOR model

## Features

This product is a compact A4/LTR B&W MFP supporting multi decks, high capacity pickup, and large capacity cartridge.

- Improved Control Panel operability  
Improved operability by adopting the Large 5-inch Color Touch Panel
- Improvement in sizes supported by the reader  
LGL-sized media supported
- High capacity pickup  
In addition to the Multi-purpose Tray and Standard Drawer, up to 3 Paper Feeders can be installed as options, and it is suitable for large volume printing.  
Up to 2,300 sheets (80 g/m<sup>2</sup>) or 2,660 sheets (64 g/m<sup>2</sup>) can be continuously and automatically picked up.
- Large capacity cartridge  
**MF520 Series:**  
Two types of cartridge are available: standard capacity cartridge (estimated life: 10,000 pages) and large capacity cartridge (estimated life: 20,000 pages).  
**D1600 Series:**  
One type of cartridge is available: standard capacity cartridge (estimated life: 5,000 pages).

# Specifications

## Product Specifications

Item	Specification/Function
Machine installation method	Desktop
Photosensitive medium	OPC Drum (24 mm dia.)
Exposure method	Laser beam exposure
Charging method	Roller charging
Developing method	Toner projection development
Transfer method	Roller transfer
Separation method	Curvature separation
Pickup method	<b>Cassette:</b> Retard separation <b>Multi-purpose Tray:</b> Pad separation method
Fixing method	On-demand fixing
Delivery method	Face-down
Drum cleaning method	Cleaning Blade
Toner type	One-component magnetic toner
Toner supplying method	Replacement of all-in-one cartridge (drum + toner)
Toner level detection function	Available
Toner save mode	Available
Reading resolution	600 x 600 dpi (max.)
Print resolution	600 x 600 dpi
Reading speed	<b>Fixed reading (A4/LTR):</b> Approx. 2 sec. <b>Stream reading (1-sided):</b> SEND (300 dpi): Not specified Copy (600 dpi): 20 images/min (A4) Copy (600 dpi): 21 images/min (LTR) <b>Stream reading (2-sided):</b> SEND (300 dpi): Not specified Copy (600 dpi): 34 images/min (A4) Copy (600 dpi): 35 images/min (LTR)
Print speed*1	<b>At 1-sided printing:</b> 43 pages/min (A4), 45.5 pages/min (LTR) <b>At 2-sided printing:</b> 34.4 pages/min (A4), 36.4 pages/min (LTR)
Warm-up time*2 (Duration from power-on to standby of the machine)	14 sec. or less
Recovery time*3 (The time for recovery from sleep to standby)	4 sec. or less
First copy time	Platen Glass: Approx. 6.3 sec. (A4), approx. 6.0 sec. (LTR) Feeder: Approx. 6.4 sec. (A4), approx. 6.3 sec. (LTR)
First print time	Multi-purpose Tray pickup: Approx. 6.2 sec. (A4), approx. 6.2 sec. (LTR) Cassette pickup: Approx. 6.2 sec. (A4), approx. 6.1 sec. (LTR)
Document type	Original thickness: 20 mm or less
Maximum document size	215.9 mm x 355.6 mm
Magnification ratio	Zoom: 25 to 400 %
Continuous reproduction	999 sheets

Item	Specification/Function
Paper type	<b>Cassette:</b> Thin paper, Plain paper, Recycled paper, Color paper, Heavy paper, Bond paper <b>Multi-purpose Tray:</b> Thin paper, Plain paper, Recycled paper, Color paper, Heavy paper, Bond paper, Label paper, Postcard, Envelope
Paper size	<b>Cassette:</b> A4, B5, A5, A6, 16K, LGL, LTR, STMT, EXEC, Oficio, Oficio (Brazil), Oficio (Mexico), F4A, LTR (Government), LGL (Government), Foolscap/Folio, Foolscap (Australia), LGL (India), Custom paper Size (105.0 x 148.0 mm to 215.9 x 355.6 mm) <b>Multi-purpose Tray:</b> A4, B5, A5, A6, 16K, LGL, LTR, STMT, EXEC, Oficio, Oficio (Brazil), Oficio (Mexico), F4A, LTR (Government), LGL (Government), Foolscap/Folio, Foolscap (Australia), LGL (India), 3 x 5 inch, Envelope No. 10(COM10), Envelope Monarch, Envelope C5, Envelope DL, Custom paper Size (76.2 x 127.0 mm to 215.9 x 355.6 mm) (Refer to "Paper Size" on page 12)
Maximum stacking capacity	<b>Cassette:</b> Plain paper (64 g/m <sup>2</sup> ): Approx. 640 sheets Plain paper (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> ): Approx. 550 sheets <b>Multi-purpose Tray:</b> Plain paper (64 g/m <sup>2</sup> ): Approx. 100 sheets Plain paper (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> ): Approx. 100 sheets
Delivery Tray capacity*4	250 sheets (68 g/m <sup>2</sup> )
Auto 2-sided printing	Yes (A4, 16K, LGL, LTR, Oficio, Oficio (Brazil), Oficio (Mexico), F4A, Foolscap/Folio, LGL (India), Custom paper Size (210.0 x 279.4 mm to 215.9 x 355.6 mm))
Memory capacity	1 GB
Usage environment temperature range	10 to 30 deg C
Environment humidity range	20 to 80 % (Relative humidity; without dew condensation)
Rated power supply	120 V system: 120 to 127 V (60 Hz) 200 V system: 220 to 240 V (50/60 Hz)
Power consumption	<b>Maximum:</b> 1380 W or less <b>At operation:</b> Approx. 680 W <b>At standby:</b> Approx. 17 W <b>During sleep mode:</b> Approx. 0.9 W (USB connection) Approx. 0.9 W (Wired LAN) Approx. 0.9 W (Wireless LAN) <b>At power OFF:</b> 0.1 W or less
Dimensions (width x depth x height)	494 x 464 x 452 mm (with NFC) 480 x 464 x 452 mm (without NFC)
Weight*5	Approx. 19.0 kg

\*1: The print speed may become lower depending on the settings such as output resolution, paper size, type, orientation, and number of sheets printed.

\*2: This may vary depending on the usage conditions of this machine (presence/absence of installed options, installation environment, etc.).

\*3: This may vary depending on the print environment.

\*4: This may vary depending on the site environment and the type of paper used.

\*5: Excluding the Toner Cartridge

## Reader Specifications

Item	Specification/Function
Photo conductor	LED
Reading resolution	600 dpi x 600 dpi

Item	Specification/Function
Number of gradations	256 gradations
Magnification ratio	25 % to 400 % (in 1% increment)
Reading Sensor	1 line
Original size detection	None
Maximum document size	LGL

## ADF finished stamp function

### Description

Item	Specifications
ADF original separation method	Upper separation
ADF original reading method	Stream reading only
ADF original basis weight	50 to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup>
ADF original size	A4, B5, A5, A6, LGL, LTR, STMT Feed direction: 128 to 355.6 mm, Reading width direction: 105.0 to 215.9 mm
ADF Original Tray stacking capacity	A4/LTR: 50 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) LGL: 30 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> )
ADF original size recognition	None
ADF mixed paper functions	Mix of the same configuration width: Available Mix of the different configuration width: Not available
ADF finished stamp function	None
Maximum document size	215.9 mm x 355.6 mm
Document processing speed	At copy <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1-sided A4/LTR: 20 ipm /21 ipm (600 dpi x 600 dpi)</li> <li>• 2-sided A4/LTR: 34 ipm /35 ipm (600 dpi x 600 dpi)</li> </ul>

## FAX specification

Item	Specifications
Telephone Line Used*1	Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN), Facsimile Communication Network
Scan Line Density	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Normal: 8 pels<sup>2</sup>/mm x 3.85 line/mm</li> <li>• Fine: 8 pels<sup>2</sup>/mm x 7.7 line/mm</li> <li>• Superfine: 8 pels<sup>2</sup>/mm x 15.4 line/mm</li> <li>• Ultrafine: 16 pels<sup>2</sup>/mm x 15.4 line/mm</li> </ul>
Transmission Speed*3	Super G3: 33.6 Kbps G3: 14.4 Kbps
Compression Method	MH, MR, MMR, JBIG
Transmission Type	Super G3, G3
Max. Sending Original Sizes	A4
Receiving Paper Sizes	A4, B5, A5, A6, 16K, LGL, LTR, STMT, EXEC, Oficio, Oficio(Brazil), Oficio(Mexico), F4A, LTR(Government), LGL(Government), Foolscap/Folio, Foolscap(Australia), LGL(India), 3x5 inch, Envelope No. 10(COM10), Envelope Monarch, Envelope C5, Envelope DL, Custom paper Size (Refer to "Paper Size" on page 12)
Transmission Times	Approx. 2.6 seconds/page*4

\*1: Depending on your locale or your telephone connection, you may be unable to perform data communication.

\*2: Pels stands for picture elements (pixels).

\*3: With the Automatic Fallback function.

\*4: Value obtained with Canon original test sheet of A4 size, standard ECM (JBIG) transmission.

## Paper Type

(Yes: Pickup possible -: Pickup not possible)

Type of paper		Paper settings in this machine	Standard Cassette *1	Multi-purpose Tray	Auto 2-sided printing *2
Plain	60 to 74 g/m <sup>2</sup>	Plain 1 *3*4	Yes	Yes	Yes
	75 to 89 g/m <sup>2</sup>	Plain 2 *3*4	Yes	Yes	Yes
Recycled	60 to 74 g/m <sup>2</sup>	Recycled 1 *3*4	Yes	Yes	Yes
	75 to 89 g/m <sup>2</sup>	Recycled 2 *3*4	Yes	Yes	Yes
Color	60 to 74 g/m <sup>2</sup>	Color *3*4	Yes	Yes	Yes
Heavy paper	90 to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup>	Heavy 1	Yes	Yes	Yes
	106 to 120 g/m <sup>2</sup>	Heavy 2	Yes	Yes	Yes
	121 to 149 g/m <sup>2</sup>	Heavy 3	-	Yes	-
	150 to 199 g/m <sup>2</sup>	Heavy 4	-	Yes	-
Thin paper	60 g/m <sup>2</sup>	Thin 1 *3*5	Yes	Yes	Yes
	52 to 59 g/m <sup>2</sup>	Thin 2	Yes	Yes	-
Bond paper	60 to 74 g/m <sup>2</sup>	Bond 1	Yes	Yes	Yes
	75 to 104 g/m <sup>2</sup>	Bond 2	Yes	Yes	Yes
	105 to 120 g/m <sup>2</sup>	Bond 3	Yes	Yes	Yes
Label paper		Label paper	-	Yes	-
Envelope		Envelope	-	Yes	-
		Envelope H	-	Yes	-

\*1: Including the optional Paper Feeder PF-C1

\*2: Automatic 2-sided printing can be performed, without the need for reloading the paper.

\*3: Documents received by Fax/I-Fax can be printed.

\*4: Reports and lists can be printed.

\*5: Select this if 60 g/m<sup>2</sup> paper that has been set to [Plain 1] curls.

## Paper Size

Paper size		Standard Cassette *1	Multi-purpose Tray	Auto 2-sided printing *2
A4 *3*4*5	210.0 mm x 297.0 mm	Yes	Yes	Yes
B5 *3	182.0 mm x 257.0 mm	Yes	Yes	-
A5 *3*6	148.0 mm x 210.0 mm	Yes	Yes	-
A6	105.0 mm x 148.0 mm	Yes	Yes	-
16K *3*4	195.0 mm x 270.0 mm	Yes	Yes	Yes
LGL *3*4	215.9 mm x 355.6 mm	Yes	Yes	Yes
LTR *3*4*5	215.9 mm x 279.4 mm	Yes	Yes	Yes
STMT *3	139.7 mm x 215.9 mm	Yes	Yes	-
EXEC	184.2 mm x 266.7 mm	Yes	Yes	-
Ofisio *3*4	215.9 mm x 317.5 mm	Yes	Yes	Yes
Ofisio (Brazil) *3*4	216.0 mm x 355.0 mm	Yes	Yes	Yes
Ofisio (Mexico) *3*4	216.0 mm x 341.0 mm	Yes	Yes	Yes
F4A *3*4	216.0 mm x 343.0 mm	Yes	Yes	Yes
LTR (Government) *3*4	203.2 mm x 266.7 mm	Yes	Yes	-
LGL (Government) *3*4	203.2 mm x 330.2 mm	Yes	Yes	-
Foolscap/Folio *3*4	215.9 mm x 330.2 mm	Yes	Yes	Yes
Foolscap (Australia) *3*4	206.0 mm x 338.0 mm	Yes	Yes	-
LGL (India) *4	215.0 mm x 345.0 mm	Yes	Yes	Yes

Paper size		Standard Cassette *1	Multi-purpose Tray	Auto 2-sided printing *2
3 x 5 inch	76.2 mm x 127.0 mm	-	Yes	-
Envelope No.10(COM10)	104.7 mm x 241.3 mm	-	Yes	-
Envelope Monarch	98.4 mm x 190.5 mm	-	Yes	-
Envelope C5	162.0 mm x 229.0 mm	-	Yes	-
Envelope DL	110.0 mm x 220.0 mm	-	Yes	-
Custom paper Size	-	Yes *7	Yes *8	Yes *9

\*1: Including the optional Paper Feeder PF-C1.

\*2: Automatic 2-sided printing can be performed, without the need for reloading the paper.

\*3: Documents received by Fax can be printed.

\*4: Documents received by I-Fax can be printed.

\*5: Reports and lists can be printed.

\*6: Paper can be set in portrait/landscape orientation.

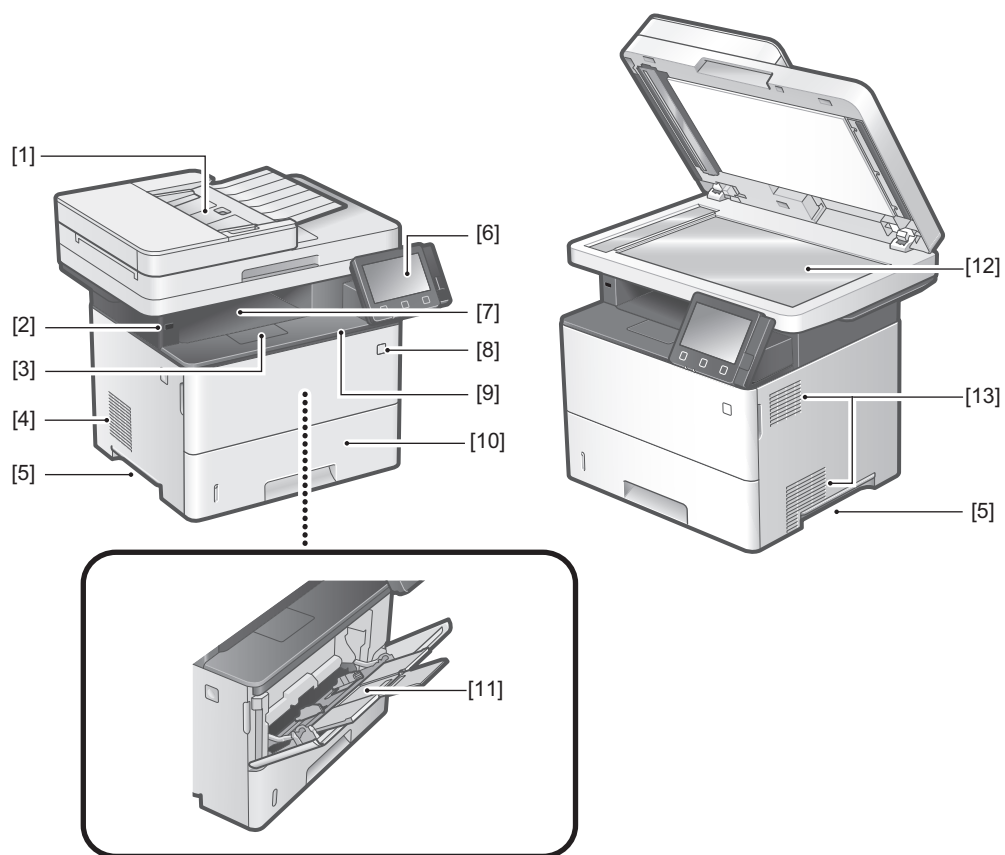
\*7: Custom size of 105 x 148 mm to 215.9 x 355.6 mm can be used.

\*8: Custom size of 76.2 x 127 mm to 215.9 x 355.6 mm can be used.

\*9: Custom size of 210 x 279.4 mm to 215.9 x 355.6 mm can be used.

## Parts Name

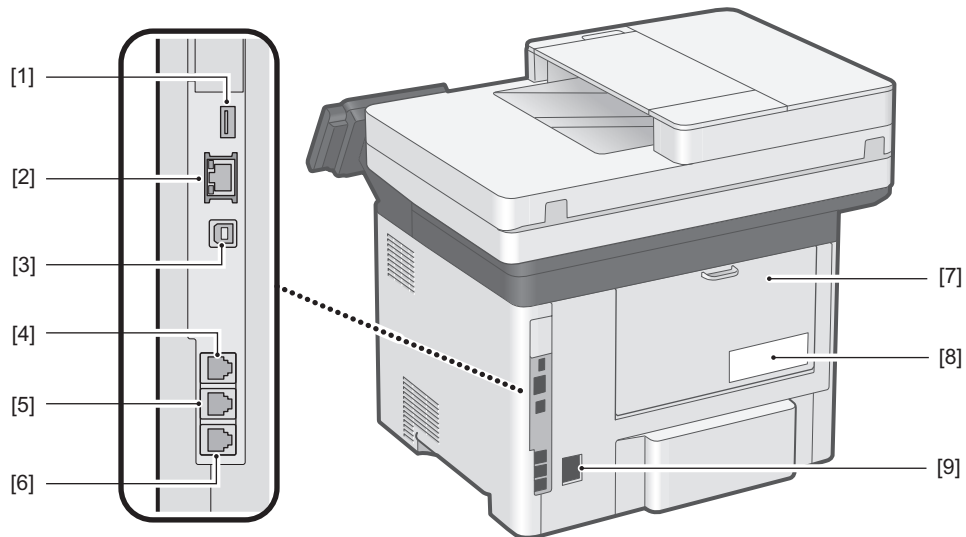
### ● Front side of the machine



No.	Name	No.	Name
[1]	Feeder	[8]	Power Switch
[2]	USB port (for USB device)	[9]	Front Cover
[3]	Delivery Stopper	[10]	Pickup Cassette
[4]	Speaker	[11]	Multi-purpose Tray
[5]	Handle for carrying	[12]	Copyboard Glass
[6]	Control Panel	[13]	Ventilation hole
[7]	Delivery Tray		



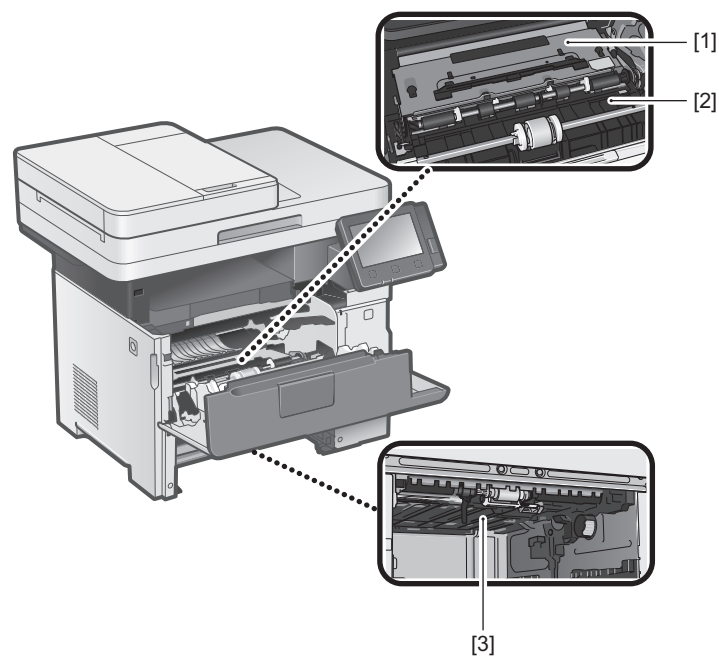
## Rear side of the machine



No.	Name	No.	Name
[1]	USB port (for USB device)	[6]**1	Terminal for telephone line
[2]	LAN Port	[7]	Rear Cover
[3]	USB port (for PC)	[8]	Rating name plate label
[4]**1	Terminal for Handset	[9]	Power Socket
[5]**1	Terminal for external telephone		

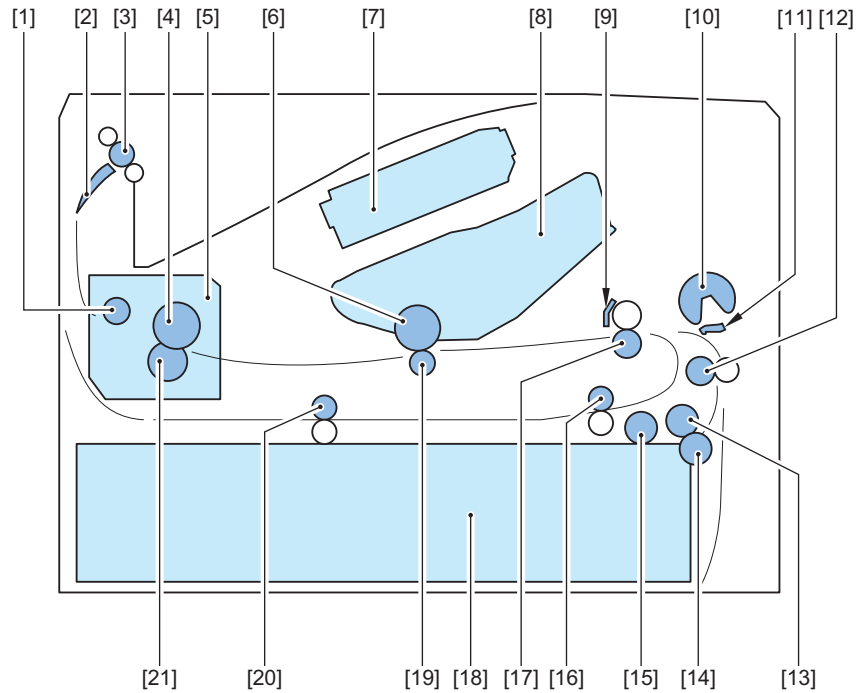
\*1: Availability depending on model.

## Inside of the Host Machine



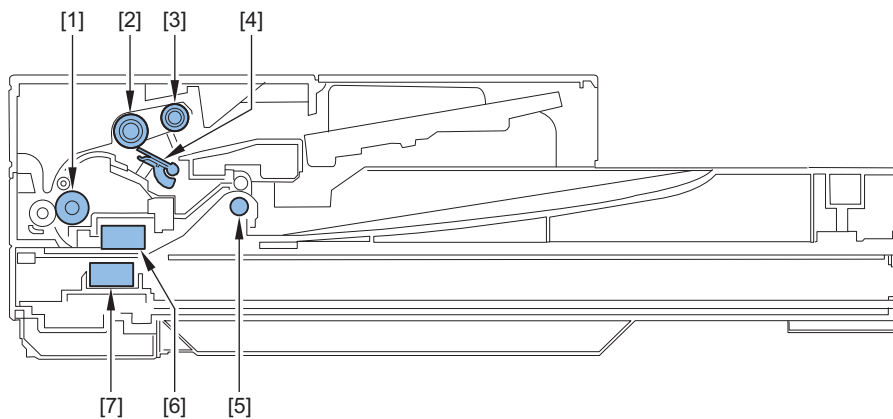
No.	Name
[1]	Feed Guide (Rear)
[2]	Feed Guide (Front)
[3]	Duplex Feed Guide

## Host Machine



No.	Name	No.	Name
[1]	Fixing Delivery Roller	[12]	Vertical Path Roller
[2]	Duplex Flapper	[13]	Cassette Feed Roller
[3]	Delivery Roller	[14]	Cassette Separation Roller
[4]	Fixing Film	[15]	Cassette Pickup Roller
[5]	Fixing Assembly	[16]	Duplex Re-pickup Roller
[6]	Photosensitive Drum	[17]	Registration Roller
[7]	Laser Scanner Unit	[18]	Cassette
[8]	Cartridge	[19]	Transfer Roller
[9]	Registration Shutter	[20]	Duplex Feed Roller
[10]	Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Roller	[21]	Pressure Roller
[11]	Multi-purpose Tray Separation Pad		

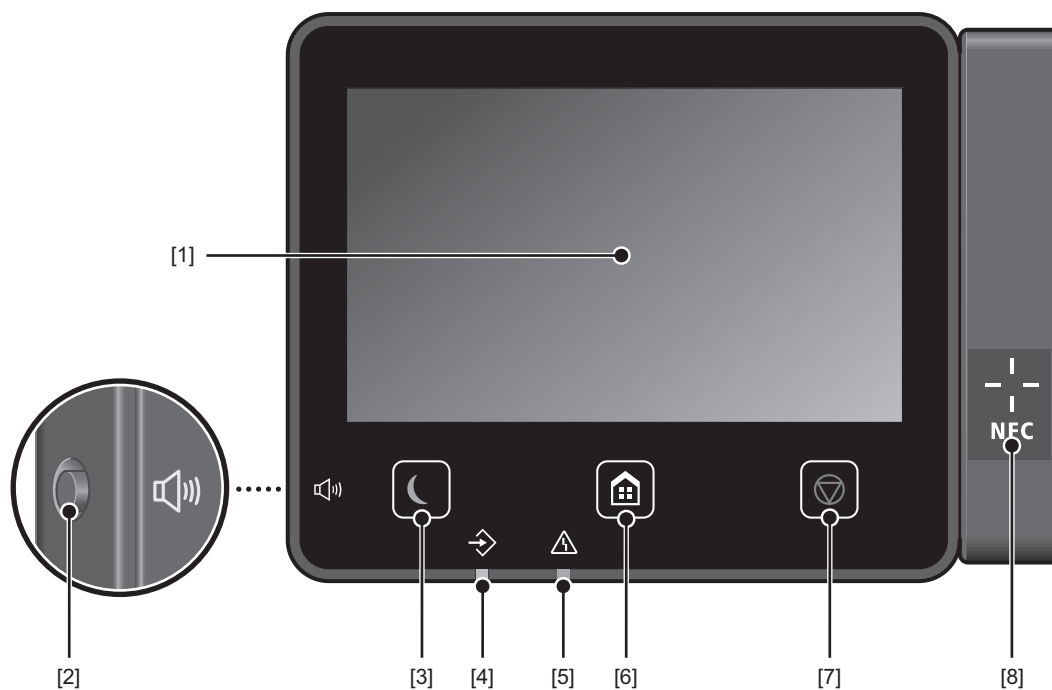
## ADF/Reader Unit



No.	Name
[1]	Feed Roller
[2]	Separation Roller
[3]	Pickup Roller

No.	Name
[4]	Separation Pad
[5]	Delivery Roller
[6]	Contact Image Sensor (back side)
[7]	Contact Image Sensor (front side)

## Control Panel



No.	Name
[1]	Display
[2]	Volume key
[3]	Energy Saver key
[4]	Data Lamp
[5]	Error Lamp
[6]	Home key
[7]	Stop key
[8]	NFC (Near Field Communication) mark *

\*: Excluding MF522x / D1620.



## Technical Explanation (Device)

Basic Configuration.....	19
Original Exposure/Feed System.....	20
Controller System.....	24
Laser Exposure System.....	33
Image Formation System.....	35
Fixing System.....	40
Pickup Feed System.....	43

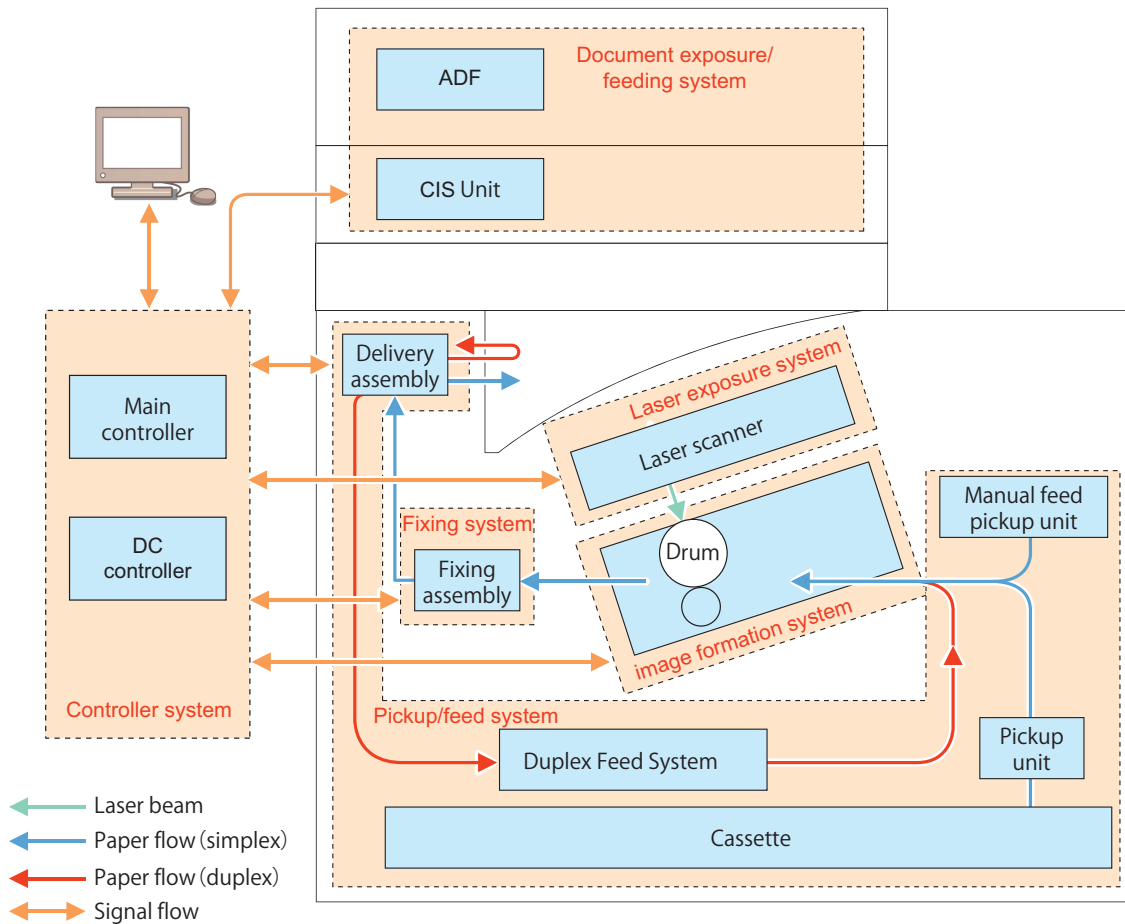
## Basic Configuration

### Functional Configuration

#### Description

This machine is roughly composed of the following six blocks.

- Document Exposure / Feeding System
- Controller System
- Laser Exposure System
- Image Formation System
- Fixing System
- Pickup Feed System



## Original Exposure/Feed System

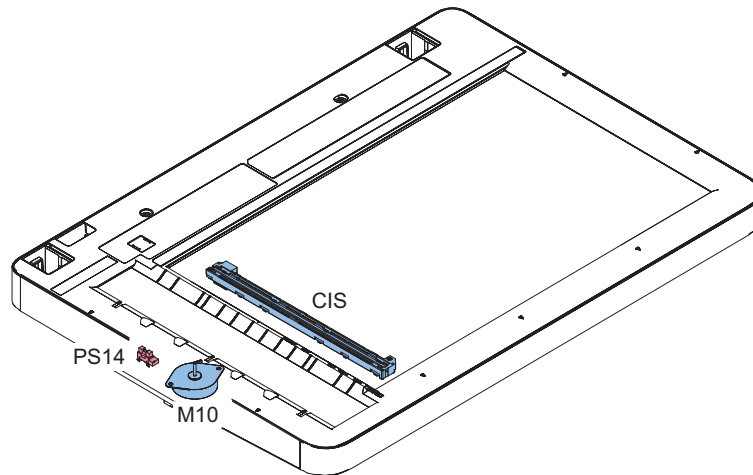
### Original Exposure System

#### Functional Configuration

The original on the Copyboard Glass is read by moving the Contact Image Sensor (CIS) by rotating the Reader Motor based on the drive signal from the Main Controller PCB.

When using the ADF, the original is read by feeding it using the ADF, without moving the Contact Image Sensor.

#### Major Components



Symbol	Name
M10	Reader Motor
CIS	Contact Image Sensor
PS14	CIS HP Sensor

#### Dust Detection Control

##### Overview

Presence/absence of dust on the Stream Reading Glass is detected when an original is read. In accordance with the detection result, the original reading position is changed or image correction is performed to prevent the dust from being printed on the image.

Control of dust detection consists of the following two items:

- Dust detection correction
- Dust detection evasion

##### Execution Condition/Timing

###### Dust detection correction

During the period of time from the moment when the original of a stream reading job arrives just before the reading position to the moment when reading of the original is completed (for each page)

###### Dust detection evasion

When a job ends

##### Description

###### Dust detection correction

If dust on the Stream Reading Glass is detected, the image is corrected to prevent the dust from being printed.

1. Before the original arrives, the White Plate is read through the Stream Reading Glass, and points where dust may exist are detected.
2. The leading edge of the original is detected.

- The detection results before and after the leading edge of the original appears on the Stream Reading Glass are compared. If dust does not exist at the dust point detected in step 1, it is judged to be dust on the White Plate and dust correction is not performed. If dust exists at the point detected in step 1, it is judged to be dust on the Stream Reading Glass and dust correction is performed.

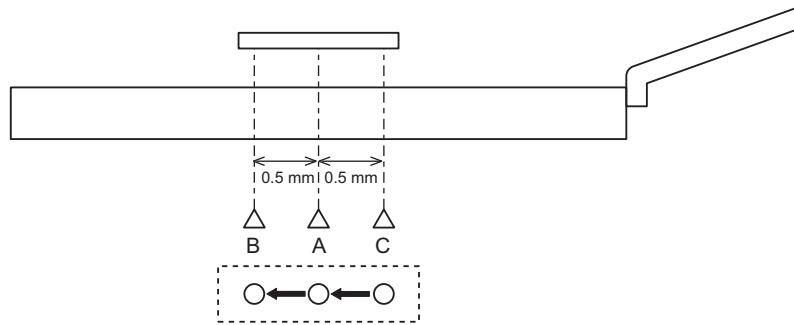
**Dust detection evasion**

If dust is detected when the last job paper is read, the reading position of the next stream reading job is changed in order to avoid the dust.

The amount of adjustment for dust evasion is -0.5 mm (B), 0 mm (A), and +0.5 mm (C).

Each time dust is detected when reading the last paper of a stream reading job, the CIS moves to the three positions in the order shown below.

A -> B -> C -> A ->



**NOTE:**

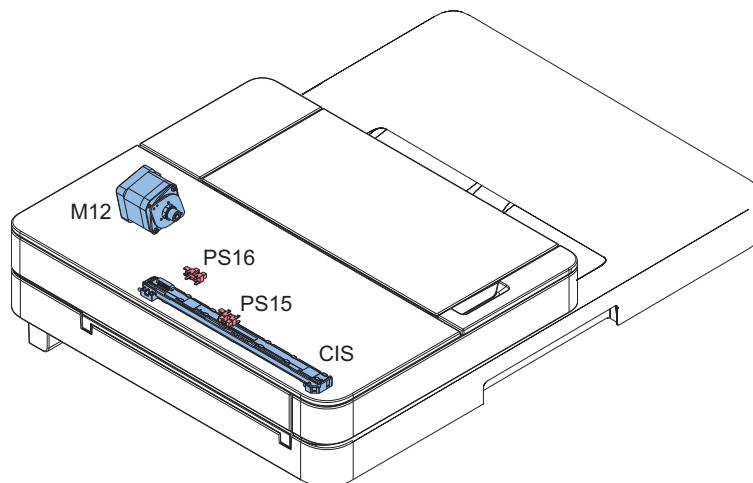
this control is applied only to reading of the front side where the CIS can be moved.

If any of the following conditions is detected 6 times in a row, it is judged that the Stream Reading Glass is soiled, and a message prompting the user to clean the Stream Reading Glass is displayed on the Control Panel.

- Dust of 1 pixel or larger and smaller than 5 pixels is detected at 11 points or more.
- Dust of 5 pixels or larger is detected at 1 point or more.

**Original Feed System**

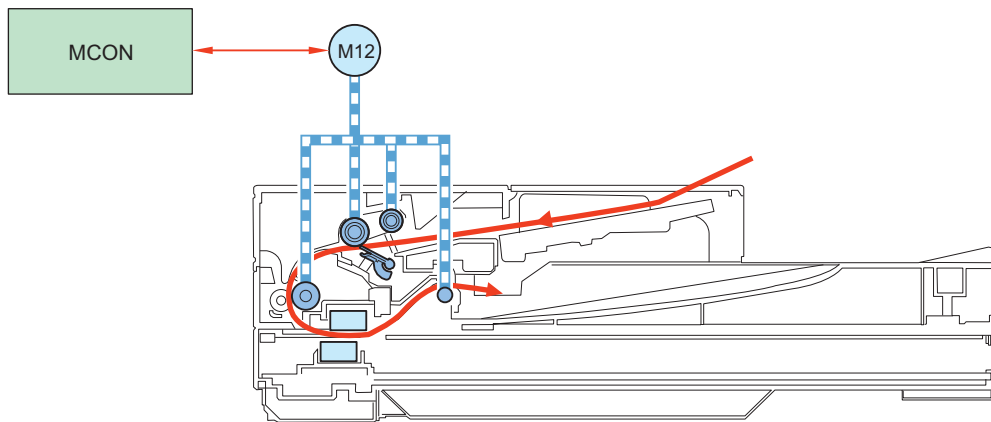
**Major Components**



Symbol	Name
M12	ADF Motor
CIS	Contact Image Sensor
PS15	Document End Sensor
PS16	Document Sensor

## ■ Drive Configuration

When copy, fax, or scan is started, the ADF Motor (M12) is driven by a drive command from the Main Controller PCB. The document which is placed face-up on the Original Tray is picked up and fed one sheet at a time in order from the top. When the fed original passes over the Platen Glass, the image is read by the Contact Image Sensor (CIS), and then the original is delivered face-down to the Document Delivery Assembly.



Symbol	Name
M12	ADF Motor
MCON	Main Controller PCB

## ■ Original Detection

### Overview

This machine has the following two types of original detection functions.

- Original Detection
- Original Edge Detection

#### NOTE:

This machine does not have a document size (original width) detection function.

### Description

#### Original Detection

As the actuator is pushed up by placing an original on the Original Tray, the Document Sensor (PS16) is turned ON (light is transmitted -> light is blocked) so that the presence of an original is detected.

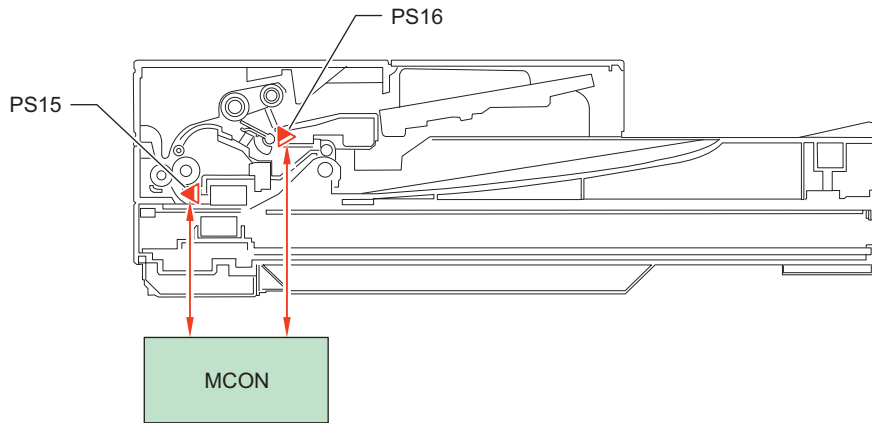
#### Original Edge Detection

As the actuator is pushed up by the leading edge of the fed original, the Document End Sensor (PS15) is turned ON (light is blocked -> light is transmitted) so that the leading edge of the original is detected.

In addition, when the trailing edge of the original passes the position of the actuator, the actuator returns to the original position, which causes the Document End Sensor (PS15) to turn OFF (light is transmitted -> light is blocked) to detect the trailing edge of the original.

Note that the original length that can be read by this machine is 400 mm and less; if an original longer than that is fed, it is stopped due to jam. The original length is determined by the time required from when the Document End Sensor (PS15) detects the original's leading edge to when it detects its trailing edge.





Symbol	Name
PS15	Document End Sensor
PS16	Document Sensor

## ■ Jam Detection

### Execution Condition/Timing

When the power is turned ON or when the original is being read

### Description

In the following cases, it is judged that an ADF jam has occurred.

- When the original is late in arriving the Document End Sensor or remains in the ADF while the original is being read
- When the Document End Sensor detects presence of paper when the power is turned ON (residual paper jam)
- When a document of 400 mm or more is detected

When a jam is detected, the reading operation stops and "Paper is jammed." is displayed on the screen of the Control Panel. In the case of models equipped with the fax function (built-in speaker), a warning tone (beep sound) sounds when a jam is detected.

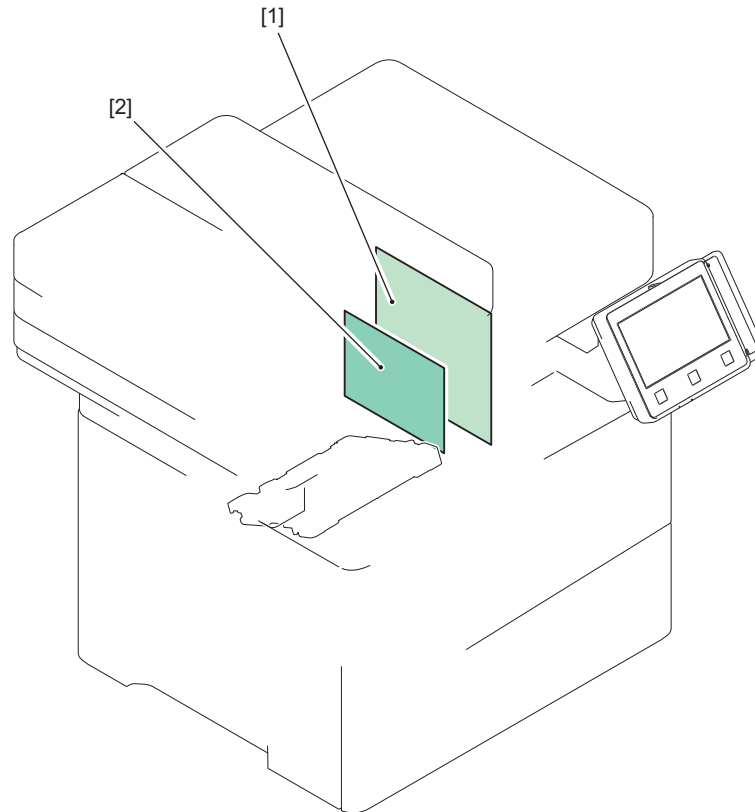
The jam can be cleared by removing the jammed paper, opening and then closing the ADF Upper Cover, and placing the original again.

## Controller System

### Configuration/Function

#### Description

This product is mainly controlled by the main and DC controllers.



No.	Parts name	Role
[1]	Main Controller PCB	Provides controls on the system, image processing, reader / ADF and network and maintain various setting values.
[2]	DC Controller PCB	Provides controls on printer, laser, high-voltage PCBs, I/O, etc. and maintain setting values.

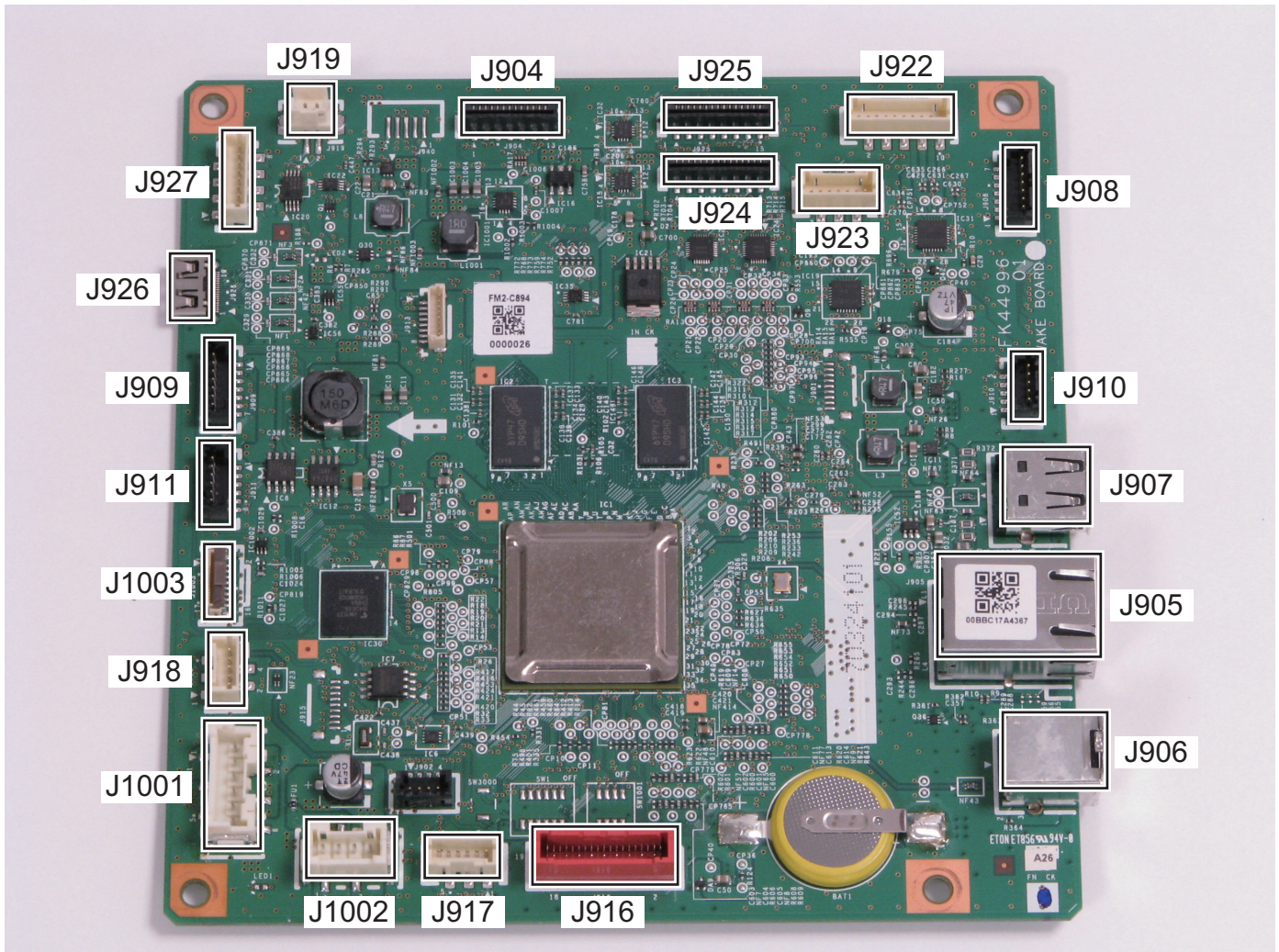
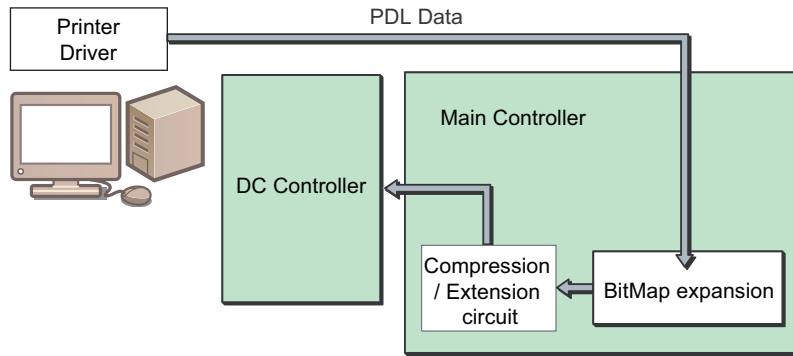
### Main Controller PCB

#### Overview

The Main Controller receives print information from the external equipment (host computer, etc.) via the interface cable. This print information includes commands to exchange the status or unique information of a printer and the PDL data of the image data.

The PDL data is converted to a bitmap and then sent to the DC Controller.

The external equipment can view the printer status using a two-way interface.



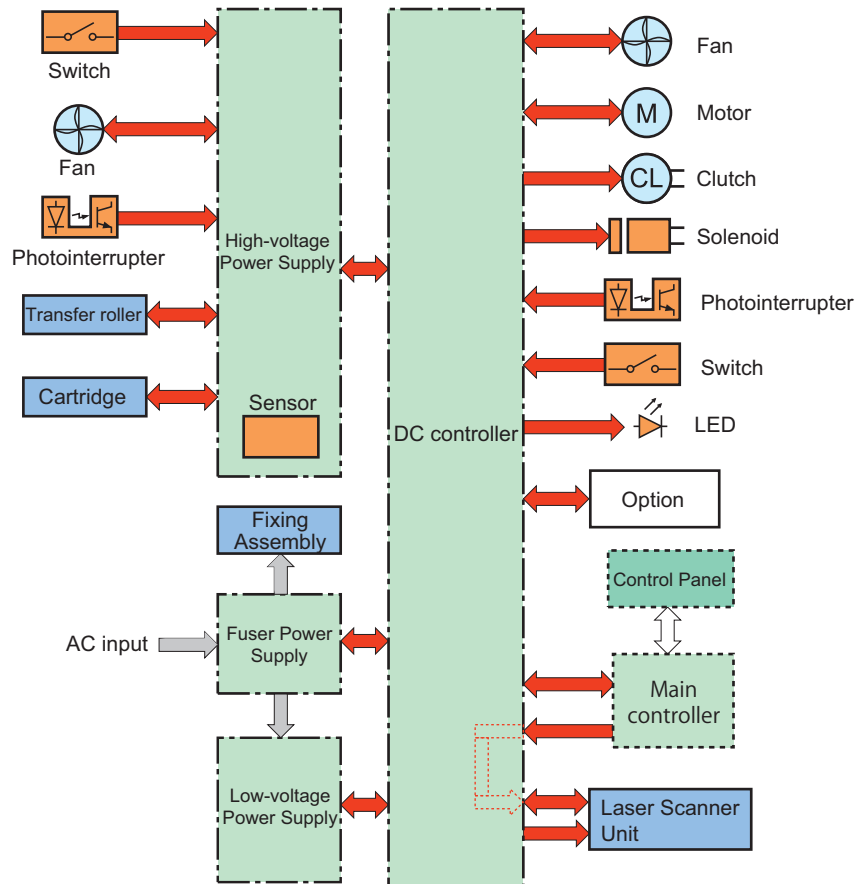
Jack	Function	Jack	Function
J904	Wireless LAN PCB I/F	J919	Speaker
J905	LAN	J922	ADF motor I/F, Document sensor I/F, Document edge sensor I/F
J906	USB TypeB	J923	Reader motor I/F, CIS unit HP sensor I/F
J907	USB TypeA	J924	Reader CIS I/F
J908	CC-VI (OP)	J925	ADF CIS I/F
J909	Soft-ID PCB	J926	HDMI 5 inch touch panel
J910	New card reader (OP)	J927	5 inch Touch Panel I/F
J911	Memory PCB I/F	J1001	Low-voltage power supply PCB I/F
J916	NCU PCB I/F	J1002	Low-voltage power supply PCB I/F
J917	Pseudo CI PCB I/F	J1003	DC Controller PCB I/F
J918	USB (Front)		

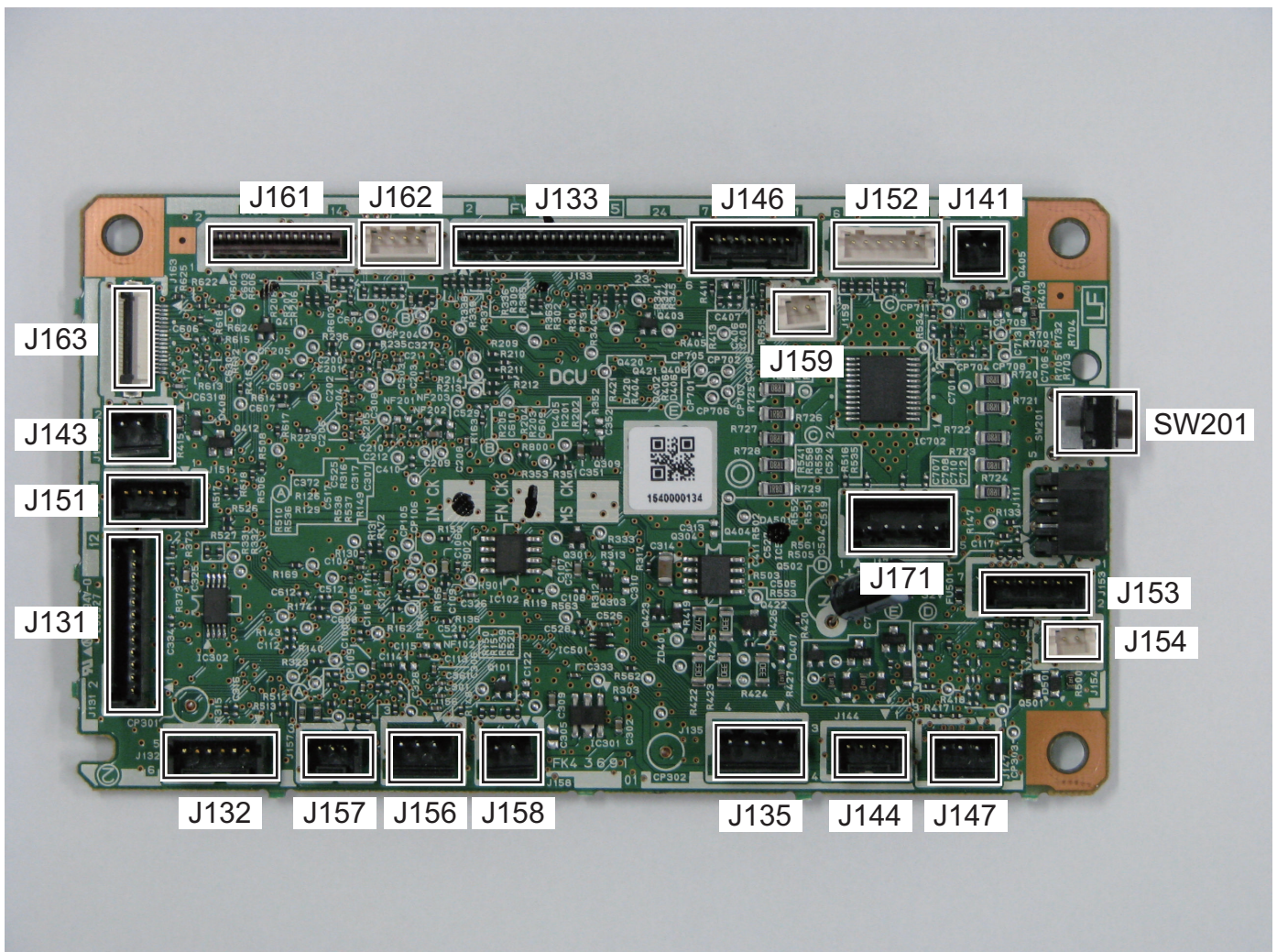
## DC controller PCB

### Overview

The DC Controller is a circuit to control the operation sequences of this machine, and controlled by the CPU in the DC Controller.

1. When the Power Switch of this machine is turned ON, DC power is supplied from the Power Supply PCB to the DC Controller.
2. The CPU in the DC Controller starts printer operation control.
3. When this machine enters the standby state, the CPU outputs signals to drive various loads such as laser diodes, motors, and solenoids based on the print instruction command and image data input from the Main Controller.





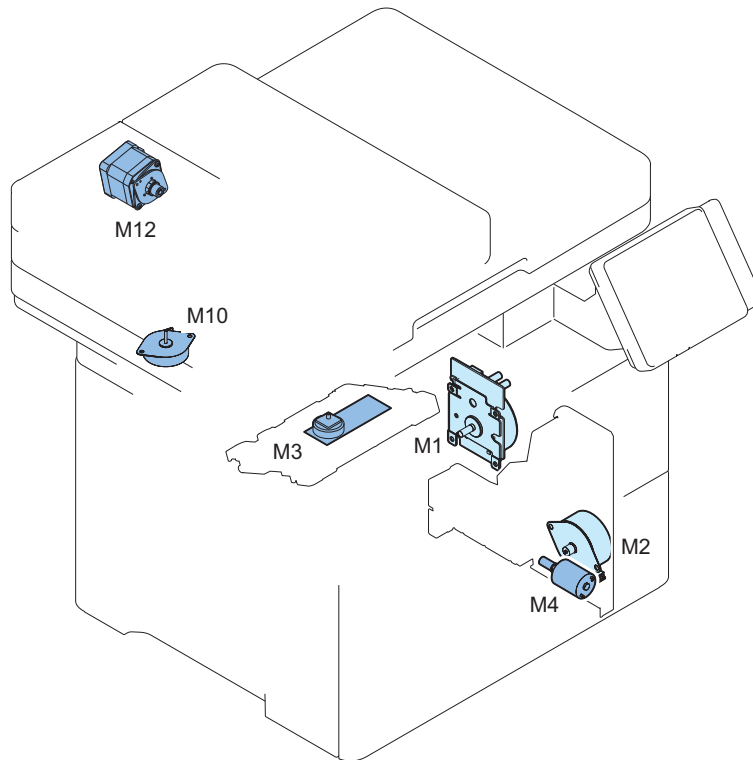
Jack	Function	Jack	Function
J131	Main Switch / Low voltage power supply PCB	J153	Paper feeder (Option)
J132	Fixing power supply PCB	J154	Duplex re-pickup clutch
J133	High voltage power supply PCB	J156	Paper surface sensor
J135	Low-voltage power supply PCB	J157	Pre-registration sensor
J141	Duplex reverse solenoid	J158	Cassette detection switch
J143	Multi-purpose tray pickup solenoid	J159	Rear door detection switch
J144	Lifter Motor / Cassette pickup solenoid	J161	Laser scanner unit
J146	Main Motor	J162	Scanner motor
J147	Sub fan	J163	Main controller
J151	Paper width sensor / Duplex feed sensor	J171	Pickup motor
J152	Delivery tray full sensor	SW201	Engine test print

## Motor control

### Overview

This machine uses motors for paper feed and image formation.

## Description



Name	Symbol	Drive parts
Main motor	M1	Photosensitive drum, Primary charging roller, Transfer roller, Pressure roller, Fixing delivery roller, Delivery roller, Duplex Feed Roller, Various rollers in the paper feeder
Pickup motor	M2	Multi-purpose tray pickup roller, Cassette pickup roller, Cassette feed roller, Registration roller, Verticalpass roller
Scanner motor	M3	Scanner mirror
Lifter motor	M4	Lifting plate
ADF motor	M12	Feed Roller, Separation roller, Pickup roller and Delivery roller in the ADF section
Reader motor	M10	Contact image sensor (Reader CIS)

## Error Code

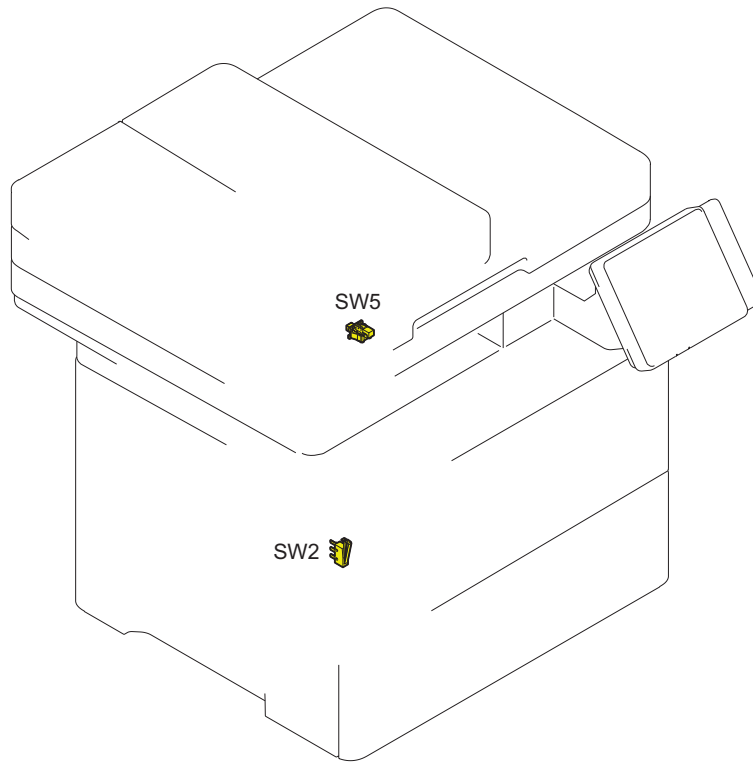
- E014-0000 : Error in startup of the Main Motor
- E014-0001 : Error in startup of the Main Motor
- E015-0001 : Cassette 1 lift-up error
- E015-0002 : Cassette 2 lift-up error
- E015-0003 : Cassette 3 lift-up error
- E015-0004 : Cassette 4 lift-up error
- E110-0000 : Error in startup of the Scanner Motor
- E110-0001 : Scanner Motor rotation error

## Door Open Detection

### Overview

This machine uses the 24V interlock switch(SW2) and Rear door detection switch(SW5) to detect whether the door is opened or closed.

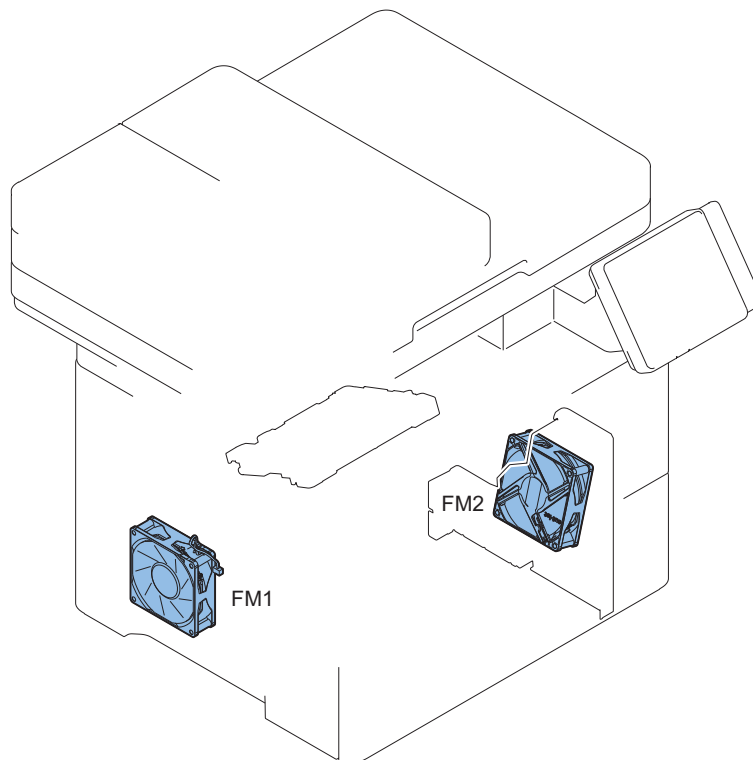
When door open is detected by these sensors, the DC Controller stops drive of the motors and the solenoids.



## Fan Control

### Overview

This machine uses a fan for preventing temperature rising inside the machine.



Name	Sym- bol	Coolong area	Type	Speed
Main fan	FM1	Around the Cartridge, Laser scanner	Suction	Fix (full speed)
Sub fan	FM2	Area around Low voltage power supply and controller PCB.	Suction	Variable (full speed/half speed)

**Error Code**

- E805-0001 : Fan Motor 1 error
- E805-0002 : Fan Motor 2 error

**Low-voltage Power Supply Control**

**Overview**

This circuit converts the AC voltage to DC power supply and provides it to each load.

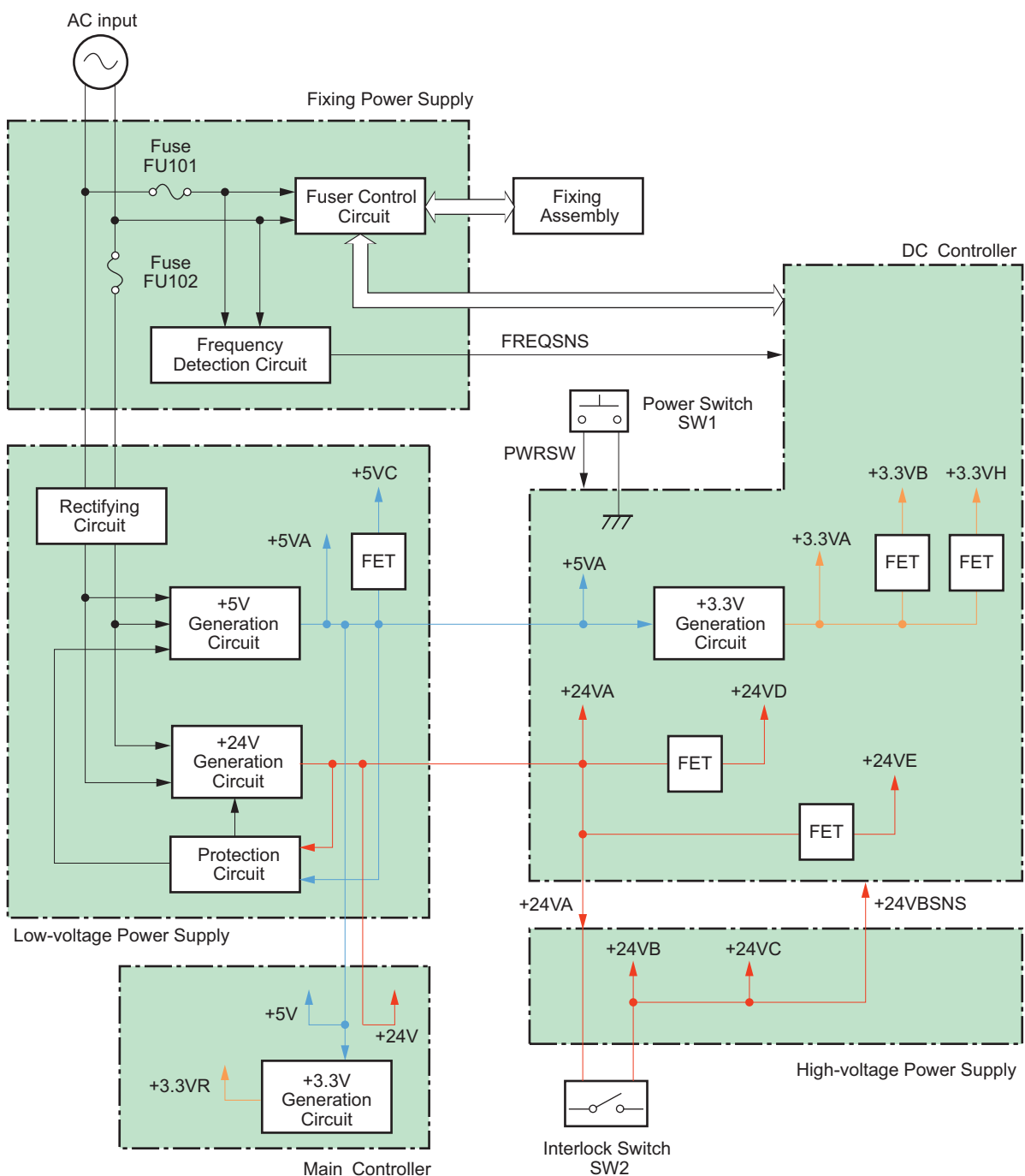
**Description**

The following shows a block diagram of the low voltage power supply and fixing power supply .

Low voltage power supply: Generates the DC power supply needed inside the printer.

Fixing power supply: Provides AC power supply to the low voltage power supply and controls the fixing heater temperature of the Fixing Assembly.

The low voltage power supply starts to operate when the AC power supply is connected to the inlet. The AC power supply is converted to +24V, +3.3V and +5V which is the DC power supply required by the printer.





## Protection Function

### Overview

This machine has a protection function against overcurrent and overvoltage.

### Description

Low voltage power circuit carries the overcurrent preventive function against and overvoltage preventive function that block the voltage output automatically to prevent the power circuit brokerage when the overcurrent or overvoltage occur due to load errors such as short circuit etc.

Also the circuit carries the 2 fuses (FU101, FU102) as a preventive function. The fuses blow to block the power supply when overcurrent occurs in AC line.

The host machine equips the function of stopping 24V of fixing assembly and the high voltage power unit to avoid users and engineers from getting burned or electric shock.

When the cartridge door or rear door is opened, the 24V interlock switch (SW2) or Rear door detection switch (SW5) is turned off and 24V supplied to fixing assembly and the high voltage power unit is shut.

#### **WARNING:**

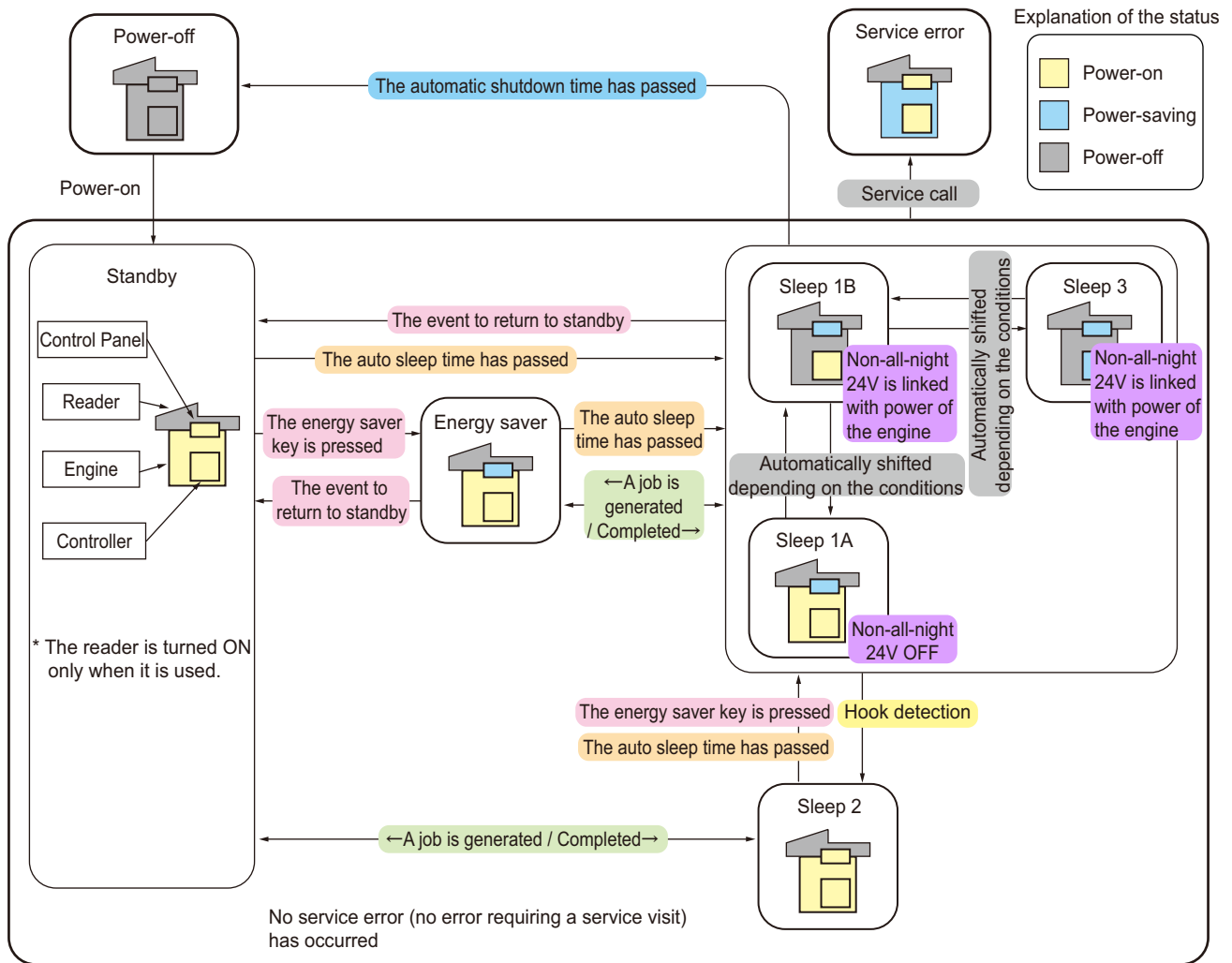
As the power of this machine is turned ON/OFF by the remote switch control circuit, power is supplied to the AC line even when the Power Switch is turned OFF. Do not perform disassembly work while the Power Supply Cord is connected to the inlet.

## Power-saving mode

### Overview

Power-saving mode is a function that reduces the printer power consumption.

**Description**



	State	Description
Standby	The machine moves to a standby state by turning ON the main switch.	When introduction of jobs become possible, timer of the auto sleep time start counting.
Energy saver	In a standby state, the machine moves to an energy saver state by pressing the Energy Saver key.	The Control Panel LCD is turned OFF. Moreover, the LED of energy saver is turned ON.
Sleep 1A	The machine is in a state where the 24V non-all-night power is ON.	When the auto sleep time has elapsed, transition to sleep 1A occurs.
Sleep 1B	The machine is in a state where the 24V non-all-night power is OFF. (Linked with power of the engine)	Sleep 1B is a state where CPU moves to an operation state from sleep 3 by a hardware interruption.
Sleep 2	When change in on-hook/off-hook state is detected while the machine is in sleep 1A, sleep 1B, or sleep 3, it moves to sleep 2.	The Control Panel LCD display is turned ON, and the machine accepts key operations. When the auto sleep time has elapsed, the machine moves back to sleep 1.
Sleep 3	The controller itself gets into a power-saving mode.	In this mode, CPU of the controller has stopped. (The most effective power saving state)
Service error	When an error requiring a service visit occurs, the machine moves to this state.	Power state of the printer remains in power-saving mode so that the machine can respond to request from service mode.

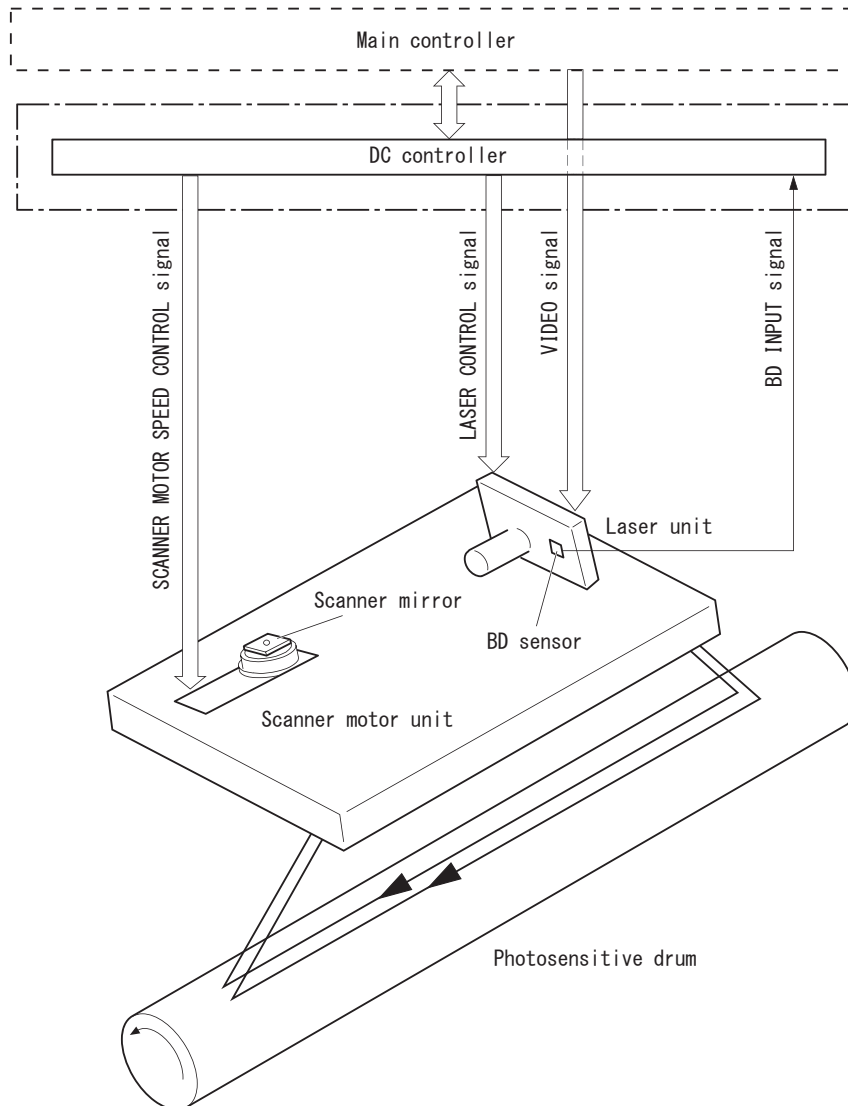
# Laser Exposure System

## Functional Configuration

The Laser Scanner system forms a latent image on the Photosensitive Drum according to the video signal sent from the Main Controller.

The Laser Scanner Unit consists of the Laser Unit and the Scanner Motor Unit, and is controlled by the signal input from the DC Controller.

The following shows an outline drawing of the Laser Scanner Unit.



## Failure Detection

### Overview

The DC Controller detects the following failures in the Laser Scanner Unit.

- BD cycle error
- Error in the initial operation/rotation of the Scanner Motor

### Description

#### BD cycle error

If a BD cycle error in the scanner area is detected, an error code is notified.

#### Error in the initial operation/rotation of the Scanner Motor

If a motor error is detected while the Scanner Motor is being driven, an error code is notified.

**Error Code**

- E100-0000 : BD error
- E110-0000 : Error in startup of the Scanner Motor
- E110-0001 : Scanner Motor rotation error

# Image Formation System

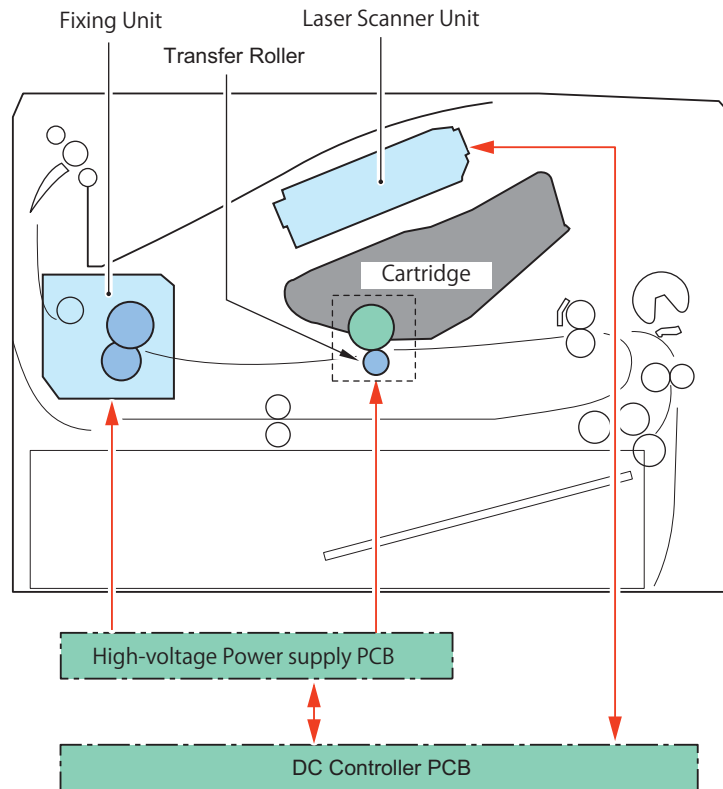
## Functional Configuration

### Overview

The image formation system forms a toner image on the paper.

### Description

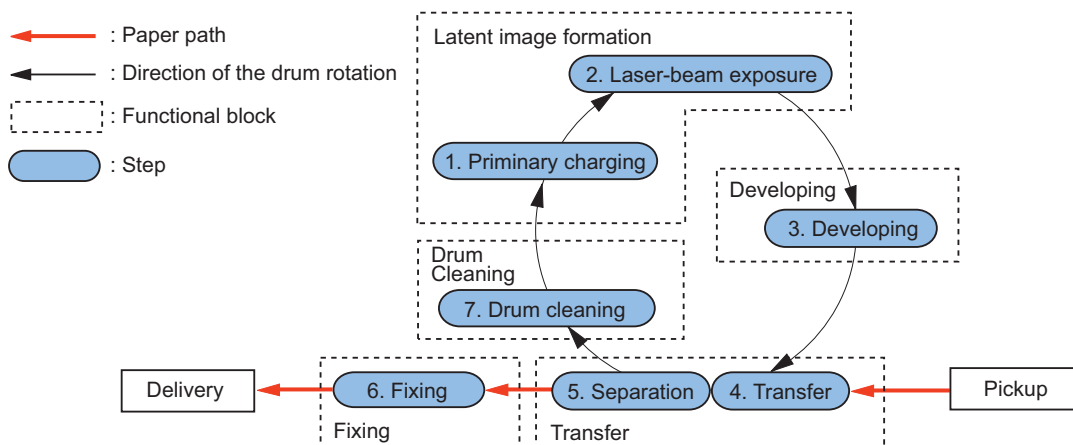
The DC Controller controls the Laser Scanner Unit and High Voltage Power Supply to form the toner image on the Photosensitive Drum, and transfers and fixes this to the paper.



## Image Formation Process

### Overview

### Description



Block	No.	Process	Description
Static latent image formation block	1	Primary charging	The surface of the Photosensitive Drum is uniformly charged with negative potential.
	2	Laser beam exposure	With irradiation of laser beam, a static latent image is formed on the surface of the Photosensitive Drum. (Image exposure: Area exposed by laser is the image area)
Developing block	3	Development	With the toner projection development method, toner that has been negatively charged by the Developing Cylinder is attached to the Photosensitive Drum.
Transfer block	4	Transfer	Toner on the surface of the Photosensitive Drum is transferred to a paper by applying positive charge to the Transfer Roller.
	5	Separation	With the curvature separation method, the paper is separated from the Photosensitive Drum. In the case of thin paper which has low elastic force, the Static Eliminator reduces potential on the back side of paper to make the thin paper to be separated easily.
Fixing block	6	Fixing	Toner on the paper is fixed on the paper using heat and pressure.
Drum cleaning block	7	Drum cleaning	The Cleaning Blade removes the residual toner attached on the Photosensitive Drum.

## Cartridge

### ■ Functional Configuration

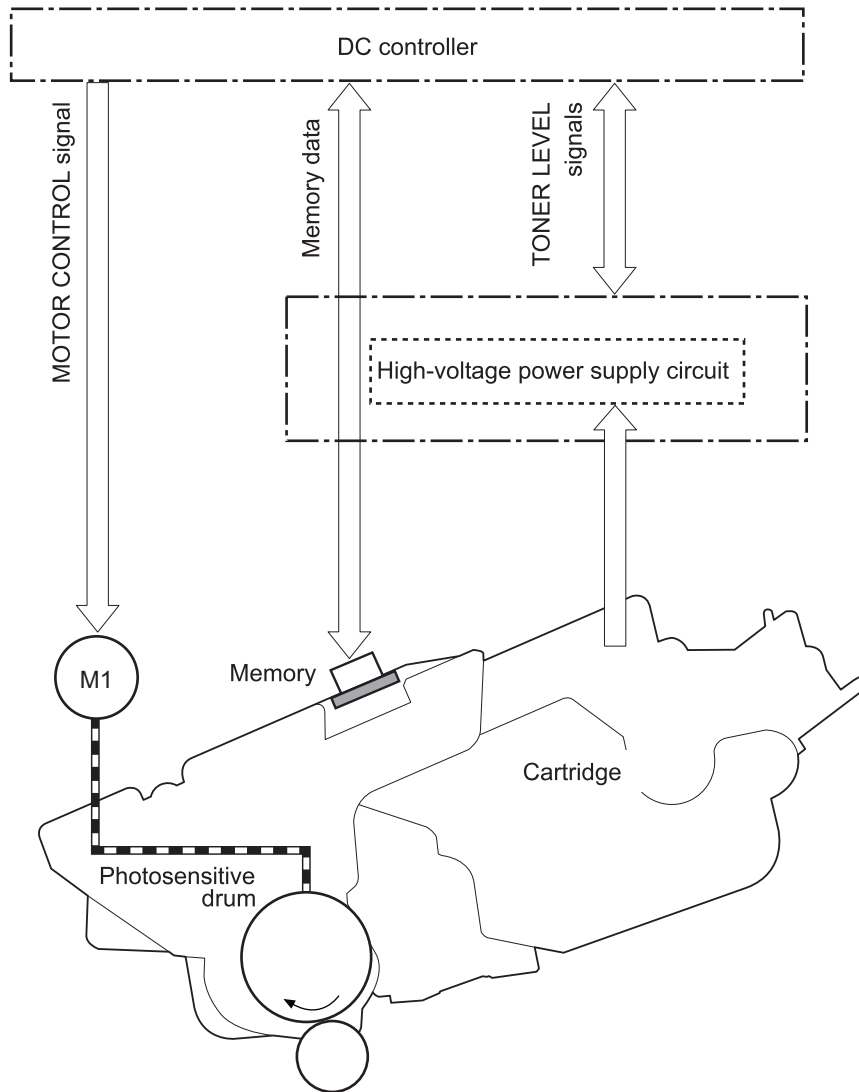
#### Overview

The cartridge has the function to form a visible image on the Photosensitive Drum with toner.

#### Description

The cartridge consists of the Photosensitive Drum, Primary Charging Roller, Developing Unit, Memory, etc.

The DC Controller drives the Main Motor, and rotates the Photosensitive Drum and Developing Roller. The Primary Charging Roller rotates by engaging with the Photosensitive Drum.



## ■ Cartridge Memory

### Execution Condition/Timing

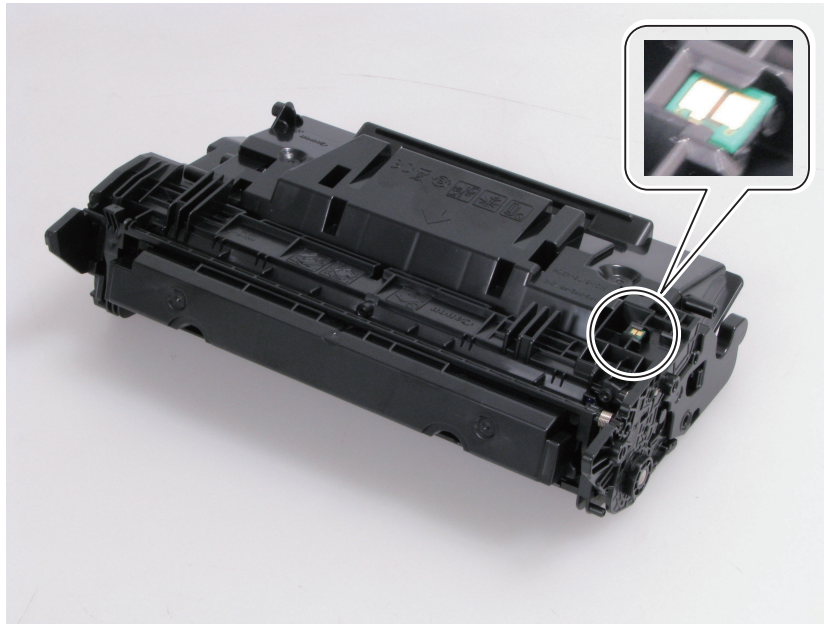
- At power-on
- When the Front Cover is closed

### Description

This machine detects/records the cartridge usage status, etc. by reading/writing data stored in the cartridge memory by the DC Controller.

When the cartridge memory cannot be detected or a non-genuine part is detected, it notifies the Main Controller and displays a warning message on the Control Panel.

Cartridge type	Message displayed when a cartridge memory error or non-genuine part is detected
Cartridge 041 Cartridge 041H Cartridge 121	Cartridge Communication Error . A counterfeit or non-Canon cartridge may be in use.



Location of cartridge memory

## ■ Cartridge Detection

### Execution Condition/Timing

- At power-on
- When the Front Cover is closed

### Description

The DC Controller detects whether a cartridge is installed according to presence/absence of the memory. When the DC Controller judges there is no cartridge, it notifies the Main Controller and displays a warning message on the Control Panel.

Cartridge type	Message displayed when cartridge is not installed
Cartridge 041 Cartridge 041H Cartridge 121	Insert the toner cartridge.

## ■ Cartridge Life Detection

### Description

The DC Controller notifies the Main Controller when cartridge consumption reaches the specified value. Upon reception of the notification the Main Controller displays a warning or a message that the cartridge has reached the end of its life.

	Warning display <sup>*2</sup>	End of life display <sup>*4*5</sup>
Toner level <sup>*1</sup>	Differs depending on the setting <sup>*3</sup>	0%
Detected to (location)	Memory	Memory
Message	Prepare cartridge.	End of Cartridge Lifetime.

\*1 : The remaining toner level can be checked on the Status Monitor.

Refer to "Checking remaining toner level" in "Settings/Registration Mode/Menu" shown below.

\*2 : Whether to display or hide warnings can be specified in the menu.

Refer to "Setting of whether to display or hide warnings" in "Settings/Registration Mode/Menu" shown below.

\*3 : ON/OFF of display of the screen for setting the threshold value can be specified in service mode, and the threshold value can be specified in the menu.



Refer to "ON/OFF of display of the screen for setting the threshold value for preparation of the cartridge" in "Service Mode" shown below.

Refer to "Setting of the threshold value to display a warning" in "Settings/Registration Mode/Menu" shown below.

\*4 : The operation when the cartridge has reached the end of life can be specified in service mode.

Refer to "Setting of the behavior when the cartridge reaches the end of its estimated life" in "Service Mode" shown below.

\*5 : The reference value of cartridge life (Photosensitive Drum, Developing Assembly, and Waste Toner) can be specified in service mode.

Refer to "Setting of the reference values for replacement of the Photosensitive Drum, Developing Assembly, and Waste Toner (Bk)" in "Service Mode" shown below.

### Alarm Code

- Toner Bottle empty alarm (BK)  
10-0404 : When the Toner Bottle empty was detected

### Service Mode

- ON/OFF of display of the screen for setting the threshold value for preparation of the cartridge :  
COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW > CRGLW-LV
- Setting of the behavior when the cartridge reaches the end of its estimated life :  
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > CRG-PROC
- Setting of the reference values for replacement of the Photosensitive Drum, Developing Assembly, and Waste Toner (Bk) :  
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > CRGLF-K

### Additional Functions Mode/Menu

- Checking remaining toner level :  
Status Monitor > Device Information > Cartridge Information
- Setting of whether to display or hide warnings :  
Menu > Preferences > Display Settings > Display Timing for Cartridge Prep. Notif.
- Setting of the threshold value to display a warning :  
Menu > Preferences > Display Settings > Display Timing for Cartridge Prep. Notif. > Custom

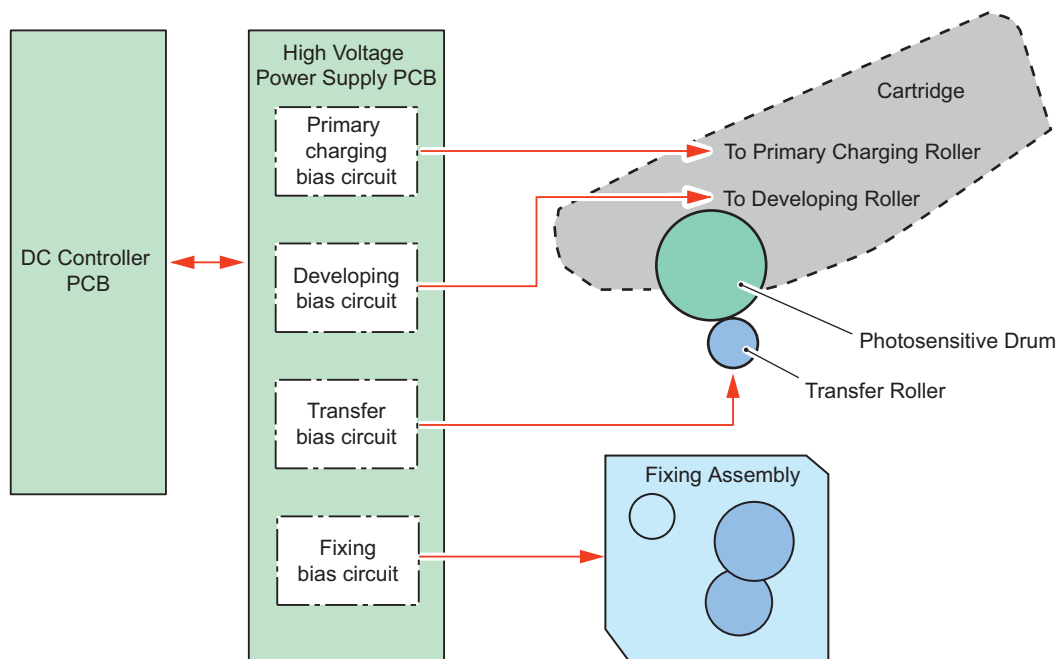
## High Voltage Power Supply Control

### Description

The High Voltage Power Supply applies high voltage biases to the following:

- Primary Charging Roller (inside the cartridge)
- Developing Roller (inside the cartridge)
- Transfer Roller

The high voltage biases are generated by the DC Controller controlling the High Voltage Power Supply.



## Fixing System

### Overview/Configuration

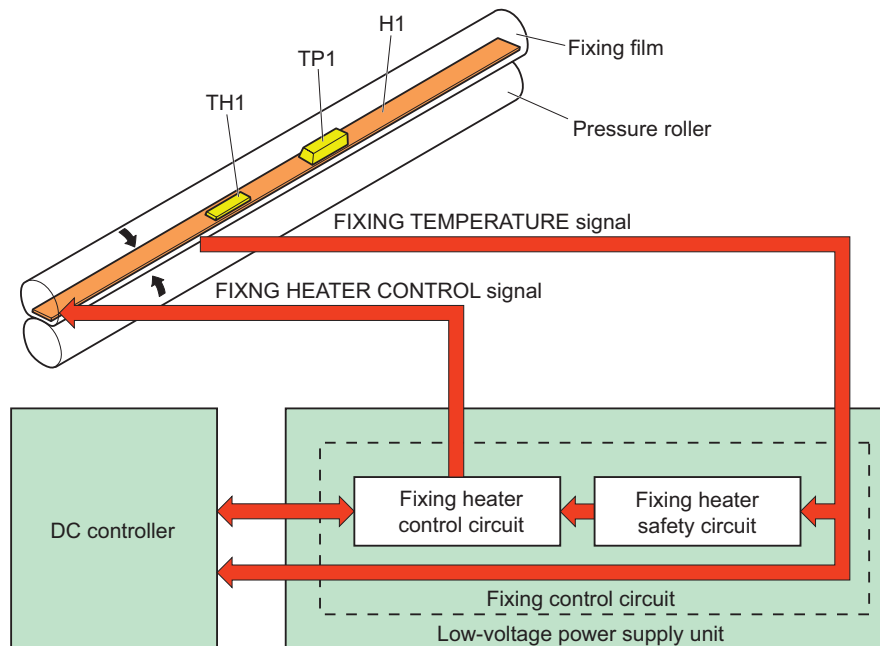
#### Overview

Fixing Delivery Assembly consists of the Fixing Assembly for fixing toner on the print paper and the Delivery Assembly for delivering print paper on which toner is fixed to the Delivery Outlet (Face-down Tray).

#### Description

This circuit is for controlling the temperature of the Fixing Assembly.

The Fixing Assembly of this machine uses an on-demand fixing method, and consists of the following parts:



Symbol	Name
H1	Fixing Heater
TH1	Thermistor
TP1	Thermoswitch

Temperature control of the Fixing Assembly which consists of these parts is performed by the Fixing Heater control circuit and Fixing Heater safety circuit according to the command of the DC Controller.

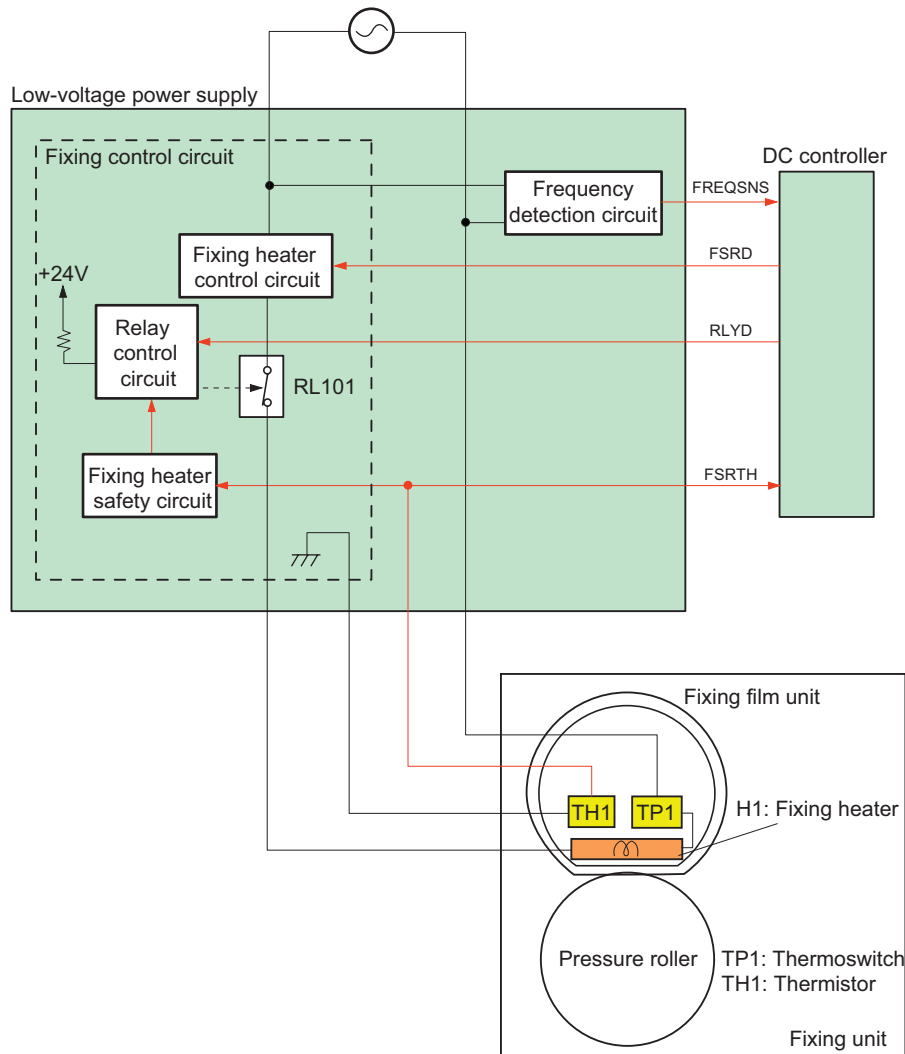
### Fixing Temperature Control

#### Description

This control detects the surface temperature of the Fixing Heater and controls the drive signal of the Fixing Heater so that the temperature of the Fixing Heater becomes the target temperature.

The temperature is detected by the Thermistor, and the DC Controller controls the temperature to become the target temperature using the Fixing Heater drive (FSRD).

The following shows this control circuit:



## Protective Functions

The Protection Circuit shuts down the power supply to the Fixing Heater if the Fixing Assembly detects abnormal temperature rising.

The following three methods are used to perform detection to prevent abnormal temperature rising.

- DC Controller
- Fixing Heater safety circuit
- Thermoswitch

The following explains each of the functions.

- DC Controller
  - The DC Controller monitors the detected temperatures of the Main Thermistor (TH1).
  - The DC Controller stops the fixing drive and shuts down the power supply when a thermistor exceeds a certain temperature.
- Fixing Heater safety circuit
  - The Fixing Heater safety circuit detects the temperature of the Main Thermistor (TH1).
  - When the Fixing Heater safety circuit detects a temperature above a certain temperature, it shuts down the power supply to the Fixing Assembly.
- Thermoswitch
  - When the temperature of the Fixing Heater rises abnormally and the Thermoswitch (TP1) exceeds a certain temperature, the contact of the Thermoswitch is disconnected to shut down the power supply to the Fixing Assembly.

## Fixing Assembly failure detection

When the machine is under the following conditions, the DC Controller shuts down the power supply to the Fixing Assembly and notifies an error.

1. Fixing temperature rising error  
Temperature of the thermistor does not rise although a specified period of time has passed since the heater was turned ON.
2. Abnormally high fixing temperature detection  
When a Thermistor reaches a certain temperature or higher, it is judged as abnormal high temperature for the thermistor.
3. Fixing drive circuit error  
When the DC Controller cannot detect a specific frequency, a fixing drive circuit failure is judged to have occurred.
4. Power supply type detection  
This machine does not perform detection of the fixing type based on power supply differences.

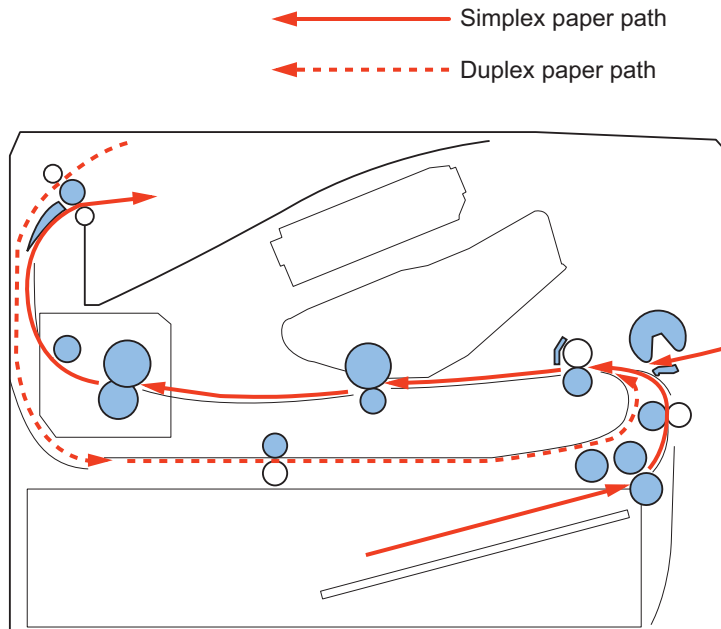
### **Error Code**

- E000-0000 : Fixing temperature rising error
- E001-0000 : Abnormally high fixing temperature
- E003-0000 : Abnormally low fixing temperature
- E004-0005 : Fixing Area Error

# Pickup Feed System

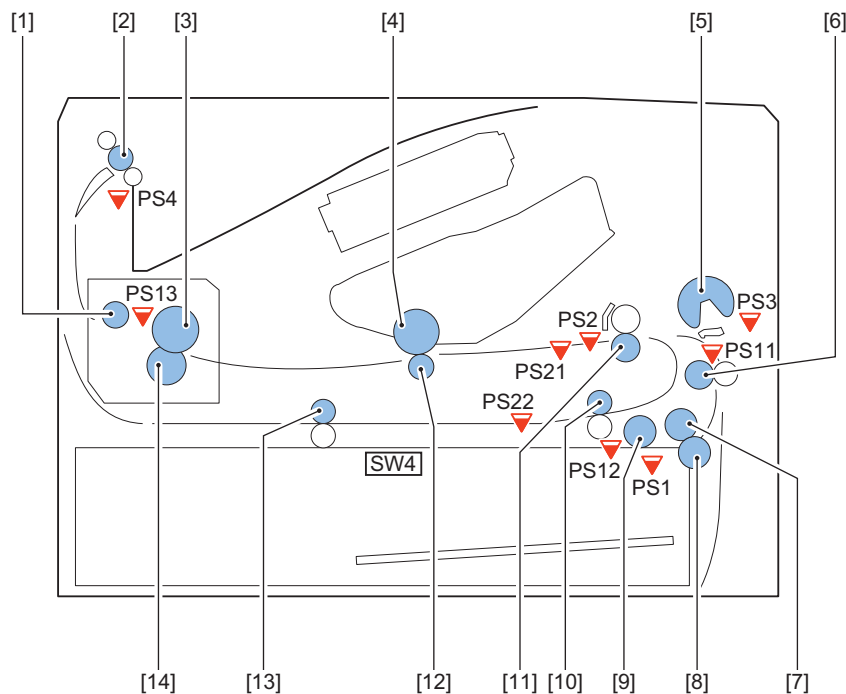
## Functional Configuration

The Pickup Feed System performs pickup, feed, and delivery of print paper, and consists of various rollers.



## Parts Configuration

### Description

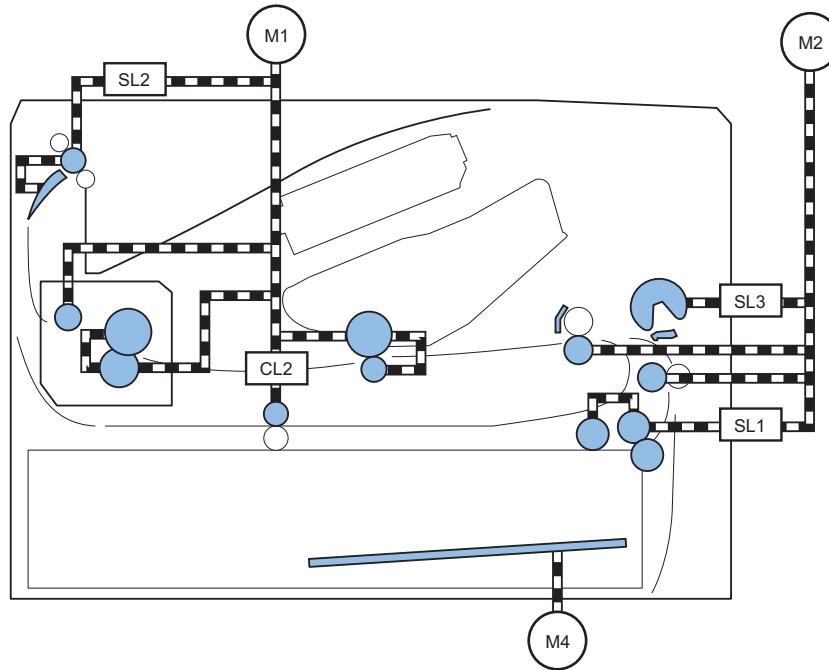


Symbol	Name	Symbol	Name
PS1	Cassette Paper Sensor	[4]	Photosensitive Drum
PS2	TOP Sensor	[5]	MP tray Pickup roller
PS3	Multi-purpose Tray Paper Sensor	[6]	Feed Roller
PS4	Delivery Tray Full Sensor	[7]	Cassette Feed Roller
PS11	Pre-registration Sensor	[8]	Cassette Separation Roller

Symbol	Name	Symbol	Name
PS12	Paper Surface Sensor	[9]	Cassette Pickup Roller
PS13	Fixing Delivery Sensor	[10]	Duplex Re-pickup Roller
PS21	Paper Width Sensor	[11]	Registration Roller
PS22	Duplex Feed Sensor	[12]	Transfer Roller
[1]	Fixing Delivery Roller	[13]	Duplex Feed Roller
[2]	Delivery Roller	[14]	Pressure Roller
[3]	Fixing Film	SW4	Cassette Detection Switch

## ■ Drive Configuration

### Description



Symbol	Name	Symbol	Name
M1	Main Motor	SL1	Cassette Pickup Solenoid
M2	Pickup Motor	SL2	Duplex Reverse Solenoid
M4	Lifter Motor	SL3	Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Solenoid
CL2	Duplex Re-pickup Clutch		

## ● Cassette Detection

### Description

Presence of the cassette is detected using the Cassette Detection Switch (SW4).

The cassette detection flag of the cassette is detected by the Cassette Detection Switch in the host machine.

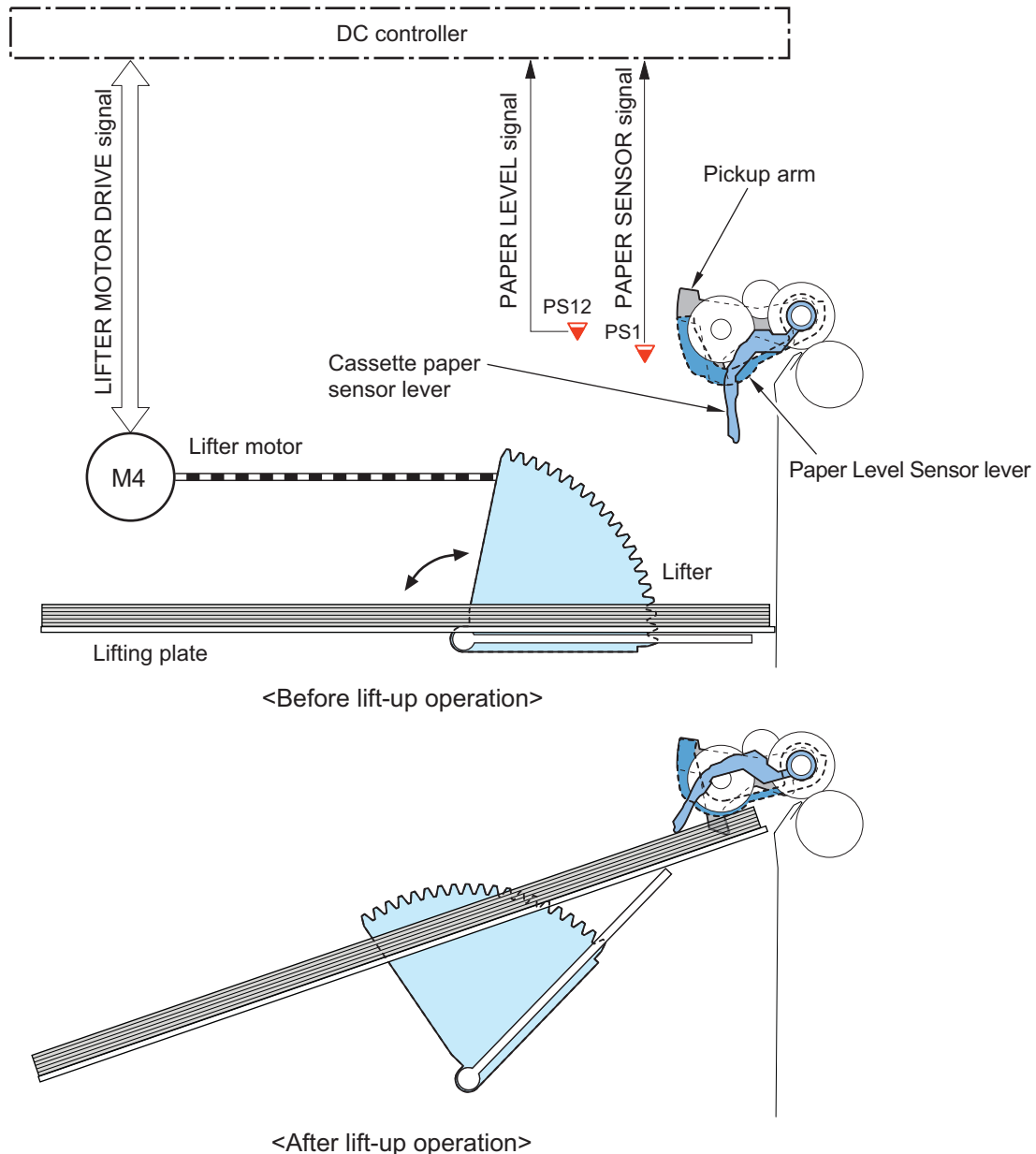
## ● Lifter control

Paper inside a cassette is lifted up by the Lifting Plate.

The Lifting Plate is lifted up by rotating the Cassette Lifter Motor (M4).

The paper surface is detected by the Media Stack Surface Sensor (PS12).

When the Lifting Plate is rising, the Lifter Motor (M4) is controlled to keep the paper surface steady so that pickup can be performed stably.



This operation is divided into two operations: the initial lift-up operation and the lift-up operation during printing.

#### 1. Initial lift-up operation

When the power is turned ON or a cassette is inserted, the Lifter Motor (M4) is driven to lift up the Lifting Plate to the position for detection if the Media Stack Surface Sensor (PS12) do not detect the paper surface.

#### 2. Lift-up operation during printing

This operation is performed if the paper surface is lowered a certain amount by the pickup operation.

If the Media Stack Surface Sensor (PS12) detect that there is no paper during printing, the Lifter Motor (M4) is driven to lift up the Lifting Plate to the pickup position.

### Error Code

- E015-0001: Cassette 1 lift-up error
- E015-0002: Cassette 2 lift-up error
- E015-0003: Cassette 3 lift-up error
- E015-0004: Cassette 4 lift-up error

## Cassette Pickup Control

### Description

The DC Controller rotates the Pickup Roller by rotating the Pickup Motor (M2).

The Pickup Arm is lifted and lowered to feed the paper by rotating the Pickup Cam with the Pickup Solenoid (SL1).

## Cassette Double Feed Prevention Mechanism

This machine employs the Retard separation method for the cassette pickup double feed prevention mechanism. The Retard separation method of this machine is a method that prevents paper double feeds by using the Cassette Separation Rollers without drive.

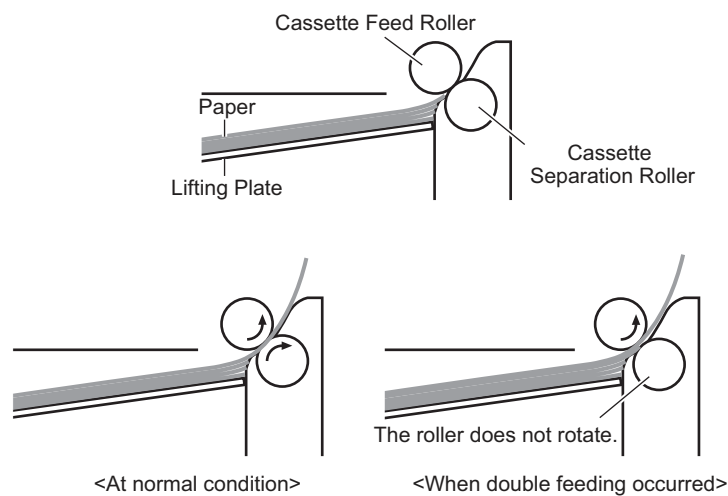
The Cassette Separation Rollers are driven and rotated by the Cassette Feed Roller.

### At Normal Time

The Cassette Separation Roller is driven by the Cassette Feed Roller drive via paper. This causes the Cassette Separation Rollers to rotate in the feed direction.

### During Double Feed

Since the friction force between sheets of paper becomes weaker when there are multiple sheets of paper, the Cassette Feed Roller drive force transmitted to the Cassette Separation Roller becomes extremely weak. Since force suppressing rotation is applied to the Cassette Separation Rollers of this machine, this mechanism does not allow rotation by the weak drive force transmitted from the Cassette Feed Roller during double feed. The Separation Rollers therefore do not rotate and do not pickup double feed paper.



## Paper Detection

### Description

Paper presence/absence on the Cassette is detected by the Cassette Paper Sensor(PS1).

## Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Control

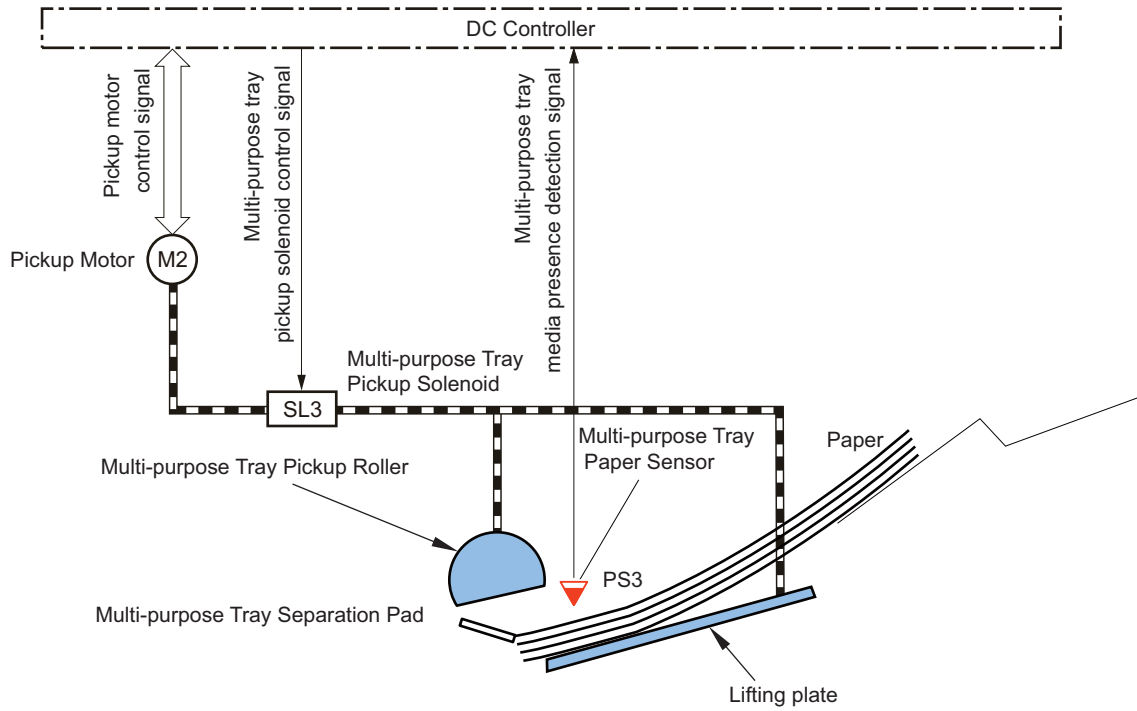
### Description

The Multi-purpose Tray pickup feeds paper from the Multi-purpose Tray one sheet at a time into the machine.

The following describes the operation of the Multi-purpose Tray pickup.

1. When a print command is input from the Main Controller, the DC Controller rotates the Pickup Motor (M2).
2. When the DC Controller turns the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Solenoid (SL3) on, the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Roller rotates and paper is picked up.
3. After double feed paper is removed by the Multi-purpose Tray Separation Pad, paper is fed into the machine. Note that the presence of paper on the Multi-purpose Tray is detected by the Multi-purpose Tray Media Presence Sensor (PS3), and printing is not performed if there is no paper.





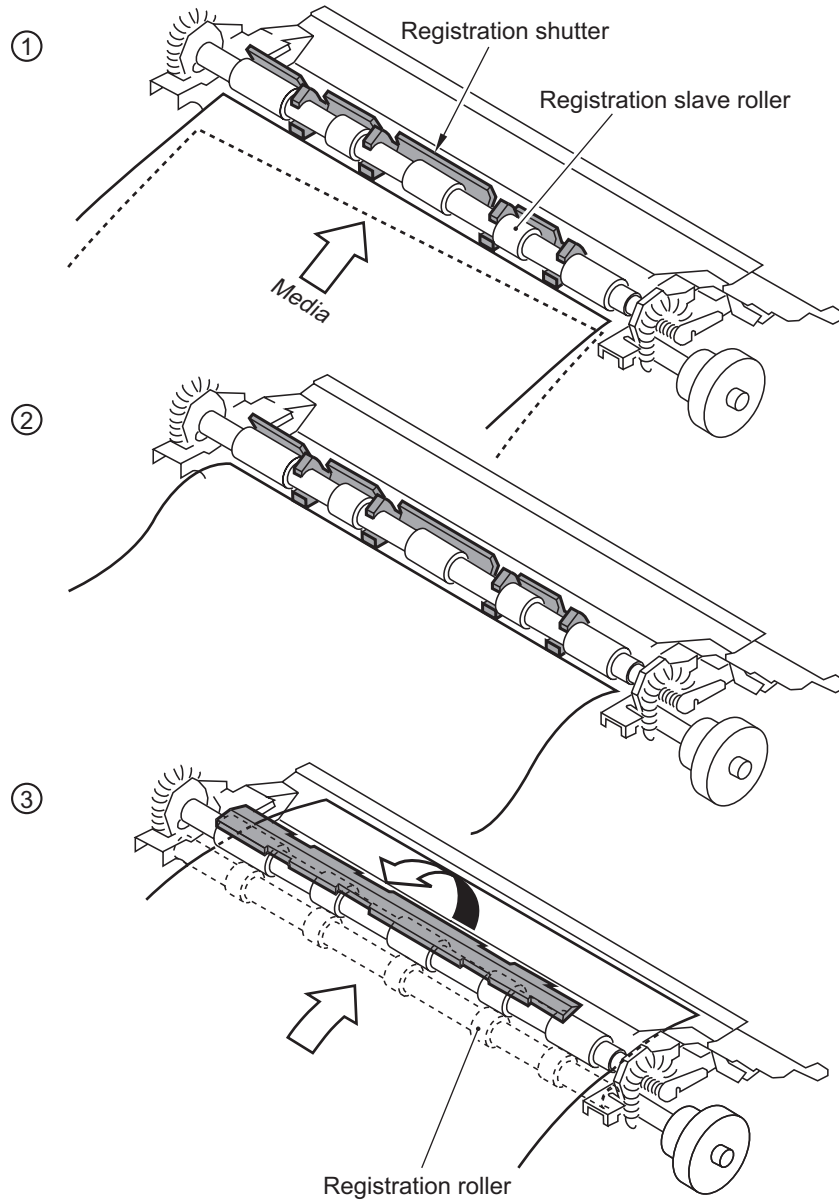
## Skew Correction

### Description

This machine can correct paper skew without lowering throughput.

Skew is corrected as follows.

1. The paper leading edge pushes against the Registration Shutter to align the leading edge of the paper.
2. The trailing edge of the paper is fed and slack is generated at the leading edge of the paper.
3. When the trailing edge is fed even further, the paper leading edge for which slack was generated pushes up the Registration Shutter and then the paper is fed to the Registration Roller while the paper leading edge is aligned.



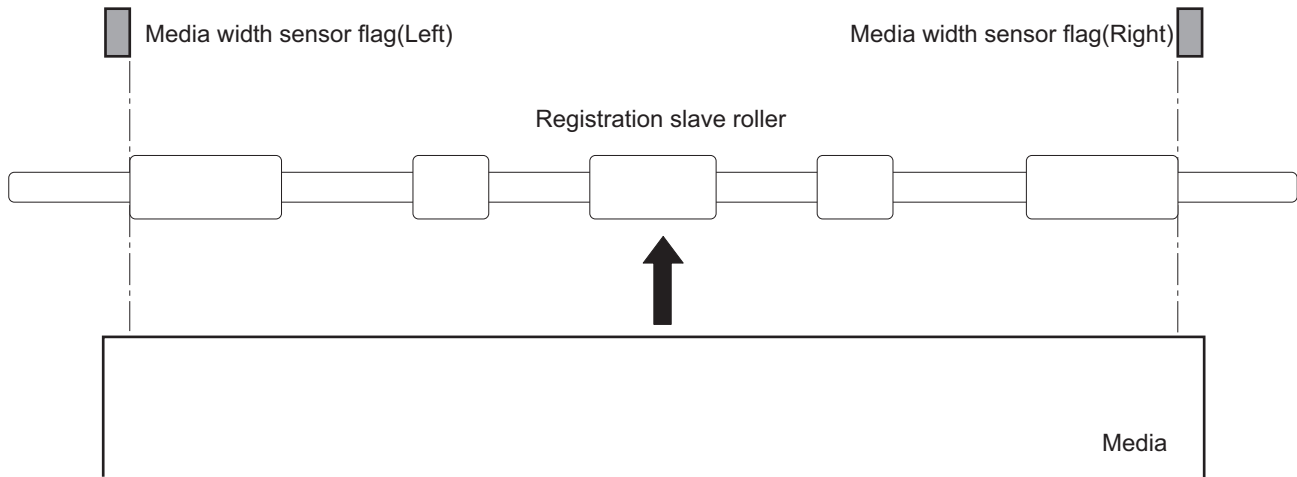
## Paper Width Detection

### Description

Detection of paper width is performed to prevent temperature increase at the edge of the Fixing Heater.

Width of paper being fed is detected by the Paper Width Sensor (PS21). When either of the Paper Width Sensor Flags on the right and left is turned ON, it is detected that the paper width is 210 mm or wider.

If the paper width detected by the Paper Width Sensor Front did not match the paper size set in the paper size of the Select Feeder menu, "Check paper size." is displayed on the Control Panel.



Paper Width Sensor (PS21)	Detection result	Paper size
ON	Paper width: 210 mm or wider	A4, LTR, LGL, Indian LGL
OFF	Paper width: shorter than 210 mm	EXEC, B5, A6 ,A5

## Paper Length Detection

### Description

The TOP Sensor (PS2) measures the paper length to prevent soiling of the Transfer Roller.

There is no way to detect the size in the Multi-purpose Tray.

The DC Controller detects the actual length of the paper by measuring the time when paper is fed using the TOP Sensor (PS2). If the detected paper is detected to be shorter than the specified size, image masking is performed from that point in time to prevent toner soiling of the Transfer Roller.

## Feed Speed Control

### Description

The printer changes the feed speed for each paper setting (print mode) to prevent fixing failures.

The DC Controller changes the paper feed speed (1/1 speed or 1/2 speed) for each paper setting to prevent the temperature rise at the edge of the Fixing Assembly.

Paper size	Pickup from Multi-Purpose Tray/Cassette	
	1/1 speed	1/2 speed
Plain L3	Yes	Yes
Plain L2	Yes	Yes
Plain L	Yes	Yes
Plain	Yes	Yes
Heavy 1	No	Yes
Heavy 2	No	Yes
Heavy 3	No	Yes*1
Heavy 4	No	Yes*1
Bond 1	No	Yes
Bond 2	No	Yes
Bond 3	No	Yes
Labels	No	Yes*1
Envelope	No	Yes*1
Envelope H	No	Yes*1

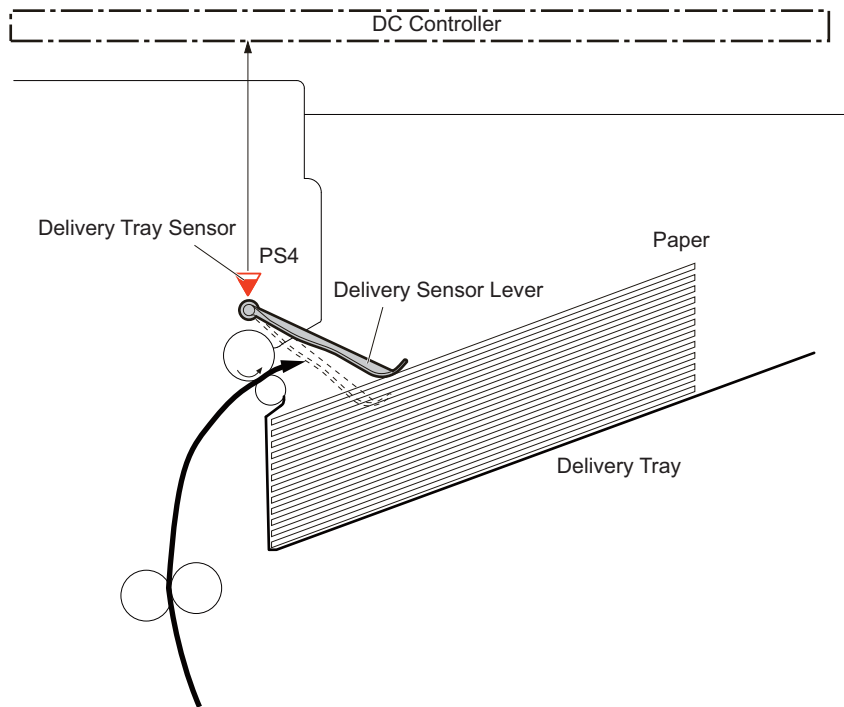
\*1: Supported only at paper pickup from the Multi-purpose Tray.

## Delivery Tray Full Detection

### Description

The DC Controller detects paper full in the Delivery Tray using the Delivery Tray Sensor (PS4).

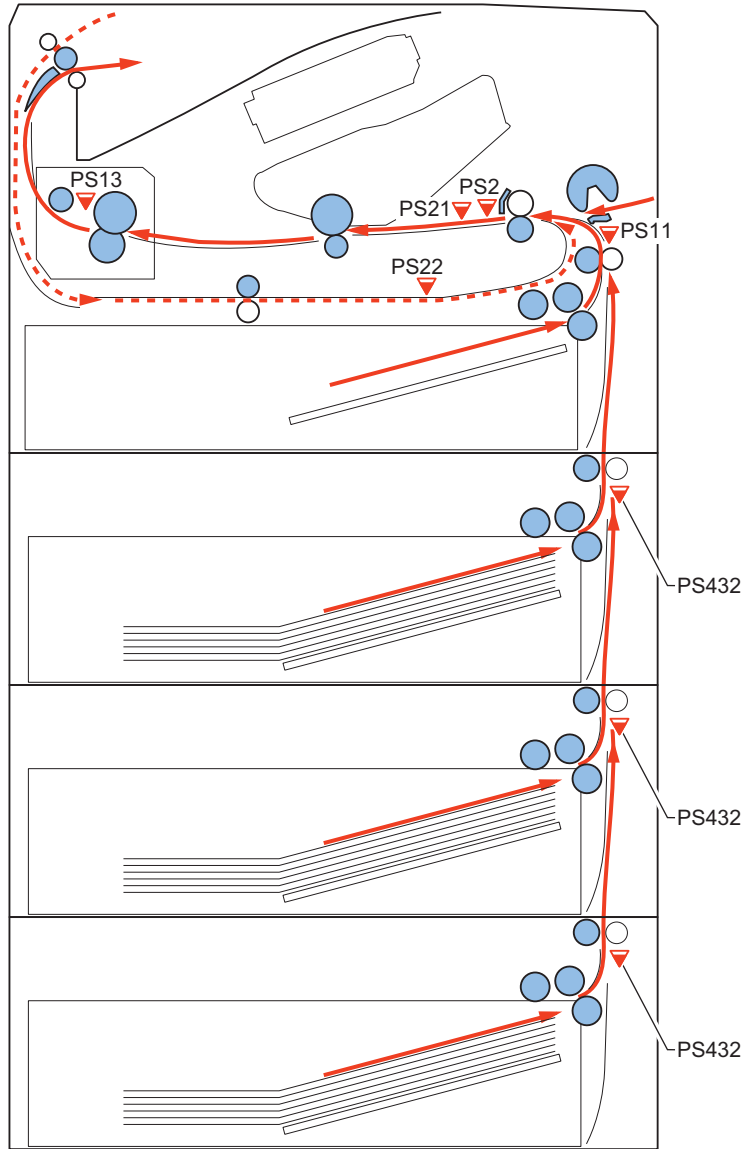
The DC Controller judges that the Delivery Tray is full and notifies the Main Controller when the Delivery Tray Sensor detects paper for a specified period of time during printing.



## Jam Detection

### Description

The sensors are provided at the locations shown below to detect the presence of print paper and whether the print paper is being fed correctly.



Symbol	Name	Symbol	Name
PS2	TOP Sensor	PS11	Pre-registration Sensor
PS21	Paper Width Sensor	PS13	Fixing Delivery Sensor
PS22	Duplex Feed Sensor	PS432	PF Media Path Sensor

Occurrence of a jam is judged by whether paper is in the sensor area at the timings stored in the DC Controller. When the DC Controller judges that a jam has occurred, the printing operation is stopped and the jam is notified to the Main Controller at the same time. The following shows the jams that are detected.

Jam name	Details
Pickup delay jam 1	At paper pickup, the TOP Sensor (SR2) does not detect the paper leading edge although a specified period of time has passed.
Pickup delay jam 2	Paper was picked up from the first, second, or third cassette of the Paper Feeder, but the PF Media Path Sensor (PS432) of the paper source failed to detect the paper leading edge.
Pickup delay jam 3	Paper was picked up from the second or third cassette of the Paper Feeder, but the PF Media Path Sensor (PS432) of the cassette just above the paper source failed to detect the paper leading edge.
Pickup stationary jam	The TOP Sensor (PS2) does not detect the trailing edge although a specified period of time has passed after detection of the leading edge.
Fixing delivery delay jam	The Fixing Delivery Sensor (PS13) does not detect the leading edge although a specified period of time has passed after the TOP Sensor (PS2) detected the leading edge.
Fixing delivery stationary jam	The Fixing Delivery Sensor (PS13) does not detect the trailing edge although a specified period of time has passed after the TOP Sensor (PS2) detected the trailing edge.
Internal stationary jam	When one of the following sensors detects presence of paper at power-on, door close, or before/after print operation <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• TOP Sensor (PS2)</li> <li>• Fixing Delivery Sensor (PS13)</li> </ul>
Door open jam	The door open was detected during printing and feeding paper.
Fixing wrap jam	The time from when the Fixing Delivery Sensor (PS13) detected the paper leading edge until the OFF status of the sensor was detected was shorter than the predetermined time.
Duplex Re-pickup Assembly jam	At 2-sided print, the paper was reversed, but the TOP Sensor (PS2) failed to detect the leading edge of paper within the specified period of time.



# Technical Explanation (System)

Overview of System Management.....	54
Version Upgrade.....	55
Setting Information Export/Import Function (DCM).....	59
Monitoring Function (e-Maintenance/ imageWARE Remote).....	69
Security Functions.....	73

## Overview of System Management

This chapter describes information for service technicians on the system of this machine. Although this chapter contains some information described in the User's Guide, for details on the functions for users, refer to the e-Manual.



# Version Upgrade

## Function Overview

The following firmware upgrade methods are available with this device.

### Version upgrade using User Support Tool (UST).

Upgrade the firmware of the device using UST

Open the file for UST version upgrade on a PC connected with the device and upgrade the firmware.

Since the host machine and the PC are connected using a USB cable, version upgrades can be performed in an environment where a network is not available.

### Version upgrade via Internet

Access the dedicated server, and download and upgrade the firmware.

Provided that Internet connection is available, the system automatically configures the connection destination setting and executes processing such as download and version upgrade.

### Version upgrade using a USB flash drive (released only in special cases)

Upgrade the firmware of this machine using a USB flash drive.

Connect a USB flash drive where the firmware is stored to the device, and update the firmware in service mode.

Version upgrades can be performed in an environment where a PC or network is not available.

#### NOTE:

Firmware that can be used for version upgrade using a USB flash drive is released only in special cases such as a tender business, and is not normally released. As for the detailed version upgrade procedure, follow the instructions given at the time of release of the customized firmware for version upgrade using a USB flash drive.

### Version upgrade by replacing the PCB

Version upgrade by replacing the existing PCB with a PCB where the latest firmware is installed

### Version upgrade using Local CDS

Use iW EMC/iW MC and DFU plug-in to download firmware from Local CDS and upgrade the host machine.

#### NOTE:

When using Local CDS to upgrade it, refer to the manual/material of iW EMC/iW MC DFU plug-in.

#### CAUTION:

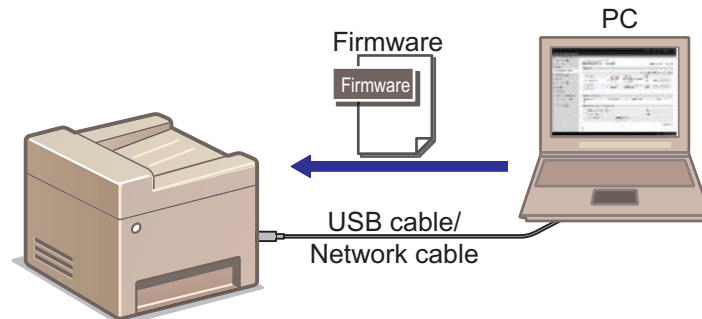
A message appears when an attempt is made to upgrade a host machine to which specified firmware has been applied. This is a precaution not to use wrong firmware to upgrade a host machine to which specified firmware has been applied. See the following regarding the combination of whether the message will be displayed:

Type of firmware applied to the host machine	Firmware to upgrade	
	General firmware	Specified firmware
General firmware	No message	No message
Specified firmware	Message displayed	Message displayed

## Version Upgrade Using UST

UST is included in the firmware for the machine that can be downloaded from the website of CINC. Firmware is downloaded as a zip file and a folder containing UST is extracted by decompressing the file.

When executing UST on the PC connected to the machine with a USB Cable, the firmware can be upgraded by downloading it from the PC to the machine. For the detailed procedure, refer to "User Support Tool Operation Guide" stored in the decompressed folder. "User Support Tool Operation Guide" is also available on the website of CINC.



## Version Upgrade via Internet

Connect to the Internet using the network function of the device, and download and upgrade the latest firmware from the server. If the device is in an environment where Internet connection is available, firmware versions can be upgraded only by operation from the menu without using PC.

### Prerequisite

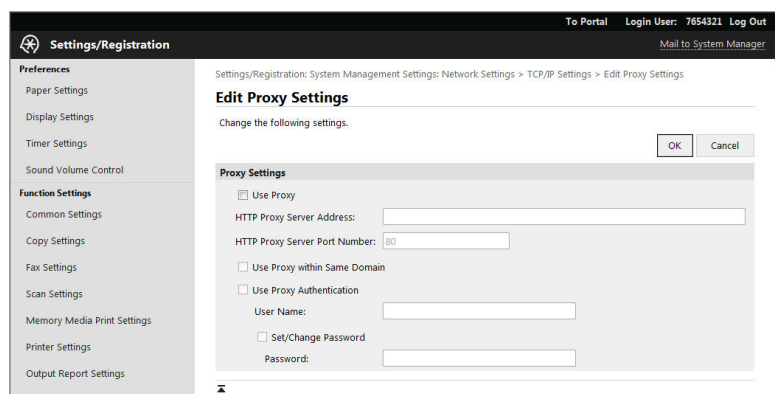
In order to perform version upgrade of the device via Internet, the following conditions must be met.

#### There should be no other jobs being executed.

Firmware cannot be upgraded while there is a job being executed. If there is a job being executed, wait for completion of the job and then perform the work.

#### The device should be able to be connected to the external network.

If connection is not available because, for example, there is a proxy server, follow the e-Manual to configure the proxy server settings and enable connection to the external network.



#### The serial number of the host machine should be shown on the Main Controller PCB.

Whether or not the serial number of the host machine is shown on the Main Controller PCB can be checked from the Control Panel or SPEC REPORT.

#### Procedure to check from SPEC REPORT

- Execute the following service mode to print SPEC REPORT.
  - COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P> SPEC

2. Check if the serial number ("3 alphabetical characters + 5-digit number" or "1-digit number + 2 alphabetical characters + 5-digit number") is shown in [BODY No.] of the printed SPEC REPORT.

***** *** SPEC REPORT *** *****	
Device Info	ZZ999 Series
ROM Version	
MAIN	00.75
BOOT	00.25
LANG	01.36
ECONT	00.10
PANEL	05.01
Device Code	A0000000
Locale	9
Version TVno	0
BODY No.	ZZZ99999
Factory Flag	12345678

## ■ Procedure for Upgrading the Firmware via Internet

### 1. Select the following menu to upgrade the firmware via Internet:

- [Management Settings] > [Remote UI Settings/Update Firmware] > [Update Firmware] > [Via Internet] > [Yes]
- When the upgrading of firmware is completed, the machine automatically restarts.

### 2. Select the following menu, and check that the firmware has been correctly upgraded:

- [Management Settings] > [Remote UI Settings/Update Firmware] > [Update Firmware] > [Version Information]

#### CAUTION:

This function does not support the operations from remote UI. ([Update Firmware] does not exist in the [System Management Settings] menu of the remote UI.)

## ■ Messages

The message displayed on the device operation panel is as follows.

No	Error message	The timing of occurrence	Remedy
1	Job in progress... Wait a moment, then try again.	If there is a job being executed:	1. Wait until the job is completed. 2. Cancel the job.
2	Cannot check the firmware version. (Server communication error.)	Network error	1. Check whether the device can be connected to the external network. 2. Check whether the proxy setting has been made (in case of access via a proxy server).
3	Cannot download the firmware. (Error during download.)		1. Check whether the device can be connected to the external network. 2. Check whether the proxy setting has been made (in case of access via a proxy server). 3. Check that the serial number of the host machine is shown on the Main Controller PCB.
4	***DOWNLOAD MODE*** NETWORK AVAILABLE IP ADDRESS IP address of the machine PRESS STOP KEY TO EXIT	If update (writing) of the firmware has ended in failure:	1. Update the firmware again using UST.
5	***DOWNLOAD MODE*** FAILED TO UPDATE		
6	***DOWNLOAD MODE*** UPDATE IS COMPLETE	If the update of the firmware is successful	-

## ● Version Upgrade Using a USB Flash Drive (Released Only in Special Cases)

Connect a USB flash drive where the firmware is stored to this machine, and update the firmware in service mode.

**NOTE:**

Firmware that can be used for version upgrade using a USB flash drive is released only in special cases such as a tender business, and is not normally released. As for the detailed version upgrade procedure, follow the instructions given at the time of release of the customized firmware for version upgrade using a USB flash drive.

## ■ Prerequisite

In order to perform version upgrade of the machine using a USB flash drive, the following conditions must be met.

**There should be no other jobs being executed.**

Firmware cannot be upgraded while there is a job being executed. If there is a job being executed, wait for completion of the job and then perform the work.

## ■ Procedure for Upgrading the Firmware Using a USB Flash Drive

1. **Connect a USB flash drive where the firmware is stored to this machine.**
2. **Execute one of the following service modes.**
  - COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD
  - COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > DOWNLOAD\_FORCE

**NOTE:**

If you want to apply only firmware that is newer than the firmware currently applied in the machine, execute DOWNLOAD. If you want to apply all the firmware contained in the USB flash drive regardless of whether it is newer or older, execute DOWNLOAD\_FORCE.

3. **The signature data of the downloaded file is verified, and download instruction information is written to the designated area of the flash memory only if the verification result is correct.**
4. **The machine is automatically restarted.**
5. **When the upgrading of firmware is completed, the machine automatically restarts.**

## Setting Information Export/Import Function (DCM)

### Overview

Various data is stored in the storage inside the device.

Depending on the works to be done such as replacing parts, this data needs to be backed up and restored.

There are some ways to back up and restore data, and the appropriate one should be used depending on the purpose and storage destination.

This section describes the procedure for backing up and restoring service mode setting values.

For the procedure for backing up and restoring other information, refer to the e-Manual.

### Function Overview

This machine has a setting information export/import function (hereinafter referred to as DCM (Device Configuration Management) function) which exports/imports the machine's setting value information as a file. The file exported/imported using the DCM function is called a DCM file, and the target setting information is as follows:

- Setting information of [Menu] ([Setting/ Registration ] menu)
- Service mode setting information
- Address Book

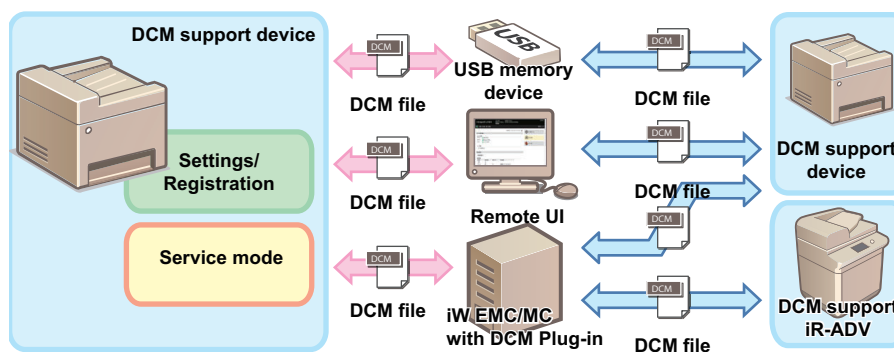
The DCM file is exported to a USB flash drive or PC local disk from the Control Panel or remote UI.

The exported DCM file can be returned to the original device or imported to a different device.

When the file is returned to the original device, this can be used as a function to back up the settings, and when the file is imported to a different device, this can be used as a function to copy setting information.

Data can also be imported to or exported from an iR-ADV machine by using iW EMC/MC DCM Plug-in.

In the case of the setting value backup function before implementation of the DCM function, an exported file could be imported only to the same device, but the DCM function enables import of an exported file to a different device.



Conceptual diagram

#### NOTE:

In order to export or import setting information using DCM, it is necessary that the device supports DCM.

### Backup/Restoration for Service Technicians

#### Backup and restoration from [Menu] ([Setting/ Registration ] menu)

Setting information can be backed up and restored from the Control Panel of the device or from [Menu] ([Setting/ Registration ] menu) of remote UI.

Although [Menu] ([Setting/ Registration ] menu) is for users, the service mode settings information can be backed up and restored from the Import/Export function by changing the service mode setting.

The service mode settings information can be backed up and restored only by accessing from the remote UI [Settings/Registration] menu.

#### Backup/Restoration Using Service Mode

Some of the functions in service mode can be used to backup and restore data.

DC-CON/R-CON setting value information and service counter (DC-CON) values can be backed up and restored.

## ■ Combination of Information Exported/Imported by DCM, Means, and Storage Locations

A DCM file is exported and imported using the Control Panel, remote UI, or the iW EMC server, depending on the situation of the site.

The information exported/imported differs depending on the means.

Combinations of them are shown in the following table.

Menu used	Operation	Information exported			Save destination
		Setting values of menu options	Address book <sup>**1</sup>	Service mode setting values	
[Settings/Registration] menu	Control panel	Yes (fixed) <sup>*2</sup>	Yes (fixed) <sup>*2</sup>	No	USB flash drive
	Remote UI	Yes	Yes	With conditions <sup>*3</sup>	PC local disk
Service mode	Control panel	No	No	Yes	USB flash drive / Storage in the host machine
	Remote UI	No	No	Yes	Storage in the host machine

## ■ Compatibility of Data

The following table shows compatibility of data in the case where the device from which the data is exported and the device to which the data is imported differ in model and/or serial number.

For items that are imported in Cases A, B, and C, refer to “List of Items Which Can Be Imported” on page 384.

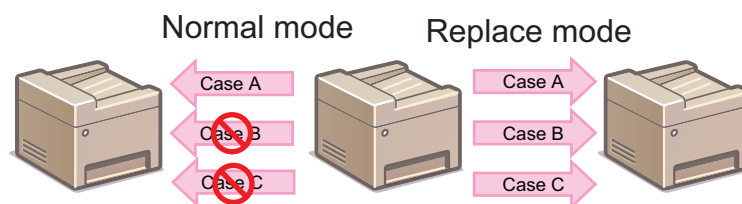
Model	Serial number	Import process
Same	Same	Items corresponding to Case A are imported. <sup>*4</sup>
Same	Different <sup>*5</sup>	Items corresponding to Case B are imported. <sup>*4</sup>
Different	Different <sup>*5</sup>	Items corresponding to Case C are imported. <sup>*6</sup>
Different	Same	The file is judged to be invalid, and the process ends with an error.

## ■ Replacement Mode

When this function is used for migrating the setting data upon replacement of a device, some of the data cannot be migrated if the model to which the data is migrated is different.

When this function is used in normal mode, data that is applicable to either Case B (of different serial number) or Case C (of different model) cannot be imported.

When replacement mode is enabled on the device on the importing side, data can be forcibly migrated even to a device of a different serial number or even between different models.



<sup>\*1</sup> Models without address books are excluded. In the case of a fax option model without SEND function, address books are exported only if a fax option is connected with the device.

<sup>\*2</sup> When the [Settings/Registration] menu is used from the Control Panel, both the setting menu information and the address book are imported/exported. It is not possible to export/import only either of them. Information which is not included in the data to be imported is not imported.

<sup>\*3</sup> Service mode is added to the data to be exported only when service mode COPIER > OPTION > USER > SMD-EXPT is set. For information on items that are imported, refer to "List of Items Which Can Be Imported".

<sup>\*4</sup> If the firmware version at the time of import differs from that at the time of export, predetermined corrective processing may be performed.

<sup>\*5</sup> If a serial number is missing, the serial numbers are judged to be mismatched.

<sup>\*6</sup> Predetermined corrective processing may be performed.

The following shows the procedure to turn ON/OFF replacement mode of the device to which the migrating data is imported.

**1. Set the following service mode setting value to "1(ON)" or "0(OFF)".**

- COPIER > OPTION > USER > RPL-IMP

**CAUTION:**

Since replacement mode is not lifted automatically, the setting value of the foregoing service mode needs to be changed back to "0" to return to normal mode.

The targeted items of replacement mode are as follows.

**List of Replacement Mode Targeted Items**

User mode setting items	Settings (* indicates default values)	Remarks
System settings		
Device information settings		
Device name	32 characters	Model name is displayed as a default value.
Installation site	32 characters	
Network settings		
TCP/IP settings		
IPv4 settings		
IP address	0.0.0.0 *	
IPv6 settings		
Manual address settings		
Use manual address	OFF*/ON	
Manual address	IP address input screen	
Prefix length	(0 to *64 to 128)	
Default router address	Router address input screen	
DNS settings		
Use the same host/domain name as those of IPv4	OFF/ON*	
Host name	Enter the host name	
Domain name	Enter the domain name	
mDNS Settings		
mDNS Settings	OFF/ON*	
Use the same mDNS name as that of IPv4	OFF/ON*	
mDNS name	Enter the mDNS name	
SMB settings		
NetBIOS name	NetBIOS name for own machine (15 byte)	
Workgroup name	Belonging workgroup name (15 byte)	
AirPrint settings		
Installation site	32 characters	Setting values to be referred are the same as [Installation Site] in the [System Settings]

## Import/Export Procedure from [Settings/Registration] of Remote UI

This section describes the procedure for backing up and restoring service mode setting information by using the [Import/Export] function in the [Settings/Registration] menu of Remote UI.

**CAUTION:**

- The service mode setting information can be backed up and restored only from the [Settings/Registration] menu on Remote UI, and the operation cannot be performed from the [Settings/Registration] menu on the Control Panel.
- In the case of backing up and restoring only the setting information of the [Settings/Registration] menu or the address book, refer to the procedure described in the e-Manual.

## ■ Limitations

The following limitations exist when backing up and restoring the service mode settings information from the [Settings/Registrations] menu of remote UI.

### A job must not be accepted during an import/export processing.

Except for the calibration requested by the engine, a job is not allowed to be accepted during a processing. In addition, import/export must not be performed during execution of a job.

### Firmware must not be updated during an import/export processing.

Fax cannot be received while firmware is updated during a processing. In addition, import/export must not be performed also during firmware update.

### Power must not be turned off during an import/export processing.

If power discontinuity occurs during an import processing, a rollback processing is not performed, therefore the settings imported up to that point are reflected while the rest of the settings remain as-is.

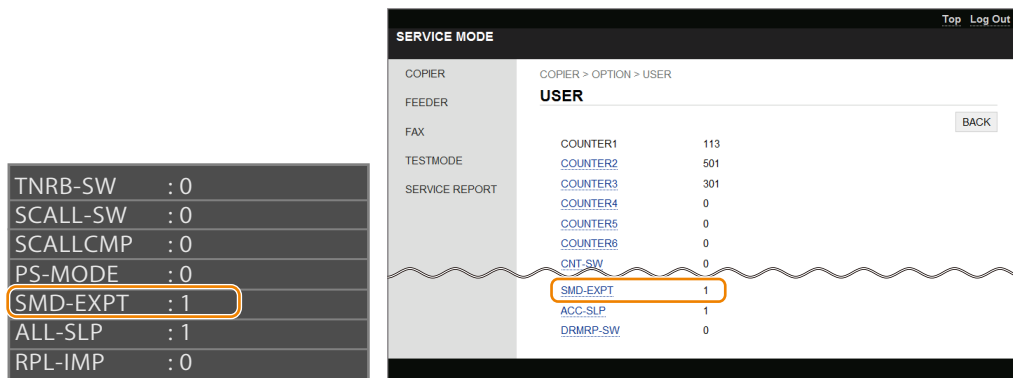
When power discontinuity occurs during an export processing, export is not executed.

## ■ Procedure for Export from Remote UI ([System Management Settings] Menu)

Service mode setting information can be exported from the [Management Settings] menu by setting the following service mode setting value to "1".

### 1. Enter service mode, and set the following item to "1".

- COPIER > OPTION > USER > SMD-EXPT

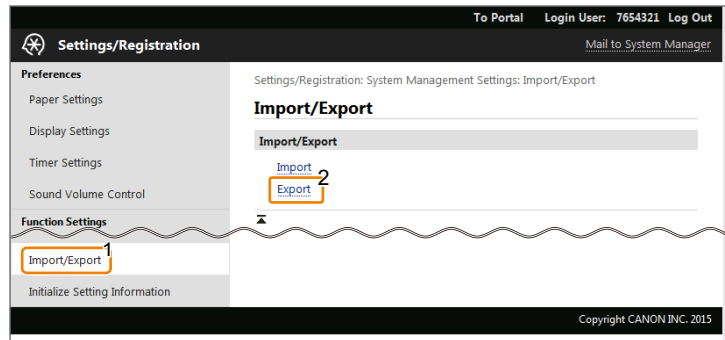
**NOTE:**

The [SMD-EXPT] setting can be configured either from the Control Panel or from the remote UI.

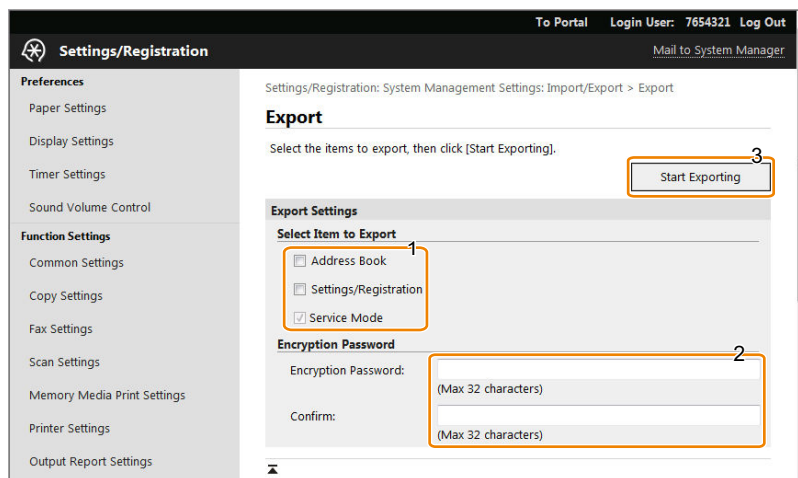


2. Exit service mode, start remote UI, log in as a system administrator, and then select the following item:

- [Setting/ Registration] > [Management Settings] > [Data Management] > [Import/Export] > [Export]



3. After confirming that [Service Mode] is displayed/selected in [Select Item to Export], enter the password and click [Start Exporting].



#### Address Book

Select the check box to export the address book data.

#### Settings/Registration

Select this check box to import the menu option data.

#### Encryption password

Enter 32 or less numeric characters set when the file was exported.

4. The [File Download] dialog box will appear. Save the file to any location.

5. Enter service mode, and set the following item to "0".

- COPIER > OPTION > USER > SMD-EXPT

#### CAUTION:

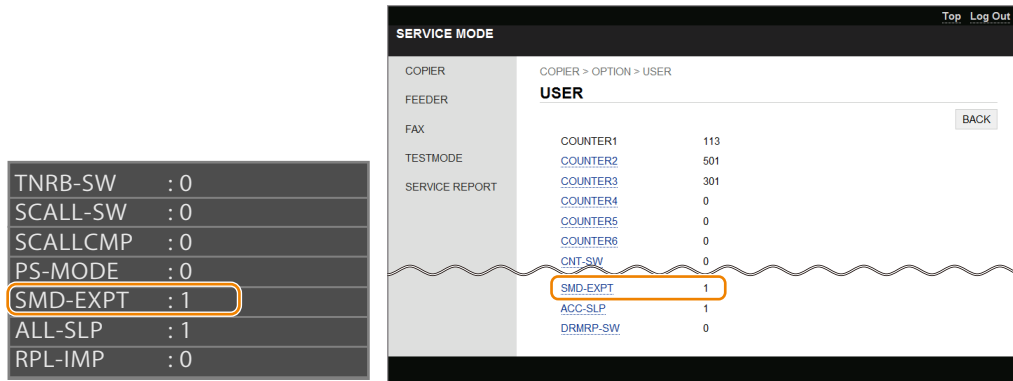
Since the screen of export function can also be accessed by the user, be sure to disable the [SMD-EXPT] setting (setting value: 0).

## ■ Procedure for Import from Remote UI ([System Management Settings] Menu)

Import the service mode setting information file that was exported in the previous procedure.

1. Enter service mode, and set the following item to "1".

- COPIER > OPTION > USER > SMD-EXPT

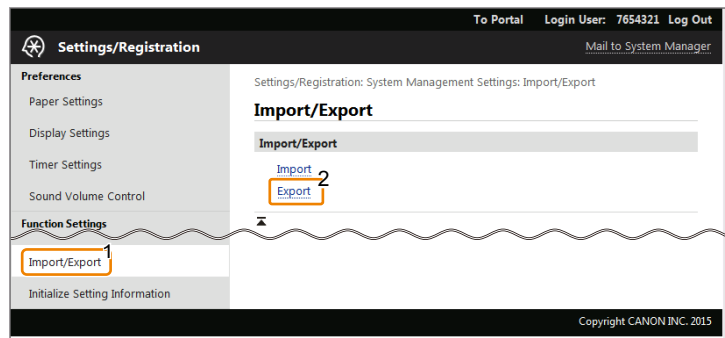


**NOTE:**

The [SMD-EXPT] setting can be configured either from the Control Panel or from the remote UI.

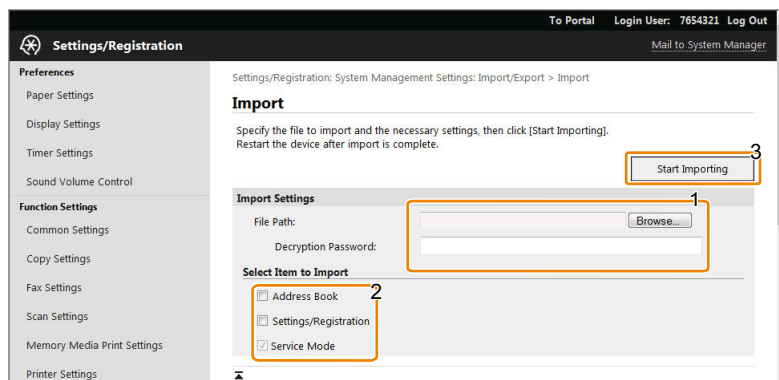
2. Exit service mode, start remote UI, log in as a system administrator, and then select the following item:

- [Setting/ Registration] > [Management Settings] > [Data Management] > [Import/Export] > [Import]



3. Configure the import setting, and click [Start Importing].

Entering the encryption password and clicking [Start Importing] imports the menu option data.



**[Browse...] button**

Click to select the file to import.

**Decryption password**

Enter 32 or less numeric characters set when the file was exported.

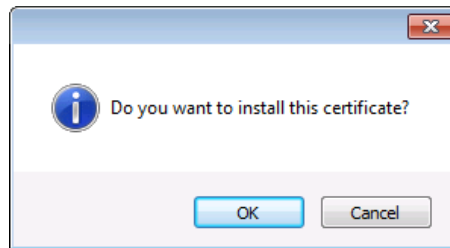
**Address Book**

Select the check box to import the address book data.

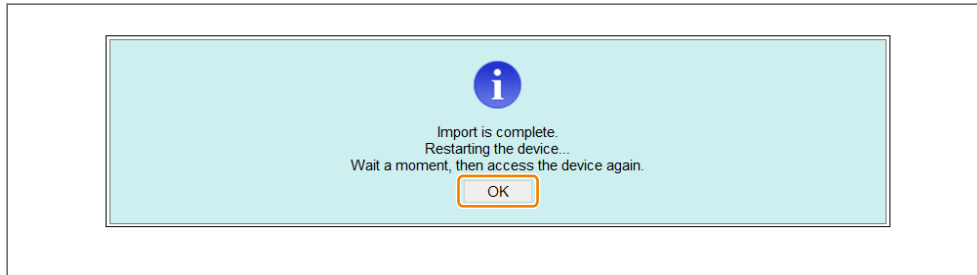
**Settings/Registration**

Select this check box to import the menu option data.

4. A dialog box asking whether the user wants to execute import will appear. Click [OK].



5. A message will appear to indicate that the process has been completed. Click the [OK] button.



6. Restart this machine, enter service mode, and confirm that the setting information is reflected. This completes the procedure for importing a setting information file.

7. Enter service mode, and set the following item to "0".

- COPIER > OPTION > USER > SMD-EXPT

#### CAUTION:

Since the screen of export function can also be accessed by the user, be sure to disable the [SMD-EXPT] setting (setting value: 0).

## Procedure for Exporting/Importing Service Mode Setting Information

Service mode setting information can be backed up and restored by using service mode functions. The backup file can be saved to a USB flash drive or a storage in the machine.

#### Backup/restoration to a USB flash drive

```
COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > EXPORT
COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > IMPORT
```

#### Backup/restoration to a storage in the machine

```
COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > SAVE-SM
COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > RSTR-SM
```

	Backup/restoration to a USB flash drive	Backup/restoration to a storage in the machine
Storage destination	USB flash drive	Storage in the machine
Number of files saved	Depends on the capacity of the USB flash drive	One
Duplication of the setting values for other machines	Possible	Not possible

### ■ Procedure for Exporting to a USB Flash Drive

Use the service mode function to save the service mode setting information to a USB flash drive.

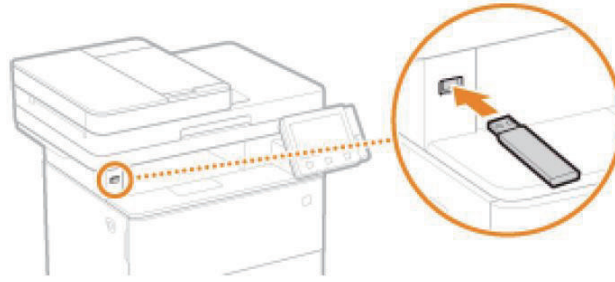
This operation can be performed both from the Control Panel and remote UI.

The following USB flash drives can be used for export/import.

- USB flash drive in FAT 16 format (storage capacity: 2 GB)
- USB flash drive in FAT 32 format (storage capacity: 32 GB)

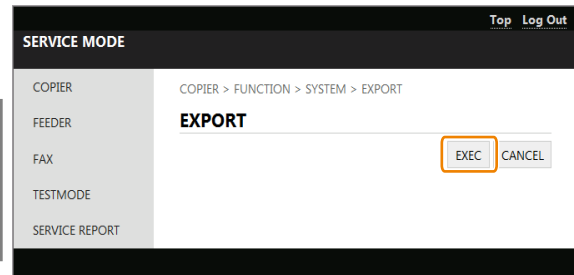
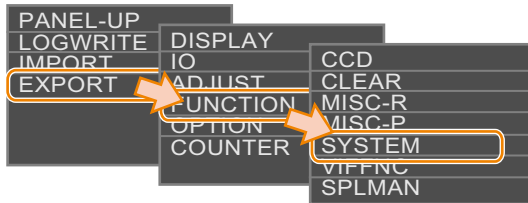
Note that the descriptions in parenthesis in the procedure are the descriptions in the case of remote UI.

1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB Memory Port.



**2. Enter service mode, and execute the following service mode.**

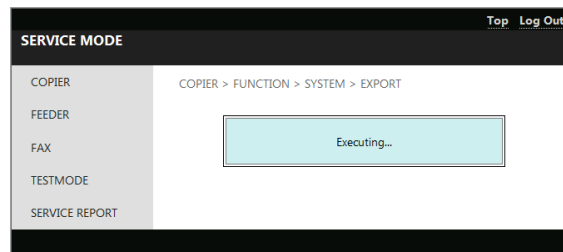
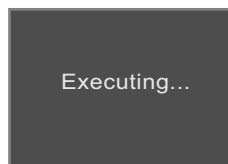
- COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > EXPORT



**CAUTION:**

Even if the service mode is executed without connecting a USB flash drive, an error is not displayed. It looks as if the process has been completed successfully, but the file has not been exported to anywhere. For the reason shown above, be sure to check before execution that a USB flash drive is connected.

**3. The message shown below which is displayed during the process will disappear. When the display has returned to the original state, remove the USB flash drive.**

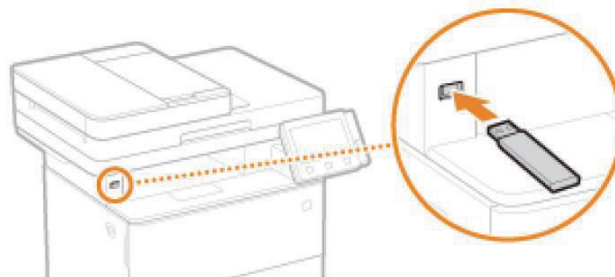


**4. Check that a setting information file (service.dcm) exists in the directory directly under the root of the USB flash drive.**

This completes the procedure for exporting a setting information file.

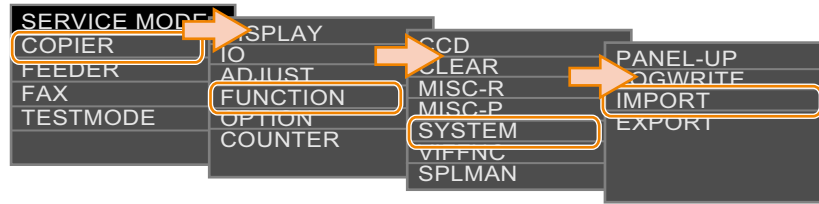
## ■ Procedure for Import from USB Flash Drive

1. Save the setting information file (service.dcm) to be imported to directly under the root of the USB flash drive.
2. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB Memory Port.

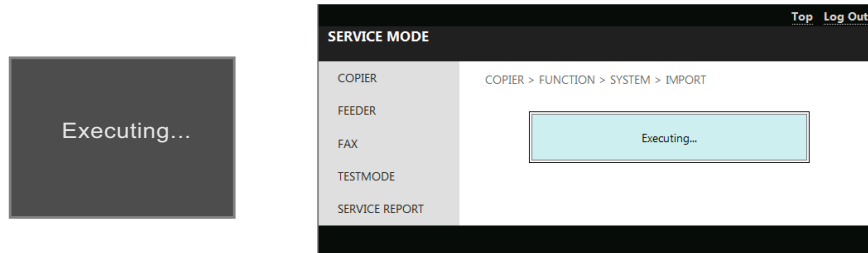


**3. Enter service mode, and execute the following service mode.**

- COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > IMPORT



**4. The message shown below which is displayed during the process will disappear. When the display has returned to the original state, remove the USB flash drive.**



**5. Restart the host machine, enter service mode, and confirm that the setting information is reflected.**

This completes the procedure for importing a setting information file.

## ■ Backup Procedure to the Storage in the Machine

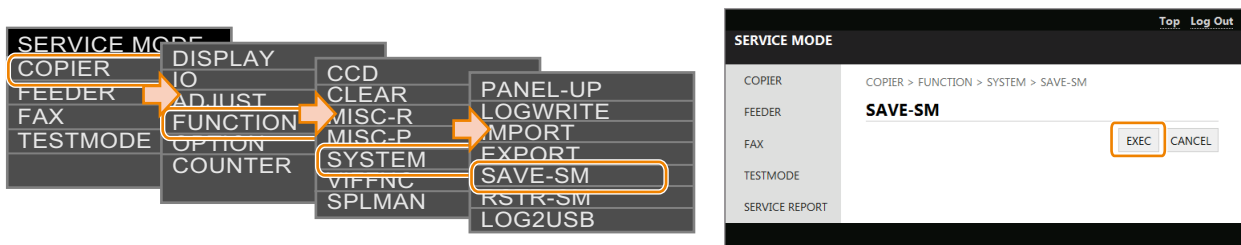
Use the service mode function to back up the service mode setting information to the storage in the machine.

This operation can be performed both from the Control Panel and remote UI.

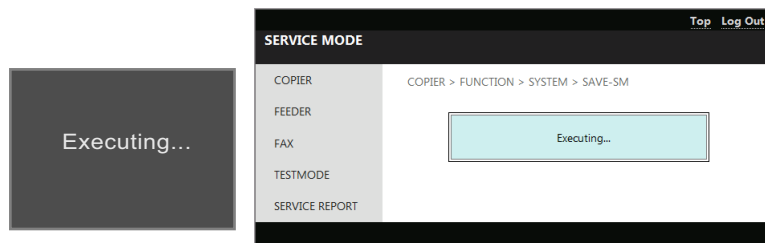
The setting information that can be saved in the machine's storage is only one.

**1. Enter service mode, and execute the following service mode.**

Access service mode, select COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > SAVE-SM, and click [OK (EXEC)].



**2. The following screen is displayed during the processing:**



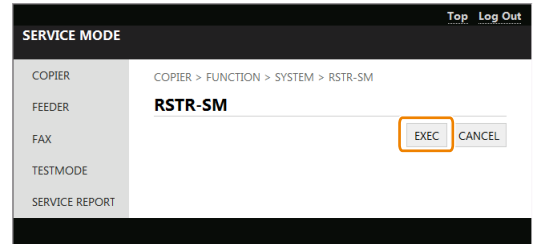
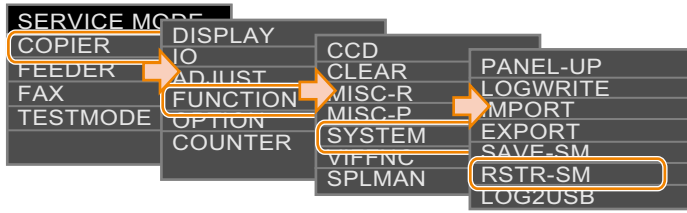
**3. Finish the operation after checking that the screen returns to the previous display.**

## ■ Procedure for Restoration from Internal Storage

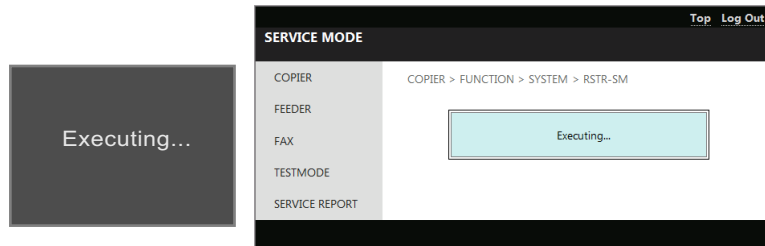
Restore the service mode setting information that has been backed up to the storage in the machine in the previous procedure.

1. Enter service mode, and execute the following service mode.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > RSTR-SM



2. The following screen is displayed during the processing:



3. Finish the operation after checking that the screen returns to the previous display.

## Monitoring Function (e-Maintenance/imageWARE Remote)

### Overview of System

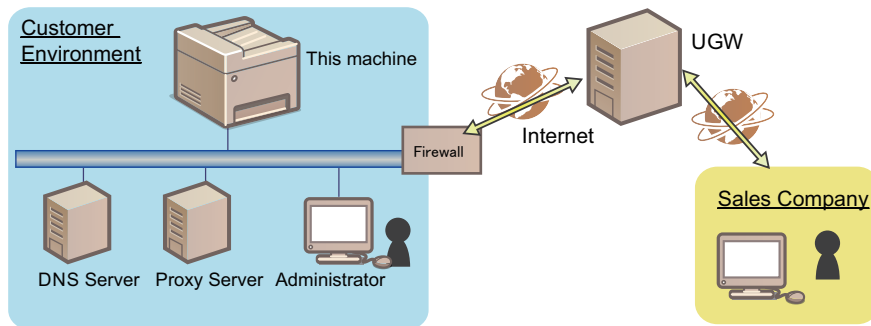
#### Function Overview

E-RDS (Embedded RDS) is a monitoring program that runs on the host machine. When the monitoring option is enabled by making the setting on this machine, information such as the status change of the machine, counter information, and failure information are collected. The collected device information is sent to a remote maintenance server called UGW (Universal Gateway Server) via Internet.

The information to be monitored is:

- Billing counter
- Parts counter
- ROM version
- Service call error log
- Jam log
- Alarm log
- Change of status (such as status of consumables)

Since the information shown above is customer information, HTTPS/ SOAP protocol is used for communication between the UGW server and the host machine to improve security.



#### Features

E-RDS is embedded in the network module of the device, and the front-end module of the e-Maintenance/ imageWARE Remote system is realized without requiring hardware besides the device.

#### Main Functions

Functional category	Sub category	Description
Communication Test	Test	By executing the following service mode, E-RDS communicates with UGW, retrieves schedule information, and establish communication. COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > COM-TEST
Transmission of counters	Billing/all resources/parts/mode-by-mode counters	E-RDS Periodically send billing/all resources/parts/mode-by-mode counters to the server.
Transmission of event logs	Service call/alarm/jam log	Each time a service call, alarm, or jam log occurs, the error log is sent to the server. Having alarm log or not is different by a model.
Data transmission	ROM version / Device configuration	E-RDS periodically sends the firmware information of the device to UGW. E-RDS sends the device configuration information only when there is any change in the configuration.
	E-RDS Debug log	Debug logs of E-RDS are stored in E-RDS, and they are sent to UGW only when they exceed a specific size.
	Sublog transmission	When E-RDS catches the sublog transmission of a message designation than UGW, send data such as device Sublogs and DCON logs to the server.
Operation instruction	Operation check	E-RDS contacts UGW to check if there is processing to be executed next, and receives the following instructions if any. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Linkage with CDS</li> <li>• Sublog transmission</li> </ul>

## ● Servicing Notes

- After clearing the Main Controller PCB, initialization of the E-RDS setting (ERDS-DAT) and a communication test (COM-TEST) need to be performed. If this work is omitted, an error may occur when counters are sent to UGW. After replacing the Main Controller PCB, all the settings need to be reconfigured.
  - Do not change the values of the following service modes unless otherwise instructed. If they are changed, a communication error will occur with UGW.
    - Port number of UGW  
[COPIER] > [FUNCTION] > [INSTALL] > [RGW-PORT]  
Default: 443
  - If the e-Maintenance/imageWARE Remote contract of the device becomes invalid, be sure to turn OFF the E-RDS setting (E-RDS: 0).
  - When the E-RDS function is enabled, a communication test can be performed from [Check Counter] of the Control Panel of the host machine. \*1
- When conducting a communication test from [Check Counter], pay attention to the following points:
- During a communication test, do not take any actions such as pressing a key. Actions are not accepted until the communication test is completed (actions are ignored).
  - When a communication test is being conducted from service mode or from [Check Counter], do not conduct a communication test from the other. This operation is not guaranteed.

## ● Setting Procedure

### ■ Preparation

Since this function communicates with the UGW server, it is necessary to connect to the external network. Check the following items, and make the settings if not yet set.

- IP address settings
- DNS server settings
- Proxy server settings\*2
- Installation of CA certificate (arbitrary \*3)

#### CAUTION:

- Obtain the information on the network environment from the system administrator of the user.
- When having changed the network settings, turn OFF and then ON the main power of the machine.

### ■ Procedure for Setting E-RDS

#### 1. In the following service mode, select the following service mode to initialize the E-RDS setting values:

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ERDS-DAT

#### NOTE:

This operation initializes the E-RDS settings to factory setting values.  
For the setting values to be initialized, see the section of "Setting values and data to be initialized" on page 71 .

#### 2. Enable the E-RDS function in the following service mode, and perform a communication test.

1. Select the following item:
  - COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > ERDS

---

\*1. The user can perform a communication test or browse the result of communication test.  
If the communication results in failure, an error code (hexadecimal number, 8 digit) is displayed on the Control Panel.

\*2. If authentication is necessary, make the settings of the authentication information as well.

\*3. When using a certificate other than those pre-installed in the device



2. Enter [1] from the keyboard, and press [Apply].

**CAUTION:**

The following settings i.e. RGW-PORT in Service mode must not be change unless there are specific instructions to do so. Changing these values will cause error in communication with UGW.

When the E-RDS function is enabled, the function to communicate with UGW is enabled.

3. **Select [COM-TEST] and then touch [Yes].**

If the communication is successful, "OK" is displayed. If "NG" is displayed, check the network settings and USW server address (URL).

**CAUTION:**

The communication results with UGW can be distinguished by referring to the COM-LOG. By performing the communication test with UGW, E-RDS acquires schedule information and starts monitoring and meter reads operation.

## Maintenance

### ■ Initializing E-RDS settings

It is possible to clear the FLASH data of E-RDS and change the E-RDS setting back to the default value.

#### ● Initialization procedure

Follow the procedure shown below to initialize E-RDS.

1. **Enter service mode as a system administrator user.**
2. **Select the following service mode, and press [OK] to execute.**
  - COPIER > Function > CLEAR > ERDS-DAT

#### ● Setting values and data to be initialized

The following E-RDS settings, internal data, and Alarm filtering information are initialized.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > ERDS
- COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > RGW-PORT
- COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > COM-LOG

**CAUTION:**

If a certificate other than the CA certificate at the time of shipment has been installed, initializing the E-RDS setting will not change the settings back to those at the time of shipment. To change the certificate back to the CA certificate at the time of shipment, delete the certificate (install the CA certificate at the time of shipment) after initializing the E-RDS settings.

### ■ Report Output of Communication Error Log (COM-LOG)

A report of communication error log information on five affairs can be output.

#### ● Report output procedure

1. **Select the following service mode, and press [Yes].**
  - COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > ERDS-LOG

```
12/09 2015 10:14AM
*****
*** E-RDS-COM-LOG***
*****
No.01  DATE    12/09 2015      TIME 03:21 AM   CODE 05000003
Information  SUSPEND: Communication test is not performed.
No.02  DATE    12/09 2015      TIME 03:21 AM   CODE 00000000
Information  SUSPEND: mode changed.
No.03  DATE    12/09 2015      TIME 03:18 AM   CODE 05000003
Information  SUSPEND: Communication test is not performed.
No.04  DATE    12/09 2015      TIME 03:18 AM   CODE 00000000
Information  SUSPEND: mode changed.
No.05  DATE    12/09 2015      TIME 01:56 AM   CODE 05000003
Information  SUSPEND: Communication test is not performed.
```

Output sample

## Security Functions

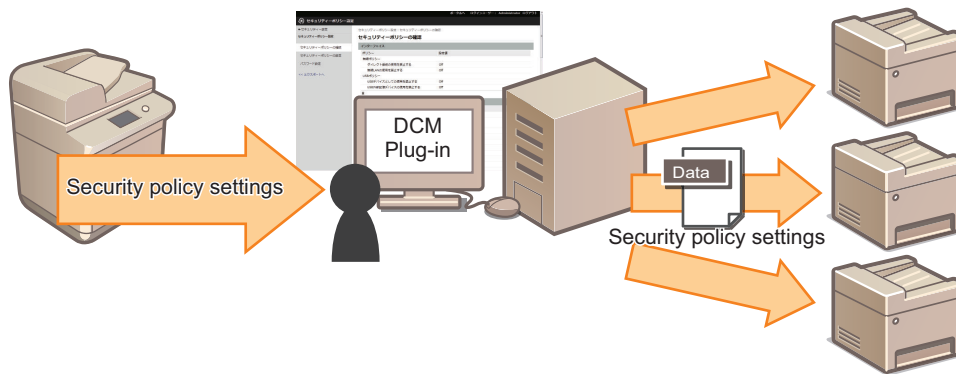
A technical description on the security-related functions implemented in this equipment and the works to be performed for servicing are shown below.

### Security Policy Function

#### What is security policy function?

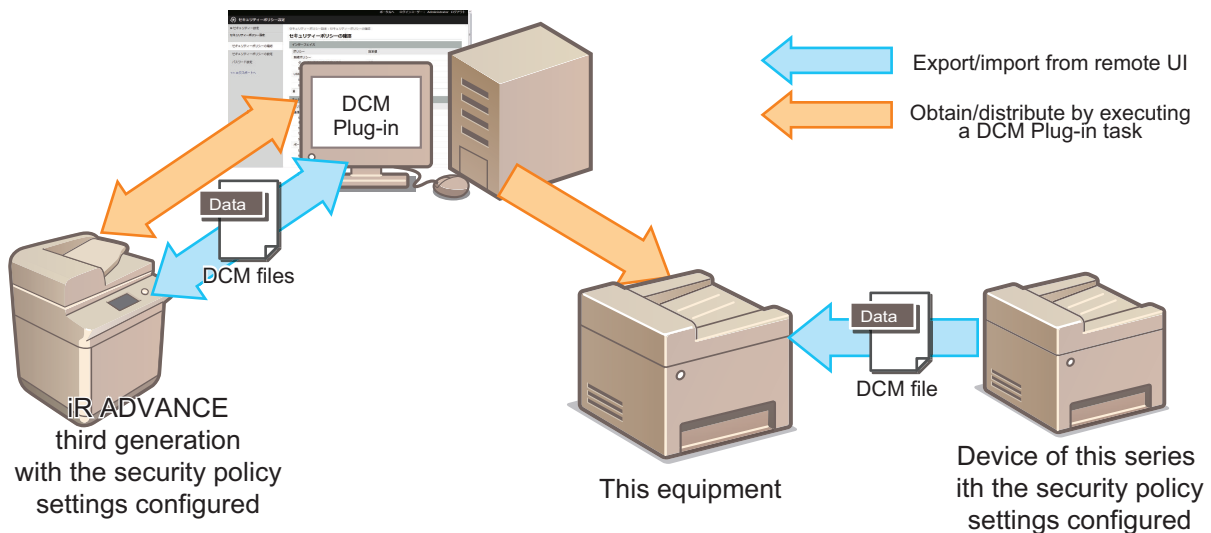
The security policy function is a function for collectively configuring the security-related settings on devices located at various places.

If the user has security policies such as information security basic policies and security standards, the settings can be collectively configured/managed in accordance with the security policies.



Perform either of the following works to configure the security policies on this equipment.

- Using iW EMC DCM Plug-in, distribute the security policy settings created by an iR ADVANCE third generation device.
- Import the DCM file exported from a device of the same series where the security policy settings have already been enabled.



#### NOTE:

Security policy settings can be configured on devices of this series only by distributing the settings using iW EMC DCM Plug-in. A DCM file imported from a device of this series where the security policy settings have been configured can be used to configure the settings, but the original device where the settings have been configured can be created only by using iW EMC DCM Plug-in. In iR ADVANCE series, the security policy function is implemented only in the third generation devices.

### Security Administrator

#### Differences between Security Administrator and System Manager

In the security policy setting function, there is an administrator called a "security administrator" in addition to the conventional "system manager".

The system manager can operate/set all the items in the [Settings/Registration] menu of the device.

However, if the security policy has been set by the security administrator described later, even the system manager cannot perform operation or change the settings against the security policy.

The security administrator is an administrator who creates, applies, edits, backs up, and restores the security policy.

The security administrator is a system manager and is a user who knows the password for the security policy settings.

	Account	[Settings/Registration] menu				Policy-related			
	Add/delete	Settings (Administrator settings)	Settings (Other than the administrator settings)	Initialize (User mode)	Initialize (Service mode)	Introduce/change	Browse	Back up/restore	Disable the restrictions
Security administrator	✓	✓ <sup>*1</sup>	✓ <sup>*1</sup>	✓	-	✓	✓	✓	✓
System manager	✓	✓ <sup>*1</sup>	✓ <sup>*1</sup>	-	-	-	✓	✓	-
End user	-	-	✓ <sup>*1</sup>	-	-	-	-	-	-
Service technician	✓	-	-	-	✓	-	-	-	✓

### • Security Administrator Password

The security administrator password is a password that is set to protect the configured security policy. The password setting is not mandatory.

#### Behavior when the security administrator password has been set

If the security administrator password has been set on this equipment, the security administrator password is required when [Initialize All Data/Settings] is executed. This is intended to prevent the device from being initialized without discretion and the configured security policy from being disabled.

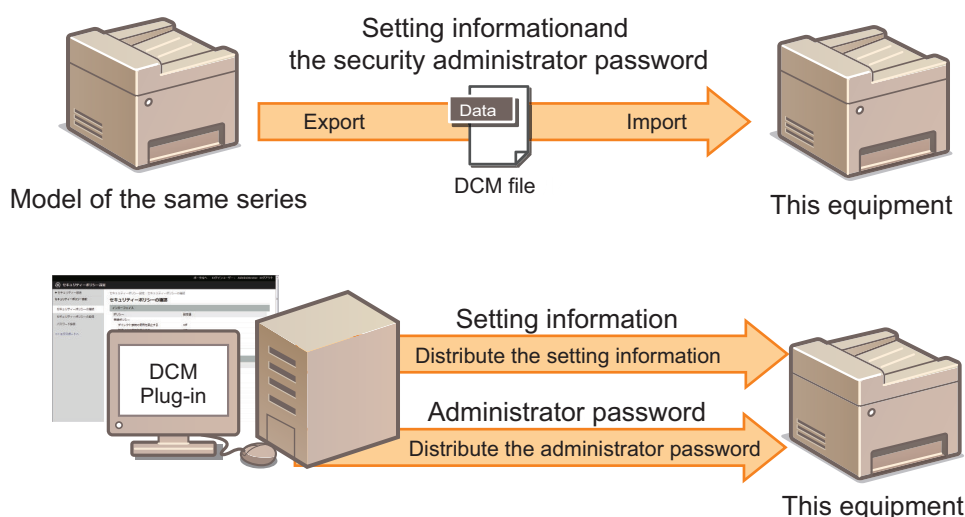
#### NOTE:

Even if the security administrator password has not been set, as long as the security policy has been configured, [Management Settings] > [Data Management] > [Initialize Menu] is grayed out and cannot be used.

#### Importing the security administrator password

If a security policy setting file of iR ADVANCE series where the security administrator password has been set is imported via iW EMC DCM Plug-in, the security administrator password is not reflected.

In the case of importing the file via iW EMC DCM Plug-in, it is necessary to execute [Create Task to Change Security Policy Password] and distribute the security administrator password to set the security administrator password.



#### Initializing the security administrator password

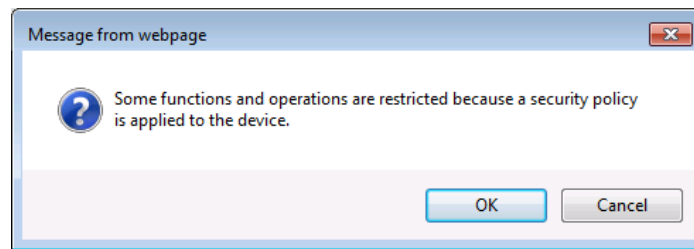
In case the user has forgotten the security administrator password, there is a service mode setting for initializing the password. Execute the service mode shown below to initialize the security administrator password set on this equipment.

Service mode > COPIER > Function > CLEAR > PLPW-CLR

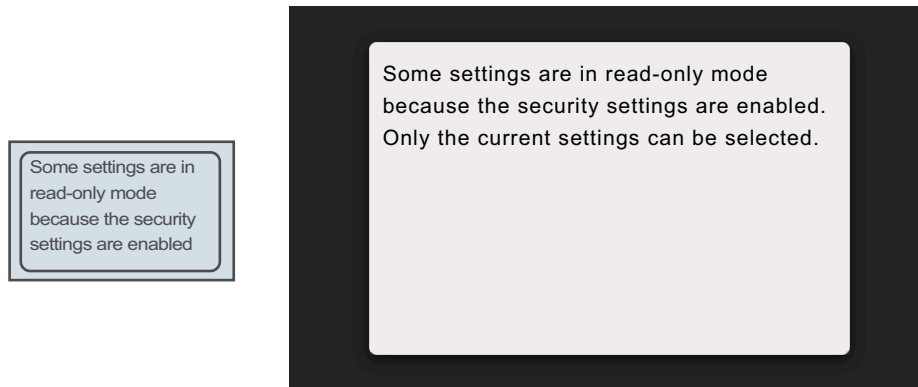
\*1. Restrained by the policy

## ■ Screen Displayed When Security Policy Is Applied

If the security policy is applied, the message shown below appears when you access the [Settings/Registration] screen.

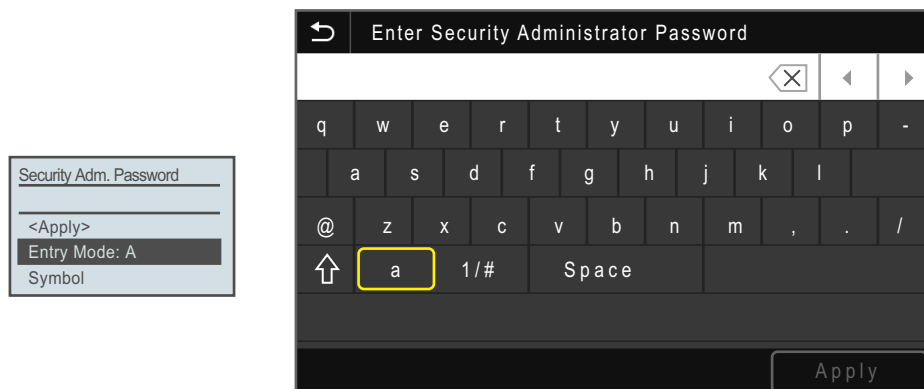


Example of the remote UI screen



Example of the Control Panel (Touch Panel) screen

If the security administrator password has been set, the security administrator password is required when [Initialize All Data/Settings] is executed.



Security administrator password entry screen

## ■ Checking the Configured Settings

The policy settings that have been configured can be checked on the remote UI screen shown below.

1. Start remote UI as a user having the administrator privileges.

## 2. Display the screen shown below.

- [Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings] > [Security Settings] > [Confirm Security Policy]

The screenshot shows the 'Confirm Security Policy' screen. The left sidebar contains a navigation menu with categories: Preferences, Function Settings, Set Destination, and Management Settings. The main content area is titled 'Confirm Security Policy' and is divided into sections: Interface, Network, and Authentication. Each section contains a list of policies with their respective status (On/Off).

Section	Policy Name	Status
Interface	Wireless Connection Policy	On
	Prohibit Use of Direct Connection	On
USB Policy	Prohibit Use as USB Device	Off
	Prohibit Use as USB Storage Device	Off
Network	Communication Operational Policy	
	Always Verify Signatures for SMS/WebDAV Server Functions	Off
	Always Verify Server Certificate When Using TLS	Off
	Prohibit Cleartext Authentication for Server Functions	Off
	Prohibit Use of SNMPv1	Off
	Port Usage Policy	
	*Some port numbers may have changed.	
	Restrict LPD Port (Port Number: 515)	Off
	Restrict RAW Port (Port Number: 9100)	Off
	Restrict FTP Port (Port Number: 21)	Off
Restrict WSD Port (Port Number: 3702, 60000)	Off	
Restrict BMLinkS Port (Port Number: 1900)	On	
Restrict IPP Port (Port Number: 631)	Off	
Restrict RAW Port (Port Number: 137, 138, 139, 445)	Off	
Restrict SMTP Port (Port Number: 25)	Off	
Restrict Dedicated Port (Port Number: 9002, 9006, 9007, 9011-9015, 9017-9019, 9022, 9023, 9025, 20317, 47545-47547)	Off	
Restrict Remote Operator's Software Port (Port Number: 5900)	Off	
Restrict SP (IP Fax) Port (Port Number: 5004, 5005, 5060, 5061, 49152)	Off	
Restrict mDNS Port (Port Number: 5353)	On	
Restrict SLP Port (Port Number: 427)	Off	
Restrict SNMP Port (Port Number: 161)	Off	
Authentication	Authentication Operational Policy	

Screen example

### NOTE:

On the [Confirm Security Policy] screen, all the settings related to security policies are displayed regardless of the model. Therefore, policy settings related to functions that are not implemented in the model are also displayed. For example, the models of this series do not have the SMB server function, but [Restrict SMB Port] is displayed.

## ■ Export/Import of Setting Information

For the procedure for exporting/importing setting information, refer to the User's Guide of this equipment or the User's Guide of iW EMC DCM Plug-in.



# Periodical Service

Periodically Replaced Parts.....	78
Consumable Parts.....	79
Periodical Service.....	80

## Periodically Replaced Parts

### Periodically Replaced Parts

- Periodic replacement parts are not required in this machine.



## Consumable Parts

Durables Replaced by the Service Person

- Consumable parts are not required in this machine.

## Periodical Service

### Periodical Service

- No periodic services are required to this machine.



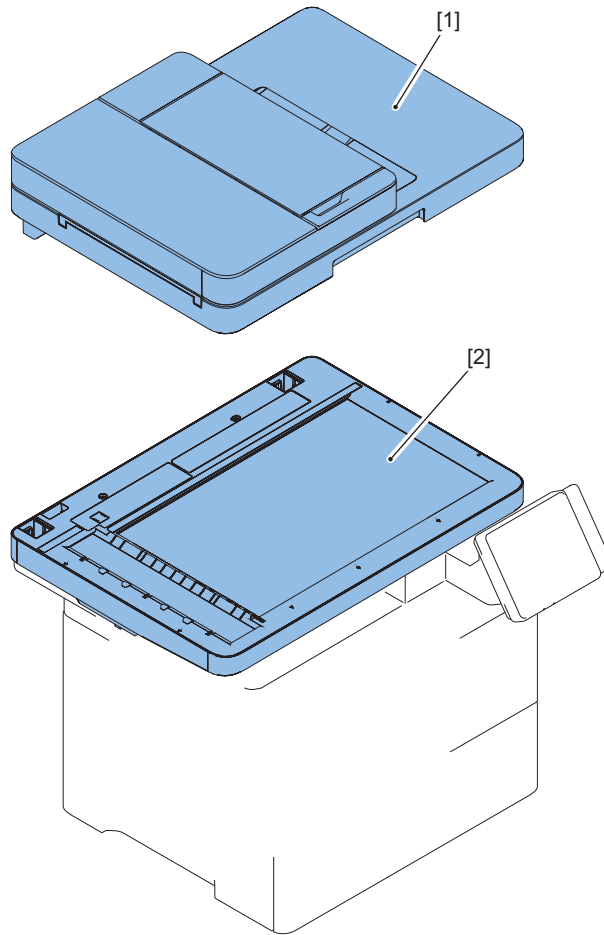
# Parts Replacement and Cleaning

List of Parts.....	82
Removing from the connection equipment.....	92
External Cover System.....	94
Original Exposure/Feed System.....	118
Controller System.....	143
Laser Exposure System.....	164
Image Formation System.....	166
Fixing System.....	167
Pickup Feed Delivery System.....	169

## List of Parts

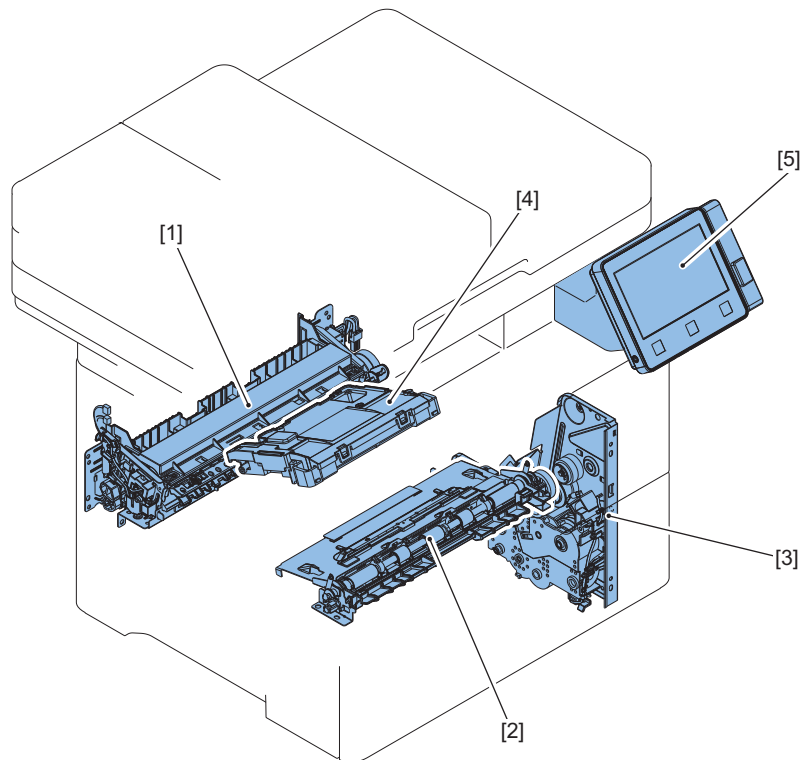
### Major Units

#### ADF/Reader



No.	Name
[1]	ADF Unit
[2]	Reader Unit

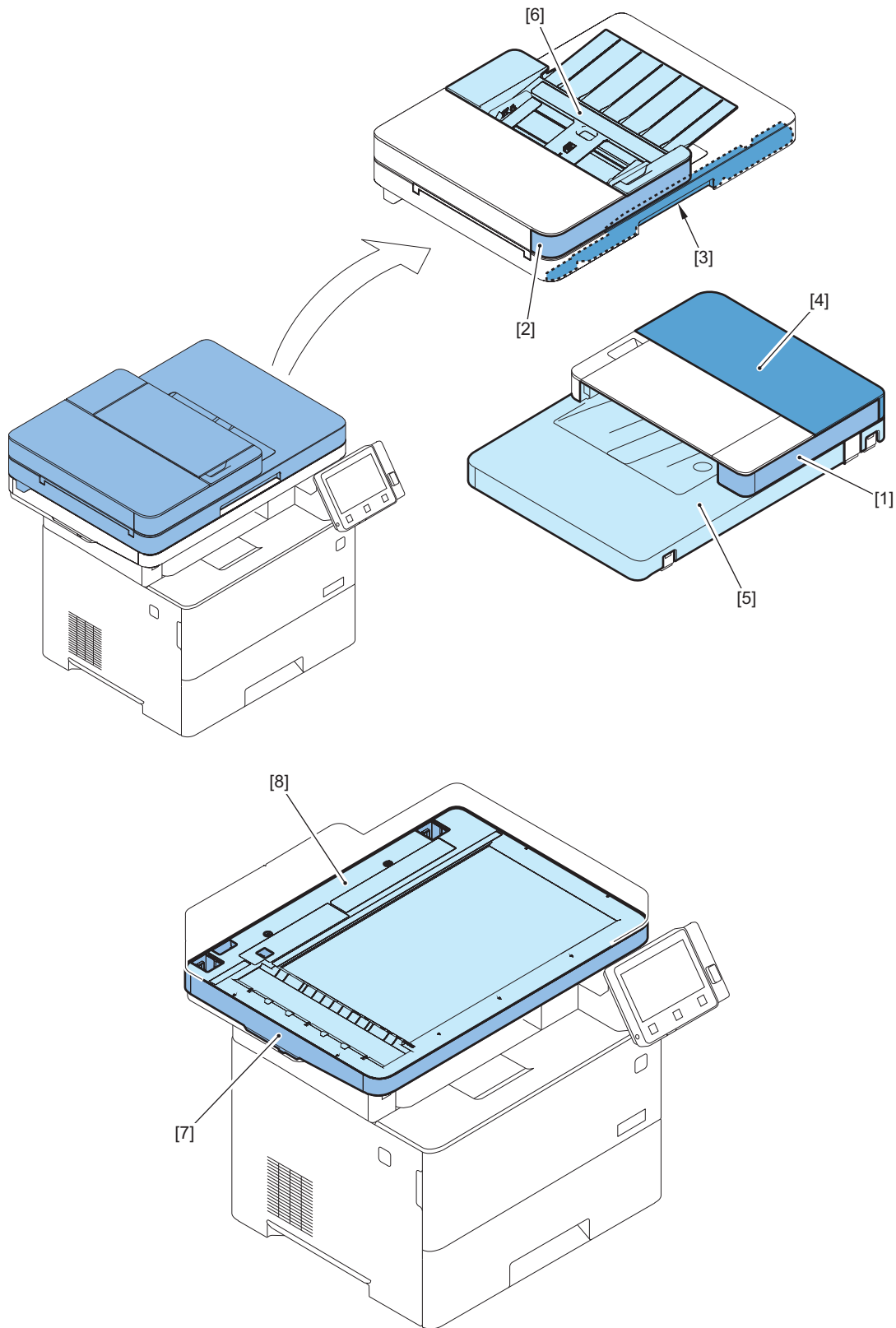
## ■ Host machine



No.	Name
[1]	Fixing Assembly
[2]	Registration Unit
[3]	Main Drive Unit
[4]	Laser Scanner Unit
[5]	Control Panel Unit

# External Cover

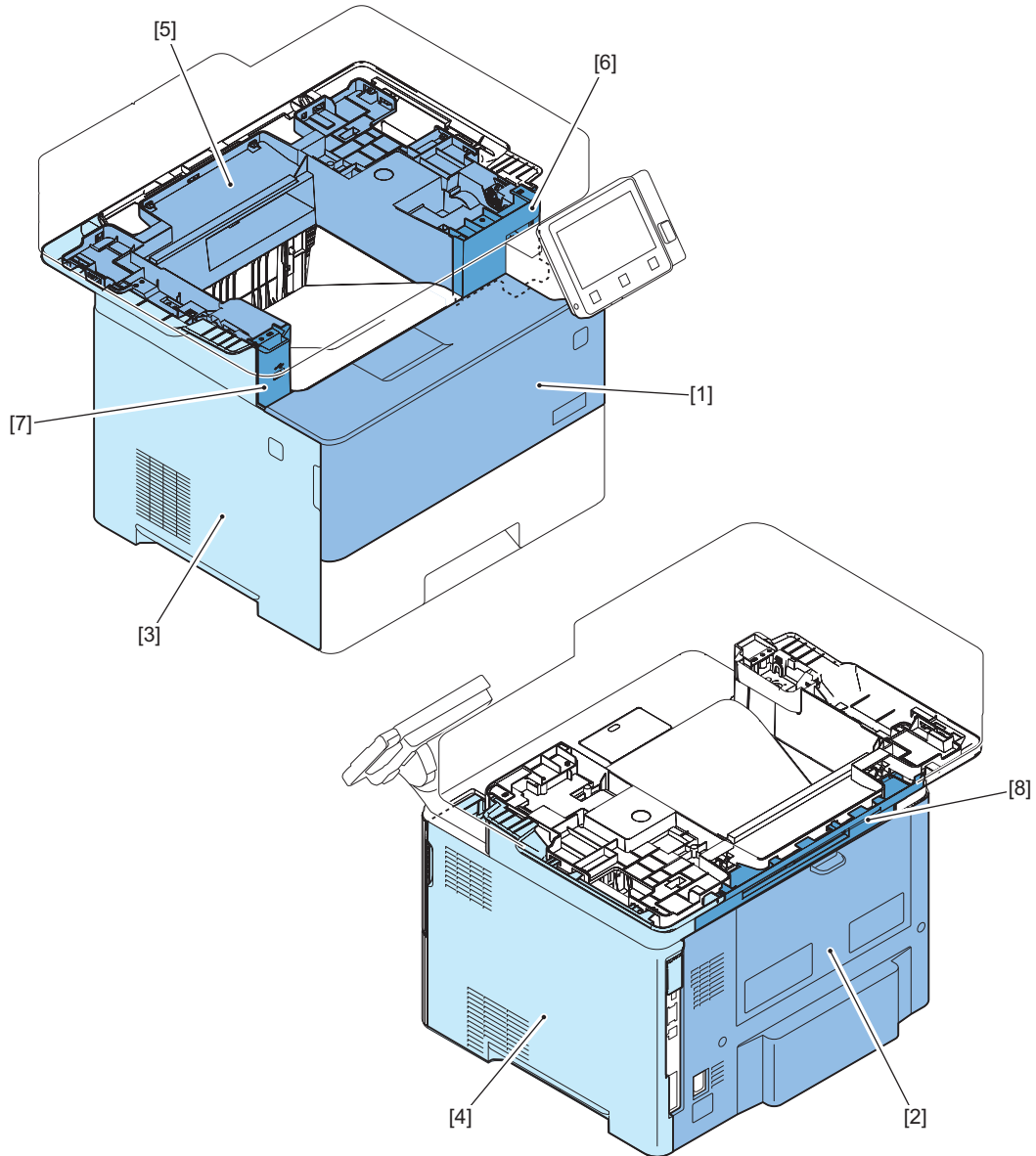
## ADF/Reader



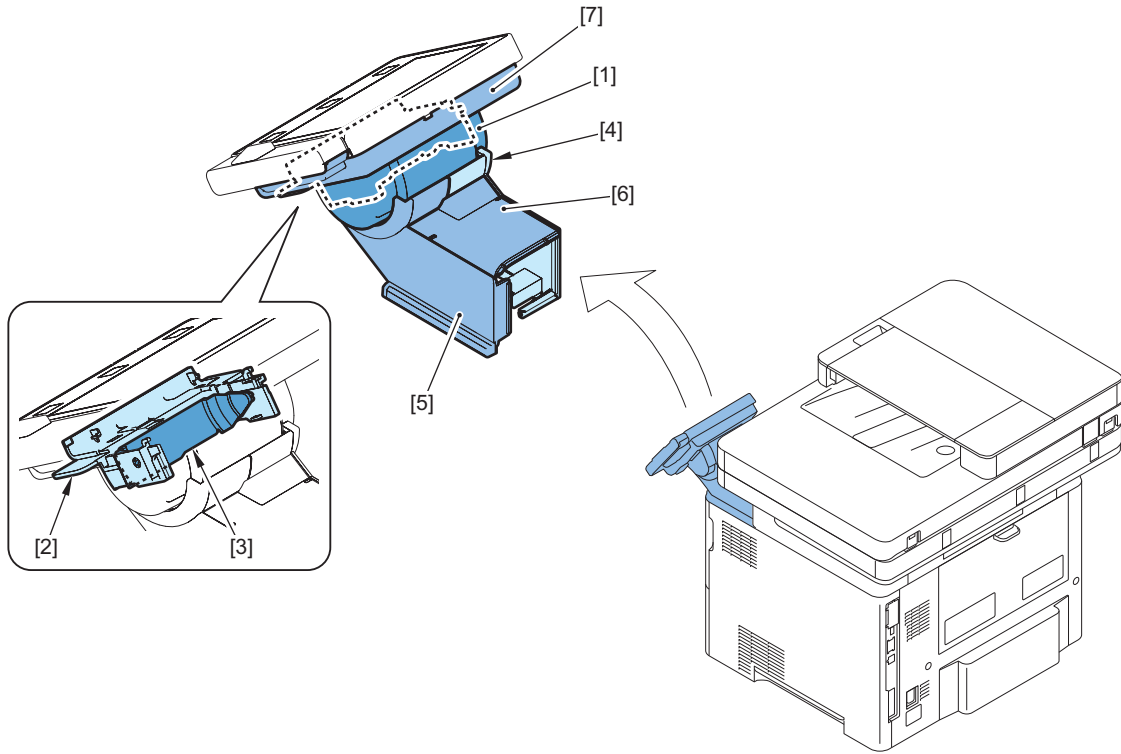
No.	Name
[1]	ADF Rear Cover
[2]	ADF Front Cover
[3]	ADF Handle Cover
[4]	ADF Upper Cover Unit

No.	Name
[5]	ADF Base Unit
[6]	Document Tray Unit
[7]	Reader Frame Unit
[8]	Reader Upper Cover Unit

## ■ Host machine



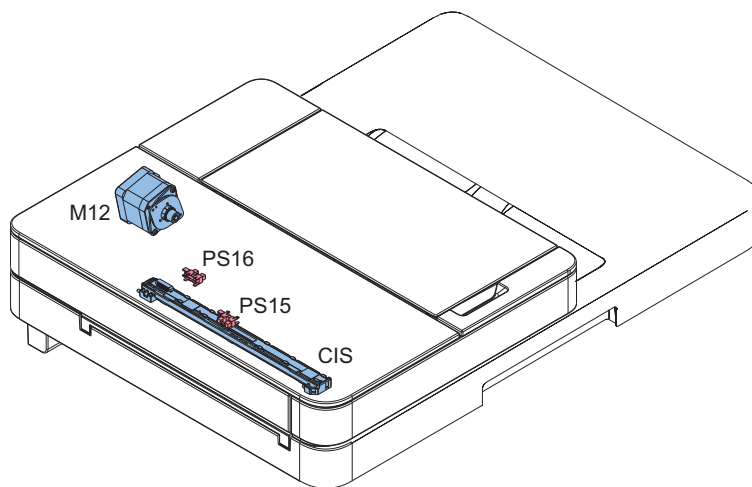
No.	Name
[1]	Cartridge Door Unit
[2]	Rear Door Unit
[3]	Left Cover Unit
[4]	Right Cover Unit
[5]	Upper Cover Unit
[6]	Right Front Cover
[7]	USB Cover
[8]	Rear Top Cover



No.	Name
[1]	Panel Cover (Rear Upper)
[2]	Panel Cover (Rear Lower)
[3]	Panel Cover (Lower)
[4]	Panel Mount Cover (Left)
[5]	Panel Mount Cover (Right)
[6]	Panel Mount Cover (Upper)
[7]	Panel Cover (Rear)

## Electrical Components List

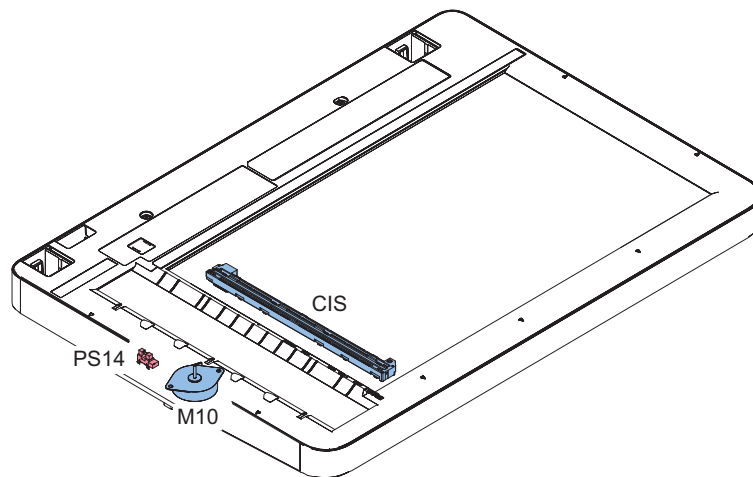
### ADF/Reader



Electric code	Name
M12	ADF Motor
CIS	Contact Image Sensor (ADF CIS)
PS16	Document Sensor

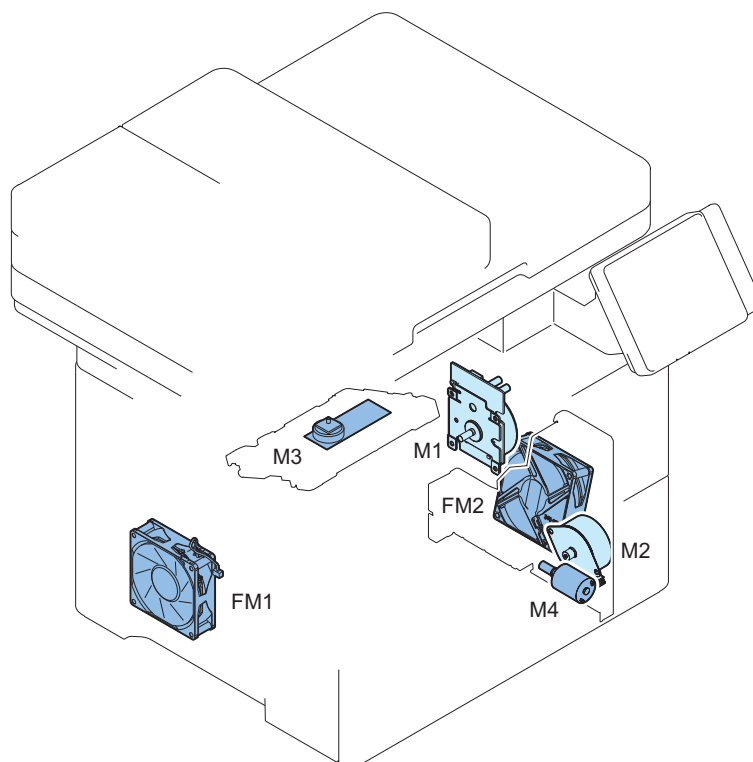


Electric code	Name
PS15	Document End Sensor



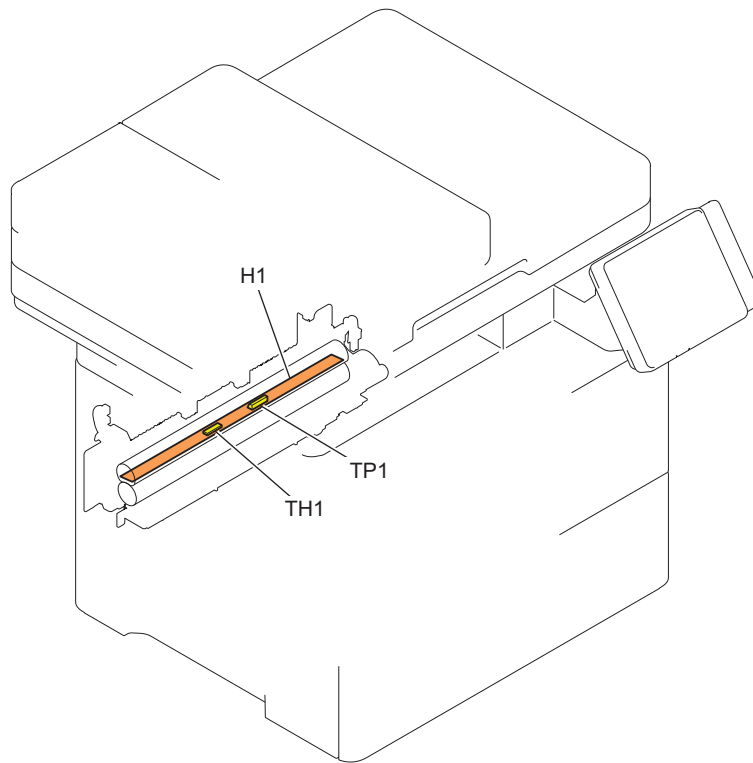
Electric code	Name
M10	Reader Motor
CIS	Contact Image Sensor (Reader CIS)
PS14	CIS HP Sensor

## ■ Motor/Fan



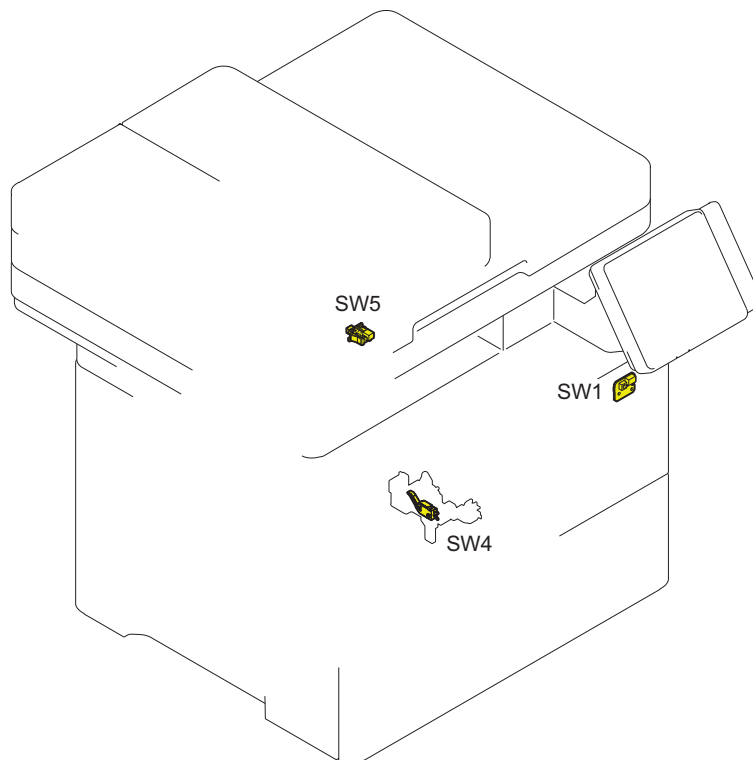
Electric code	Name
M1	Main Motor
M2	Pickup Motor
M3	Scanner Motor
M4	Lifter Motor
FM1	Main Fan
FM2	Sub Fan

## ■ Heater



Electric code	Name
H1	Fixing Heater
TH1	Thermistor
TP1	Thermoswitch

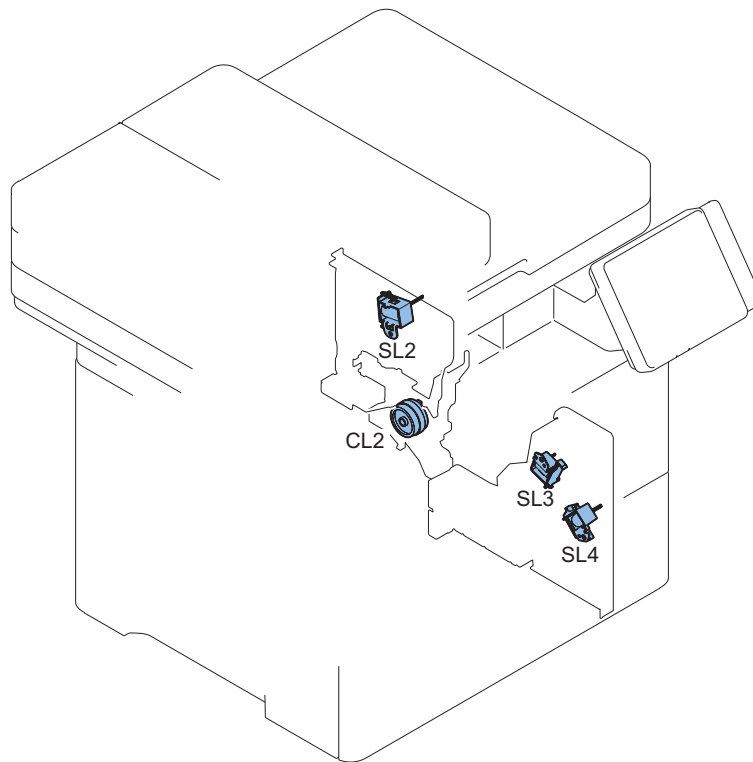
## ■ Switch



Electric code	Name
SW1	Power Switch

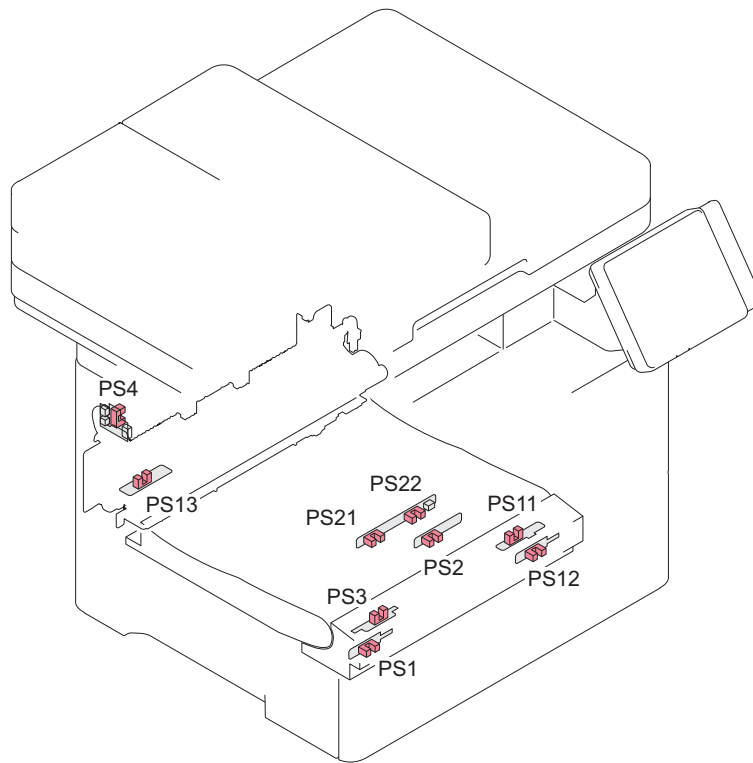
Electric code	Name
SW4	Cassette Detection Switch
SW5	Rear Door Detection Switch

## ■ Solenoid/Clutch



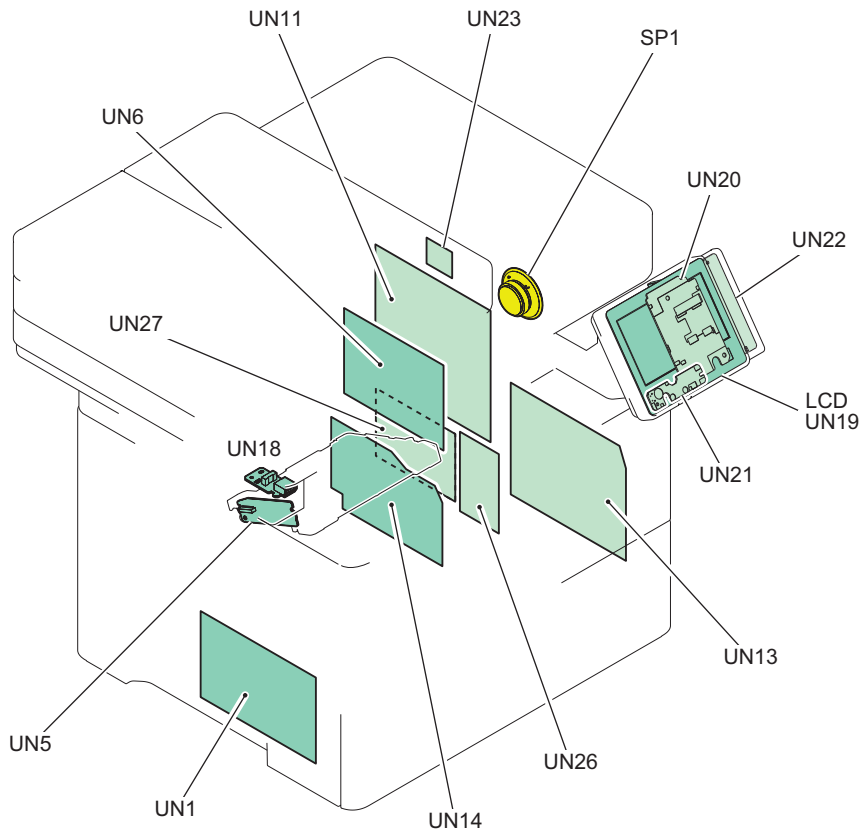
Electric code	Name
SL2	Duplex Reverse Solenoid
SL3	Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Solenoid
SL4	Cassette Pickup Solenoid
CL2	Duplex Re-pickup Clutch

## ■ Sensor



Electric code	Name
PS1	Cassette Paper Sensor
PS21	Paper Width Sensor
PS2	TOP Sensor
PS22	Duplex Feed Sensor
PS3	Multi-purpose Tray Paper Sensor
PS4	Delivery Tray Full Sensor
PS11	Pre-registration Sensor
PS12	Paper Surface Sensor
PS13	Fixing Delivery Sensor

## ■ PCB



Electric code	Name
SP1	Speaker
UN1	High Voltage Power Supply PCB
UN5	Laser Driver PCB
UN6	DC Controller PCB
UN11	Main Controller PCB
UN13	Low Voltage Power Supply PCB
UN14	Fixing Power Supply PCB
UN18	USB PCB
UN19	Touch Panel
LCD	LCD
UN20	Touch Panel Main PCB
UN21	Panel LED PCB
UN22	Panel NFC PCB
UN23	Wireless LAN PCB
UN26	Off-hook PCB
UN27	NCU PCB

## Removing from the connection equipment

### Disengaging the Paper Feeder

#### ■ Preparation

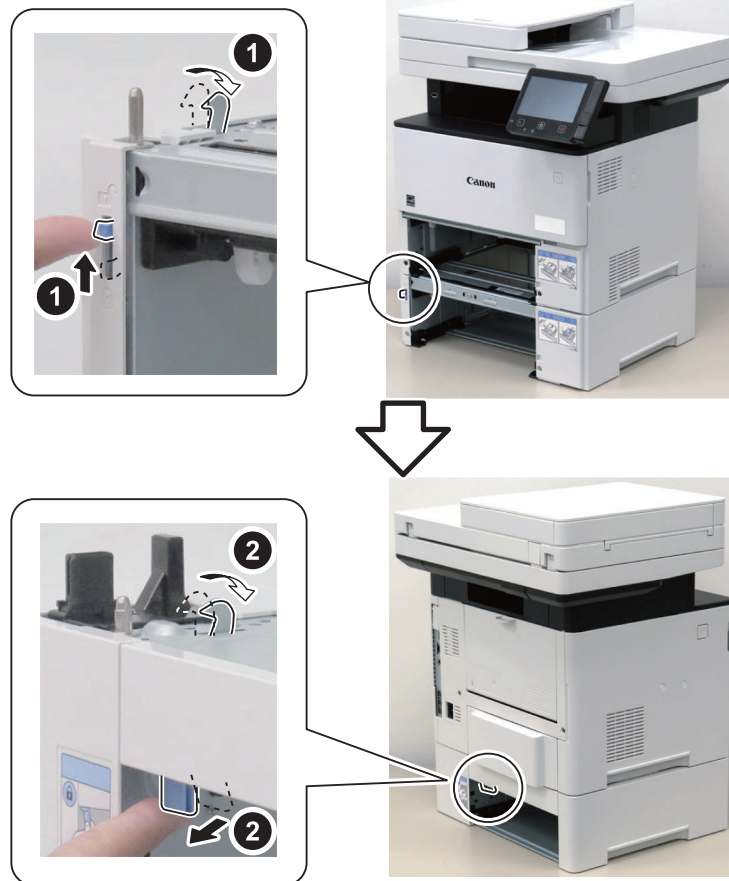
1. Remove the cassette.

#### ■ Procedure

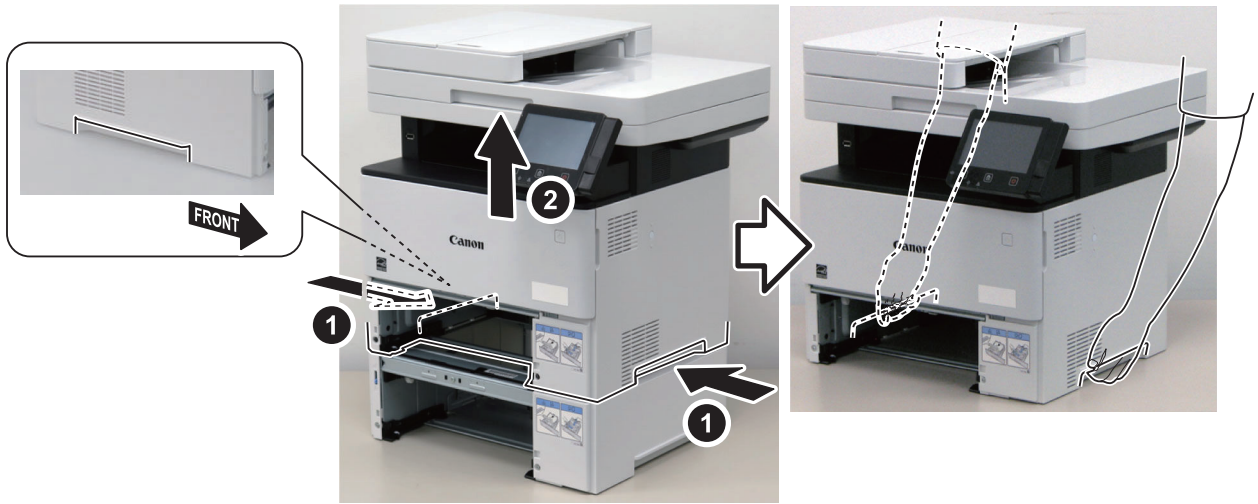
**NOTE:**

Disengage the Paper Feeder from the host machine as needed when disassembling/assembling this equipment.

1.



2.

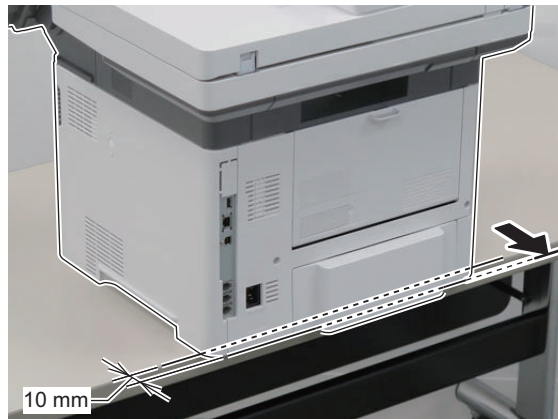


## External Cover System

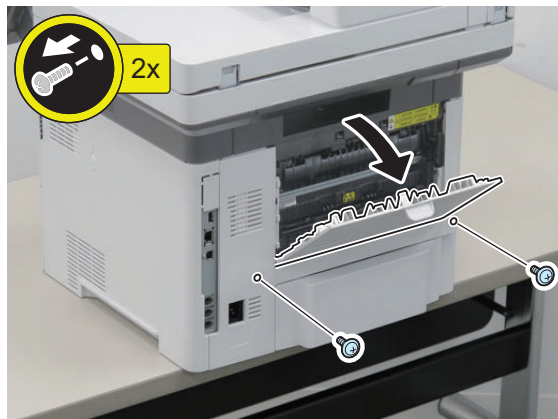
### ● Removing the Rear Door Unit

#### ■ Procedure

1.



2.

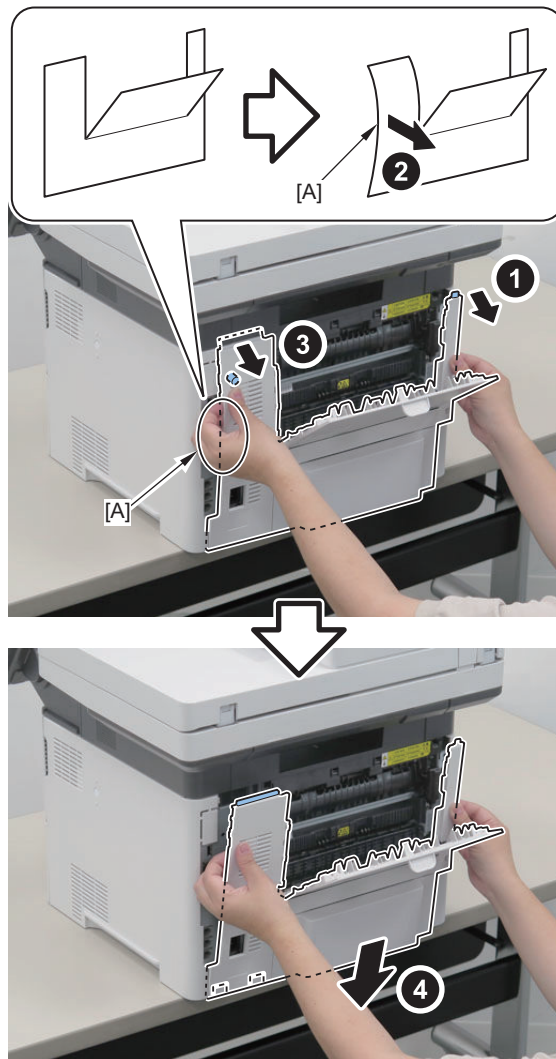




## 3.

**NOTE:**

Remove the Rear Door Unit by bending the [A] part.

**CAUTION:**

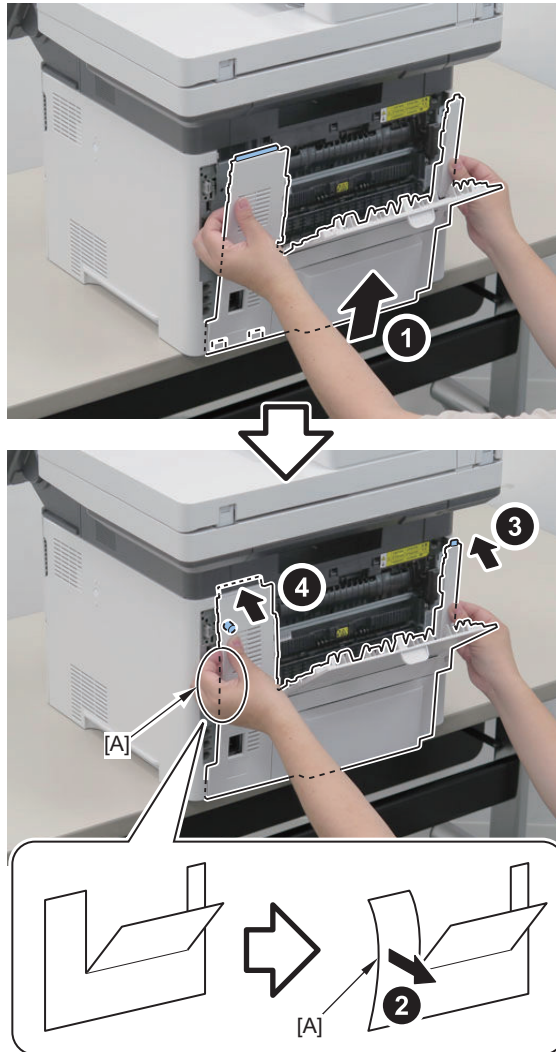
Shift the host machine back to the center of the working table to prevent it from falling down.

## ■ Installing the Rear Door Unit

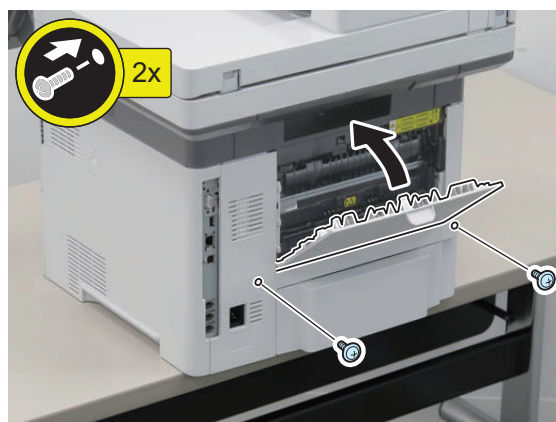
# 1.

### NOTE:

Install the Rear Door Unit by bending the [A] part.



# 2.



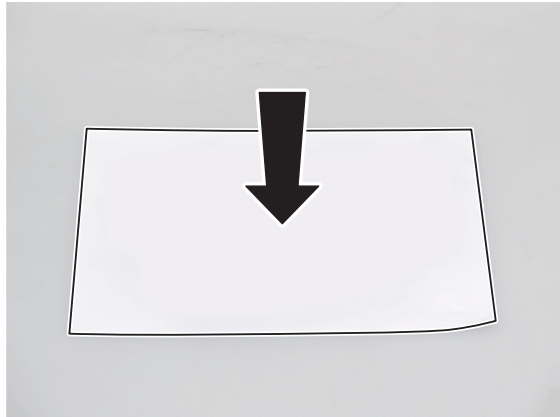
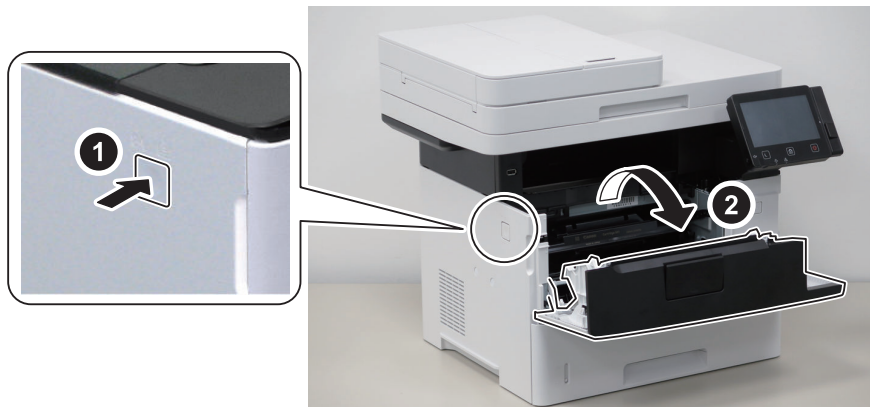
## ● Removing the Cartridge

### ■ Procedure

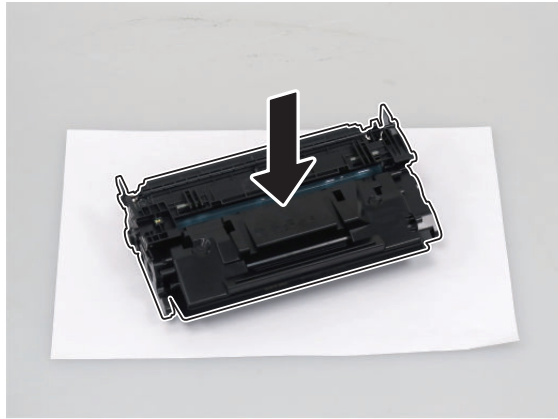
**CAUTION:**

When handling the cartridge, be sure to follow the CAUTION shown below.

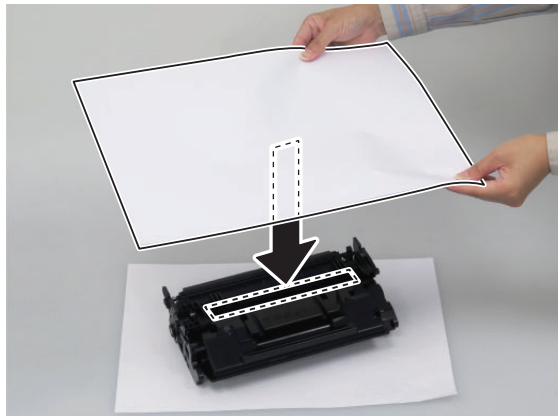
- When removing the cartridge, be sure to block light to the Photosensitive Drum. Cover the removed drum with 5 or more sheets of paper to block light.
- Do not place the cartridge in a location where it is exposed to direct rays of the sun (e.g. near the window).

**1.****2.****3.**

4.



5.



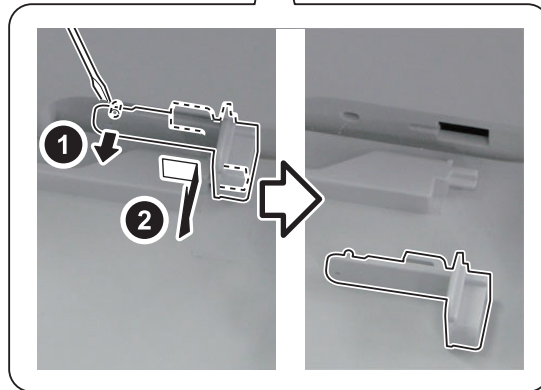
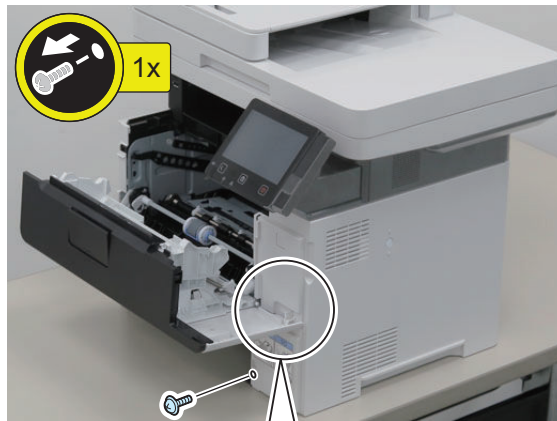
## ● Removing the Right Cover Unit

### ■ Preparation

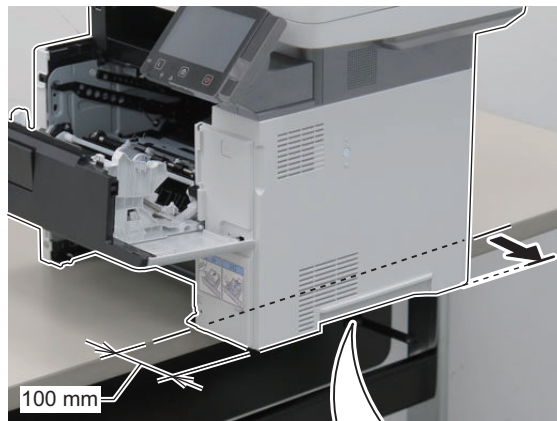
1. [“Removing the Rear Door Unit” on page 94](#)
2. Remove the cassette
3. [“Removing the Cartridge” on page 97](#)

■ Procedure

1.



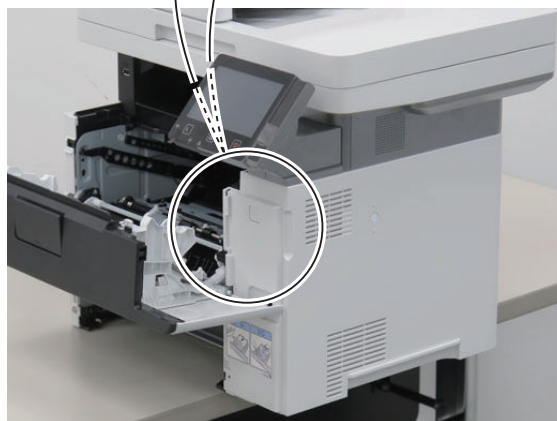
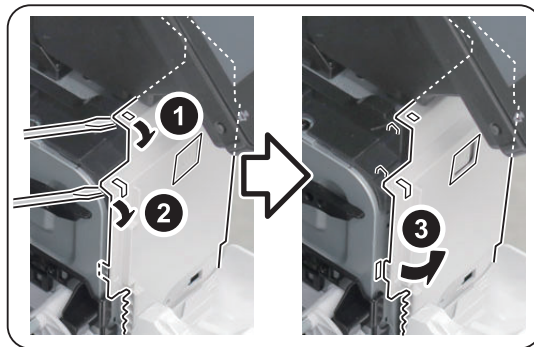
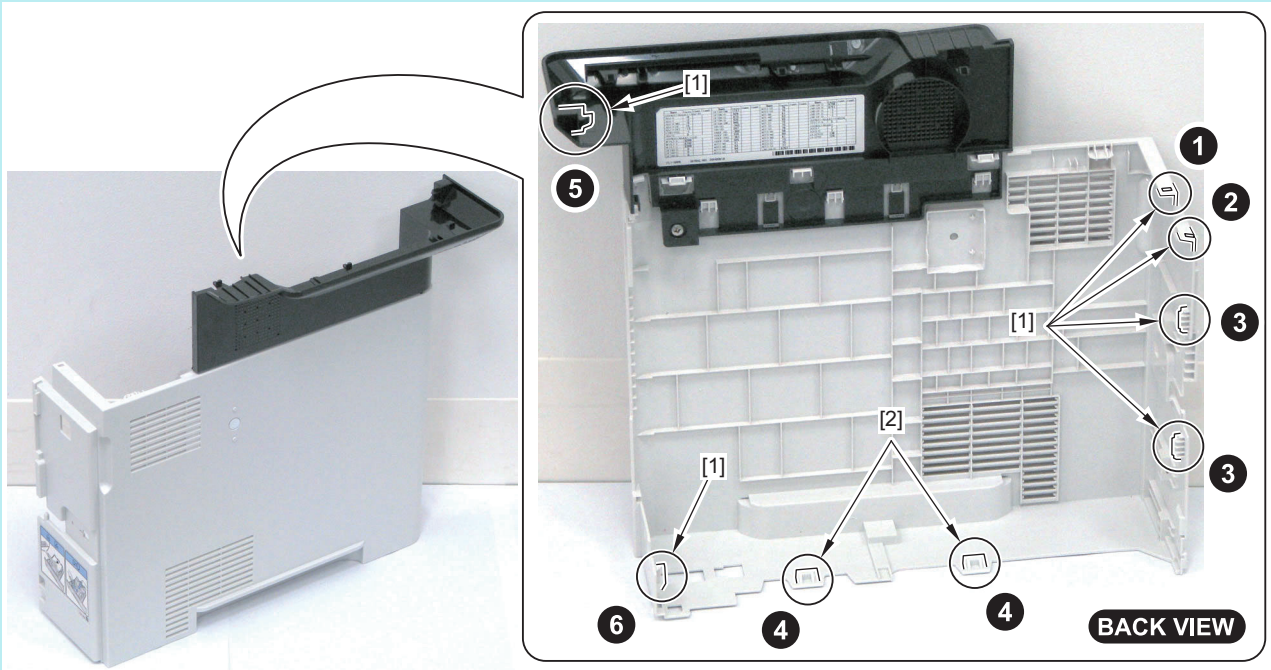
2.



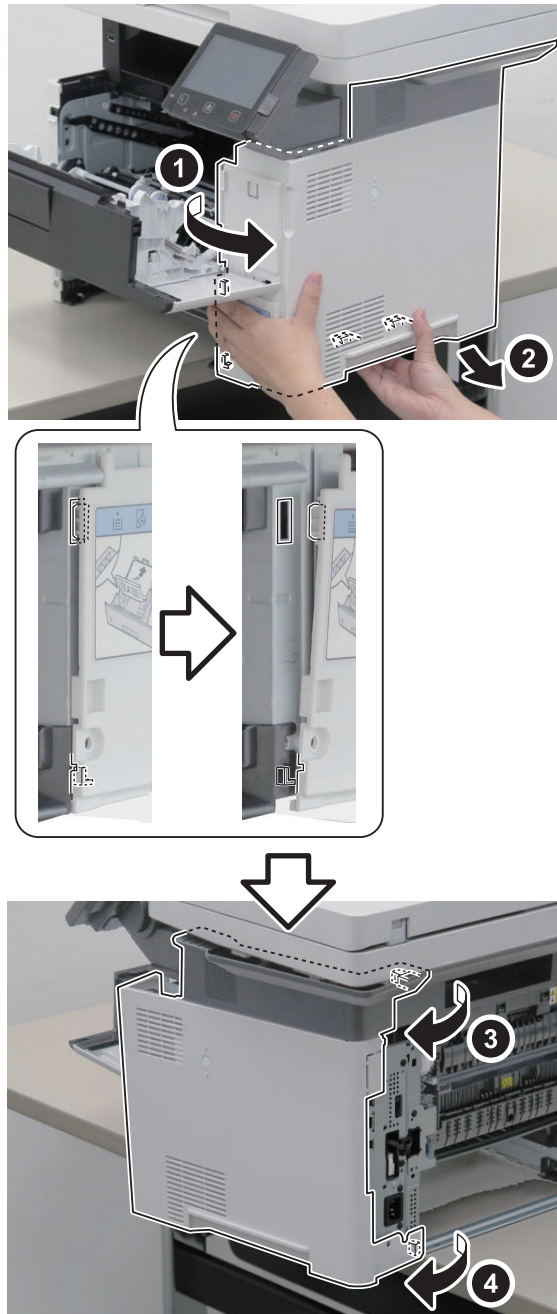
# 3.

**NOTE:**

The positions and removal order of the hook [1], claws [2] of the Right Cover are shown below.



# 4.



**⚠ CAUTION:**

Shift the host machine back to the center of the working table to prevent it from falling down.

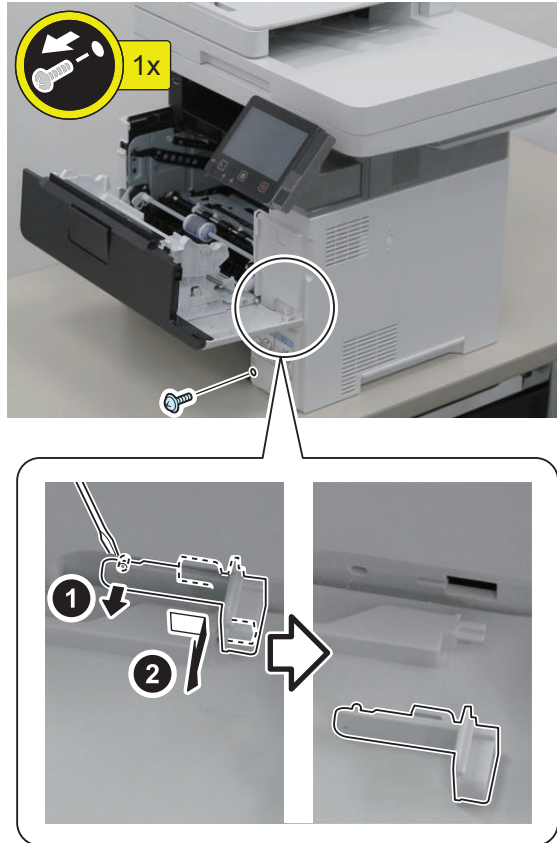
• If Turning Over the Host Machine and then Removing the Right Cover Unit

**CAUTION:**

Points to Note when Turning Over the Host Machine

When turning over the host machine, check that the Left Cover Unit is installed.

1.





## 2.

**CAUTION:**

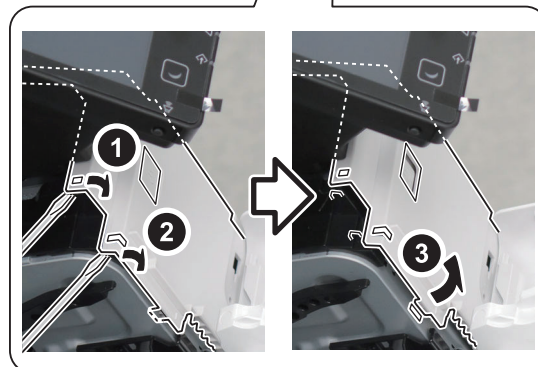
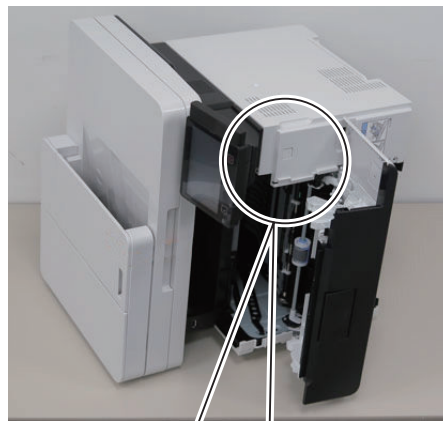
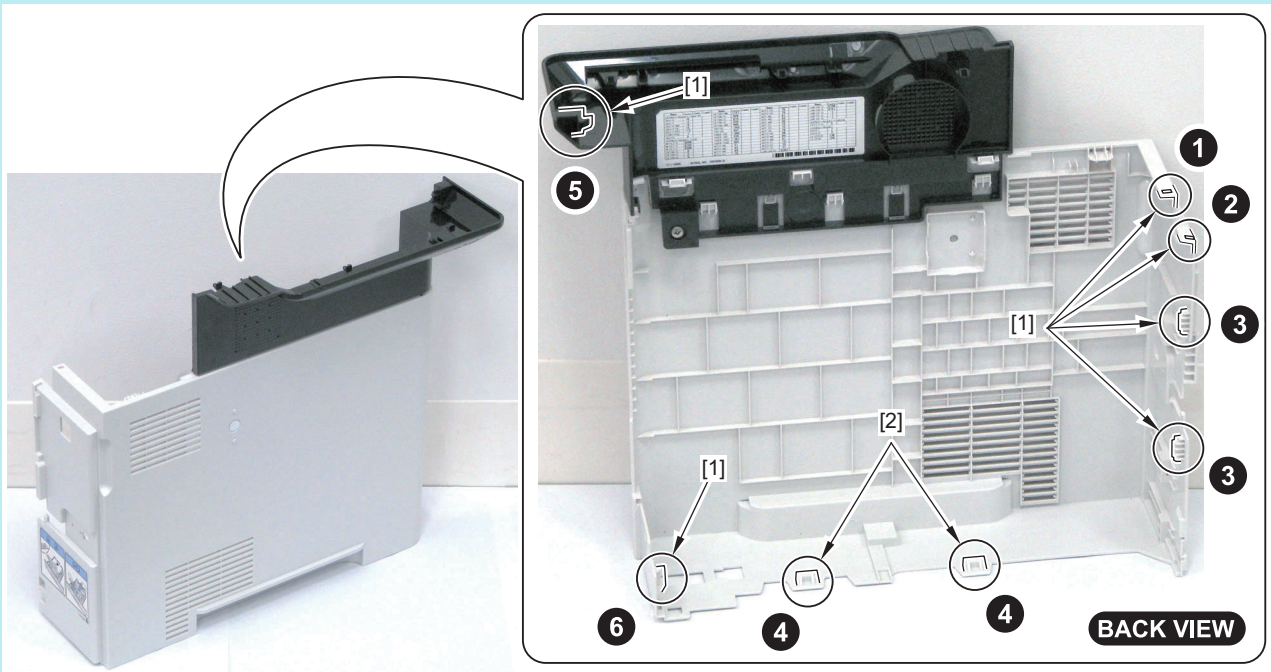
When turning over the machine, make sure that the ADF does not open.



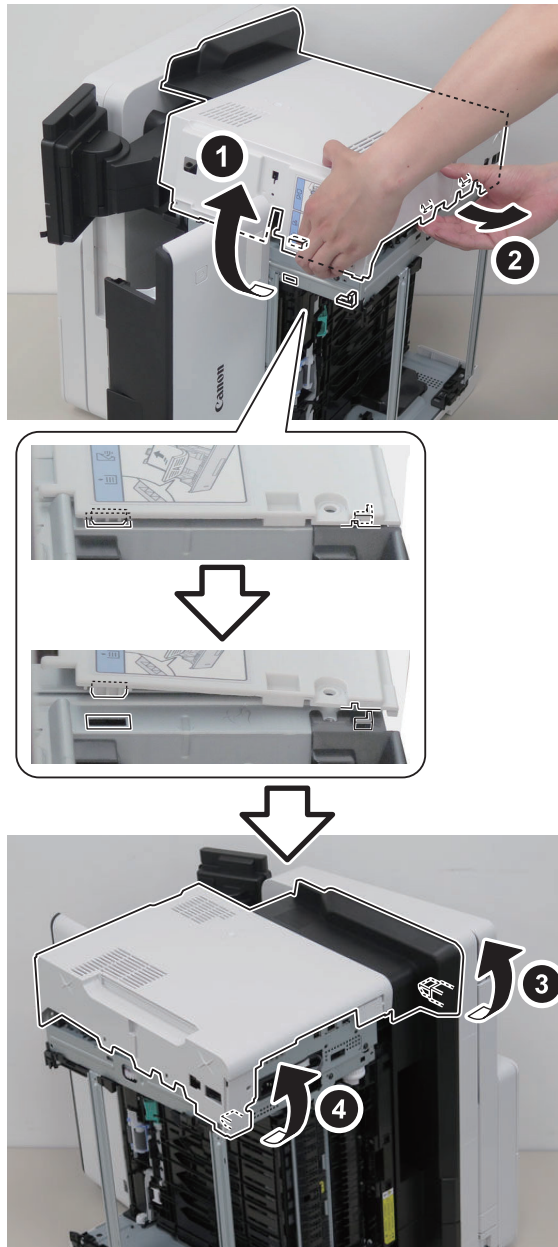
# 3.

**NOTE:**

The positions and removal order of the hook [1], claws [2] of the Right Cover are shown below.



## 4.



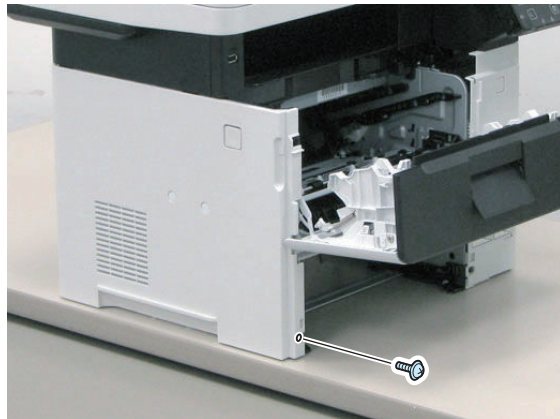
## ● Removing the Left Cover Unit

### ■ Preparation

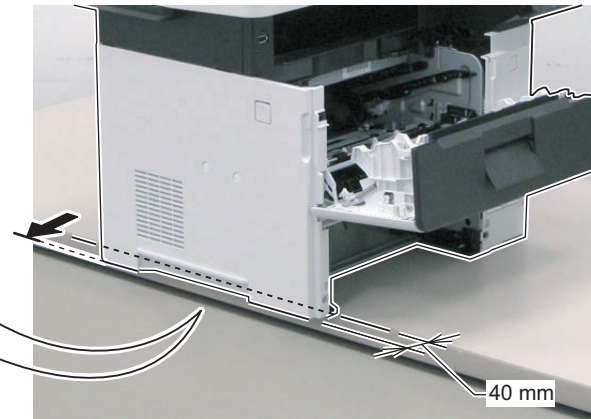
1. [“Removing the Rear Door Unit” on page 94](#)
2. Remove the cassette
3. [“Removing the Cartridge” on page 97](#)

■ Procedure

1.



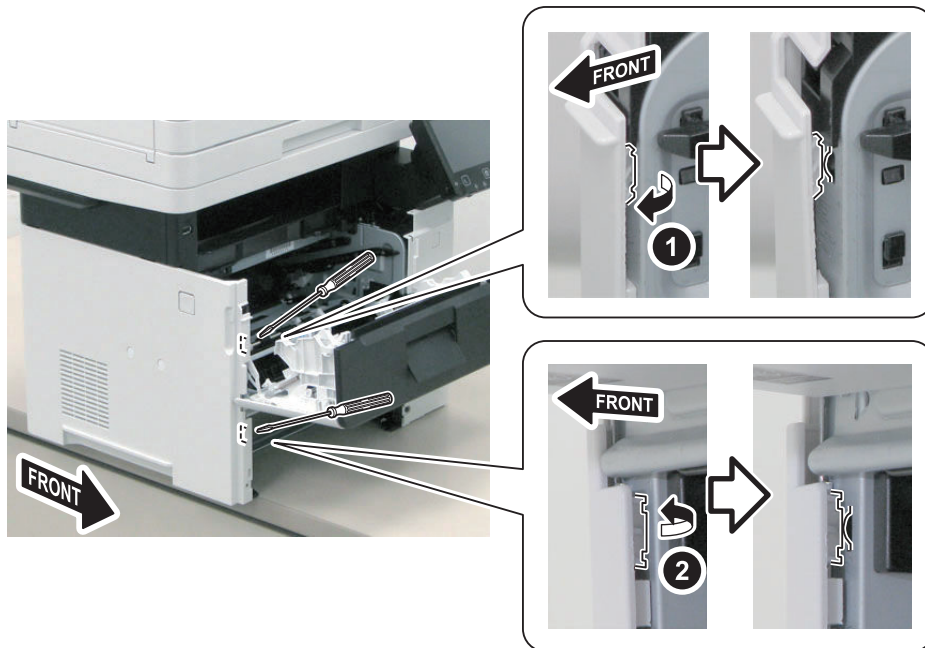
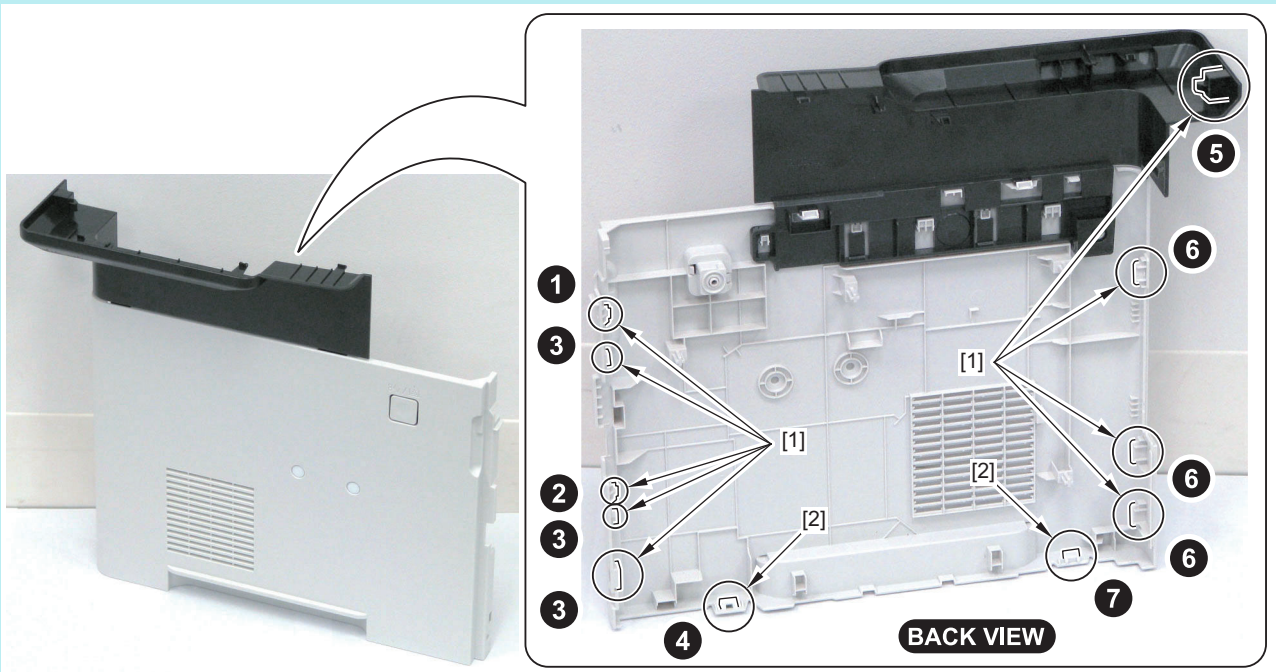
2.



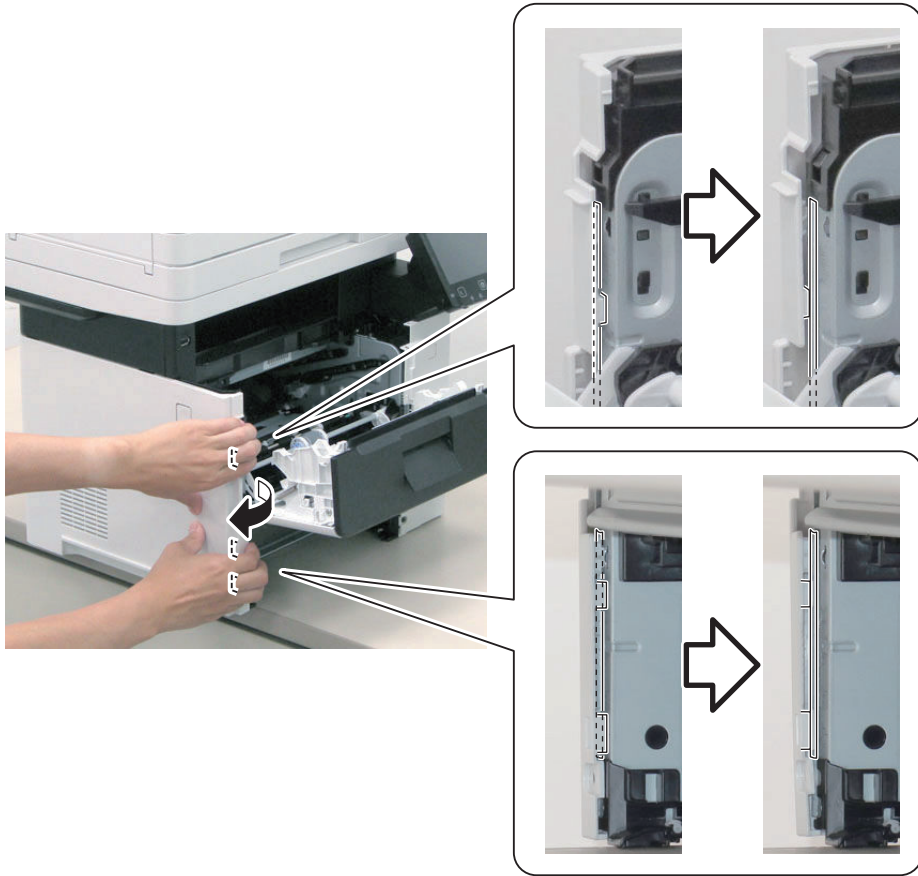
# 3.

**NOTE:**

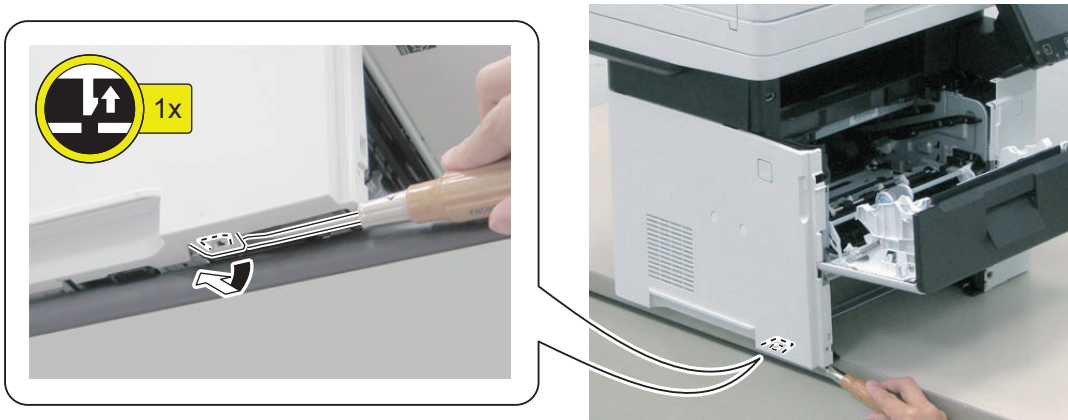
The positions and removal order of the protrusions [1] and claws [2] of the Left Cover are shown below.



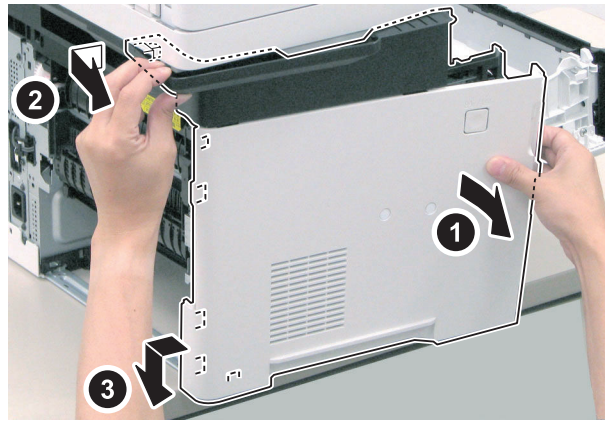
4.



5.



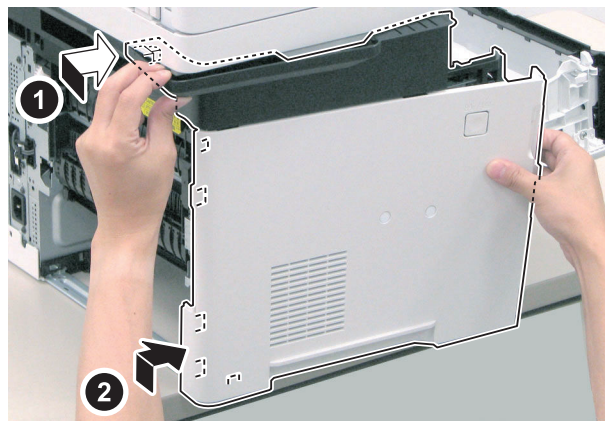
6.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

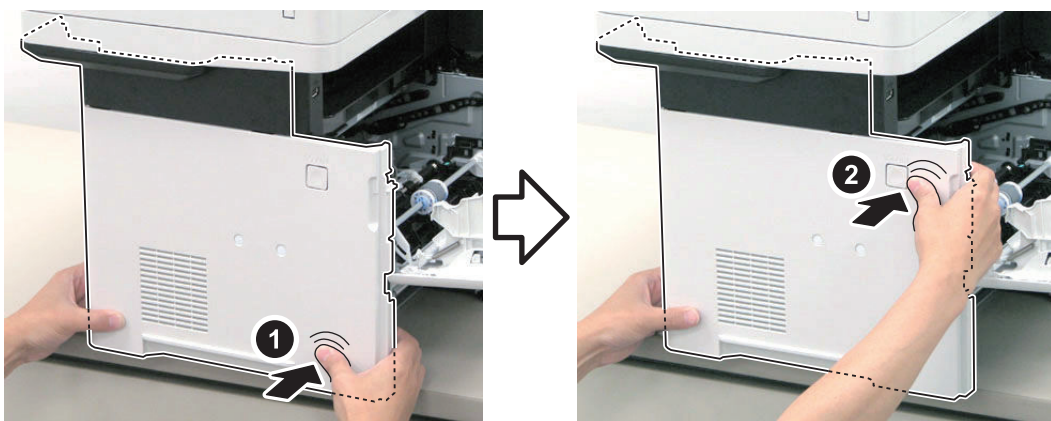
Shift the host machine back to the center of the working table to prevent it from falling down.

### ■ Installing the Left Cover Unit

1. Insert the 6 hooks of the Left Cover into the 6 slots on the host machine side.



2.



3. Install the screw that was removed.

## ● Removing the Rear Top Cover

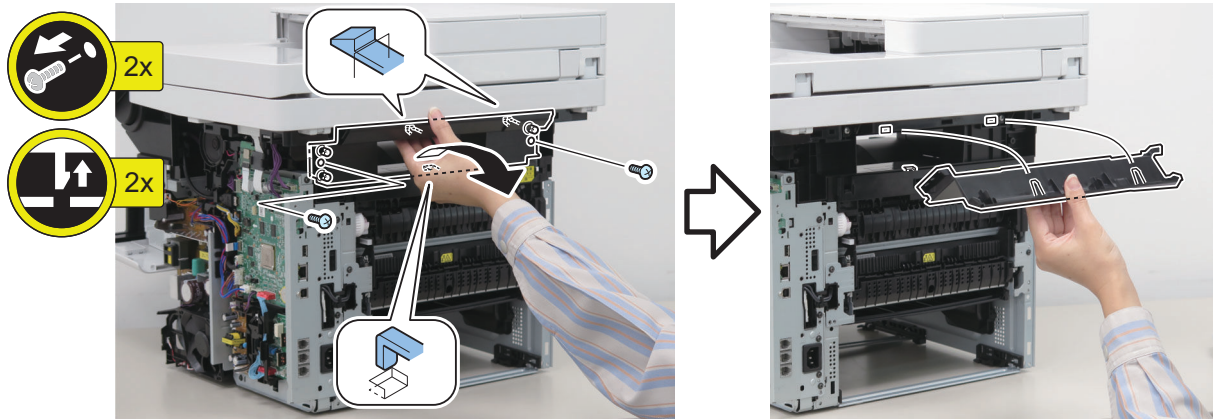
### ■ Preparation

1. "Removing the Rear Door Unit" on page 94

2. Remove the cassette
3. "Removing the Cartridge" on page 97
4. "Removing the Right Cover Unit" on page 98
5. "Removing the Left Cover Unit" on page 105

## ■ Procedure

1.



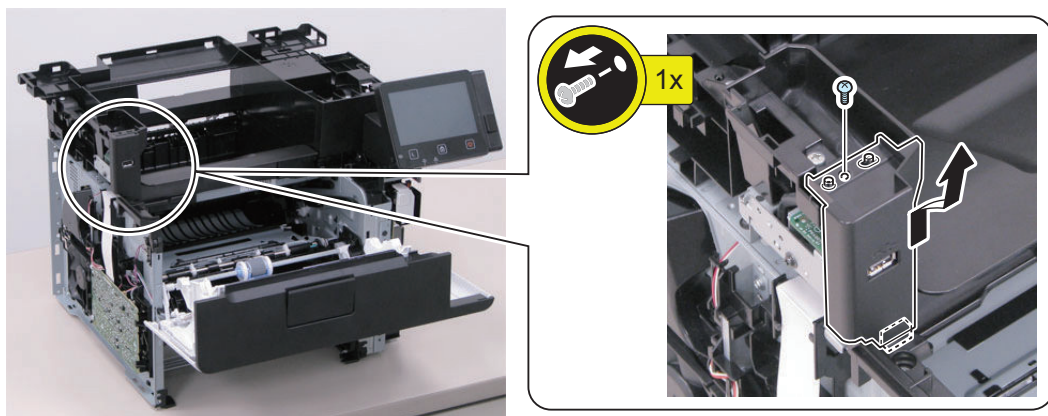
## ● Removing the USB Cover

### ■ Preparation

1. "Removing the Rear Door Unit" on page 94
2. Remove the cassette
3. "Removing the Cartridge" on page 97
4. "Removing the Right Cover Unit" on page 98
5. "Removing the Left Cover Unit" on page 105
6. "Removing the Rear Top Cover" on page 109
7. "Removing the ADF Unit + Reader Unit" on page 118

### ■ Procedure

1.





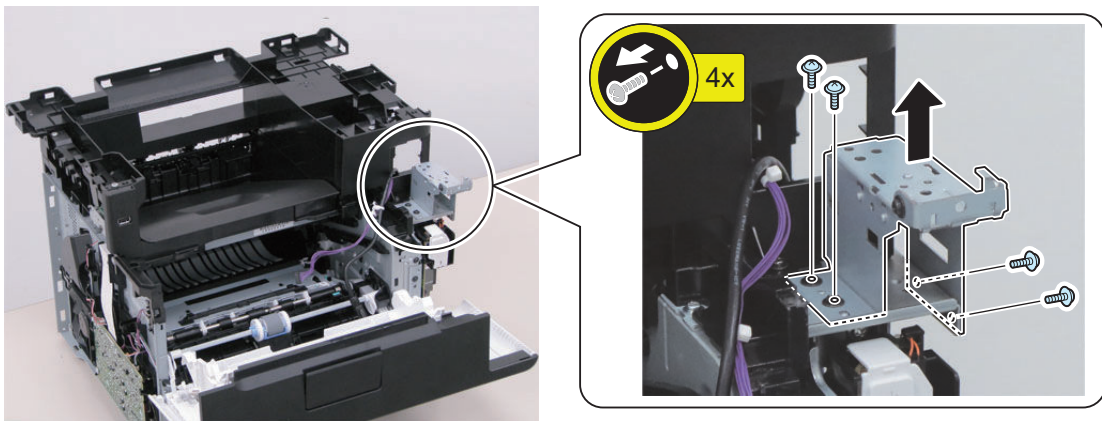
## ● Removing the Right Front Cover

### ■ Preparation

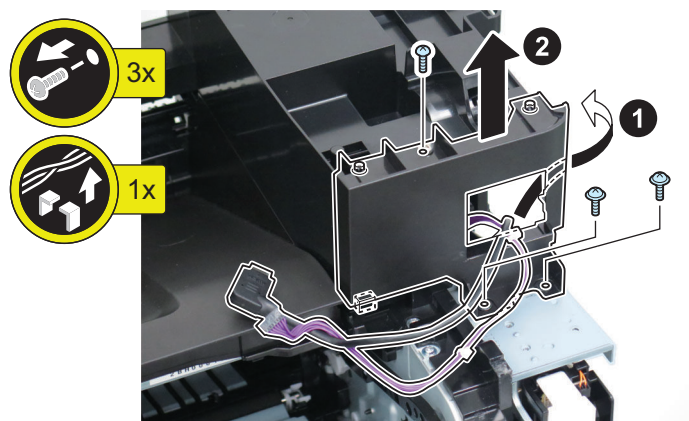
1. "Removing the Rear Door Unit" on page 94
2. Remove the cassette
3. "Removing the Cartridge" on page 97
4. "Removing the Right Cover Unit" on page 98
5. "Removing the Left Cover Unit" on page 105
6. "Removing the Rear Top Cover" on page 109
7. "Removing the ADF Unit + Reader Unit" on page 118
8. "Removing the Control Panel Unit" on page 156

### ■ Procedure

1.



2.



## ● Removing the Upper Cover Unit

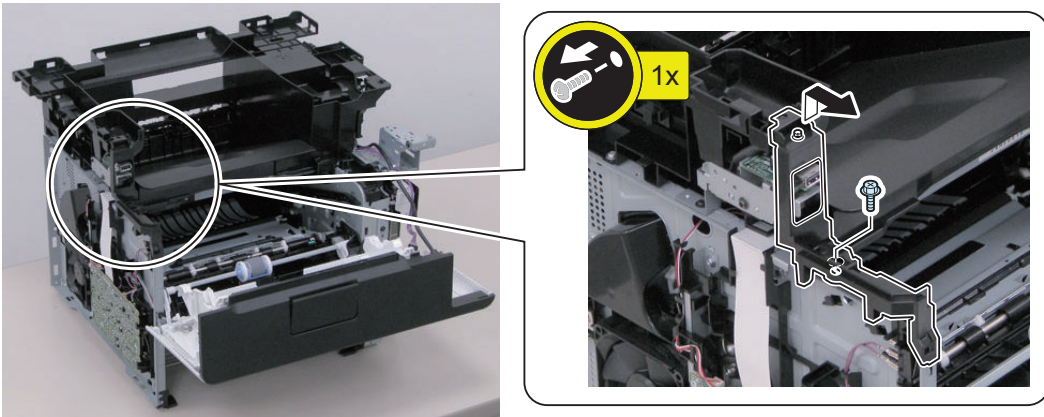
### ■ Preparation

1. "Removing the Rear Door Unit" on page 94
2. Remove the cassette
3. "Removing the Cartridge" on page 97
4. "Removing the Right Cover Unit" on page 98

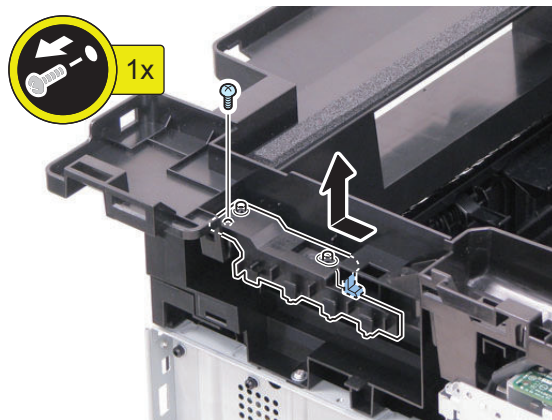
5. "Removing the Left Cover Unit" on page 105
6. "Removing the Rear Top Cover" on page 109
7. "Removing the ADF Unit + Reader Unit" on page 118
8. "Removing the Control Panel Unit" on page 156
9. "Removing the Right Front Cover" on page 111
10. "Removing the USB Cover" on page 110
11. "Removing the Speaker" on page 143

■ Procedure

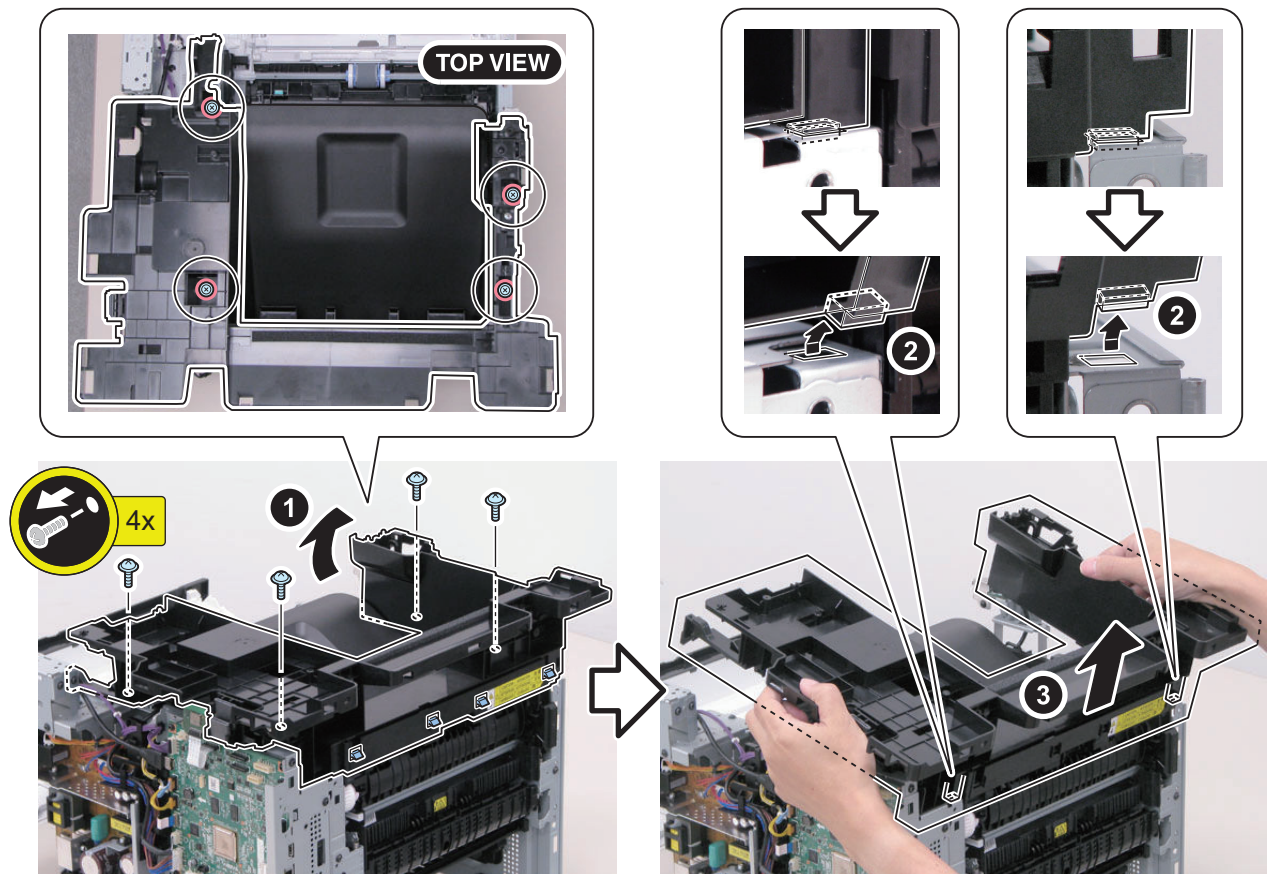
1.



2.



## 3.



## ● Removing the Delivery Tray Cover

### ■ Preparation

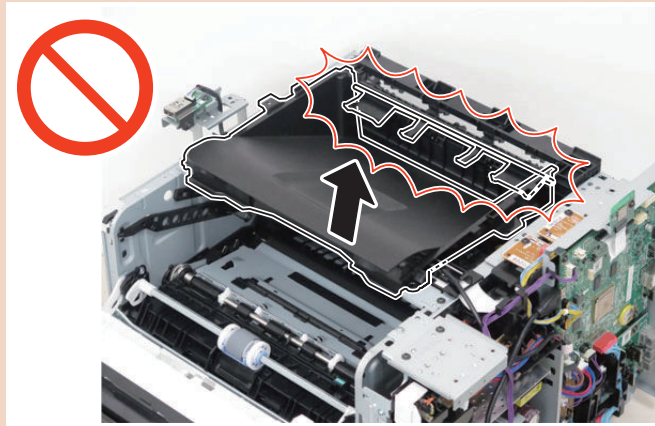
1. "Removing the Rear Door Unit" on page 94
2. Remove the cassette
3. "Removing the Cartridge" on page 97
4. "Removing the Right Cover Unit" on page 98
5. "Removing the Left Cover Unit" on page 105
6. "Removing the Rear Top Cover" on page 109
7. "Removing the ADF Unit + Reader Unit" on page 118
8. "Removing the Control Panel Unit" on page 156
9. "Removing the Right Front Cover" on page 111
10. "Removing the USB Cover" on page 110
11. "Removing the Speaker" on page 143
12. "Removing the Upper Cover Unit" on page 111

## ■ Procedure

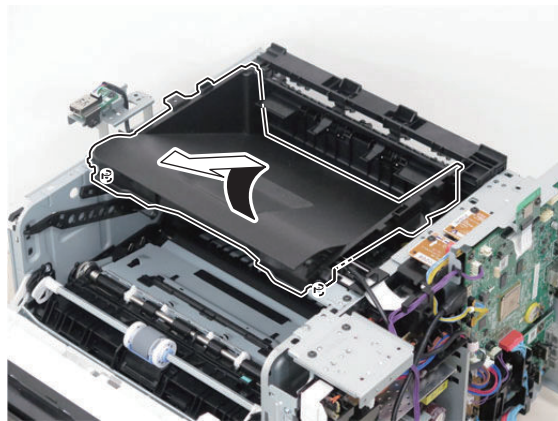
**CAUTION:**

**Points to Note at Installation/Removal**

**Be sure not to let it come in contact with the Full Detection Flag.**



**1.**

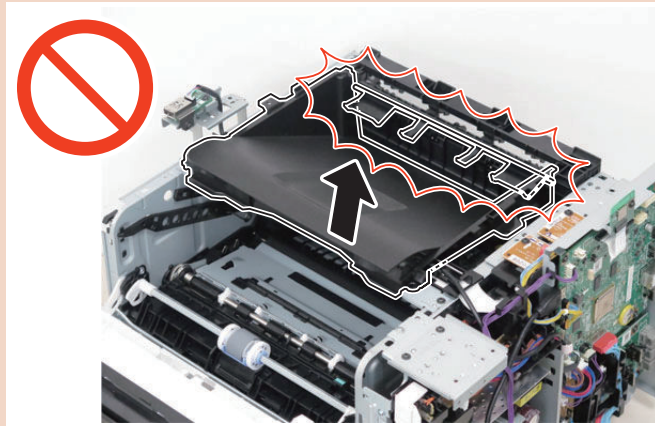


## ■ Installing the Delivery Tray Cover

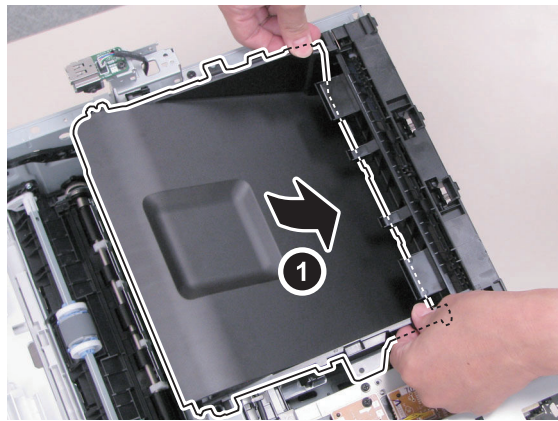
### CAUTION:

Points to Note at Installation/Removal

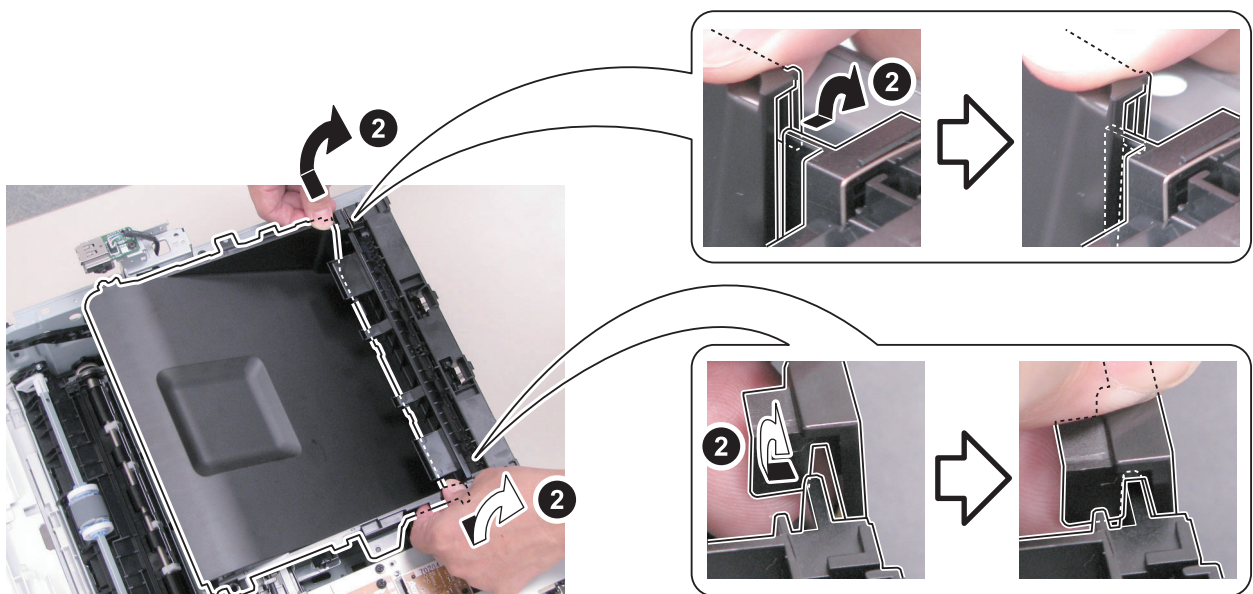
Be sure not to let it come in contact with the Full Detection Flag.



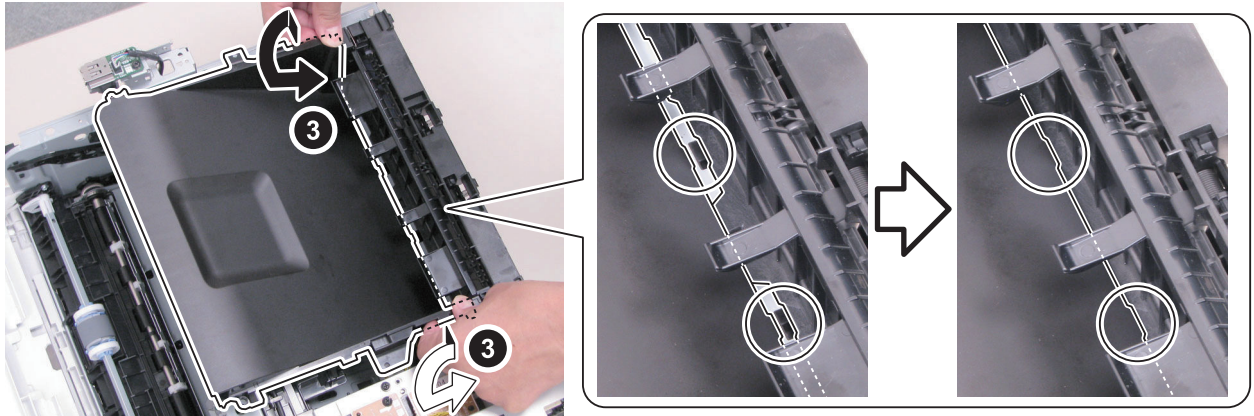
1. Place the Delivery Tray Cover.



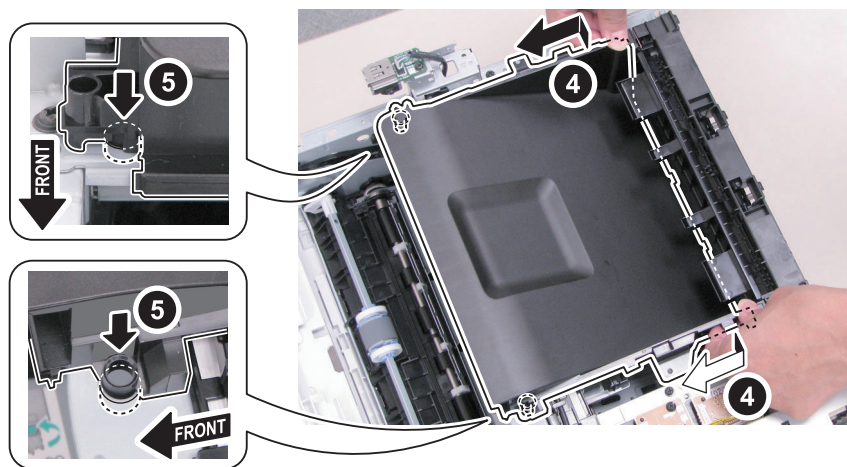
2. Slightly lift up the tray and insert the tray into the ribs on the both sides.



- 3.** Slightly lift up the tray (it is still in the ribs on the both sides), and fit the 2 claws at the center into the holes.



- 4.** Slide the tray toward the front by pushing it with your thumbs to fit it into the bosses.



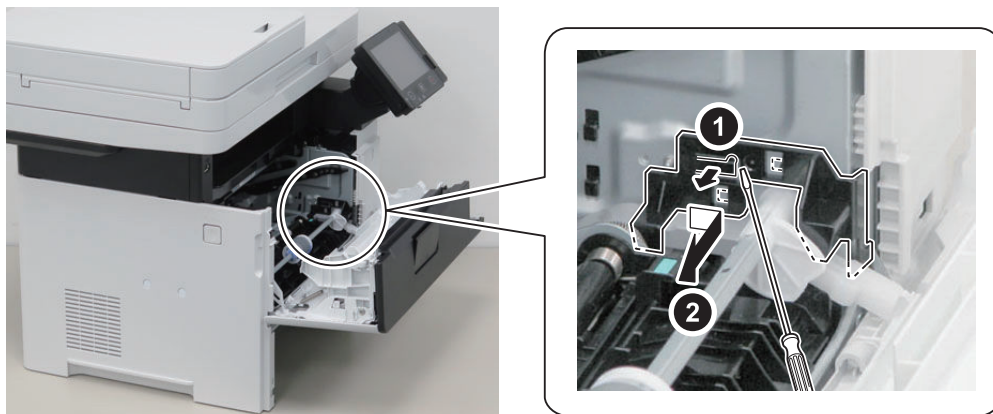
## ● Removing the Cartridge Door Unit

### ■ Preparation

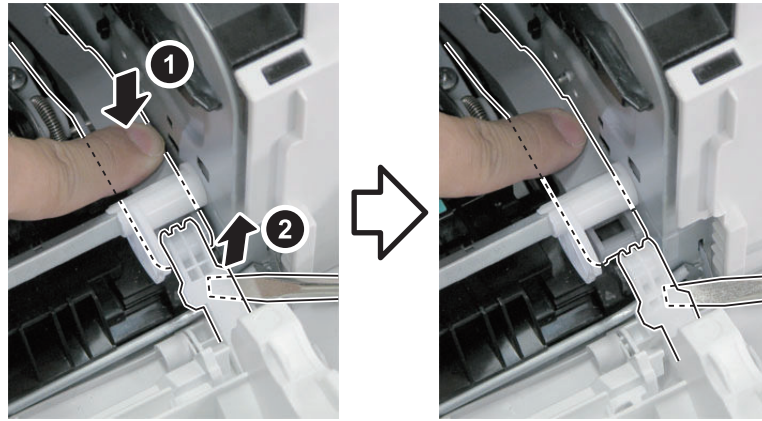
1. Remove the cassette
2. "Removing the Cartridge" on page 97

### ■ Procedure

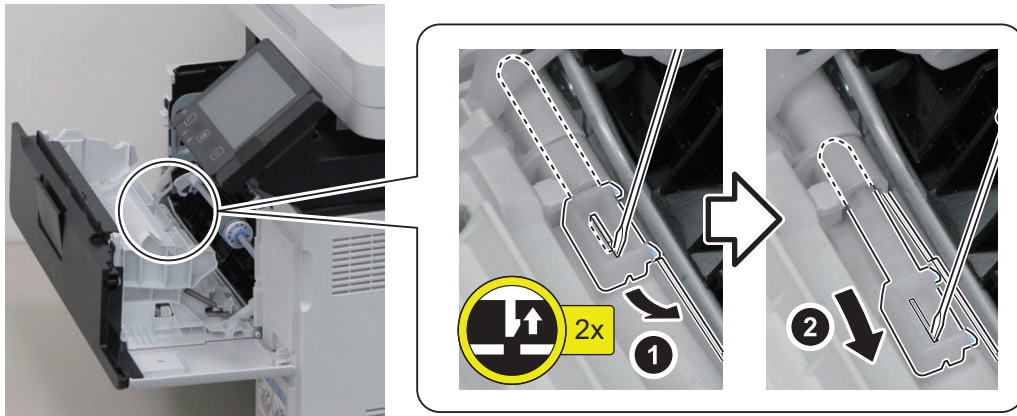
**1.**



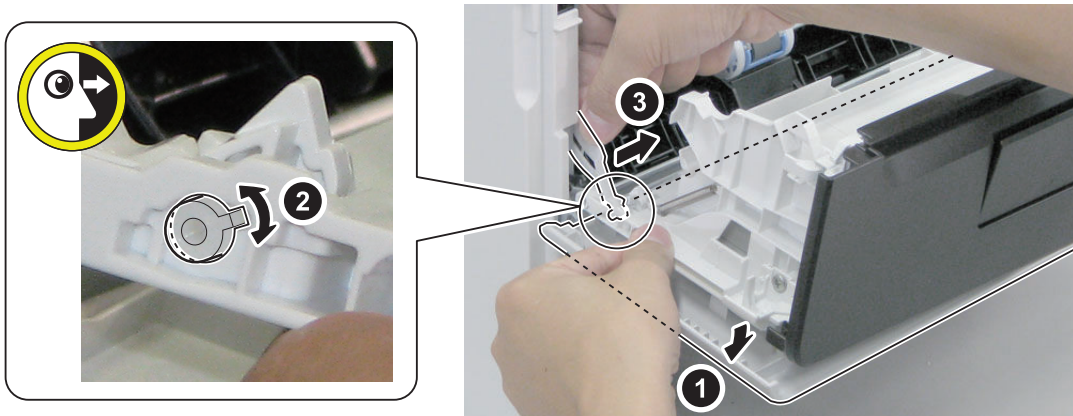
2.



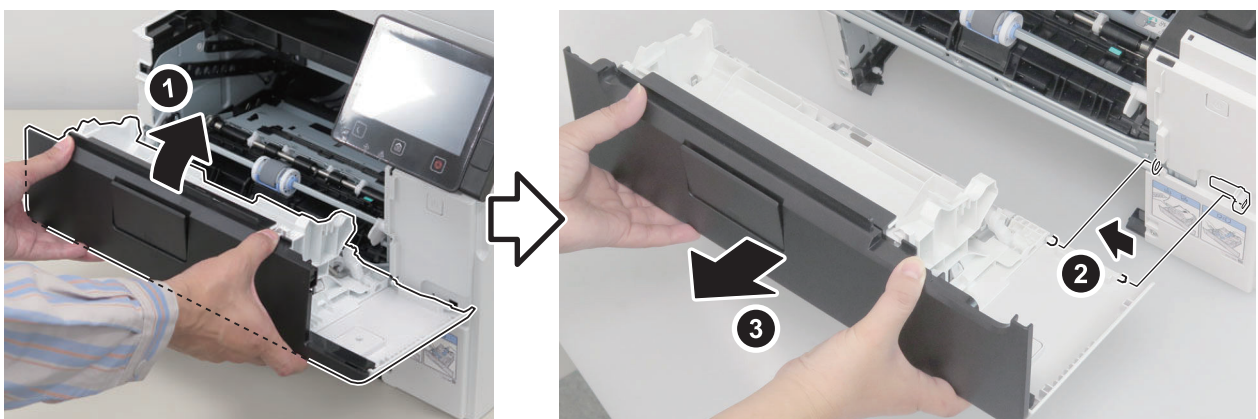
3.



4.



5.



## Original Exposure/Feed System

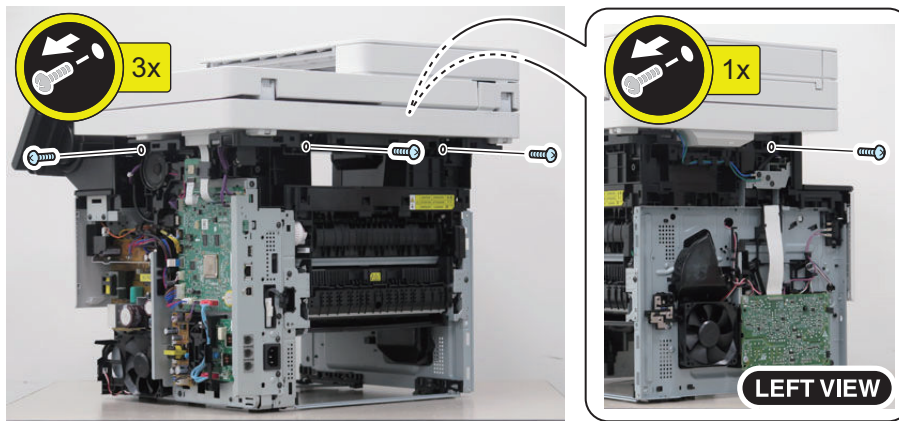
### Removing the ADF Unit + Reader Unit

#### Preparation

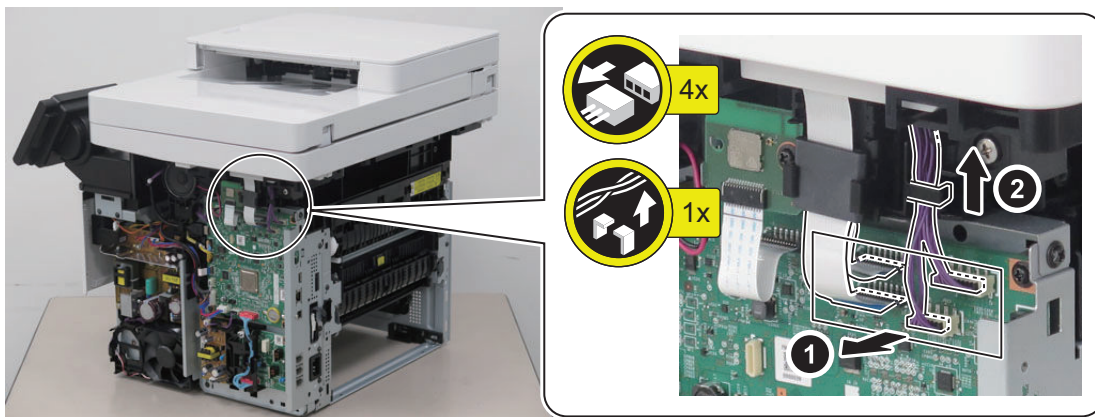
1. "Removing the Rear Door Unit" on page 94
2. Remove the cassette
3. "Removing the Cartridge" on page 97
4. "Removing the Right Cover Unit" on page 98
5. "Removing the Left Cover Unit" on page 105
6. "Removing the Rear Top Cover" on page 109

#### Procedure

1.

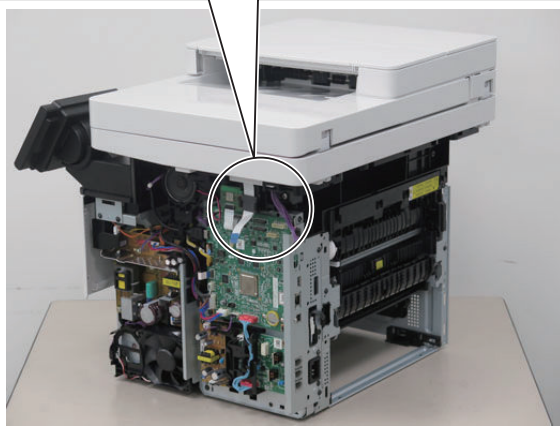
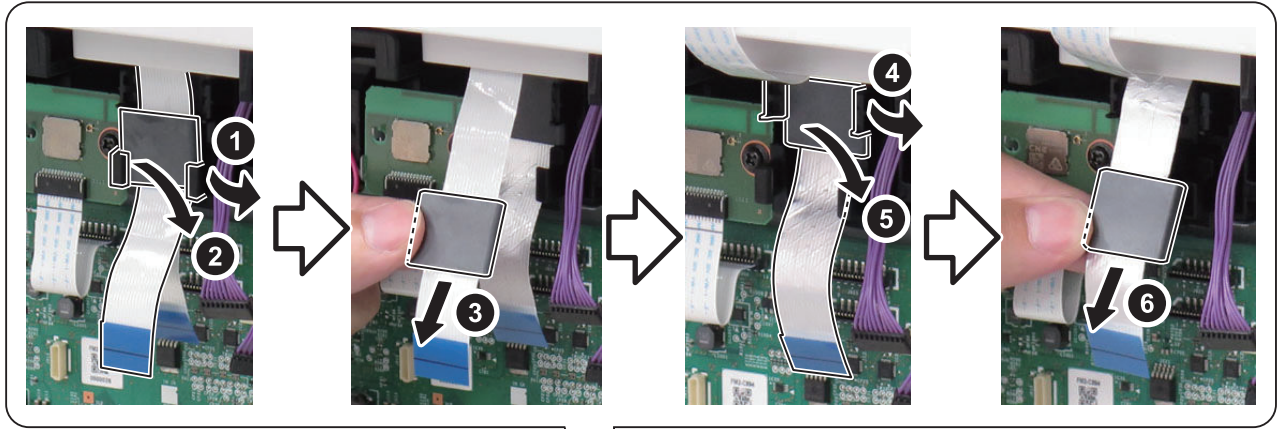


2.

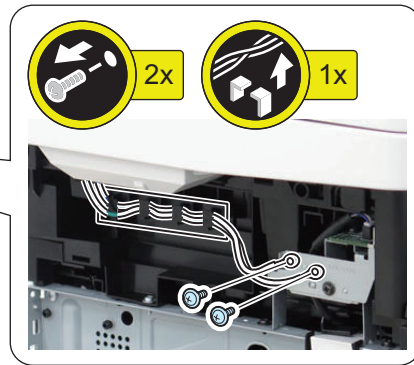
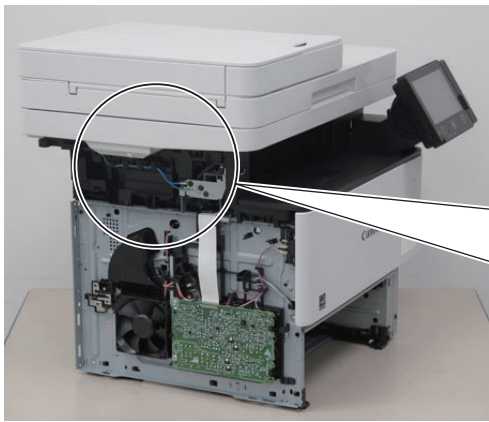




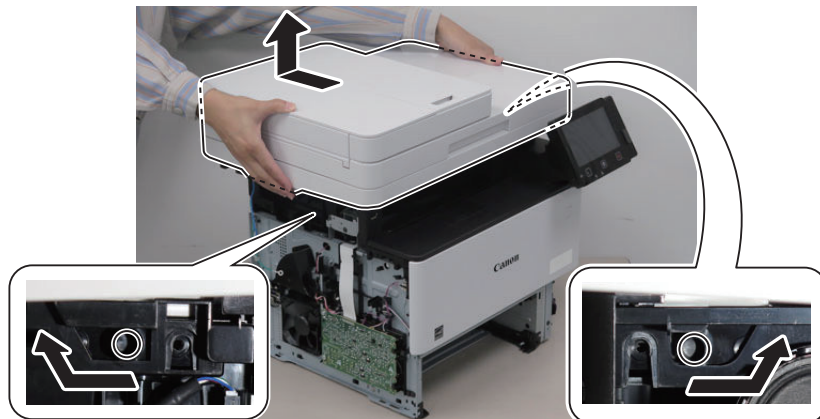
3.



4.



5.



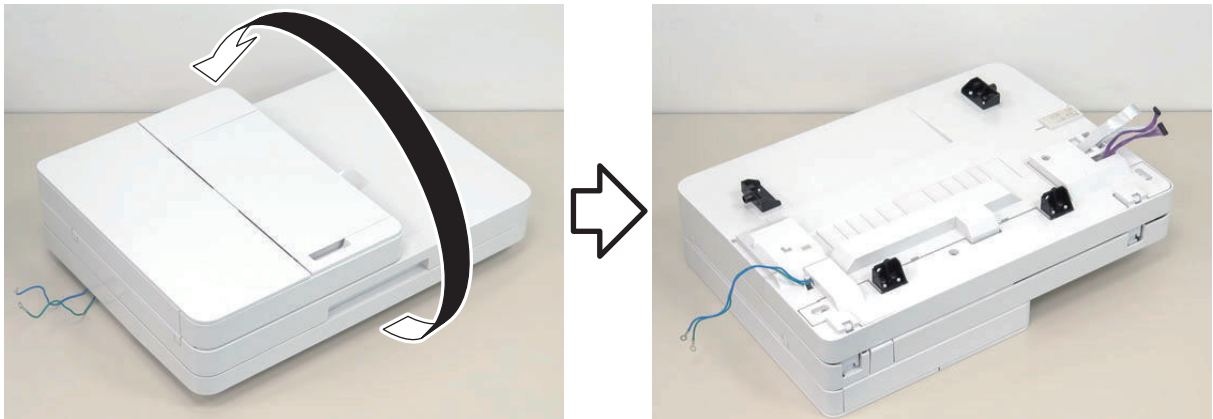
## Separating the ADF Unit + Reader Unit

### ■ Preparation

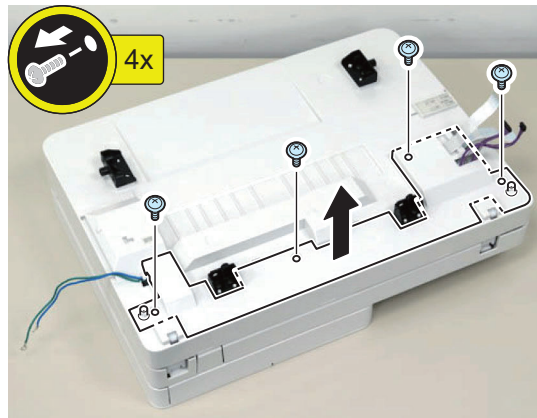
1. "Removing the Rear Door Unit" on page 94
2. Remove the cassette
3. "Removing the Cartridge" on page 97
4. "Removing the Right Cover Unit" on page 98
5. "Removing the Left Cover Unit" on page 105
6. "Removing the Rear Top Cover" on page 109
7. "Removing the ADF Unit + Reader Unit" on page 118

### ■ Procedure

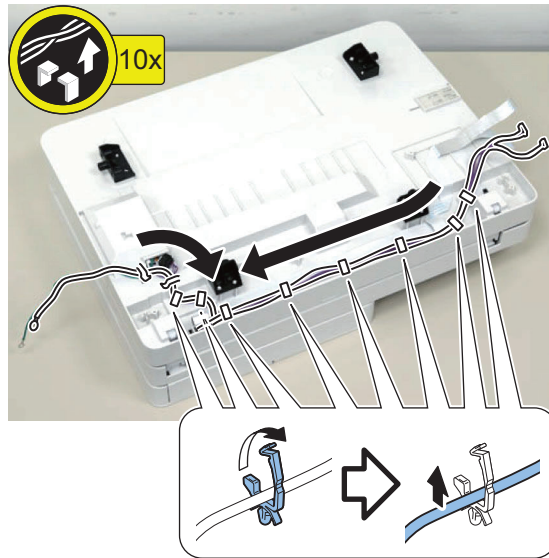
1.



2.

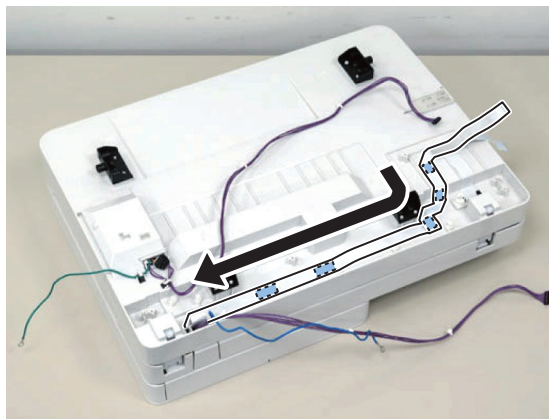


3.



4.

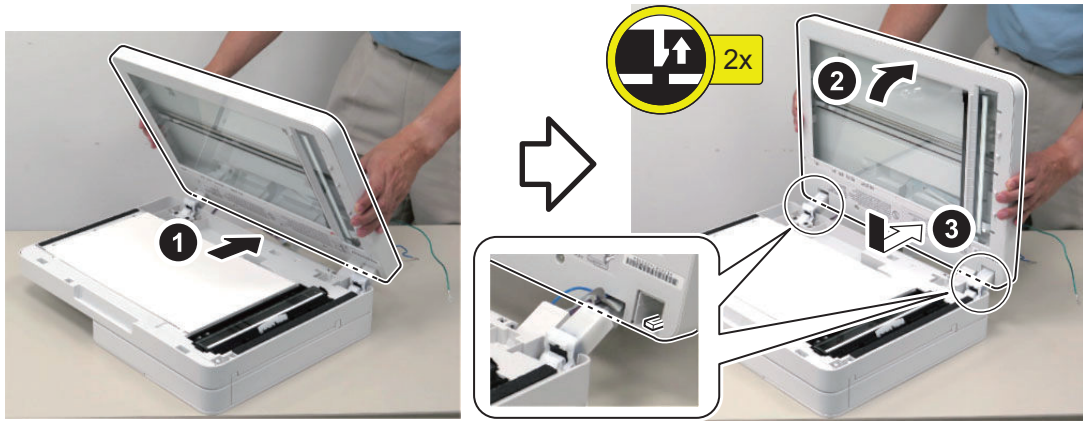
**NOTE:**  
The Flat Cable is secured with 5 double-sided tapes.



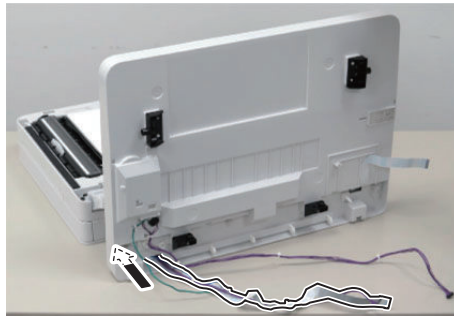
5.



6.



7.



8.

- “After Replacing the Reader Unit” on page 195
- “After Replacing the ADF Unit” on page 200

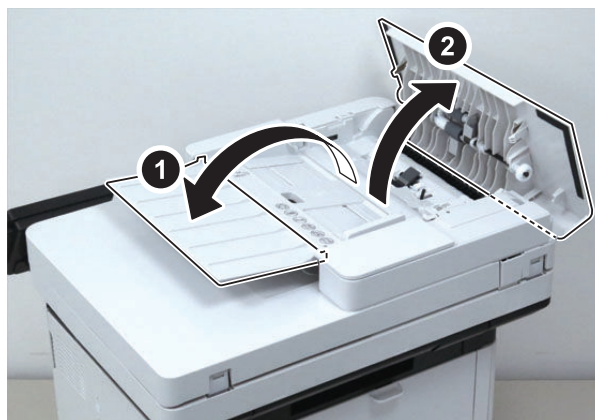
## ● Removing the ADF Roller Unit

### ■ Procedure

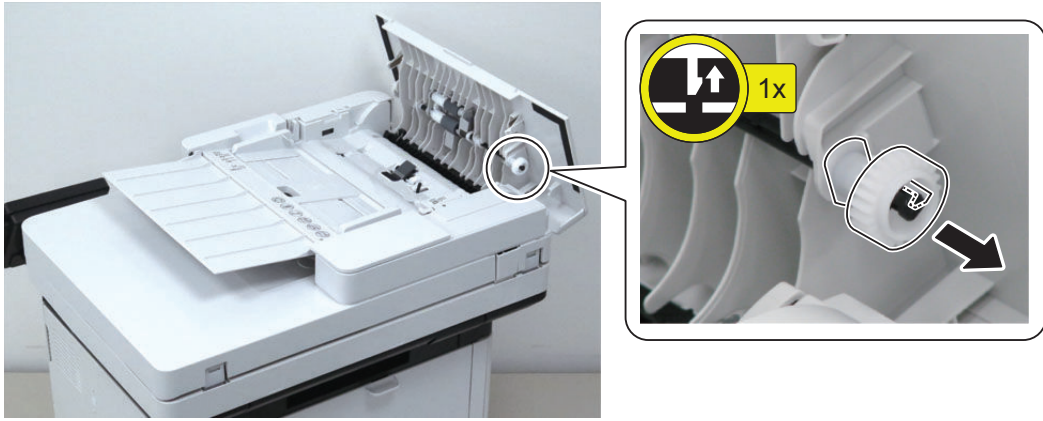
**CAUTION:**

Do not touch the surface of the roller with bare hands, as doing so will attach skin oil on it and decrease feedability.

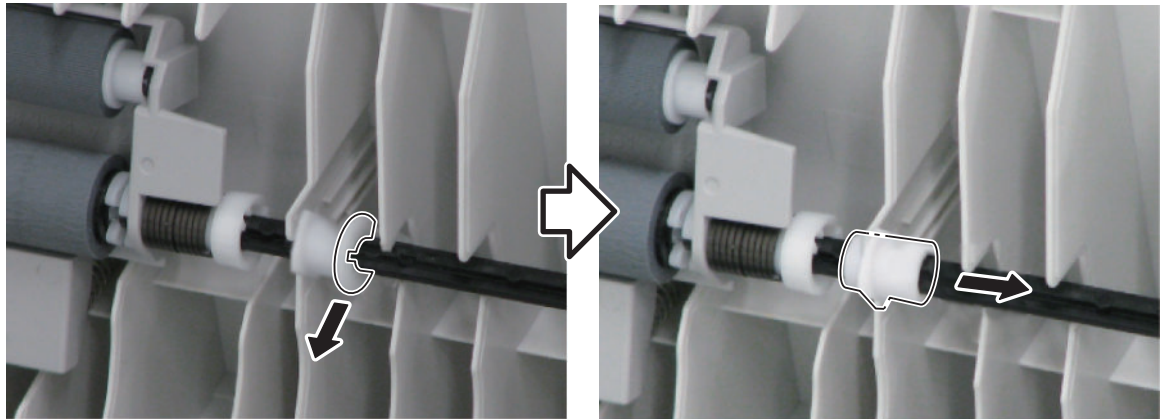
1.



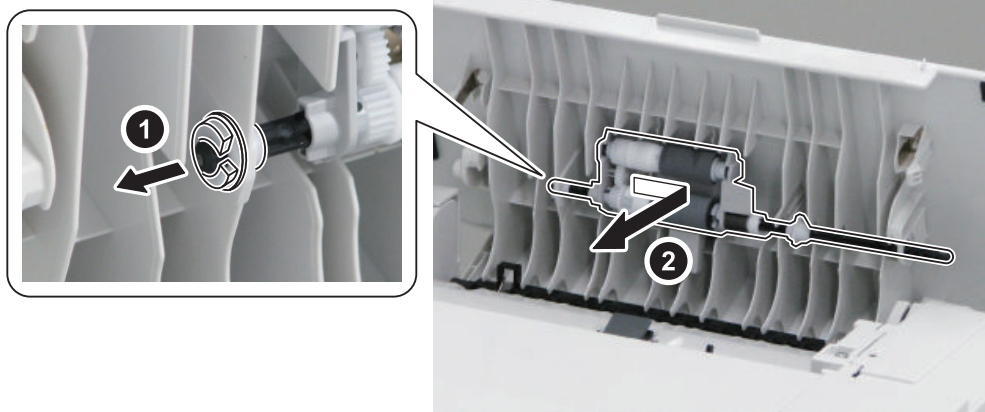
2.



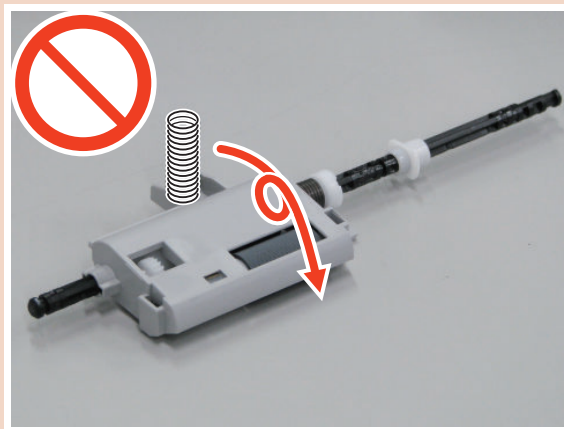
3.



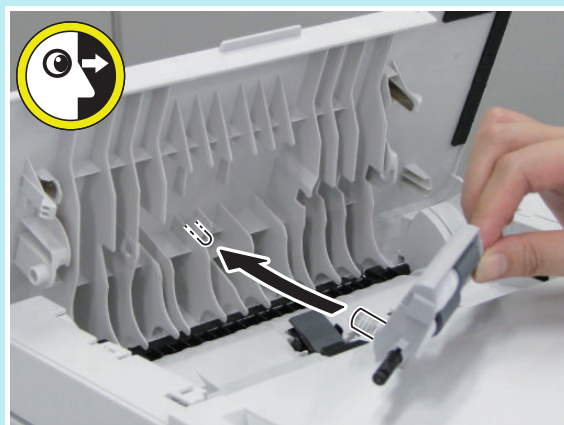
## 4.

**CAUTION:**

Because the spring is easy to come off, be careful about its loss.

**NOTE:**

When installing, match the spring of the ADF Roller Unit to the boss.



## ● Removing the ADF Pickup Roller

### ■ Preparation

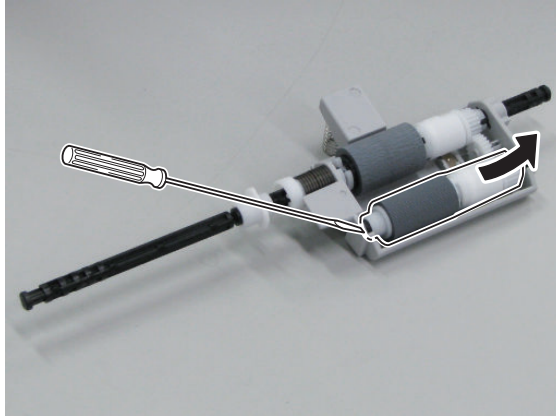
1. "Removing the ADF Roller Unit" on page 122

## ■ Procedure

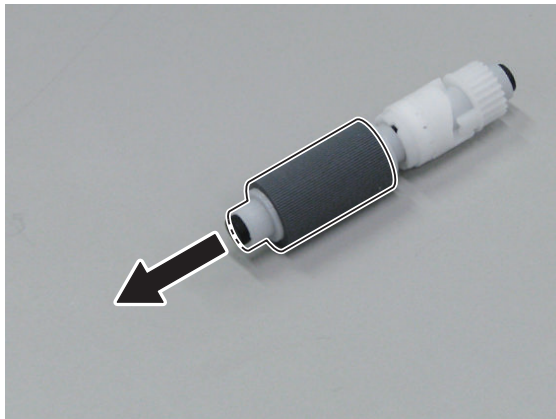
### CAUTION:

Do not touch the surface of the roller with bare hands, as doing so will attach skin oil on it and decrease feedability.

1.



2.



## ● Removing the ADF Separation Roller

### ■ Preparation

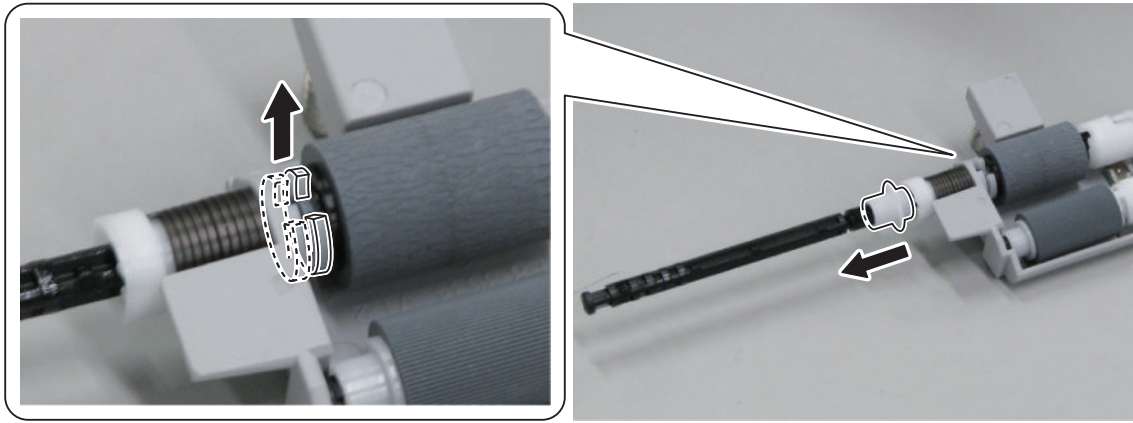
1. "Removing the ADF Roller Unit" on page 122

### ■ Procedure

### CAUTION:

Do not touch the surface of the roller with bare hands, as doing so will attach skin oil on it and decrease feedability.

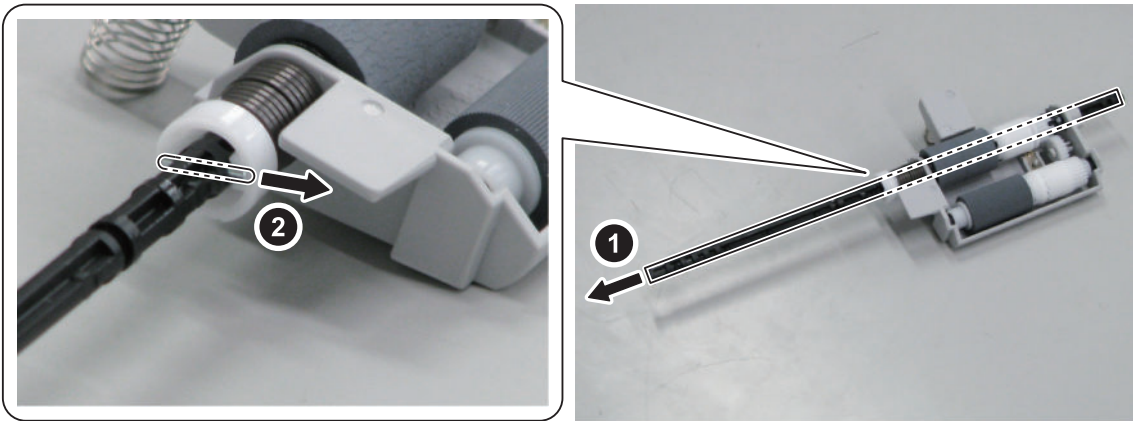
1.



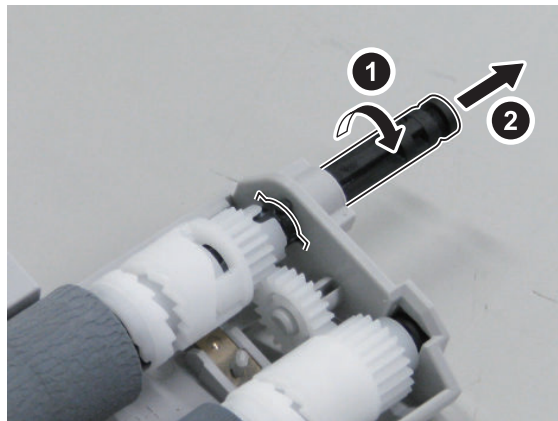
2.

**CAUTION:**

Be careful not to lose the Parallel Pin during installation/removal because it can easily come off.

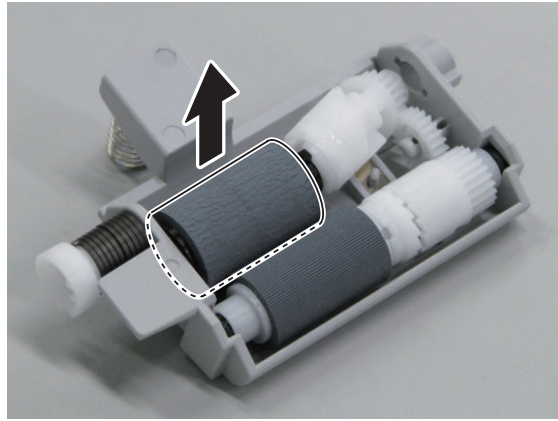


3.





4.



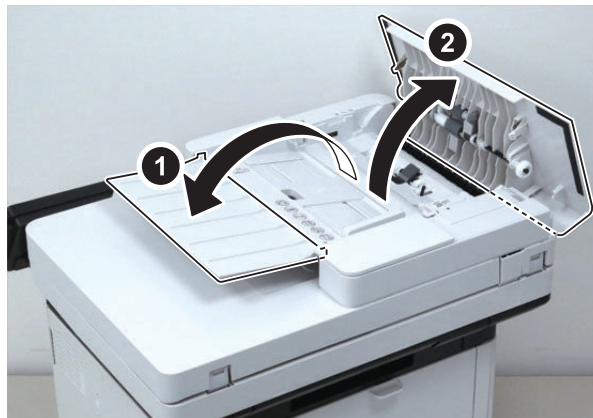
## ● Removing the ADF Separation Pad Unit

### ■ Procedure

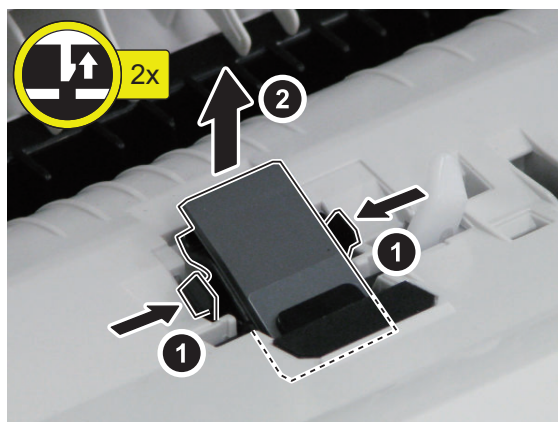
#### CAUTION:

Do not touch the surface of the roller/pad with bare hands, as doing so will attach skin oil on it and decrease feedability.

1.



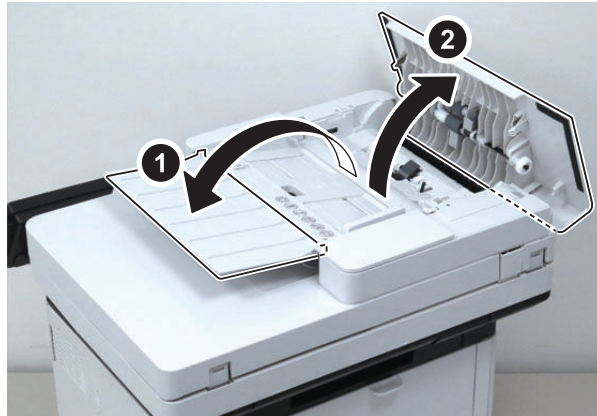
2.



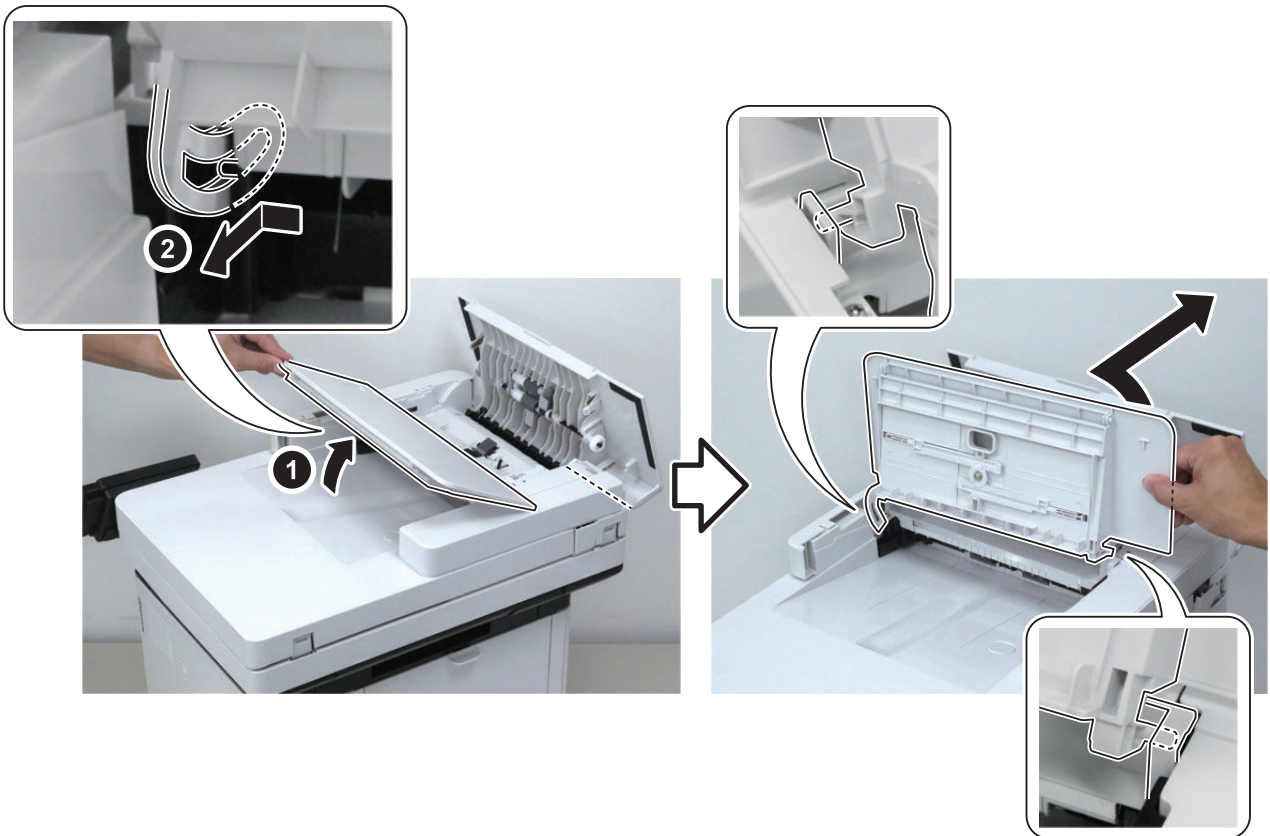
## ● Removing the ADF Upper Cover Unit

### ■ Procedure

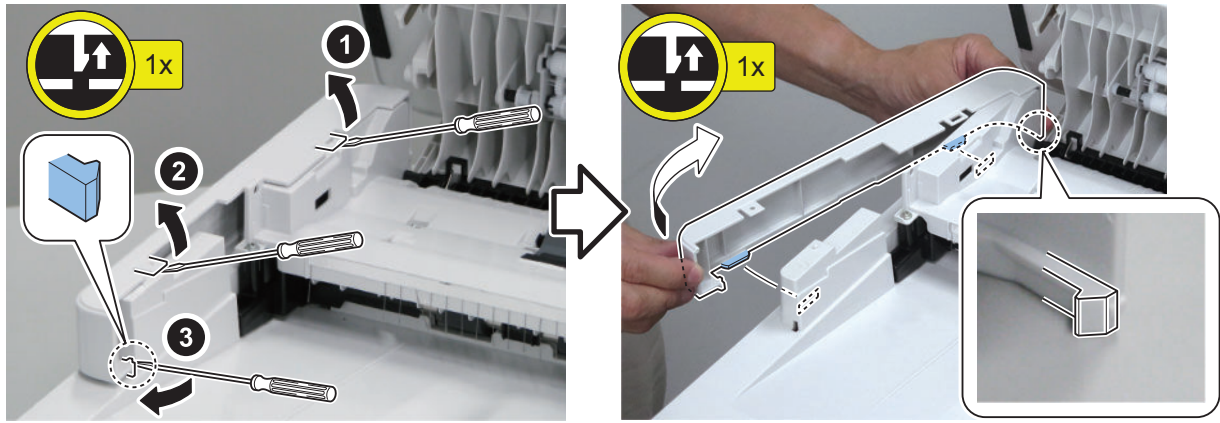
1.



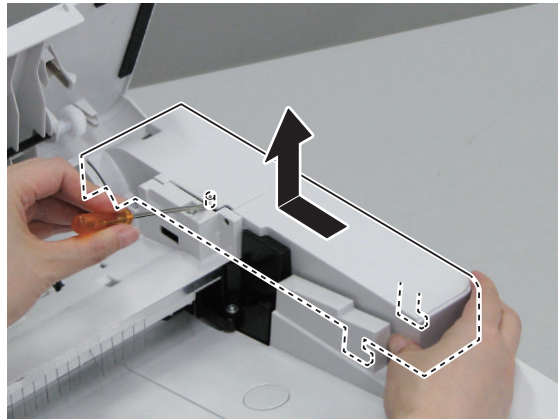
2.



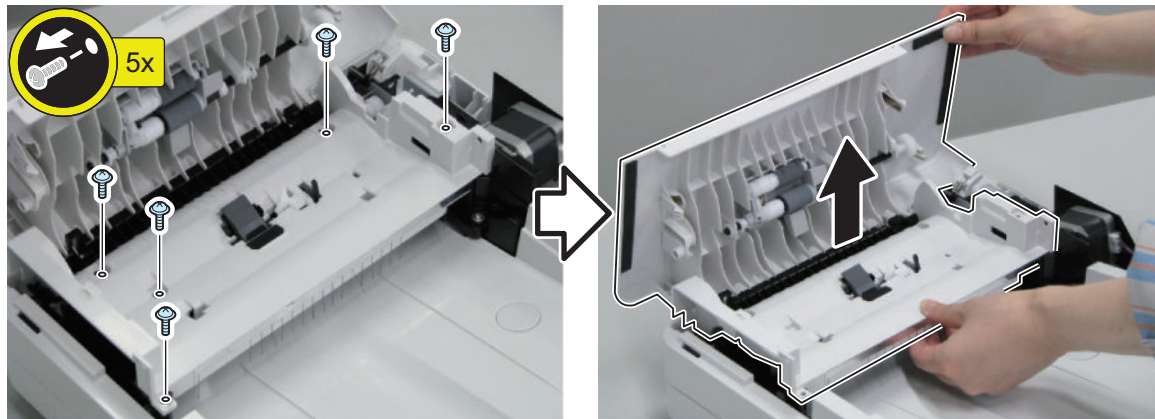
3.



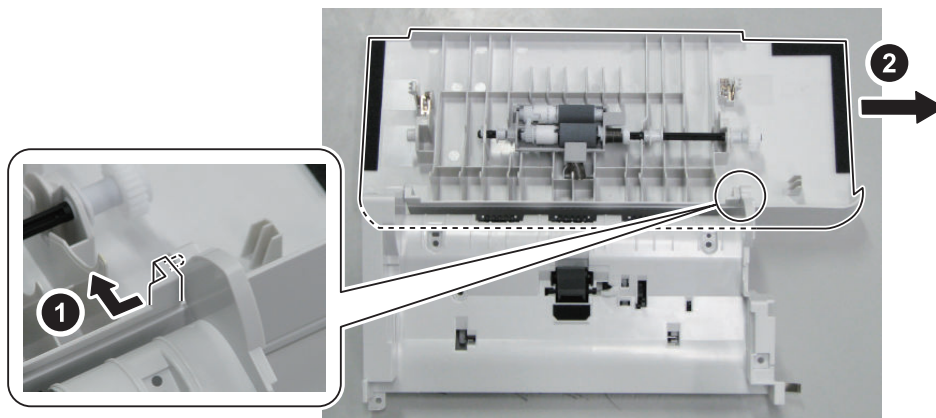
4.



5.



6.



## ● Removing the ADF Feed Unit

### ■ Preparation

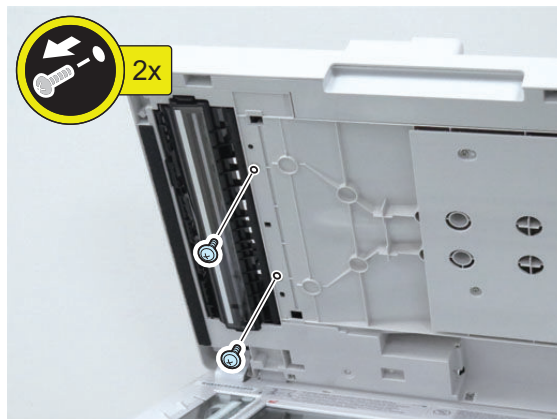
1. "Removing the ADF Upper Cover Unit" on page 128

### ■ Procedure

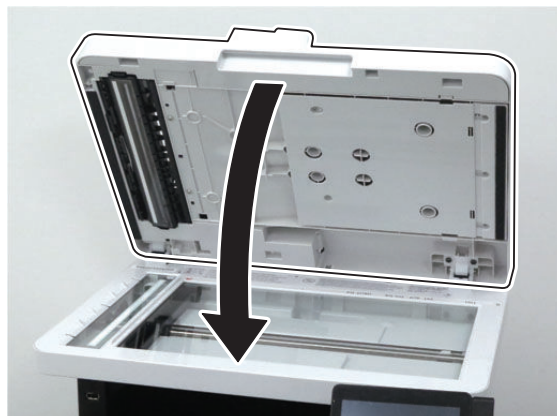
1.



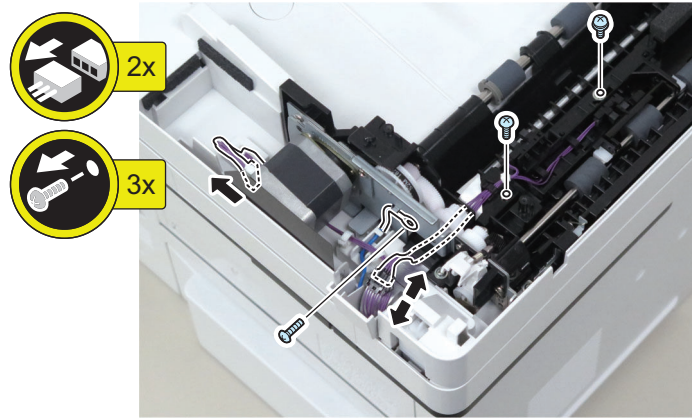
2.



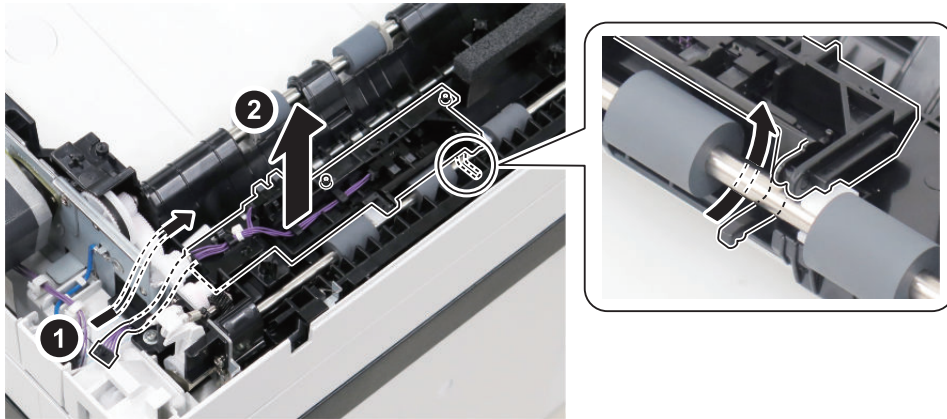
3.



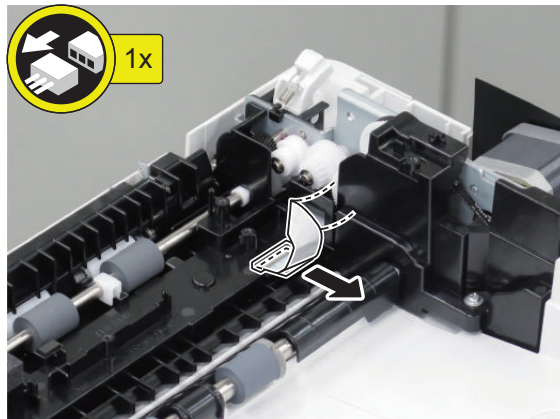
4.



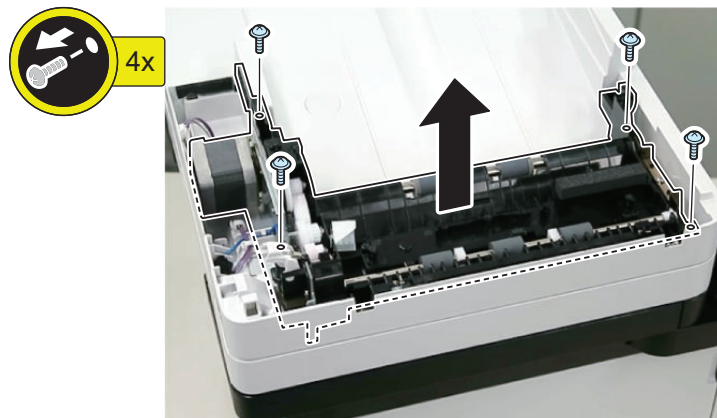
5.



6.



7.



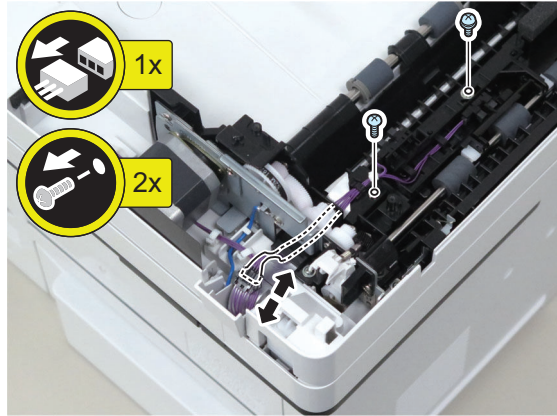
## ● Removing the ADF CIS Unit

### ■ Preparation

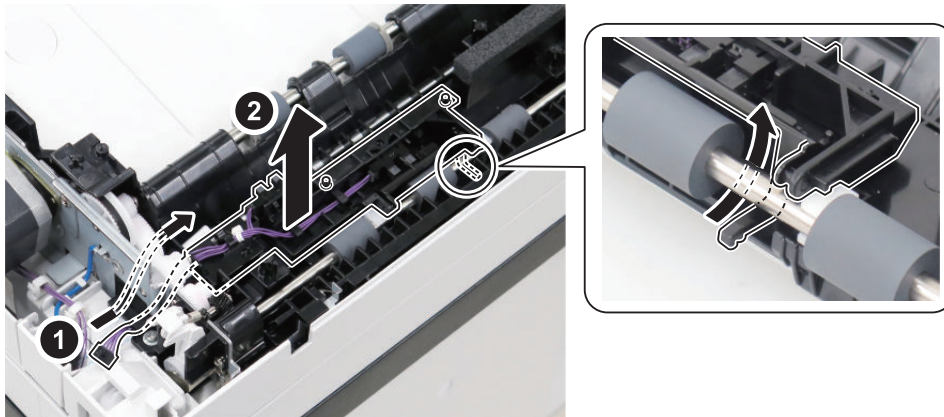
1. "Removing the ADF Upper Cover Unit" on page 128

### ■ Procedure

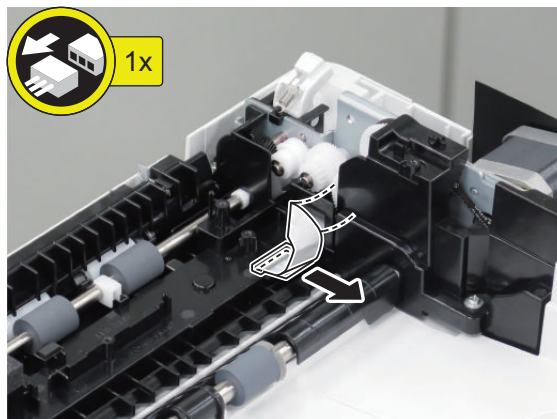
1.



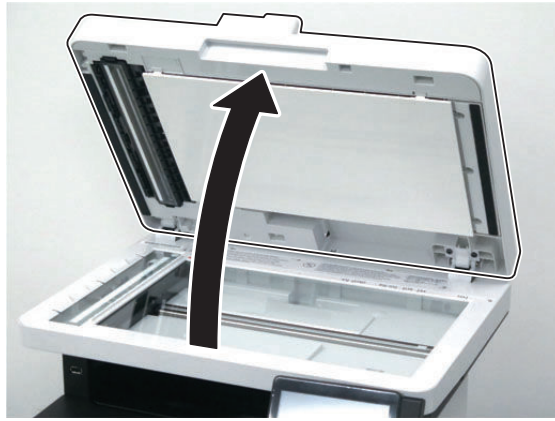
2.



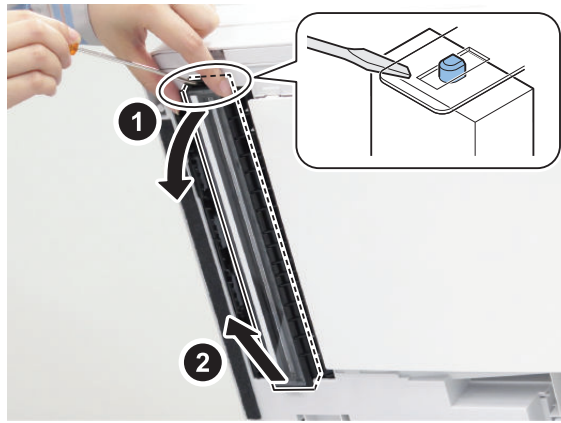
3.



4.

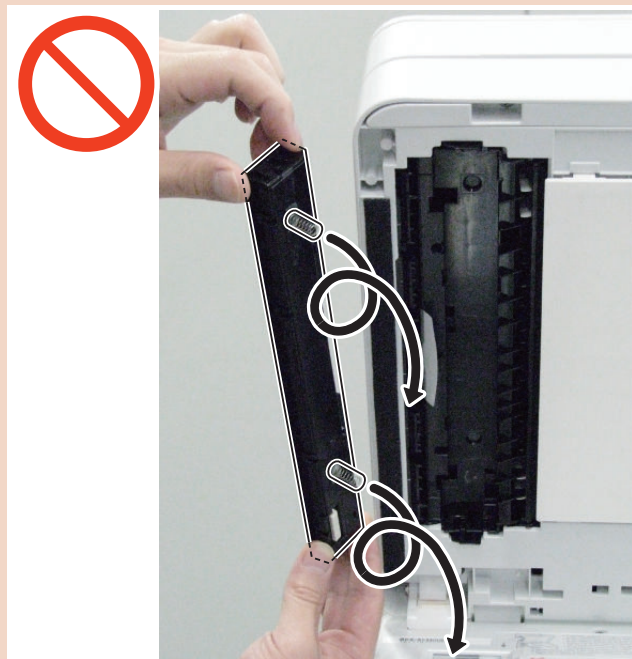


# 5.



**CAUTION:**

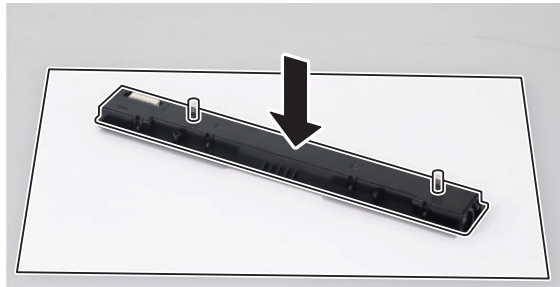
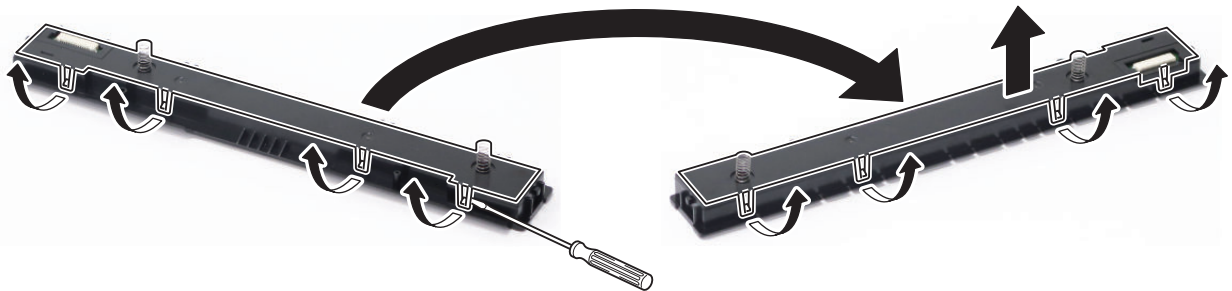
Because the spring is easy to come off, be careful about its loss.





**CAUTION:**

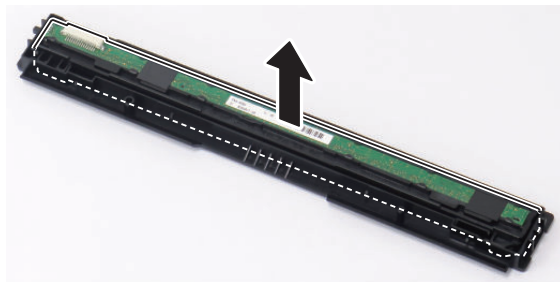
When installing the ADF CIS Unit, be careful that the Guide Sheet does not get caught in the interior.

**6.****7.**

## 8.

**CAUTION:**

Do not touch the CIS sensor area of ADF with your hands, as doing so will attach skin oil on it and cause image failure such as lines from soiling.



## 9. "After Replacing the ADF CIS Unit" on page 210

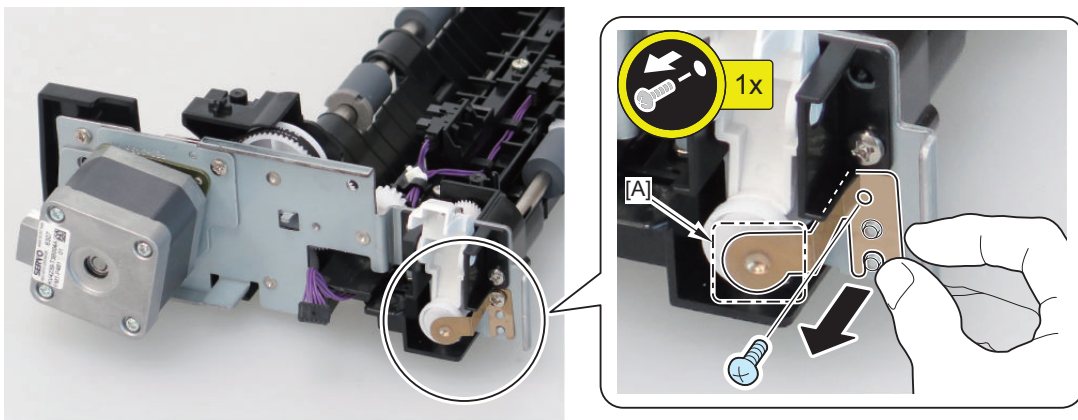
## ● Removing the ADF Drive Unit

### ■ Preparation

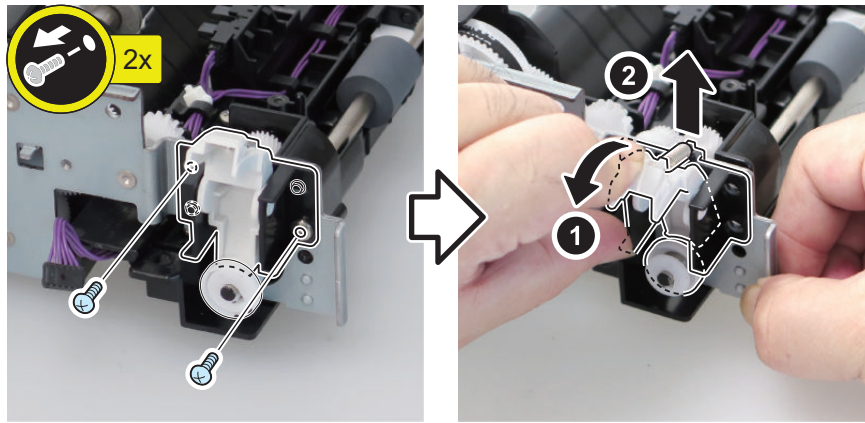
1. "Removing the ADF Upper Cover Unit" on page 128
2. "Removing the ADF Feed Unit" on page 130

### ■ Procedure

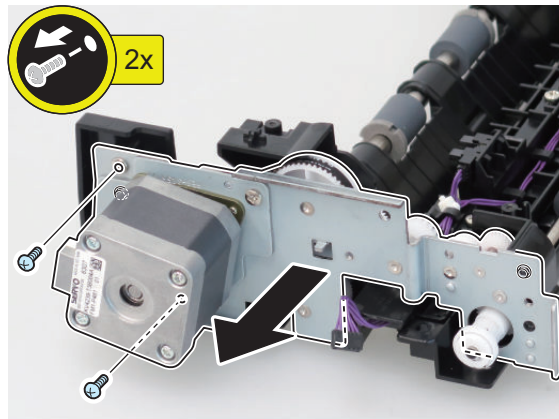
## 1.



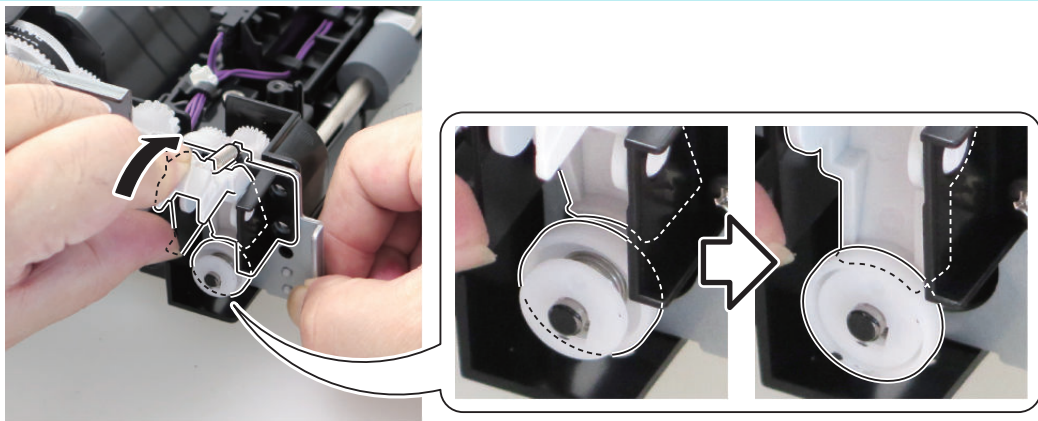
2.



3.

**NOTE:**

When installing the ADF Drive Unit, mount the lever on the bush.



## ● Removing the Reader Upper Cover Unit

### ■ Preparation

1. "Removing the Rear Door Unit" on page 94
2. Remove the cassette
3. "Removing the Cartridge" on page 97
4. "Removing the Right Cover Unit" on page 98
5. "Removing the Left Cover Unit" on page 105

6. “Removing the Rear Top Cover” on page 109
7. “Removing the ADF Unit + Reader Unit” on page 118
8. “Separating the ADF Unit + Reader Unit” on page 120

## ■ Procedure

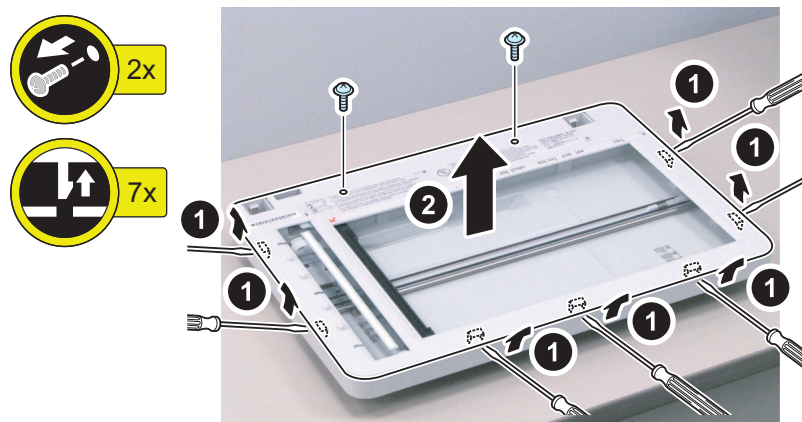
### CAUTION:

- Since the Copyboard Glass is included in the Reader Upper Cover Unit, replace the entire Reader Upper Cover Unit when replacing the Copyboard Glass.

# 1.

### CAUTION:

- Do not touch the Copyboard Glass with your hands, as doing so will attach skin oil on it and cause image failure from soiling. If soiling is attached, wipe it with lint-free paper moistened.



# 2.

“After Replacing the Reader Upper Cover Unit” on page 204

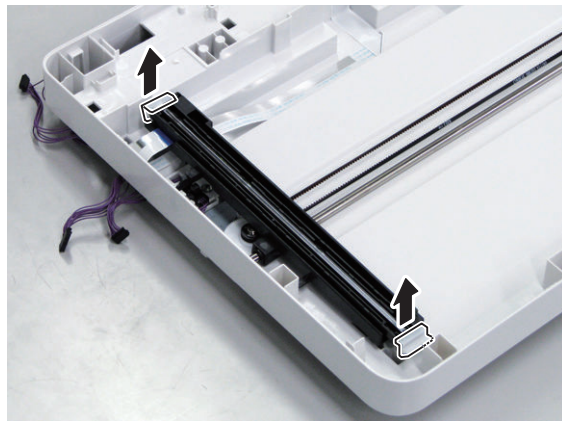
## ● Removing the Reader CIS Unit

### ■ Preparation

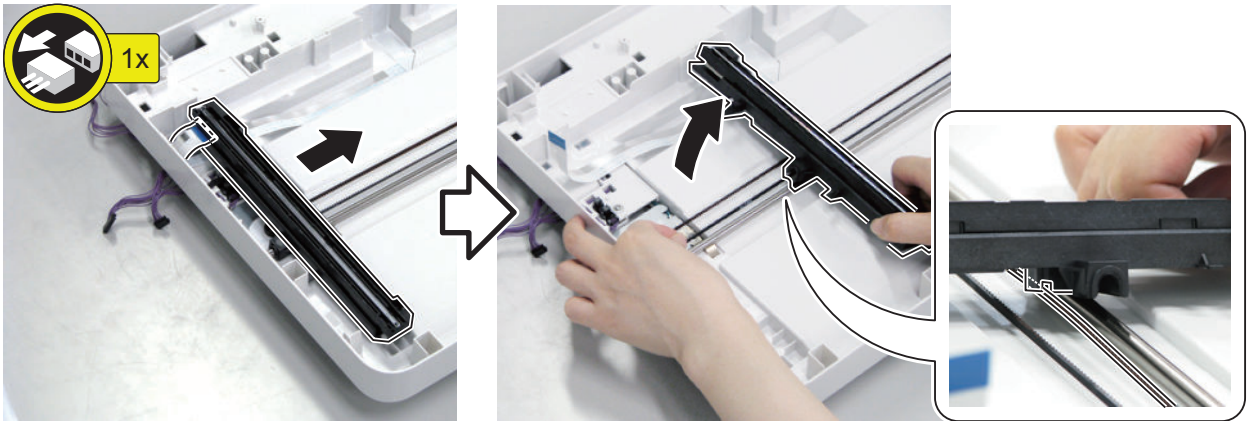
1. “Removing the Rear Door Unit” on page 94
2. Remove the cassette
3. “Removing the Cartridge” on page 97
4. “Removing the Right Cover Unit” on page 98
5. “Removing the Left Cover Unit” on page 105
6. “Removing the Rear Top Cover” on page 109
7. “Removing the ADF Unit + Reader Unit” on page 118
8. “Separating the ADF Unit + Reader Unit” on page 120
9. “Removing the Reader Upper Cover Unit” on page 137

■ Procedure

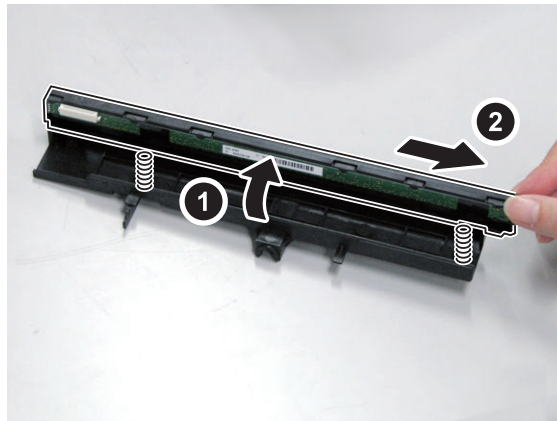
1.



2.



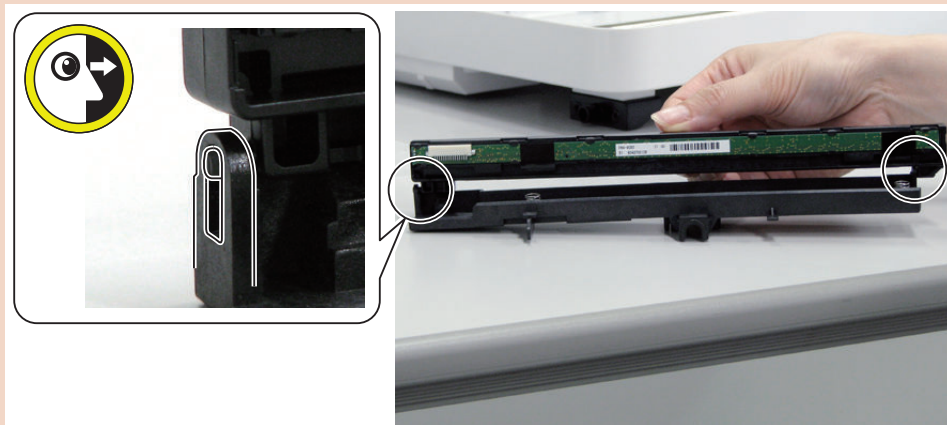
## 3.

**CAUTION:**

Do not touch the CIS sensor area of ADF with your hands, as doing so will attach skin oil on it and cause image failure such as lines from soiling.

**CAUTION:**

When installing the Reader CIS, align the 2 shafts on the right and left, and confirm that the protrusions and grooves are properly fitted.



## 4.

“After Replacing the Reader CIS Unit” on page 208

## ● Removing the Reader CIS Timing Belt

### ■ Preparation

1. “Removing the Rear Door Unit” on page 94
2. Remove the cassette
3. “Removing the Cartridge” on page 97
4. “Removing the Right Cover Unit” on page 98
5. “Removing the Left Cover Unit” on page 105
6. “Removing the Rear Top Cover” on page 109
7. “Removing the ADF Unit + Reader Unit” on page 118
8. “Separating the ADF Unit + Reader Unit” on page 120

9. "Removing the Reader Upper Cover Unit" on page 137
10. "Removing the Reader CIS Unit" on page 138

## ■ Procedure

1.



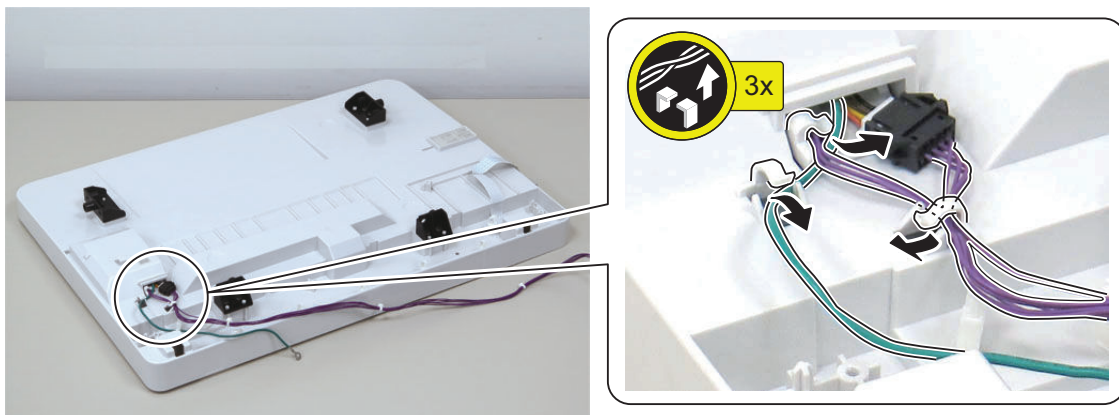
## ● Removing the Reader Scanner Motor

### ■ Preparation

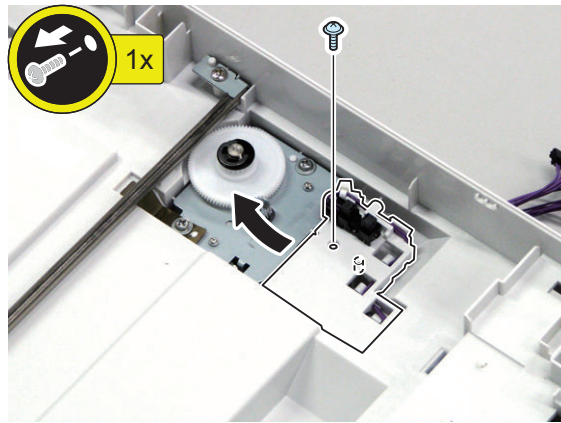
1. "Removing the Rear Door Unit" on page 94
2. Remove the cassette
3. "Removing the Cartridge" on page 97
4. "Removing the Right Cover Unit" on page 98
5. "Removing the Left Cover Unit" on page 105
6. "Removing the Rear Top Cover" on page 109
7. "Removing the ADF Unit + Reader Unit" on page 118
8. "Separating the ADF Unit + Reader Unit" on page 120
9. "Removing the Reader Upper Cover Unit" on page 137
10. "Removing the Reader CIS Unit" on page 138
11. "Removing the Reader CIS Timing Belt" on page 140

### ■ Procedure

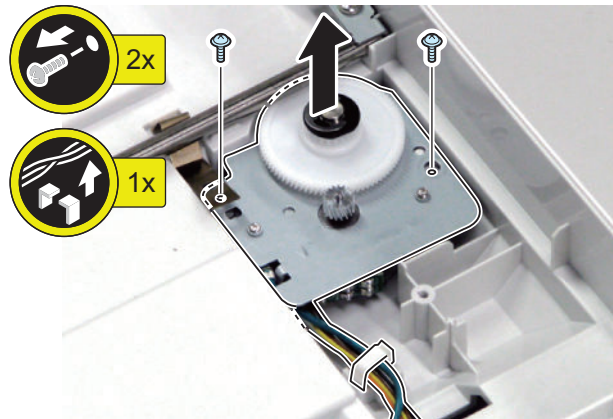
1.



2.



3.





## Controller System

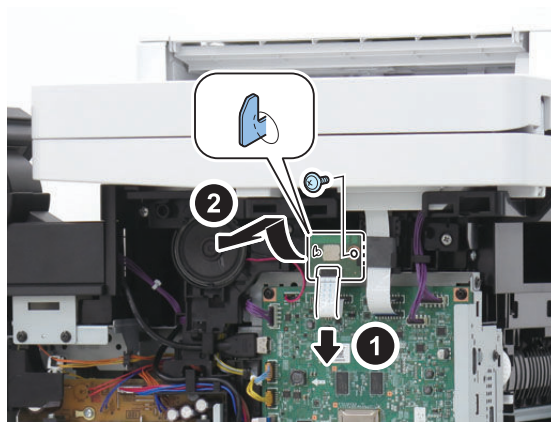
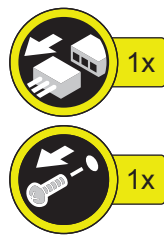
### Removing the Wireless LAN PCB

#### Preparation

1. "Removing the Rear Door Unit" on page 94
2. Remove the cassette
3. "Removing the Cartridge" on page 97
4. "Removing the Right Cover Unit" on page 98

#### Procedure

1.



### Removing the Speaker

#### Preparation

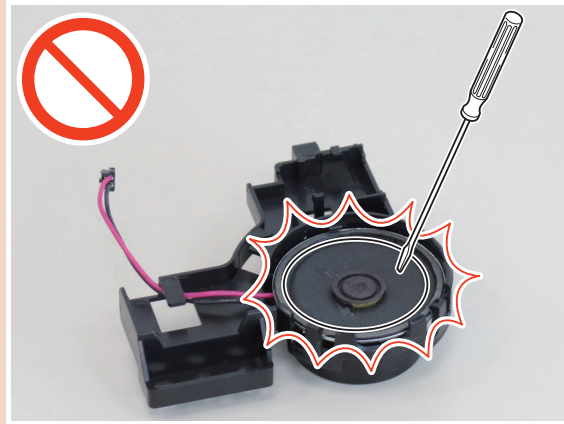
1. "Removing the Rear Door Unit" on page 94
2. Remove the cassette
3. "Removing the Cartridge" on page 97
4. "Removing the Right Cover Unit" on page 98

## ■ Procedure

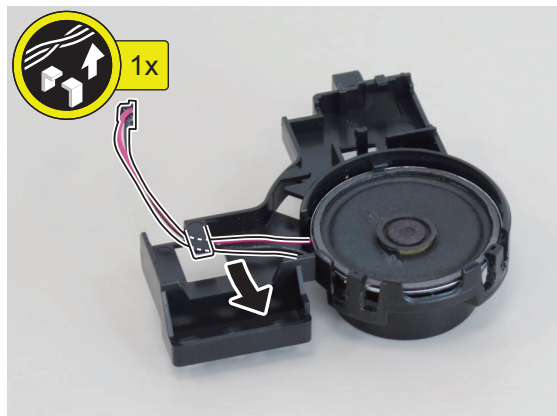
# 1.

### CAUTION:

- Do not directly touch the speaker.
- Be sure not to damage the speaker.



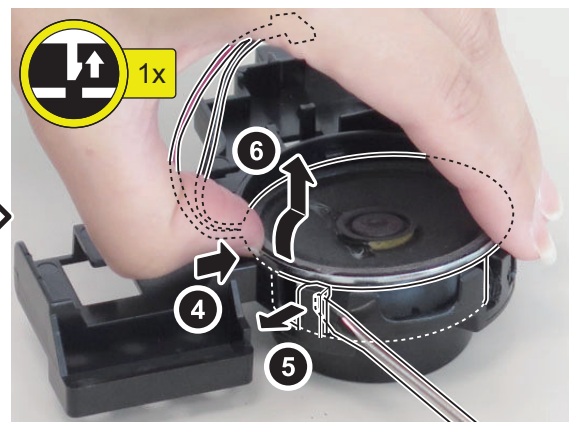
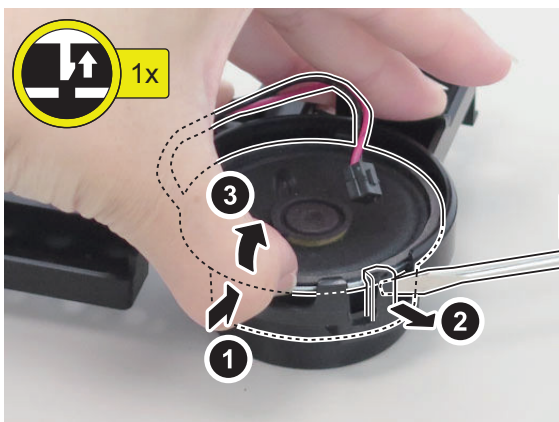
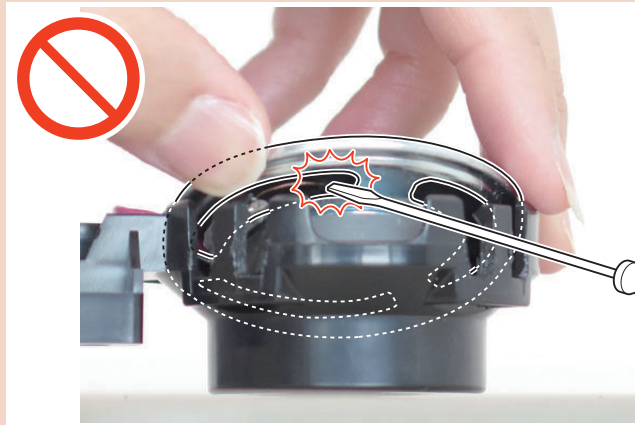
# 2.



## 3.

**CAUTION:**

When releasing the claws using a flat-blade screwdriver, be sure not to damage the speaker.



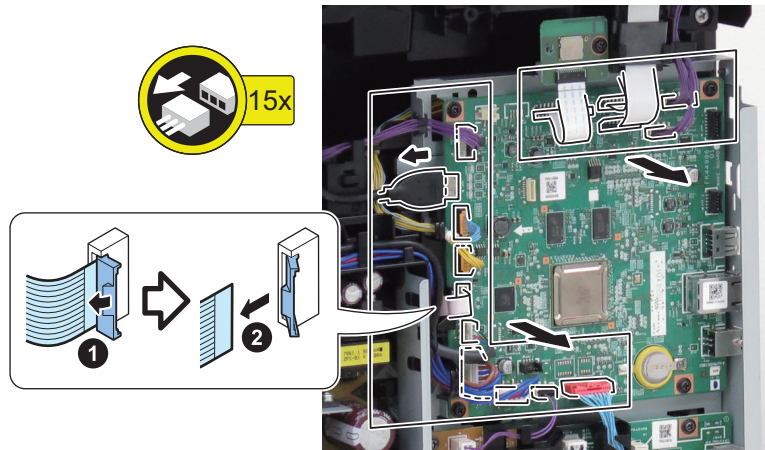
## ● Removing the Main Controller PCB

### ■ Preparation

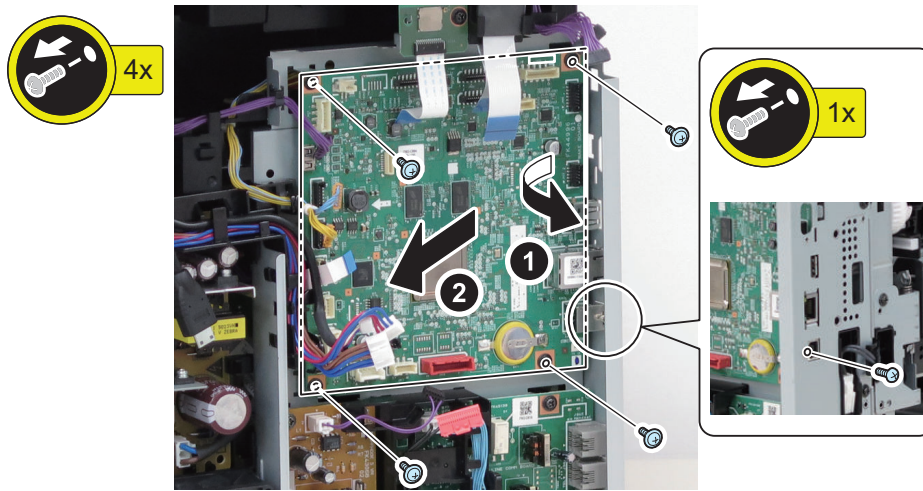
1. "Before Replacing the Main Controller PCB" on page 186
2. "Removing the Rear Door Unit" on page 94
3. Remove the cassette
4. "Removing the Cartridge" on page 97
5. "Removing the Right Cover Unit" on page 98
6. "Removing the Speaker" on page 143

■ Procedure

1.

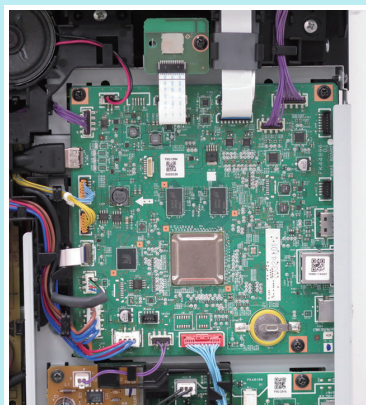


2.



**NOTE:**

The completed assembly of the Main Controller PCB is shown below.



3. "After Replacing the Main Controller PCB" on page 186

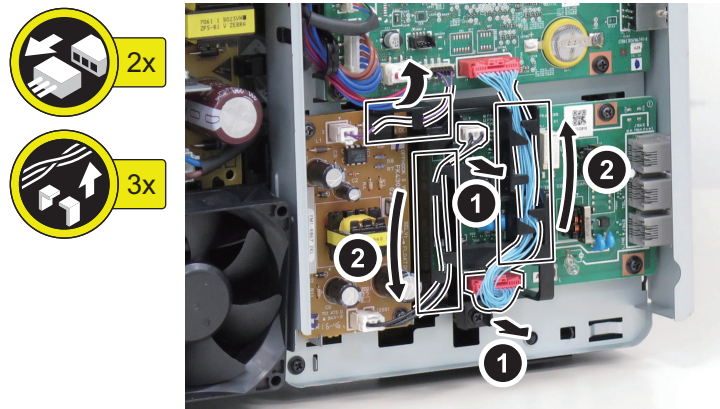
## Removing the NCU PCB

### Preparation

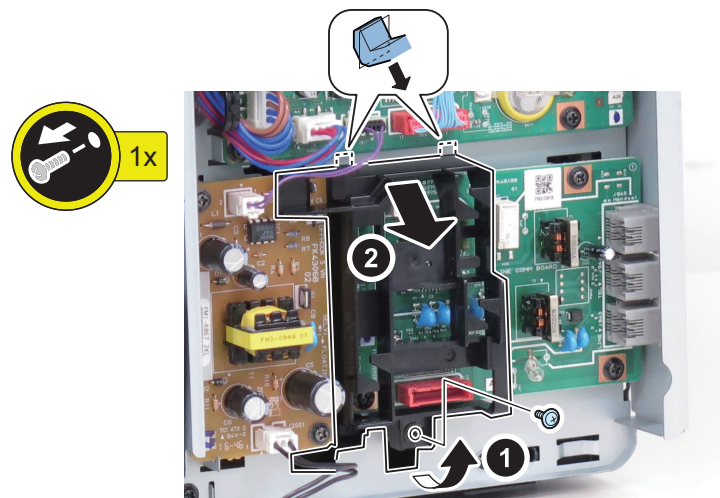
1. "Removing the Rear Door Unit" on page 94
2. Remove the cassette
3. "Removing the Cartridge" on page 97
4. "Removing the Right Cover Unit" on page 98

### Procedure

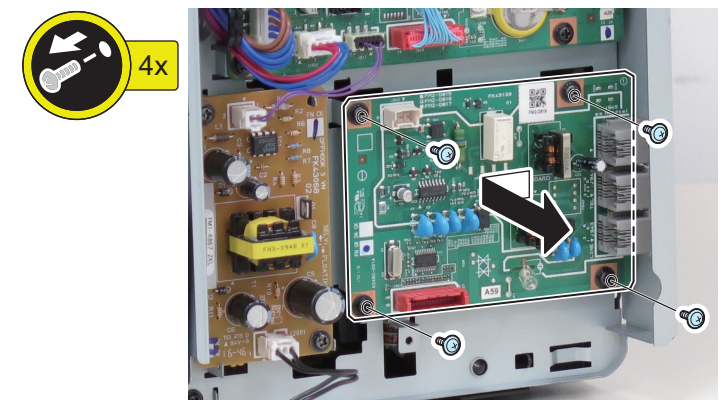
1.



2.



3.



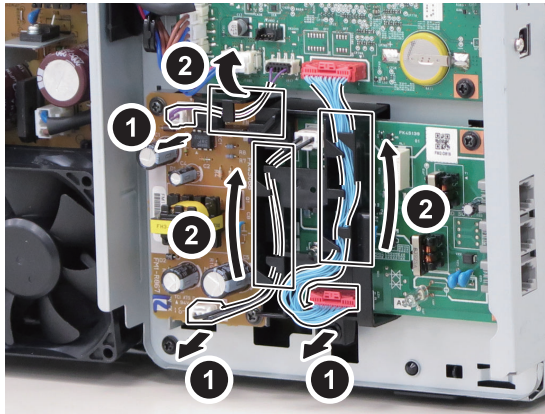
## Removing the Off-hook PCB

### Preparation

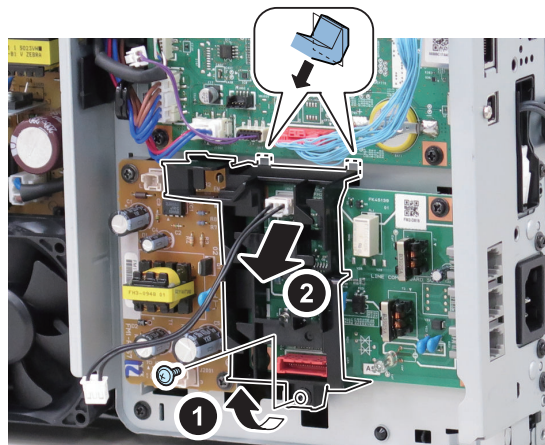
1. "Removing the Rear Door Unit" on page 94
2. Remove the cassette
3. "Removing the Cartridge" on page 97
4. "Removing the Right Cover Unit" on page 98

### Procedure

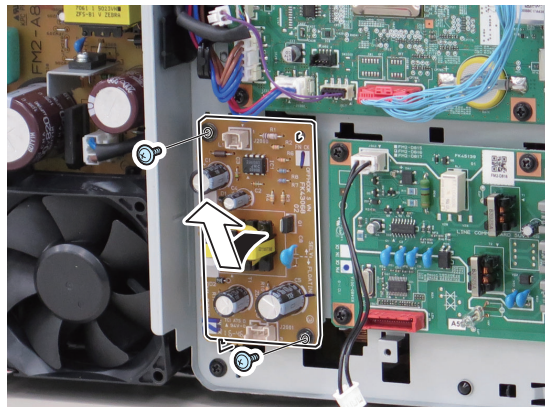
1.



2.



3.



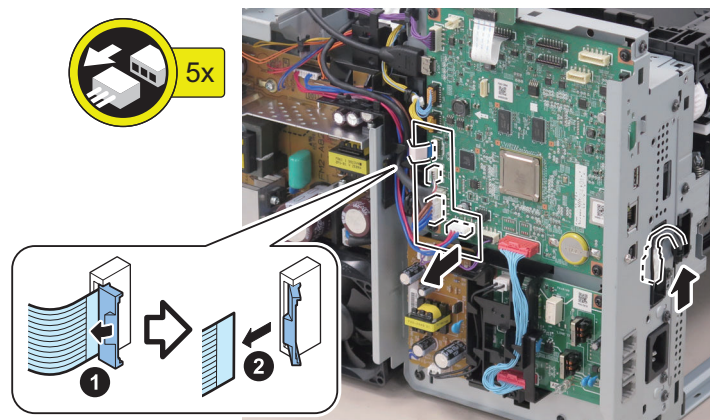
## Removing the Controller Box

### Preparation

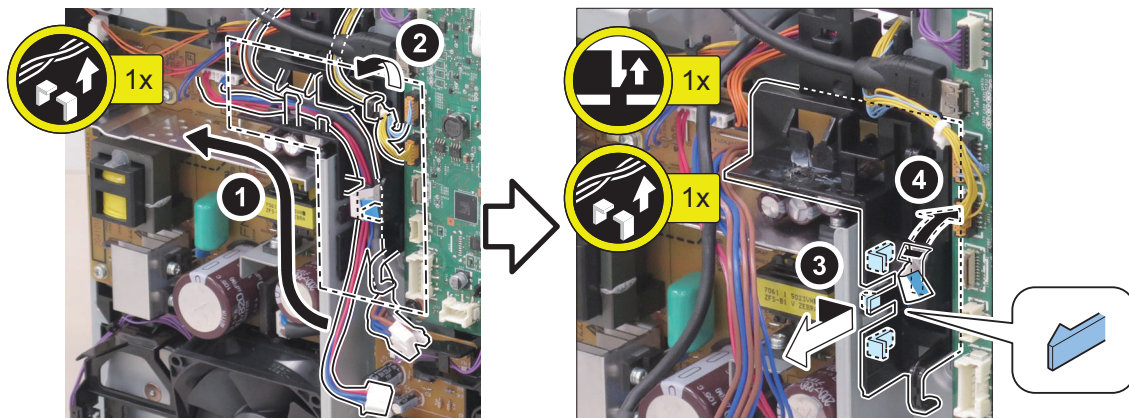
1. "Removing the Rear Door Unit" on page 94
2. Remove the cassette
3. "Removing the Cartridge" on page 97
4. "Removing the Right Cover Unit" on page 98
5. "Removing the Left Cover Unit" on page 105
6. "Removing the Rear Top Cover" on page 109
7. "Removing the ADF Unit + Reader Unit" on page 118
8. "Removing the Control Panel Unit" on page 156
9. "Removing the Right Front Cover" on page 111
10. "Removing the USB Cover" on page 110
11. "Removing the Speaker" on page 143
12. "Removing the Upper Cover Unit" on page 111

### Procedure

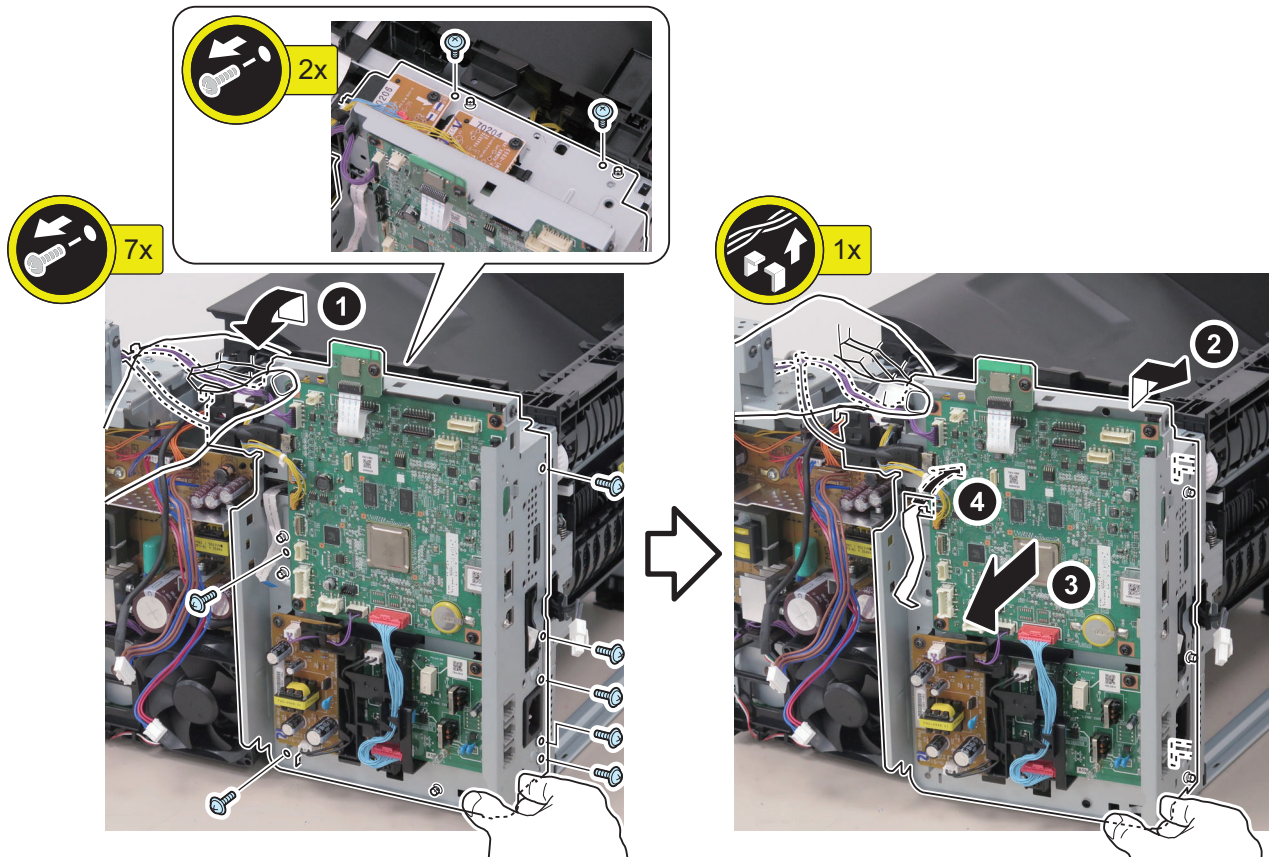
1.



2.



## 3.



## ● Removing the DC Controller PCB

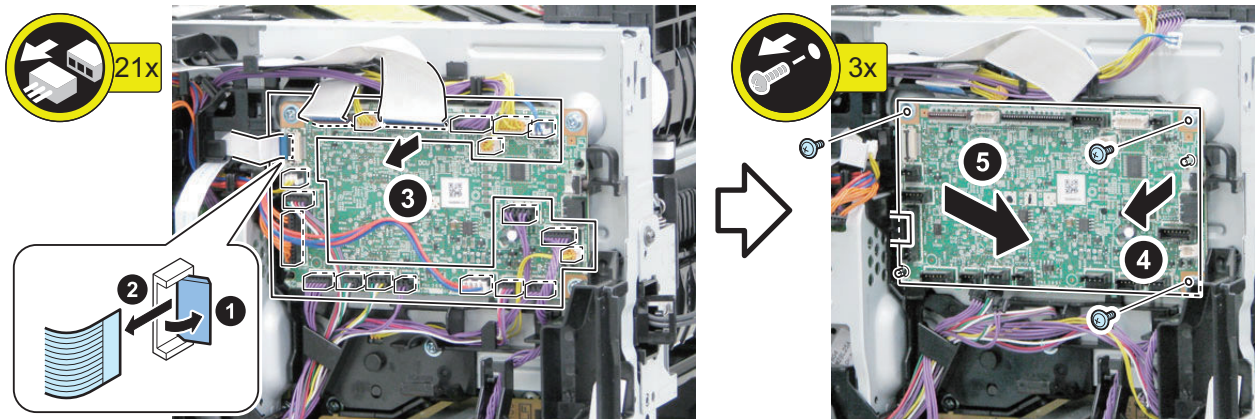
### ■ Preparation

1. "Removing the Rear Door Unit" on page 94
2. Remove the cassette
3. "Removing the Cartridge" on page 97
4. "Removing the Right Cover Unit" on page 98
5. "Removing the Left Cover Unit" on page 105
6. "Removing the Rear Top Cover" on page 109
7. "Removing the ADF Unit + Reader Unit" on page 118
8. "Removing the Control Panel Unit" on page 156
9. "Removing the Right Front Cover" on page 111
10. "Removing the USB Cover" on page 110
11. "Removing the Speaker" on page 143
12. "Removing the Upper Cover Unit" on page 111
13. "Removing the Controller Box" on page 149



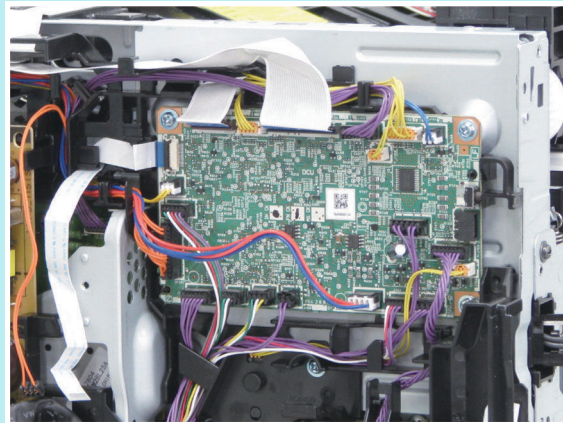
## ■ Procedure

# 1.



### NOTE:

The completed assembly of the DC Controller PCB is shown below.



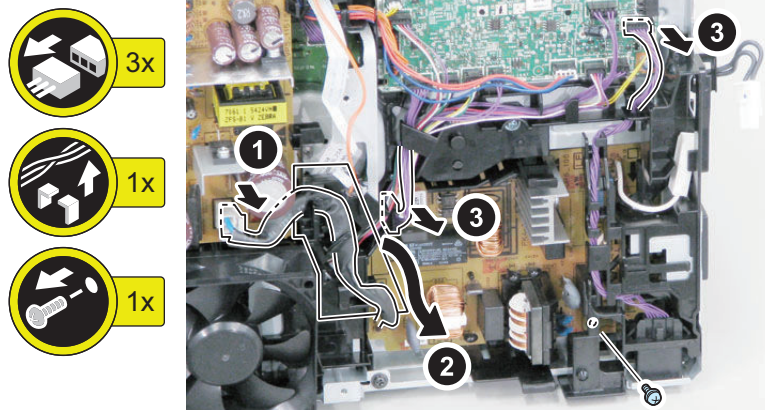
## ● Removing the Fixing Power Supply PCB

### ■ Preparation

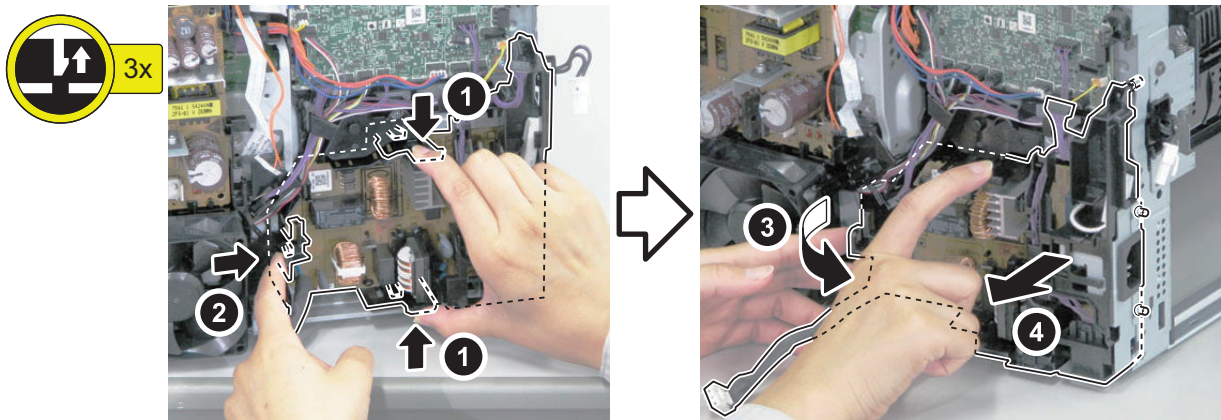
1. "Removing the Rear Door Unit" on page 94
2. Remove the cassette
3. "Removing the Cartridge" on page 97
4. "Removing the Right Cover Unit" on page 98
5. "Removing the Left Cover Unit" on page 105
6. "Removing the Rear Top Cover" on page 109
7. "Removing the ADF Unit + Reader Unit" on page 118
8. "Removing the Control Panel Unit" on page 156
9. "Removing the Right Front Cover" on page 111
10. "Removing the USB Cover" on page 110
11. "Removing the Speaker" on page 143
12. "Removing the Upper Cover Unit" on page 111
13. "Removing the Controller Box" on page 149

■ Procedure

1.



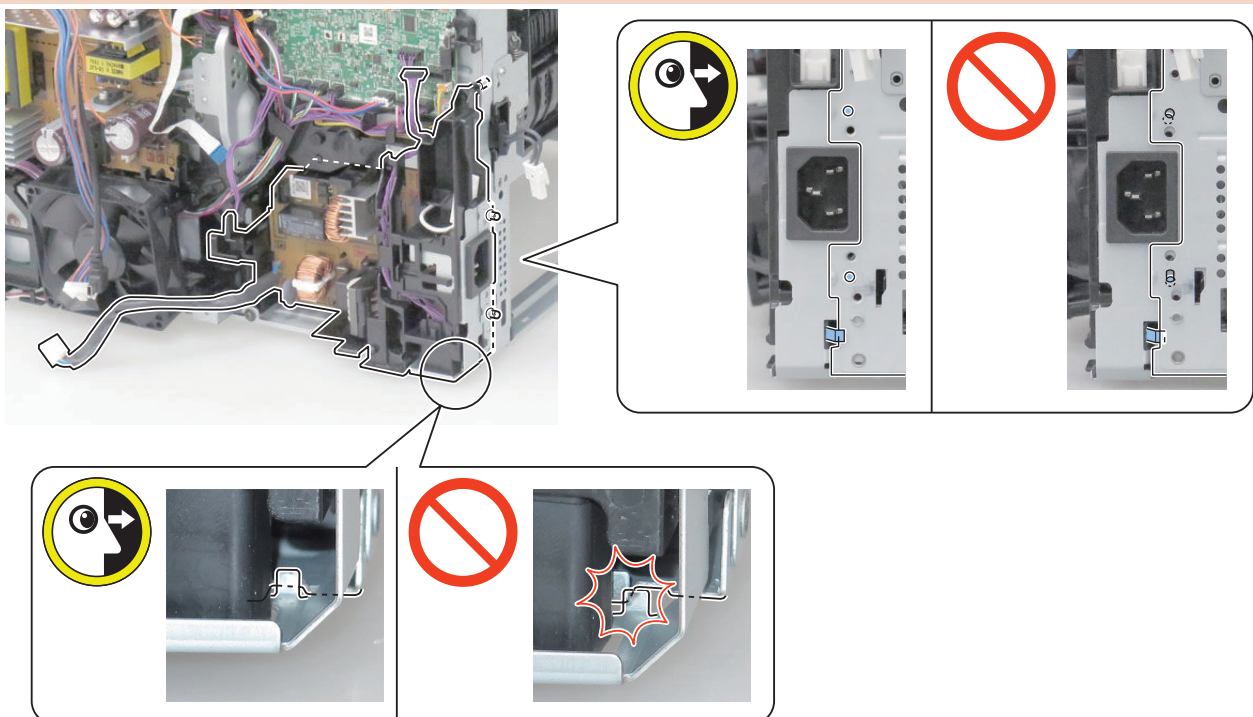
2.



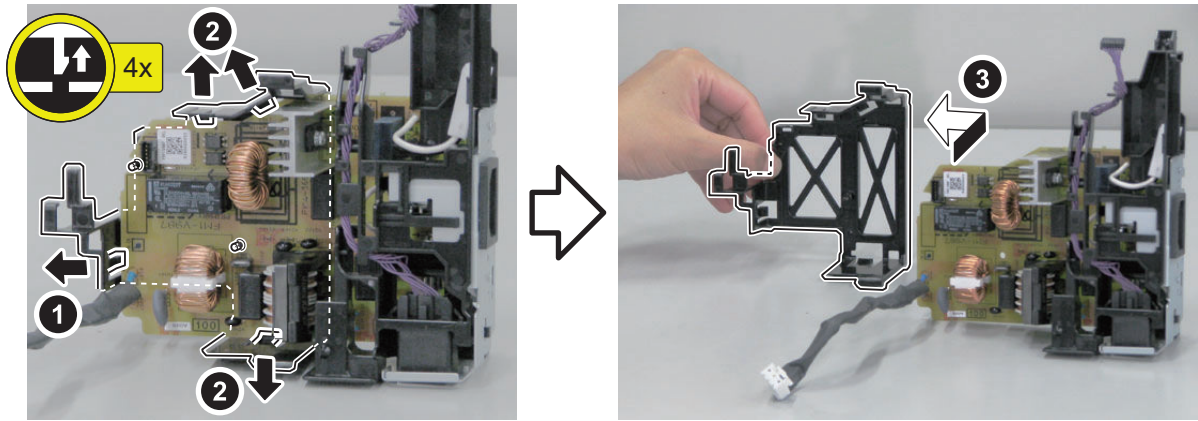
**CAUTION:**

Points to Note at Installation

Be sure to check that the hook on the side and the hook shown in the figure are fitted properly.



3.



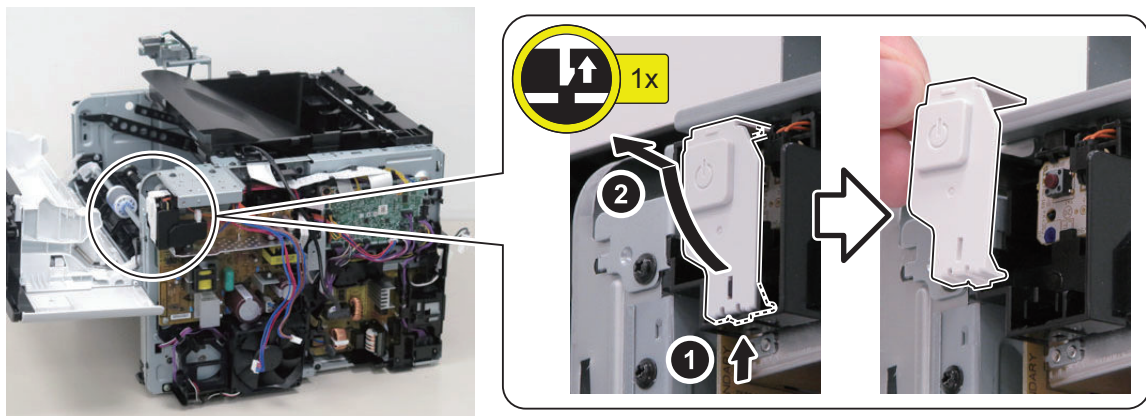
## ● Removing the Low Voltage Power Supply Unit

### ■ Preparation

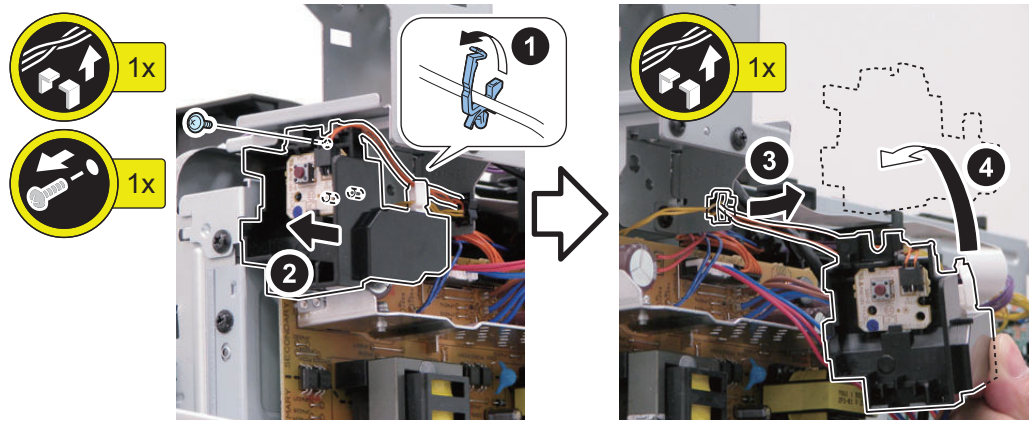
1. "Removing the Rear Door Unit" on page 94
2. Remove the cassette
3. "Removing the Cartridge" on page 97
4. "Removing the Right Cover Unit" on page 98
5. "Removing the Left Cover Unit" on page 105
6. "Removing the Rear Top Cover" on page 109
7. "Removing the ADF Unit + Reader Unit" on page 118
8. "Removing the Control Panel Unit" on page 156
9. "Removing the Right Front Cover" on page 111
10. "Removing the USB Cover" on page 110
11. "Removing the Speaker" on page 143
12. "Removing the Upper Cover Unit" on page 111
13. "Removing the Controller Box" on page 149

### ■ Procedure

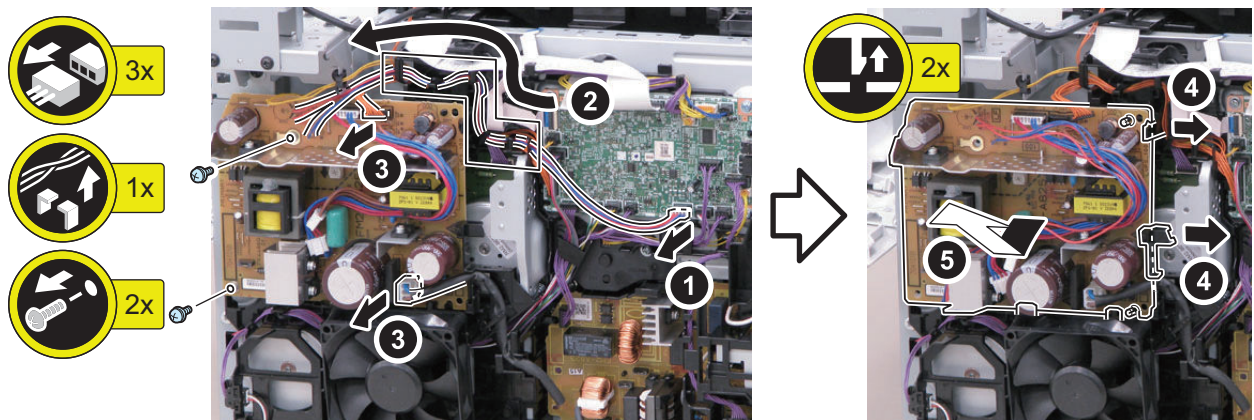
1.



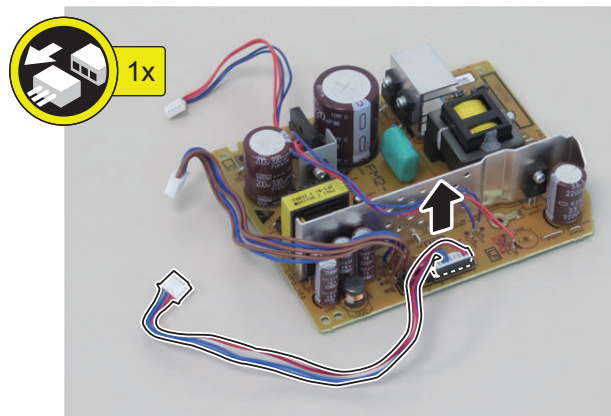
2.



3.



4.



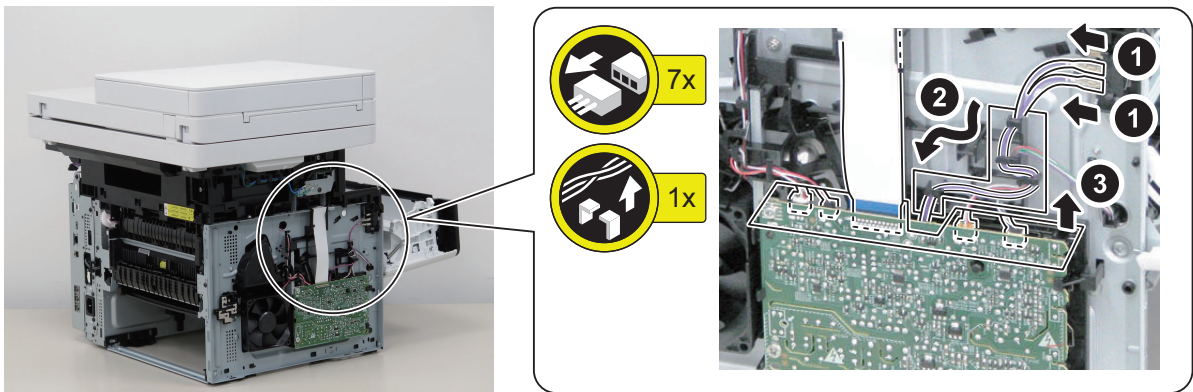
## ● Removing the High Voltage Power Supply PCB

### ■ Preparation

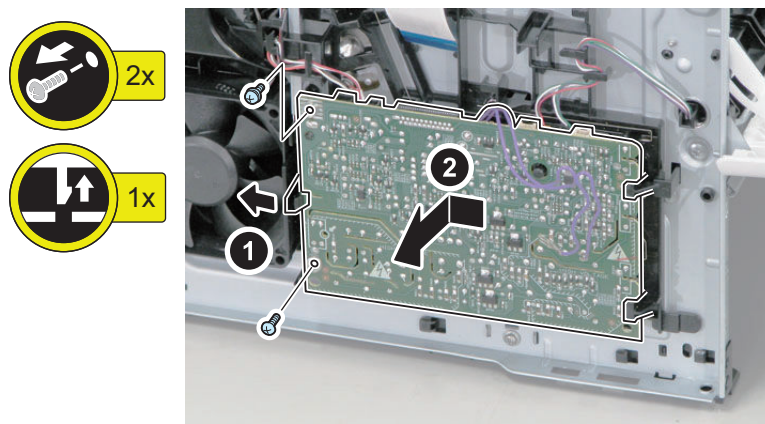
1. "Removing the Rear Door Unit" on page 94
2. Remove the cassette
3. "Removing the Cartridge" on page 97
4. "Removing the Left Cover Unit" on page 105

■ Procedure

1.

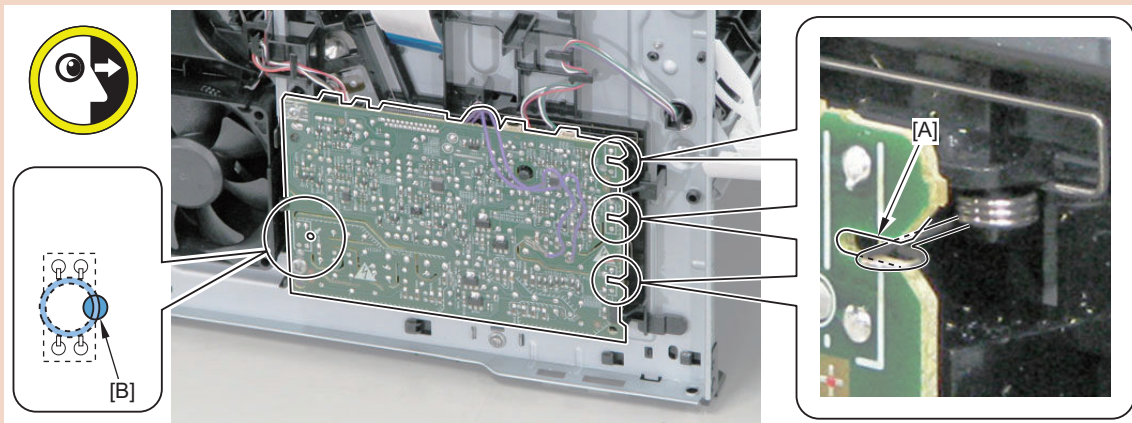


2.



**CAUTION:**

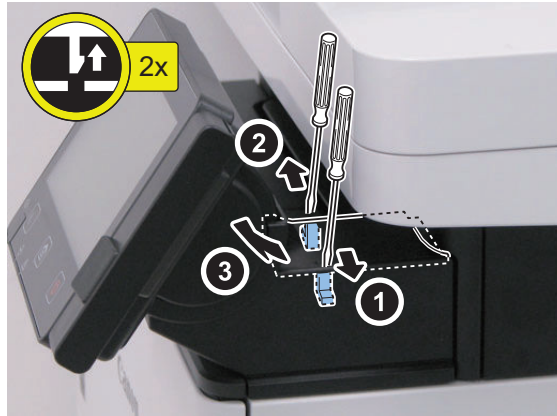
When installing the PCB, check that the Contact Springs are fitted in the 3 grooves [A] of the High Voltage Power Supply PCB and the Contact Spring is visible through the hole [B].



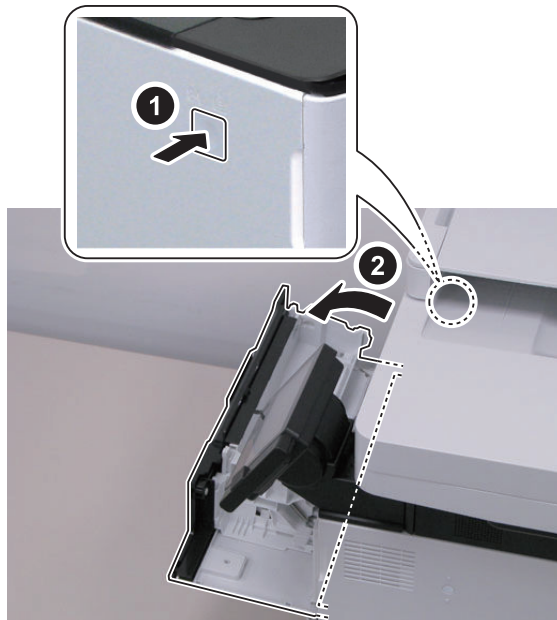
## ● Removing the Control Panel Unit

### ■ Procedure

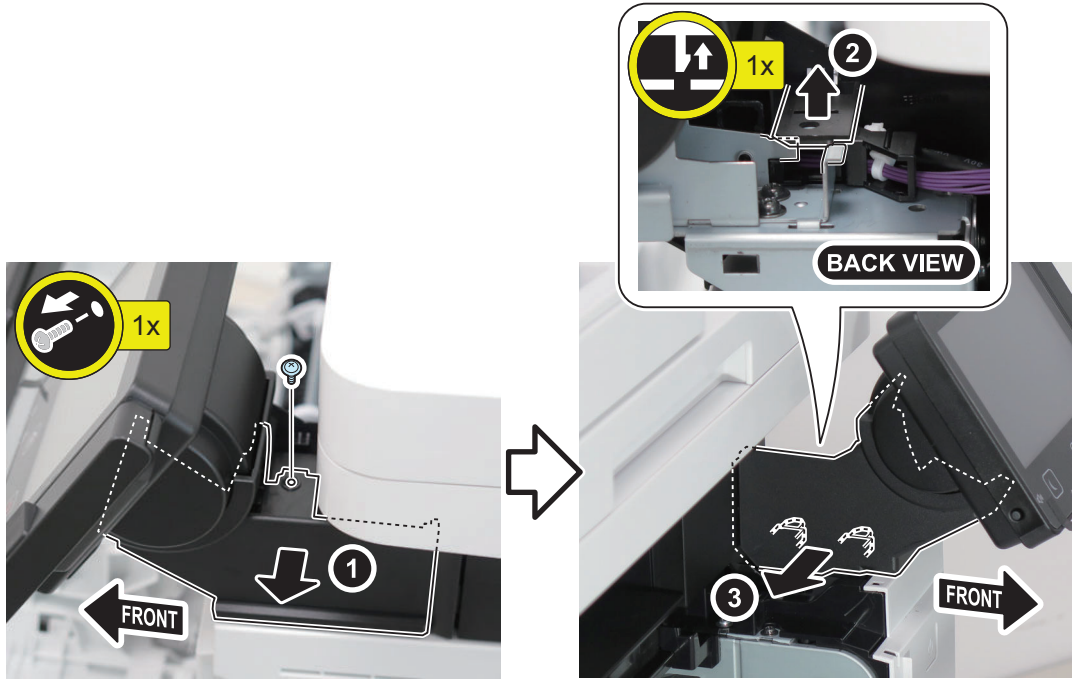
1.



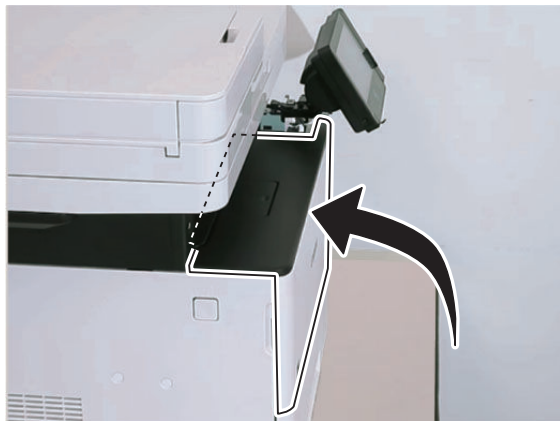
2.



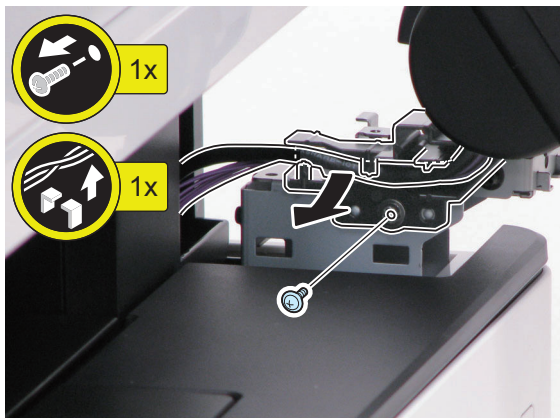
3.



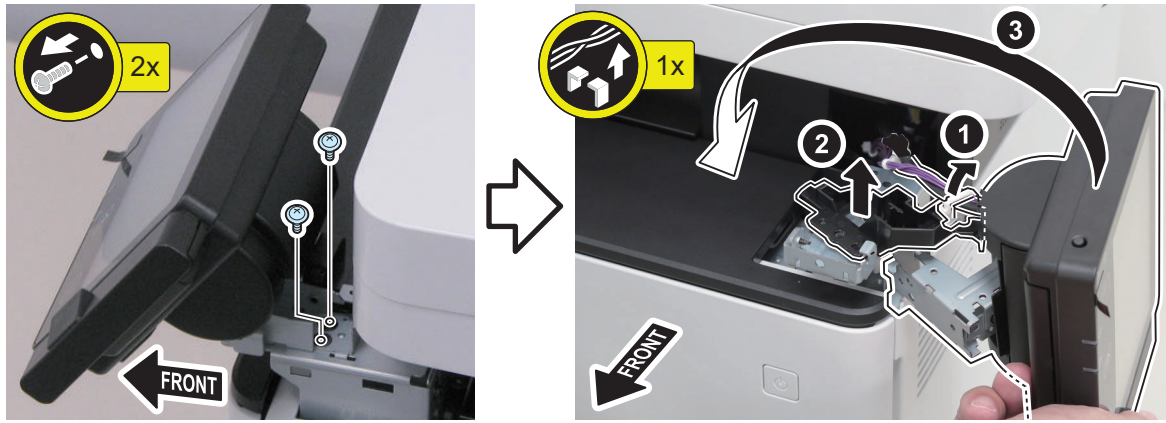
4.



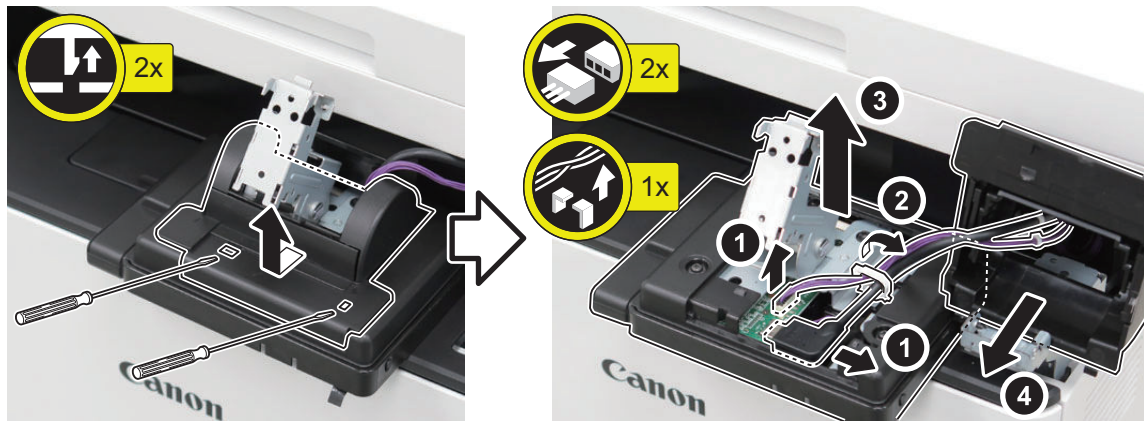
5.



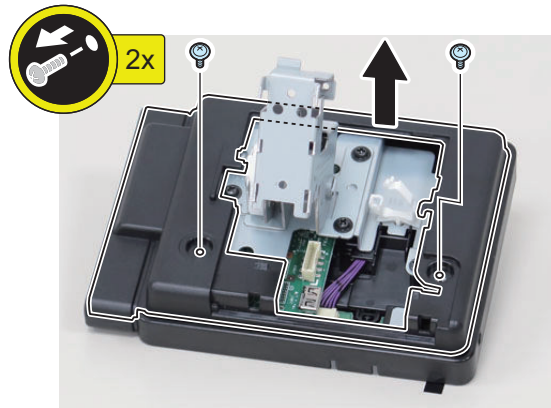
6.



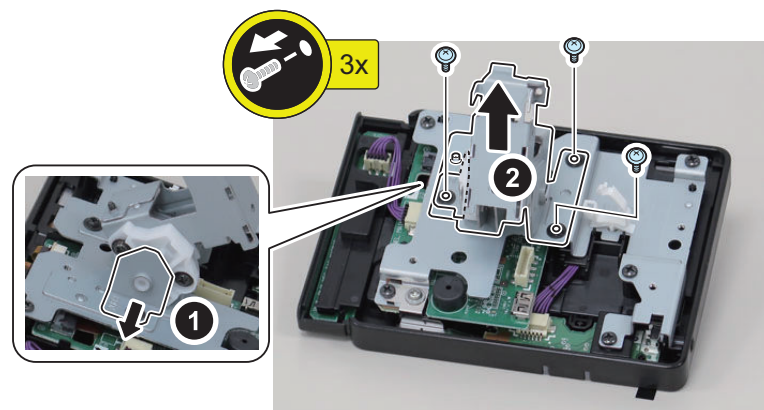
7.



8.



9.



10. "After Replacing the Control Panel" on page 186



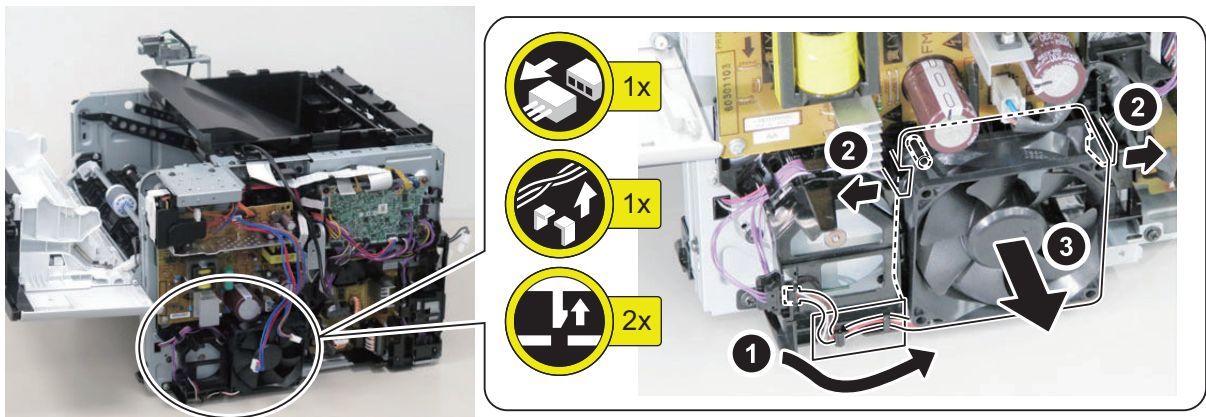
## ● Removing the Main Fan

### ■ Preparation

1. "Removing the Rear Door Unit" on page 94
2. Remove the cassette
3. "Removing the Cartridge" on page 97
4. "Removing the Right Cover Unit" on page 98
5. "Removing the Left Cover Unit" on page 105
6. "Removing the Rear Top Cover" on page 109
7. "Removing the ADF Unit + Reader Unit" on page 118
8. "Removing the Control Panel Unit" on page 156
9. "Removing the Right Front Cover" on page 111
10. "Removing the USB Cover" on page 110
11. "Removing the Speaker" on page 143
12. "Removing the Upper Cover Unit" on page 111
13. "Removing the Controller Box" on page 149

### ■ Procedure

1.



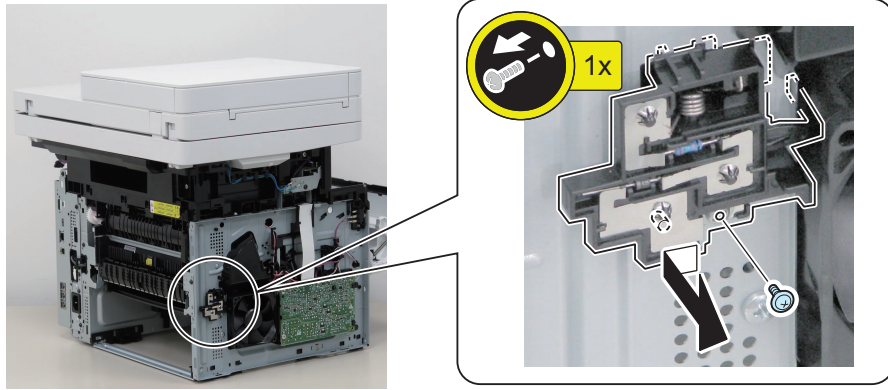
## ● Removing the Sub Fan

### ■ Preparation

1. "Removing the Rear Door Unit" on page 94
2. Remove the cassette
3. "Removing the Cartridge" on page 97
4. "Removing the Left Cover Unit" on page 105

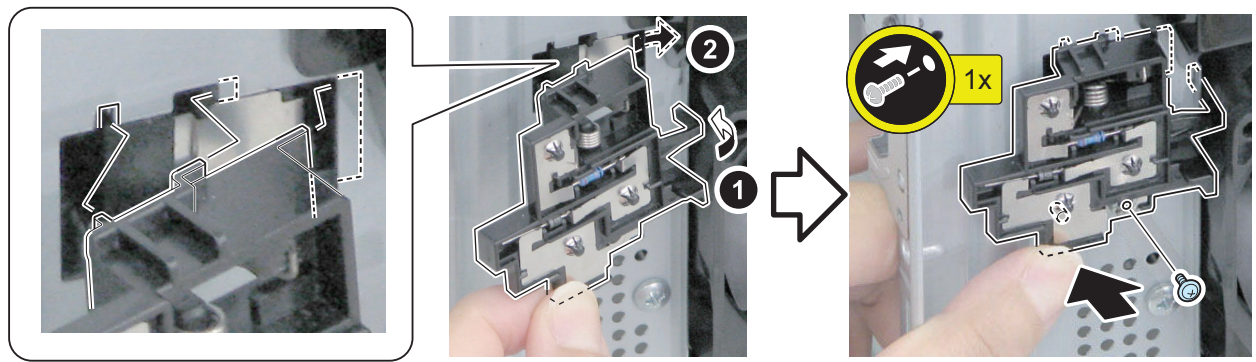
■ Procedure

1.

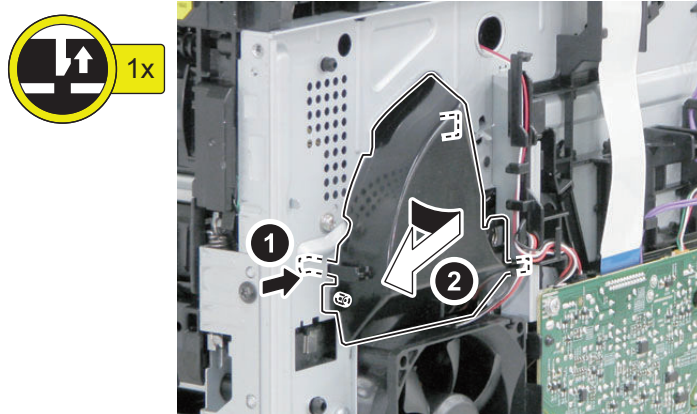


**NOTE:**

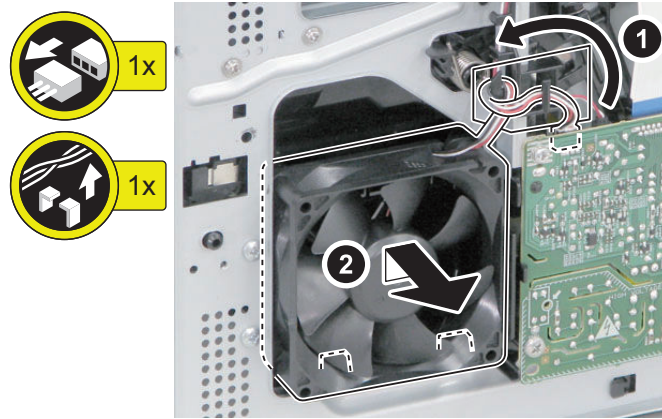
When installing the Bias Unit, be sure to insert the 3 hooks and install the screw while pressing the boss.



2.



3.



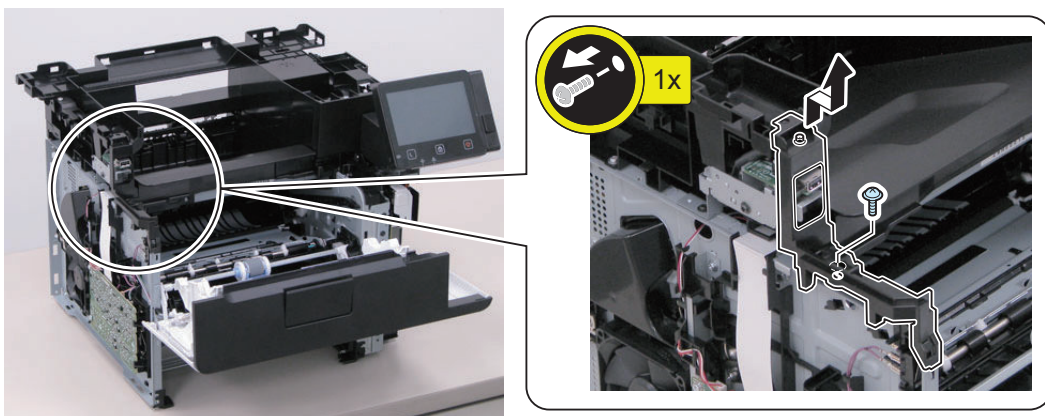
## Removing the USB PCB

### Preparation

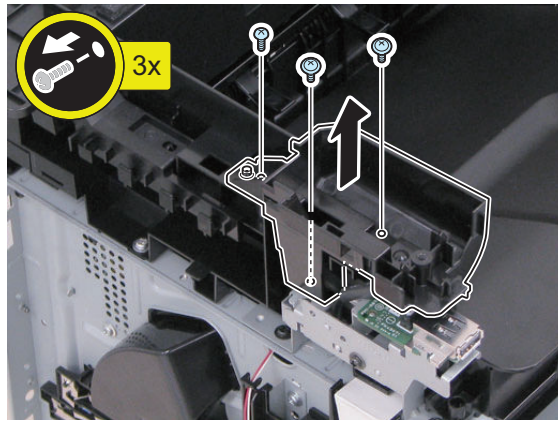
1. "Removing the Rear Door Unit" on page 94
2. Remove the cassette
3. "Removing the Cartridge" on page 97
4. "Removing the Right Cover Unit" on page 98
5. "Removing the Left Cover Unit" on page 105
6. "Removing the Rear Top Cover" on page 109
7. "Removing the ADF Unit + Reader Unit" on page 118
8. "Removing the Control Panel Unit" on page 156
9. "Removing the Right Front Cover" on page 111
10. "Removing the USB Cover" on page 110

### Procedure

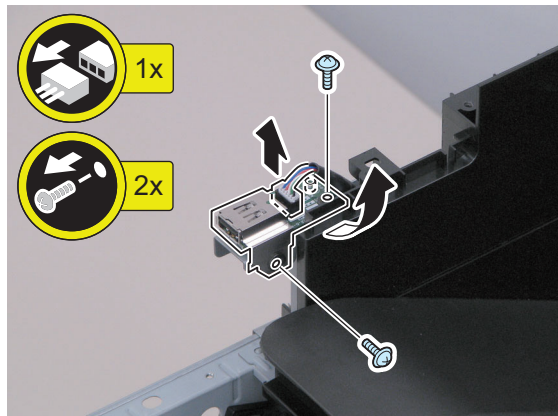
1.



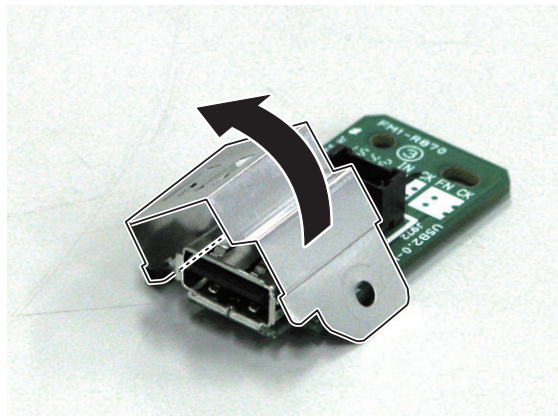
2.



3.



4.



## ● Removing the Power Switch Unit

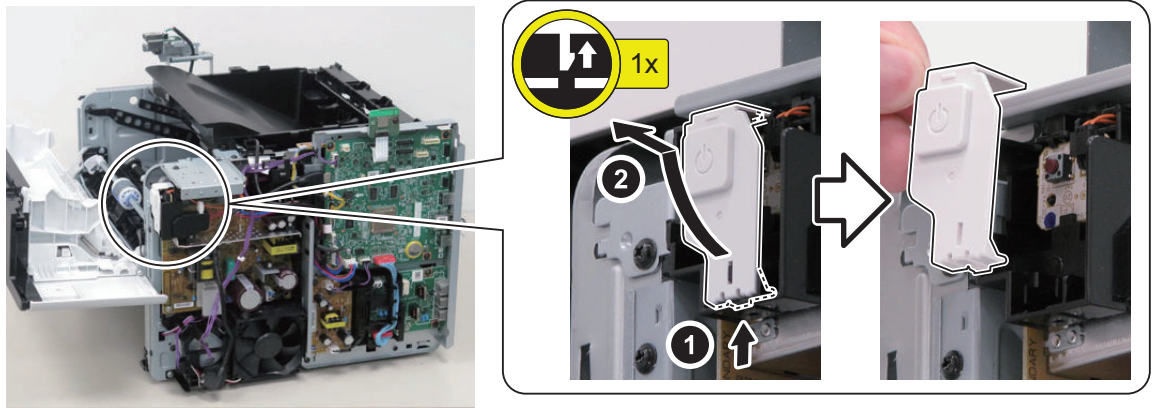
### ■ Preparation

1. "Removing the Rear Door Unit" on page 94
2. Remove the cassette
3. "Removing the Cartridge" on page 97
4. "Removing the Right Cover Unit" on page 98
5. "Removing the Left Cover Unit" on page 105
6. "Removing the Rear Top Cover" on page 109
7. "Removing the ADF Unit + Reader Unit" on page 118

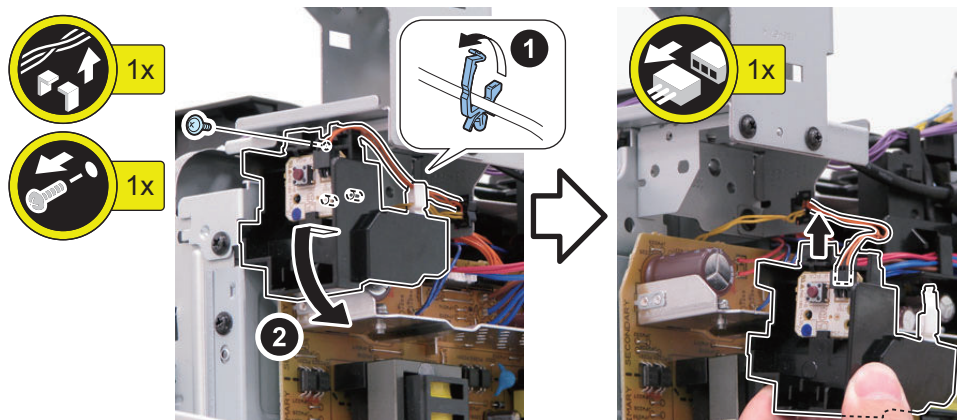
- 8. "Removing the Control Panel Unit" on page 156
- 9. "Removing the Right Front Cover" on page 111
- 10. "Removing the USB Cover" on page 110
- 11. "Removing the Speaker" on page 143
- 12. "Removing the Upper Cover Unit" on page 111

■ Procedure

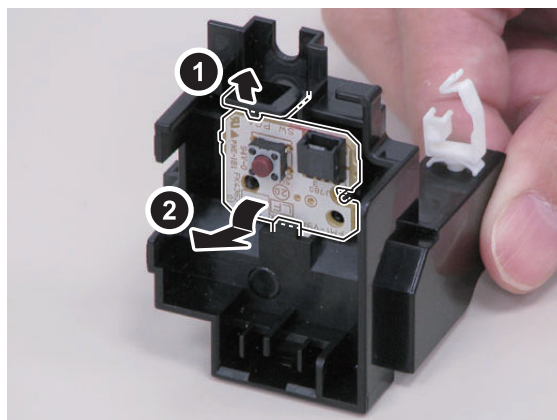
1.



2.



3.



## Laser Exposure System

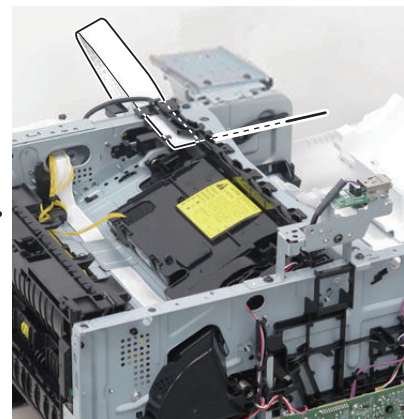
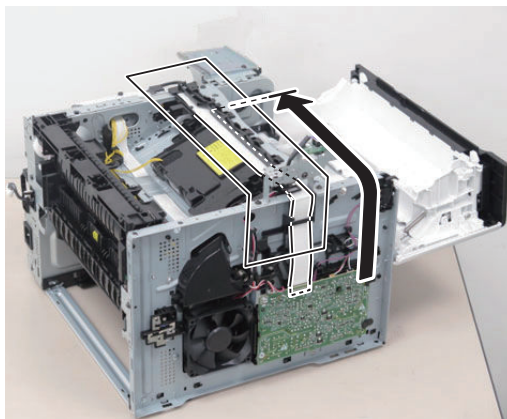
### Removing the Laser Scanner Unit

#### Preparation

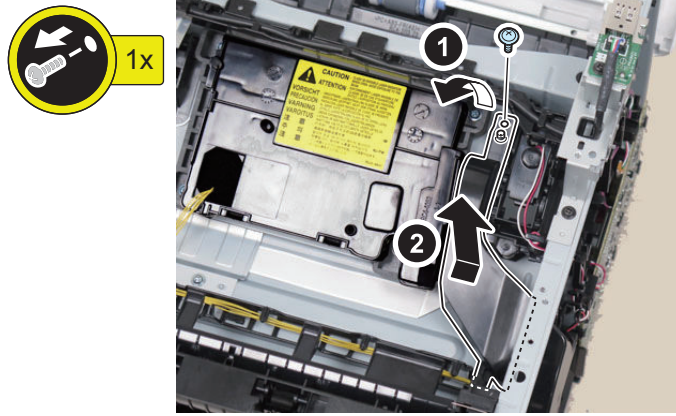
1. "Removing the Rear Door Unit" on page 94
2. Remove the cassette
3. "Removing the Cartridge" on page 97
4. "Removing the Right Cover Unit" on page 98
5. "Removing the Left Cover Unit" on page 105
6. "Removing the Rear Top Cover" on page 109
7. "Removing the ADF Unit + Reader Unit" on page 118
8. "Removing the Control Panel Unit" on page 156
9. "Removing the Right Front Cover" on page 111
10. "Removing the USB Cover" on page 110
11. "Removing the Speaker" on page 143
12. "Removing the Upper Cover Unit" on page 111
13. "Removing the Delivery Tray Cover" on page 113
14. "Removing the Controller Box" on page 149

#### Procedure

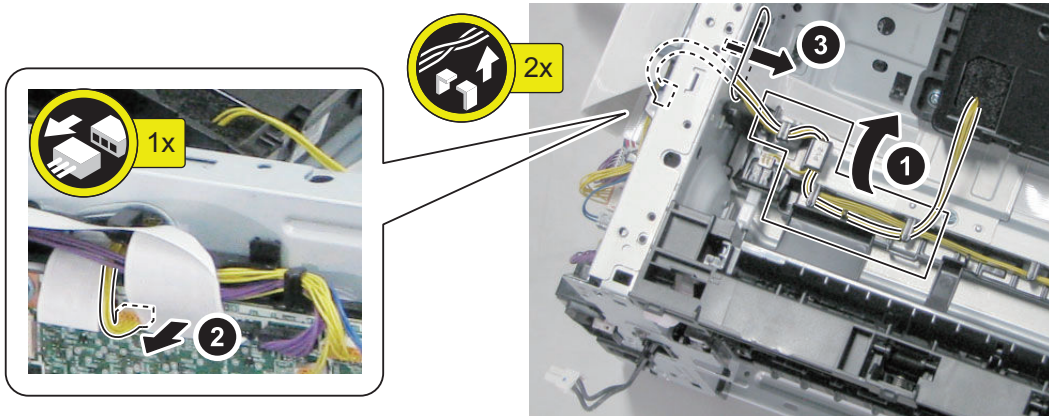
1.



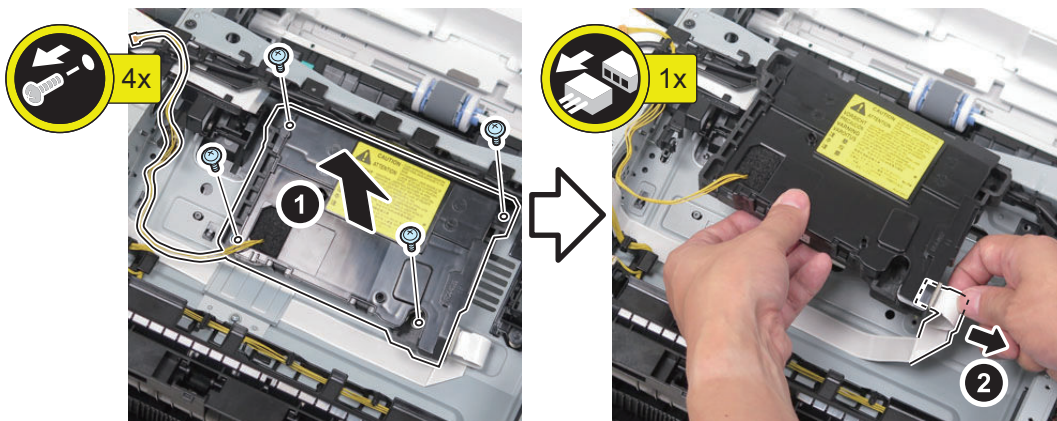
2.



3.



4.



## Image Formation System

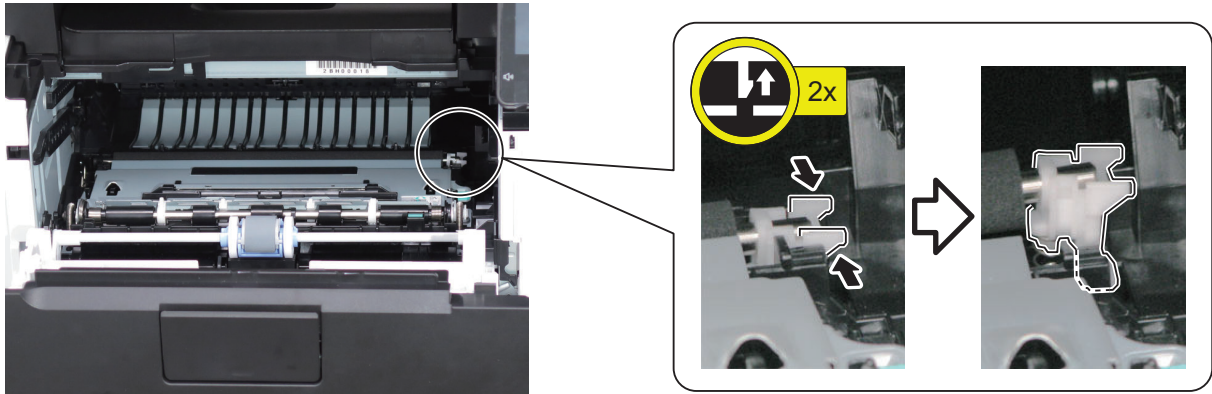
### ● Removing the Transfer Roller Unit

#### ■ Preparation

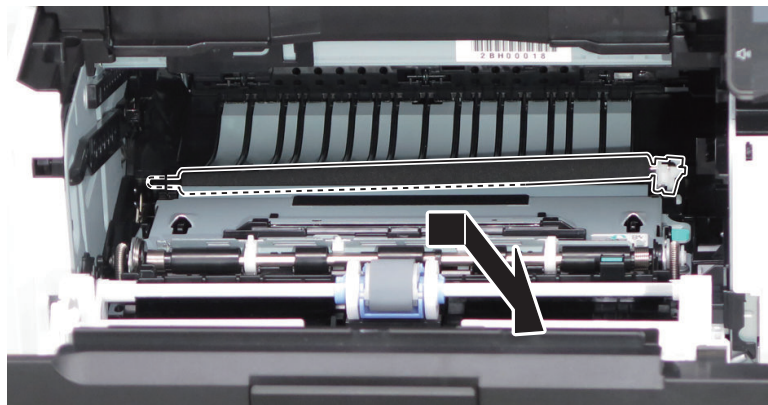
1. "Removing the Cartridge" on page 97

#### ■ Procedure

1.

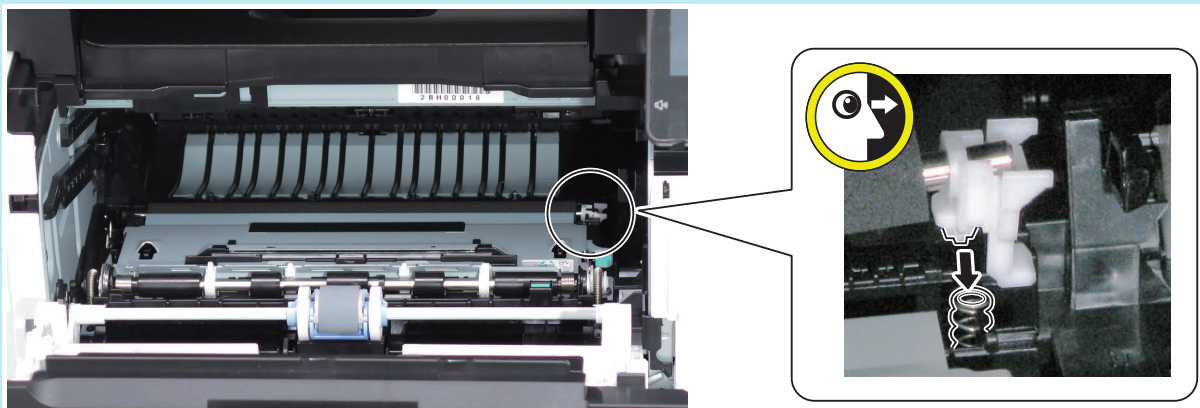


2.



#### NOTE:

Procedure for Installing the Transfer Roller  
Be sure to fit the boss of the bushing to the spring.





## Fixing System

### ● Removing the Fixing Assembly

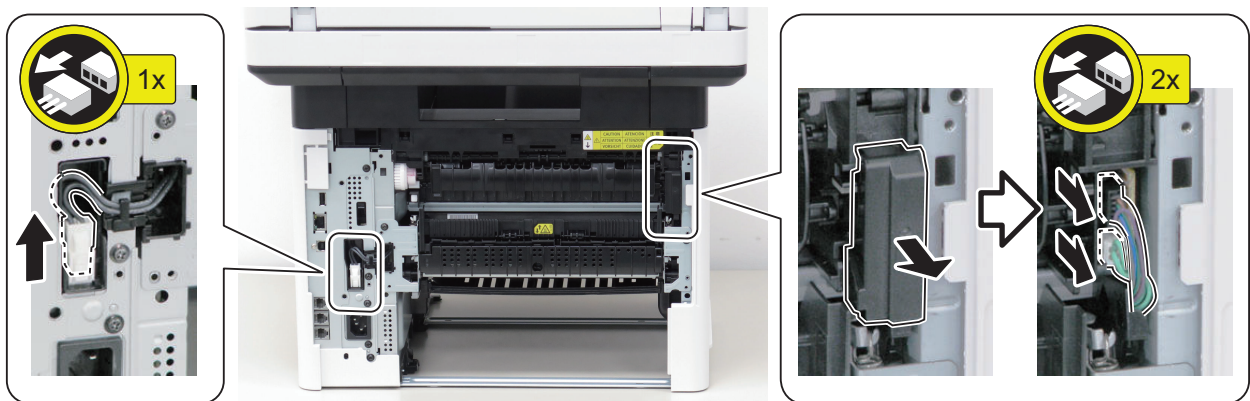
#### ■ Preparation

1. “Removing the Rear Door Unit” on page 94
2. Remove the cassette
3. “Removing the Cartridge” on page 97

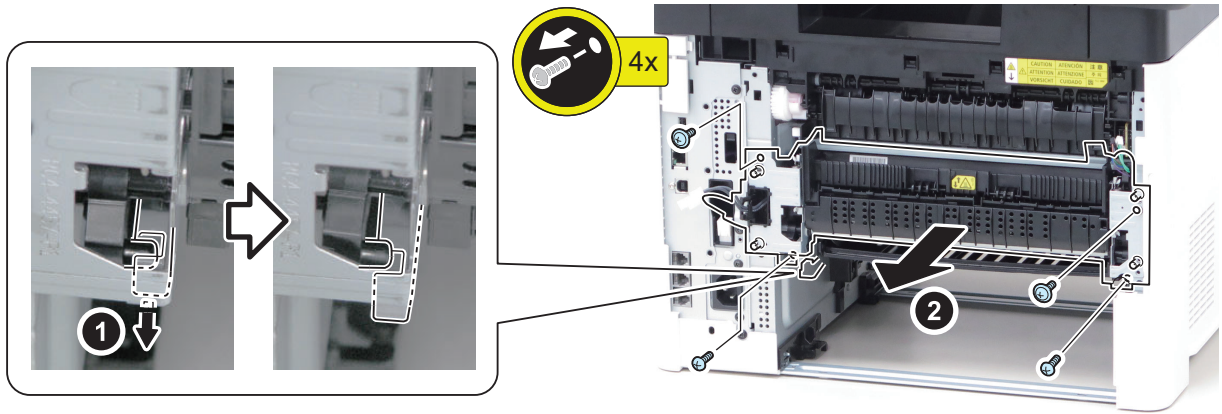
#### ■ Procedure

**CAUTION:**

- Since the Fixing Assembly is hot immediately after the power is turned OFF, give it time to cool down before removing it.
- After removing the cartridge, be sure to close the Cartridge Door Unit.

**1.**

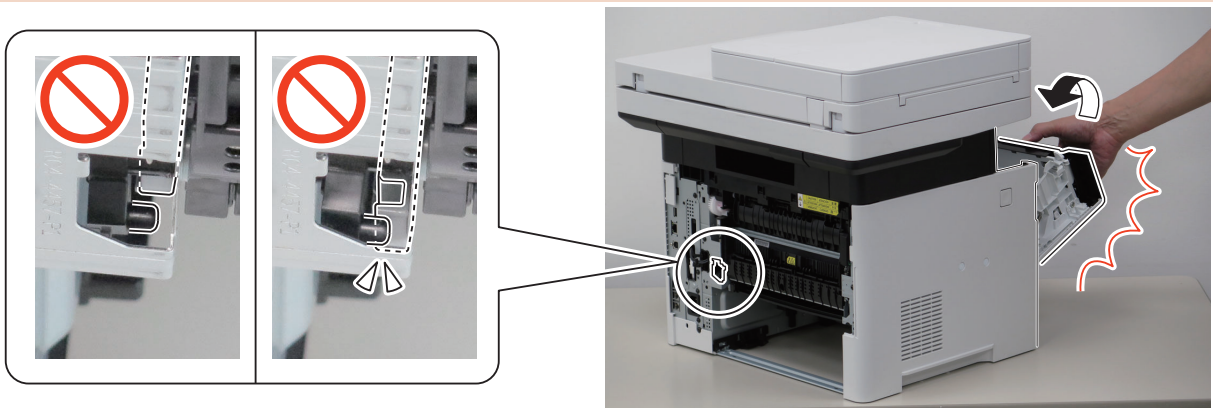
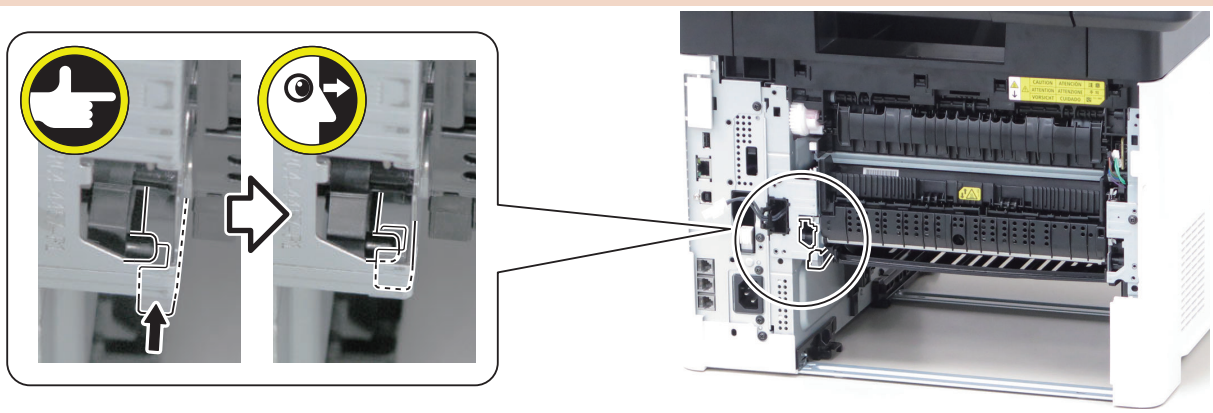
2.



**CAUTION:**

Points to Note when Installing the Link Arm

Be sure to check that the Link Arm is installed properly, otherwise the Cartridge Door Unit cannot be closed.



## Pickup Feed Delivery System

### ● Removing the Registration Unit

#### ■ Preparation

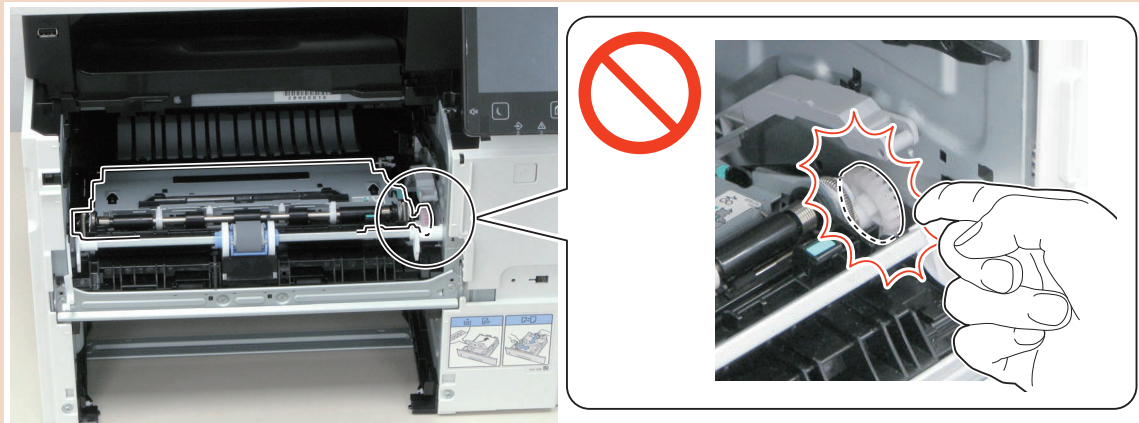
1. “Removing the Rear Door Unit” on page 94
2. Remove the cassette
3. “Removing the Cartridge” on page 97
4. “Removing the Cartridge Door Unit” on page 116

#### ■ Procedure

##### CAUTION:

Do not touch the Gear Unit of the Registration Unit.

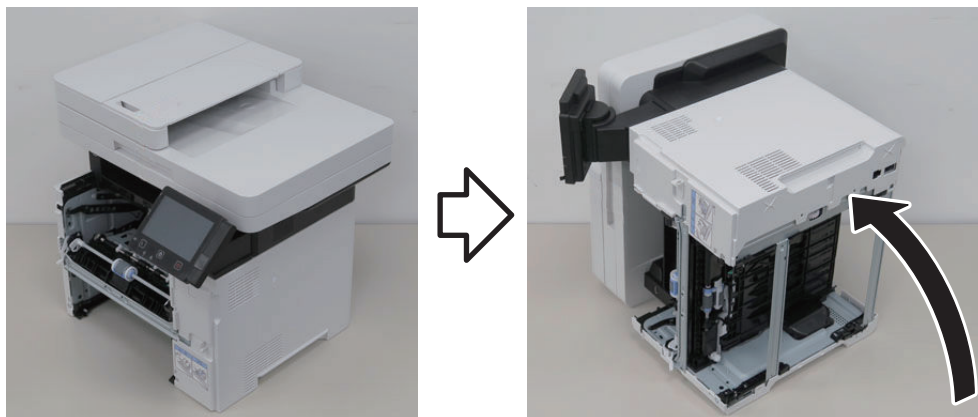
Grease is applied on the Gear Unit. If you have accidentally touched grease, wipe with lint-free paper so as not to smear other parts with your greasy hand.



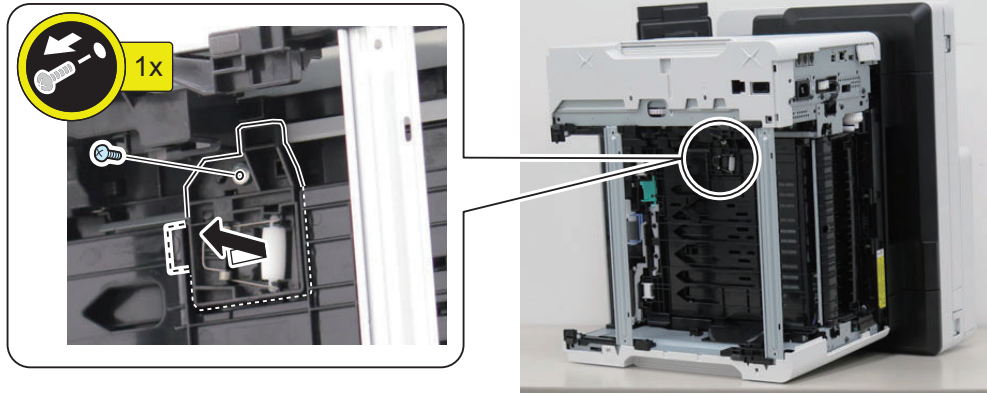
## 1.

##### CAUTION:

When turning over the host machine, make sure that the ADF does not open.

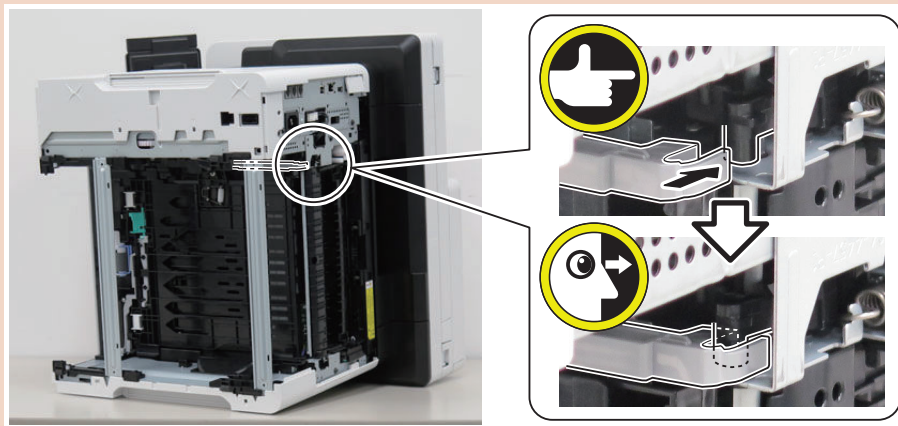


## 2.



**CAUTION:**

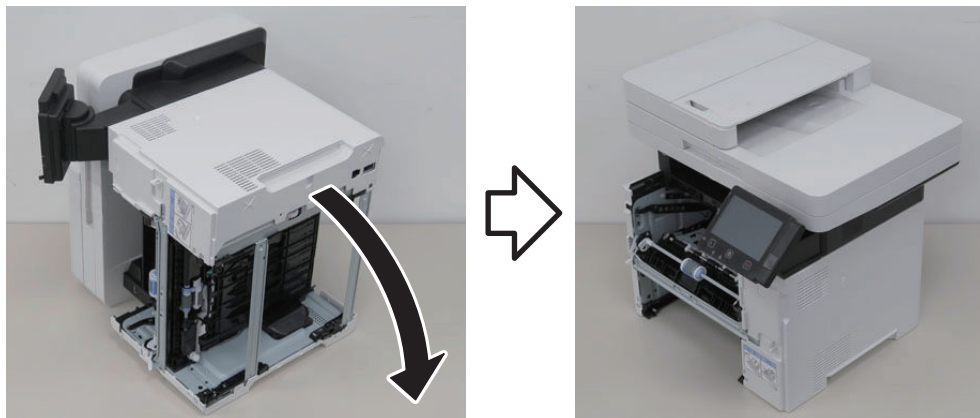
After removing the Cross-feed Roller Guide, caution is required because the Link Arm becomes free and the link with the Fixing Assembly tends to come off easily.



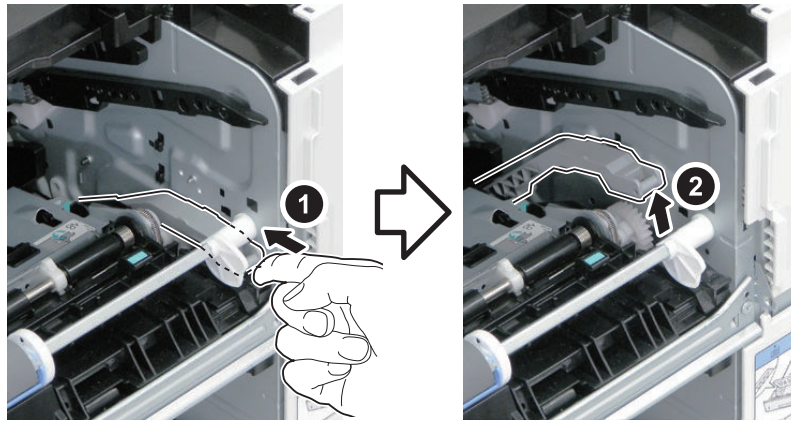
## 3.

**CAUTION:**

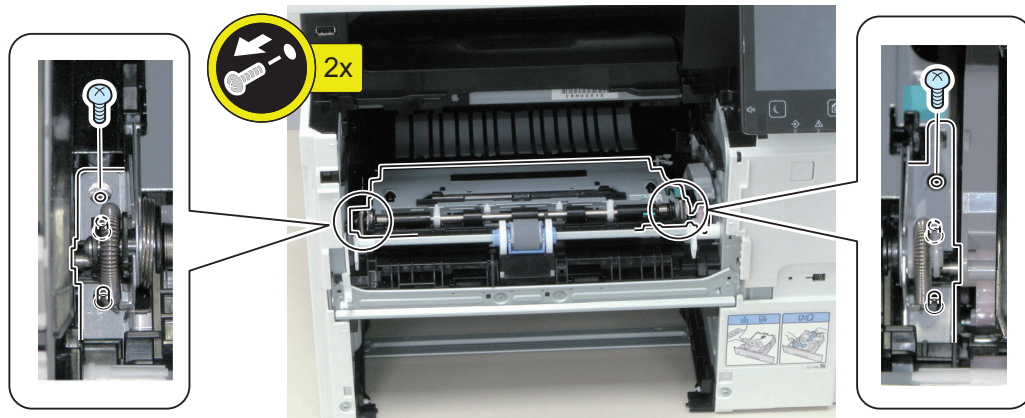
When standing the host machine, make sure that the ADF does not open.



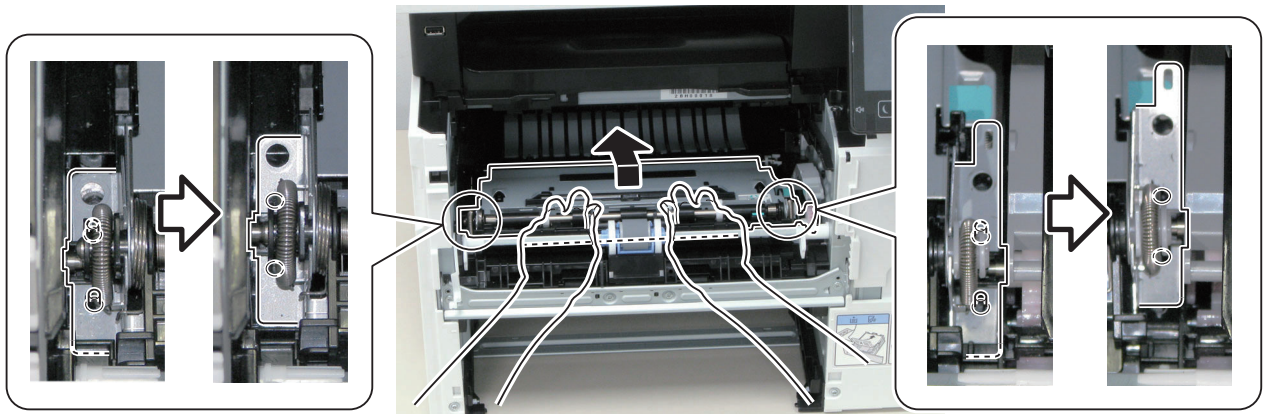
4.



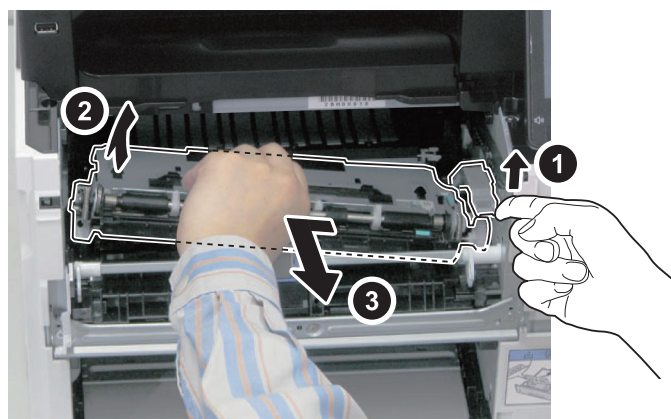
5.



6.



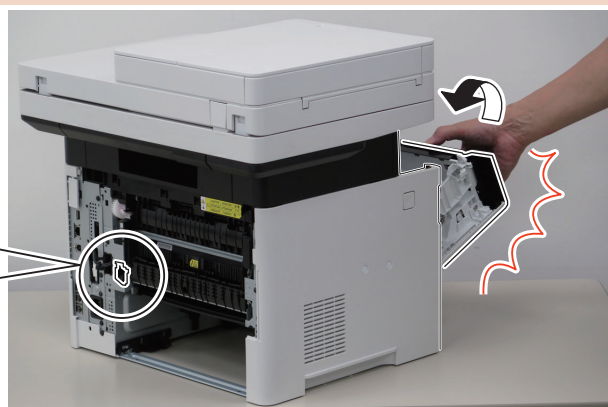
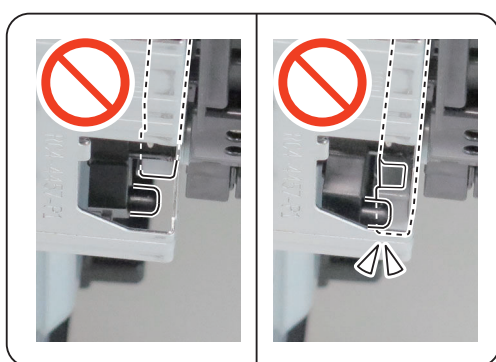
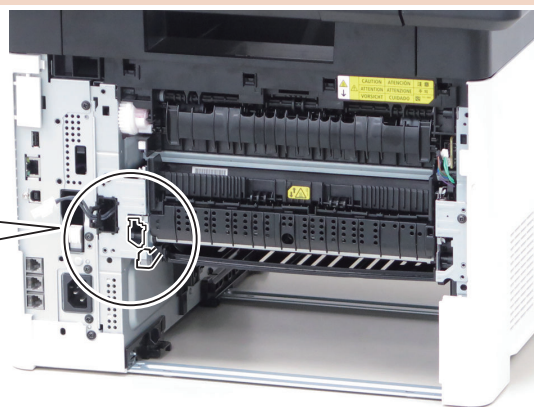
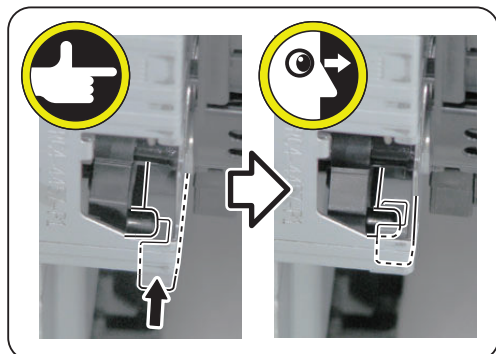
7.



**CAUTION:**

Points to Note when Installing the Link Arm

Be sure to check that the Link Arm is installed properly, otherwise the Cartridge Door Unit cannot be closed.



## ● Removing the Main Motor

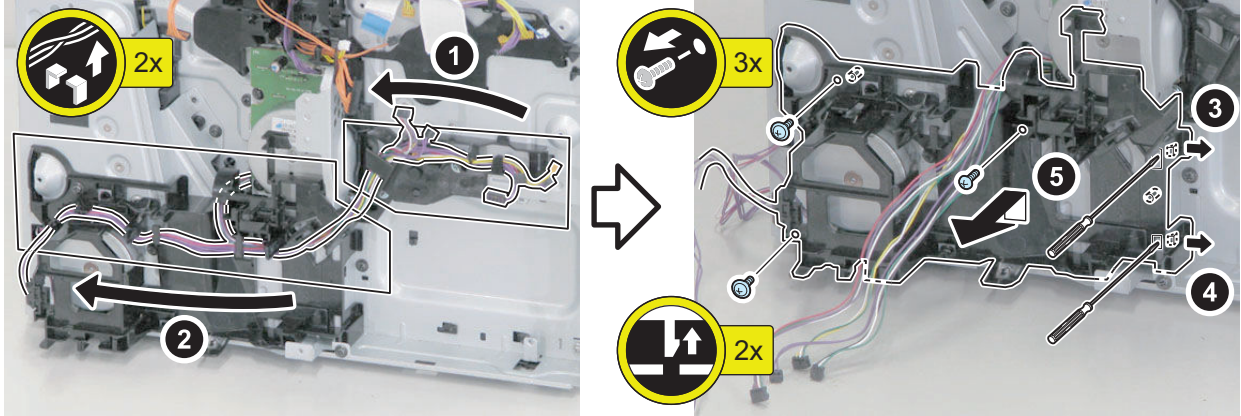
### ■ Preparation

1. "Removing the Rear Door Unit" on page 94
2. Remove the cassette
3. "Removing the Cartridge" on page 97
4. "Removing the Right Cover Unit" on page 98
5. "Removing the Left Cover Unit" on page 105
6. "Removing the Rear Top Cover" on page 109
7. "Removing the ADF Unit + Reader Unit" on page 118
8. "Removing the Control Panel Unit" on page 156
9. "Removing the Right Front Cover" on page 111
10. "Removing the USB Cover" on page 110
11. "Removing the Speaker" on page 143
12. "Removing the Upper Cover Unit" on page 111
13. "Removing the Controller Box" on page 149
14. "Removing the Cartridge Door Unit" on page 116
15. "Removing the DC Controller PCB" on page 150

- 16. "Removing the Fixing Power Supply PCB" on page 151
- 17. "Removing the Low Voltage Power Supply Unit" on page 153
- 18. "Removing the Main Fan" on page 159

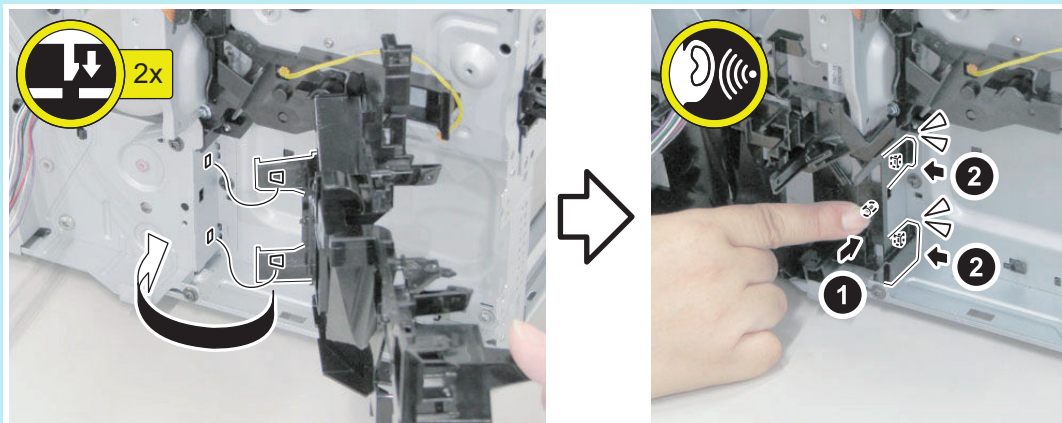
■ Procedure

1.

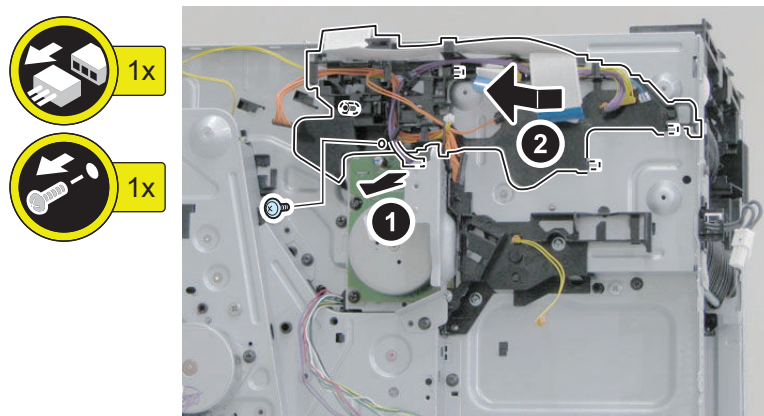


**NOTE:**

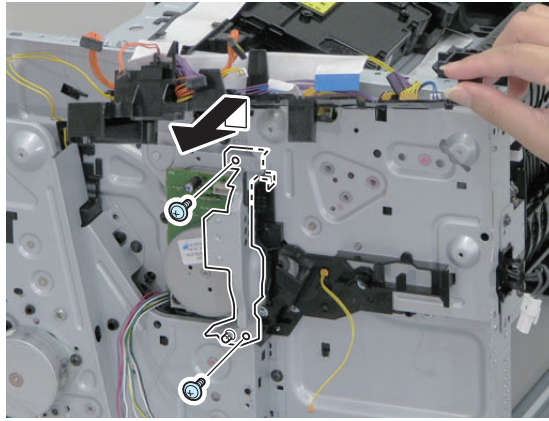
When inserting the 2 claws, be sure to press the boss until you hear a click sound.



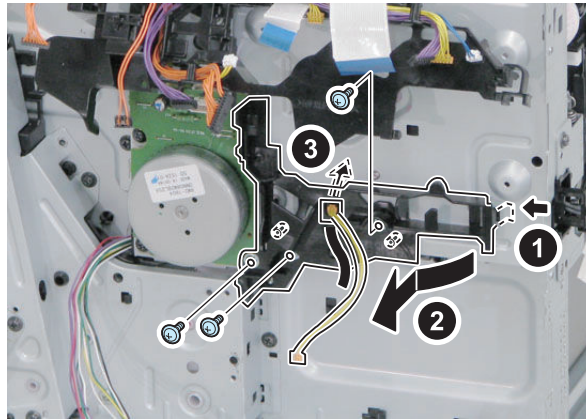
2.



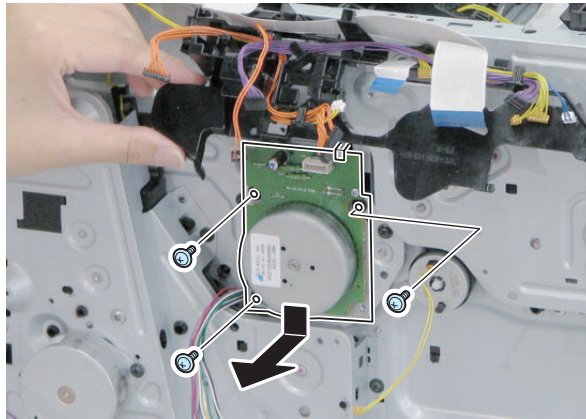
3.



4.



5.

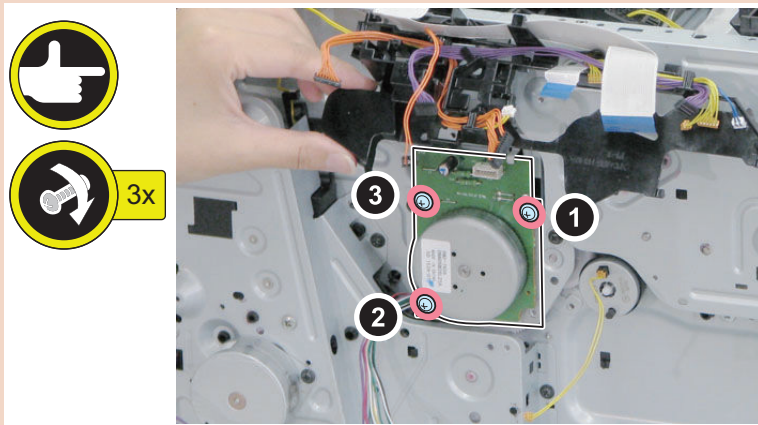




**CAUTION:**

Points to Note at Installation

When installing the Main Motor, be sure to tighten the screws in the order shown below.



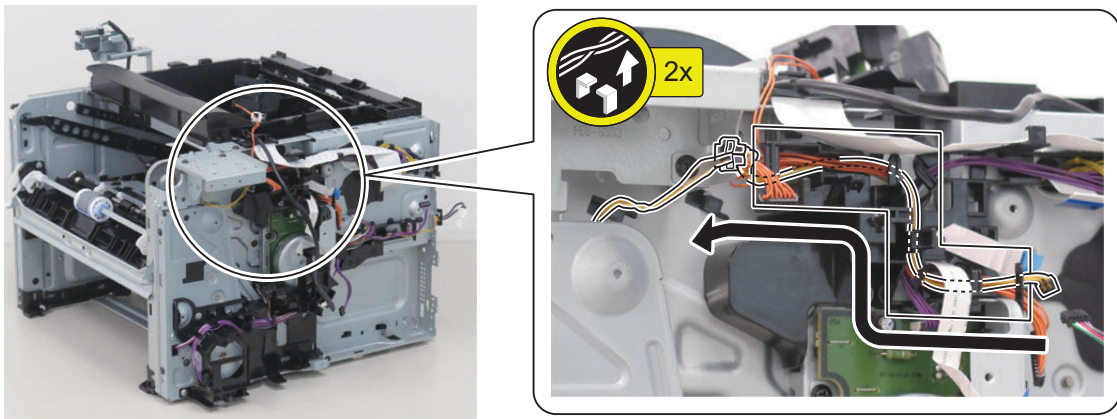
## ● Removing the Main Drive Unit

### ■ Preparation

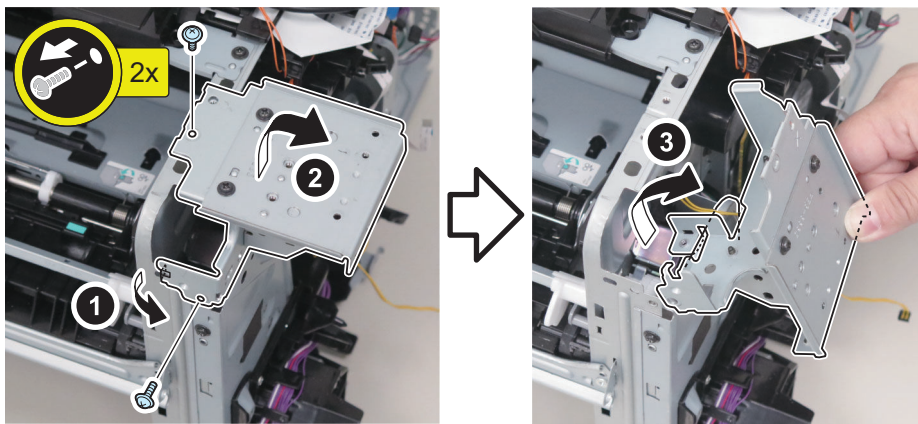
1. [“Removing the Rear Door Unit” on page 94](#)
2. Remove the cassette
3. [“Removing the Cartridge” on page 97](#)
4. [“Removing the Right Cover Unit” on page 98](#)
5. [“Removing the Left Cover Unit” on page 105](#)
6. [“Removing the Rear Top Cover” on page 109](#)
7. [“Removing the ADF Unit + Reader Unit” on page 118](#)
8. [“Removing the Control Panel Unit” on page 156](#)
9. [“Removing the Right Front Cover” on page 111](#)
10. [“Removing the USB Cover” on page 110](#)
11. [“Removing the Speaker” on page 143](#)
12. [“Removing the Upper Cover Unit” on page 111](#)
13. [“Removing the Controller Box” on page 149](#)
14. [“Removing the Cartridge Door Unit” on page 116](#)
15. [“Removing the DC Controller PCB” on page 150](#)
16. [“Removing the Fixing Power Supply PCB” on page 151](#)
17. [“Removing the Low Voltage Power Supply Unit” on page 153](#)
18. [“Removing the Main Fan” on page 159](#)

■ Procedure

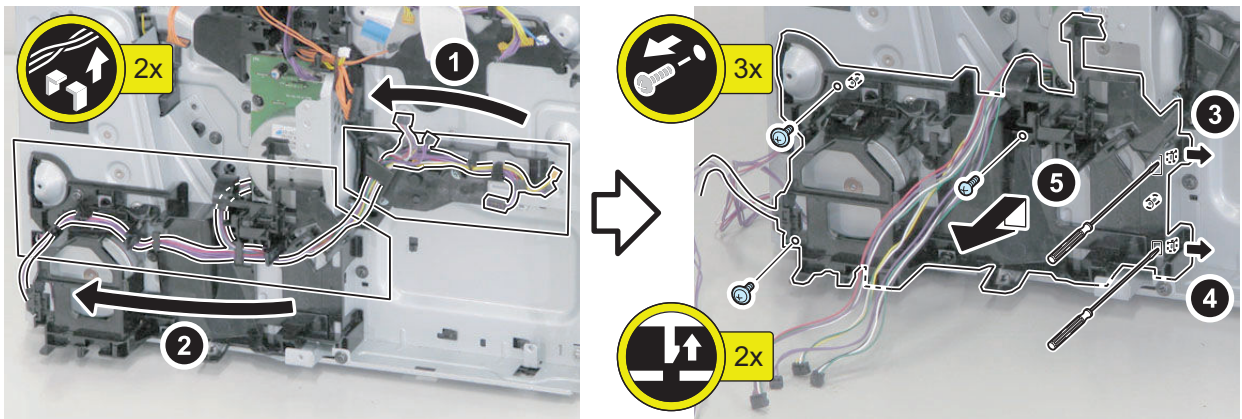
1.



2.

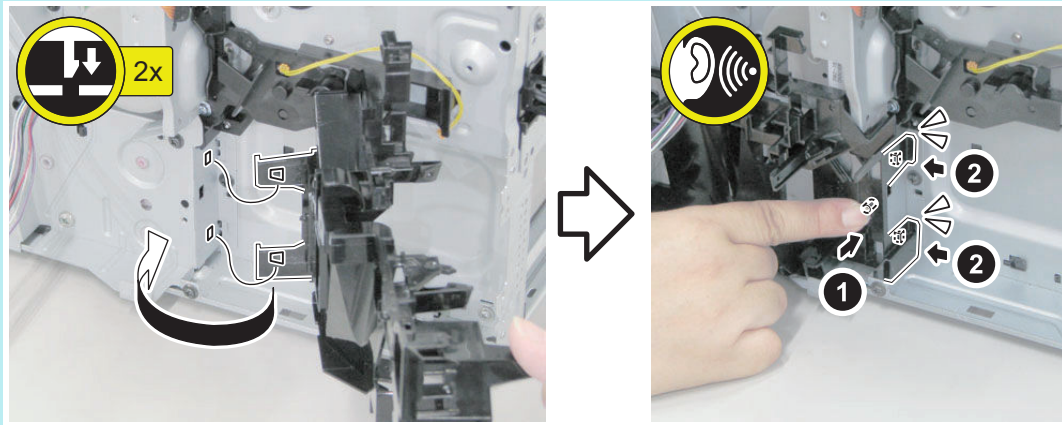


3.

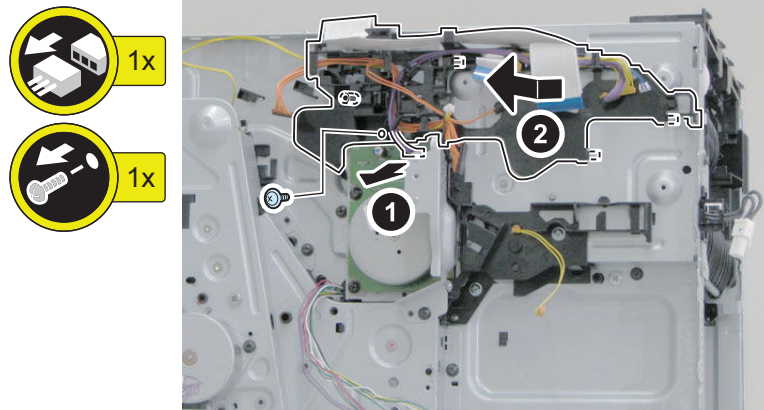


**NOTE:**

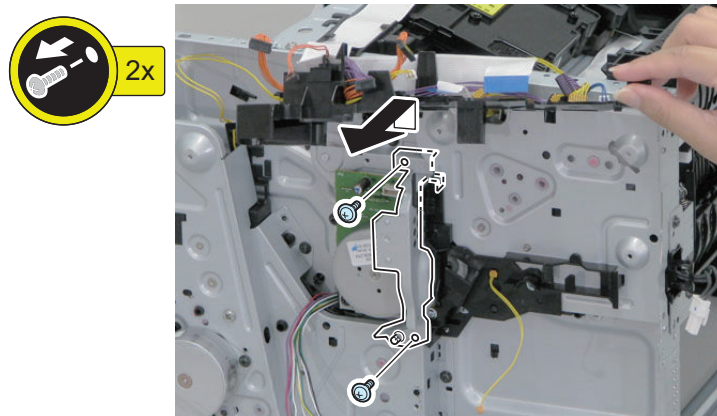
When inserting the 2 claws, be sure to press the boss until you hear a click sound.



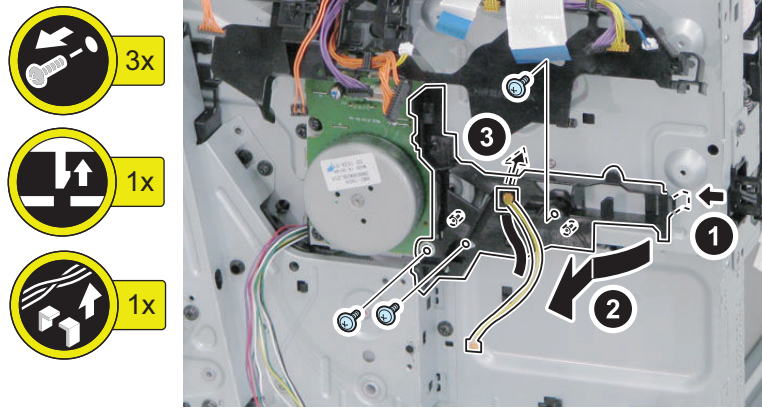
**4.**



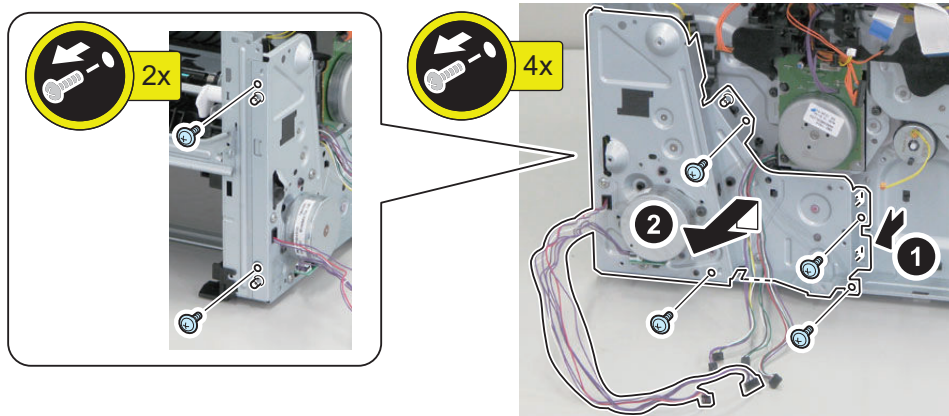
**5.**



6.

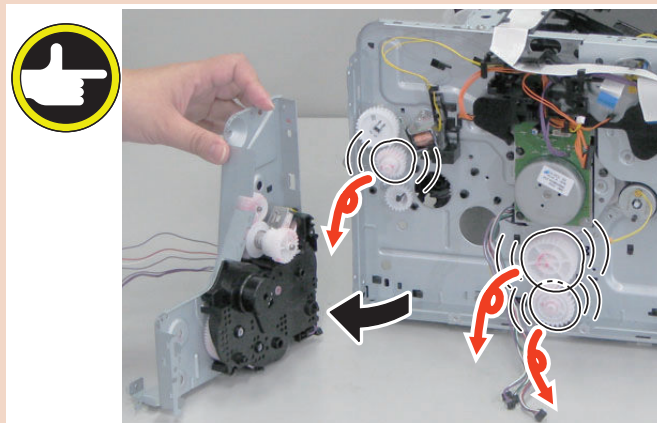


7.



**CAUTION:**

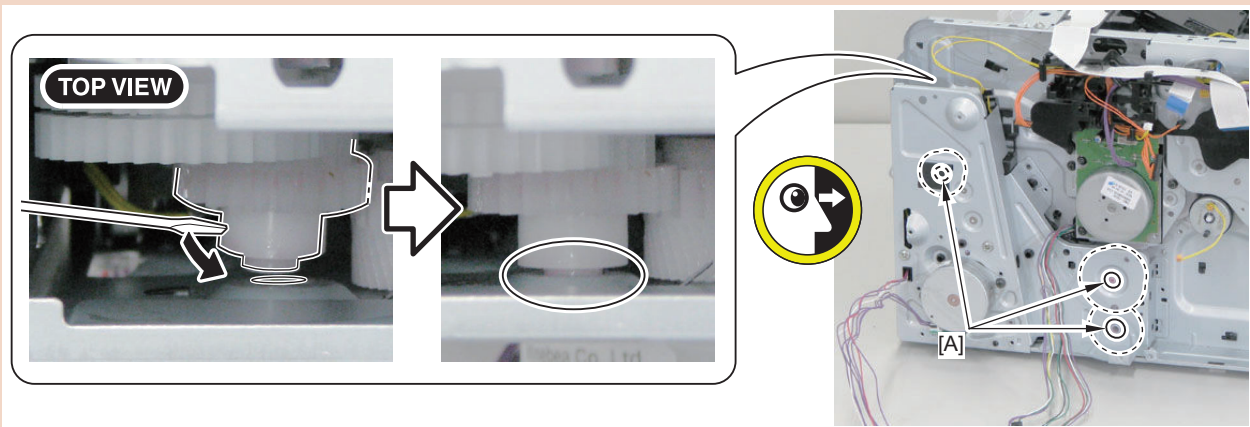
Caution is required because the 3 gears tend to drop easily.



**CAUTION:**

Points to Note at Installation

When installing the Main Drive Unit, be sure that the shafts of the 3 gears are fitted in the holes [A] on the Main Drive Unit.



## ● Removing the Cassette Pickup Unit

### ■ Preparation

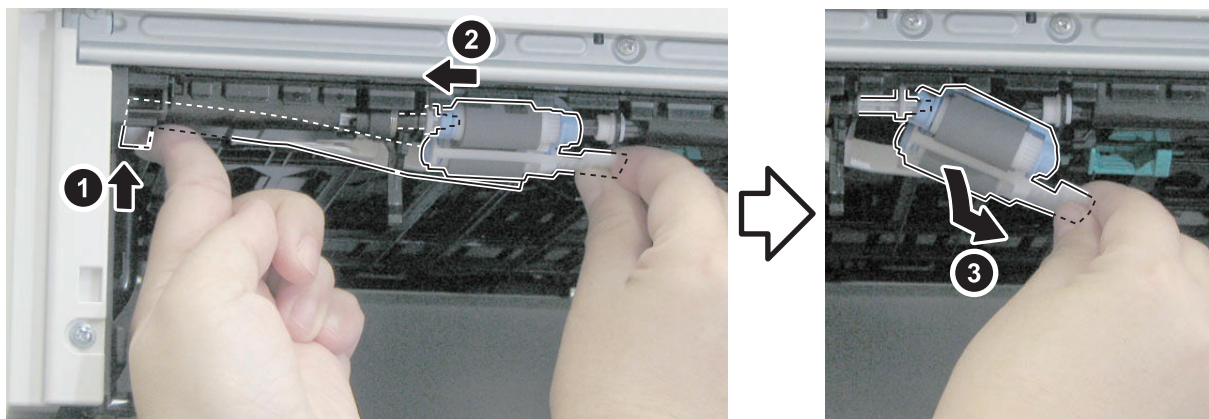
1. Remove the cassette

### ■ Procedure

**CAUTION:**

Do not touch the surface of the roller with bare hands, as doing so will attach skin oil on it and decrease feedability.

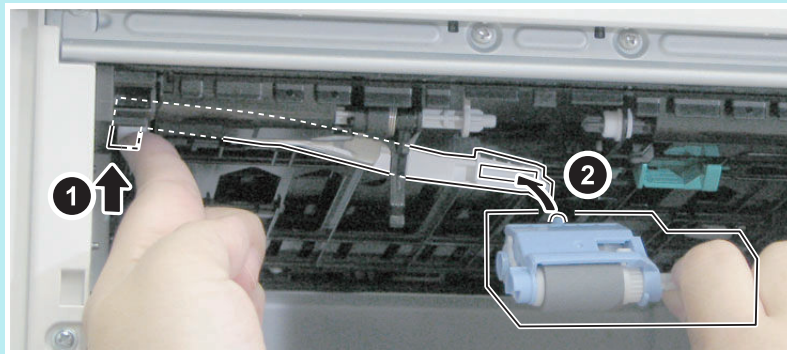
1.



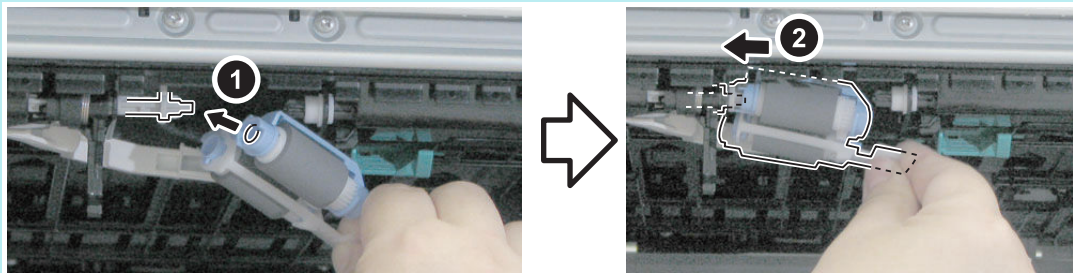
**NOTE:**

Procedure for Installing the Cassette Pickup Unit

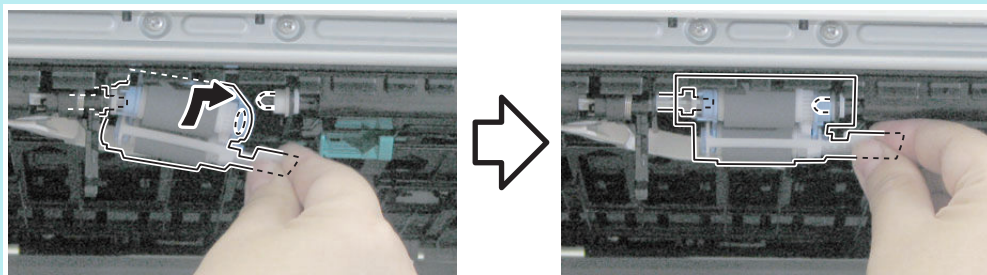
1. While pressing the lever, fit the boss into the groove on the lever.



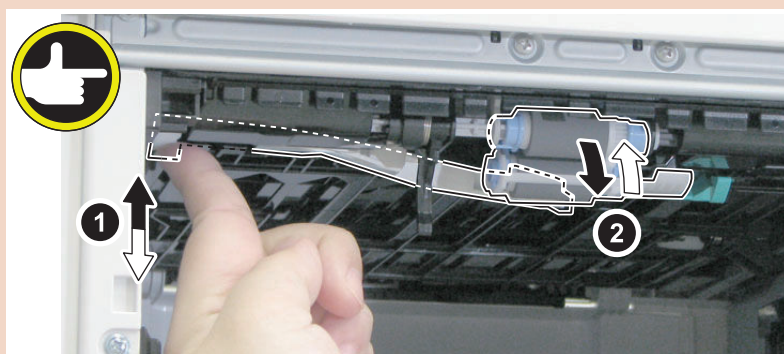
2. Fit the hole of the Cassette Pickup Unit onto the shaft on the left side, and push it until it stops.



3. Fit the hole of the Cassette Pickup Unit onto the shaft on the right side to install the Cassette Pickup Roller Unit.

**CAUTION:**

After installation, push the lever to check that it is interlocked with the Cassette Pickup Unit. If not, remove and install the Cassette Pickup Unit again.



## ● Removing the Cassette Separation Roller Unit

### ■ Preparation

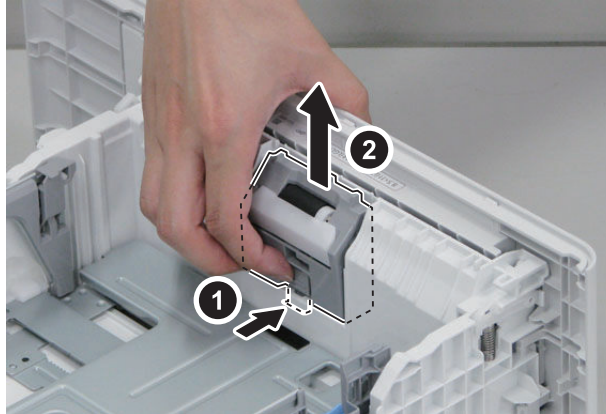
1. Remove the cassette

## ■ Procedure

### CAUTION:

Do not touch the surface of the roller with bare hands, as doing so will attach skin oil on it and decrease feedability.

# 1.



## ● Removing the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Roller

### ■ Preparation

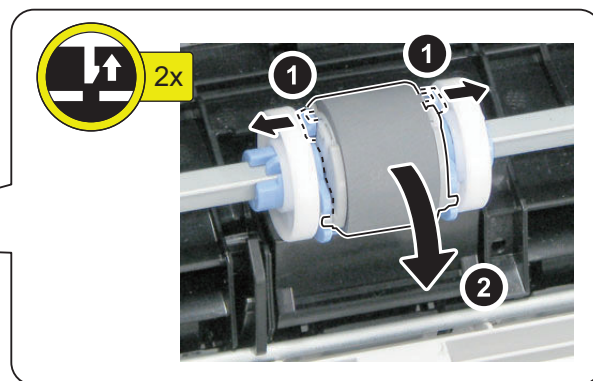
1. “Removing the Cartridge” on page 97

### ■ Procedure

### CAUTION:

Do not touch the surface of the roller with bare hands, as doing so will attach skin oil on it and decrease feedability.

# 1.



## ● Removing the Multi-purpose Tray Separation Pad

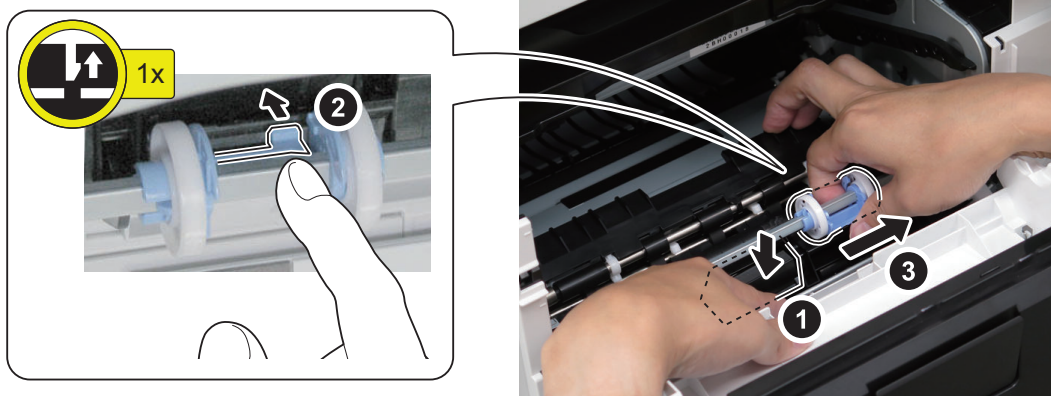
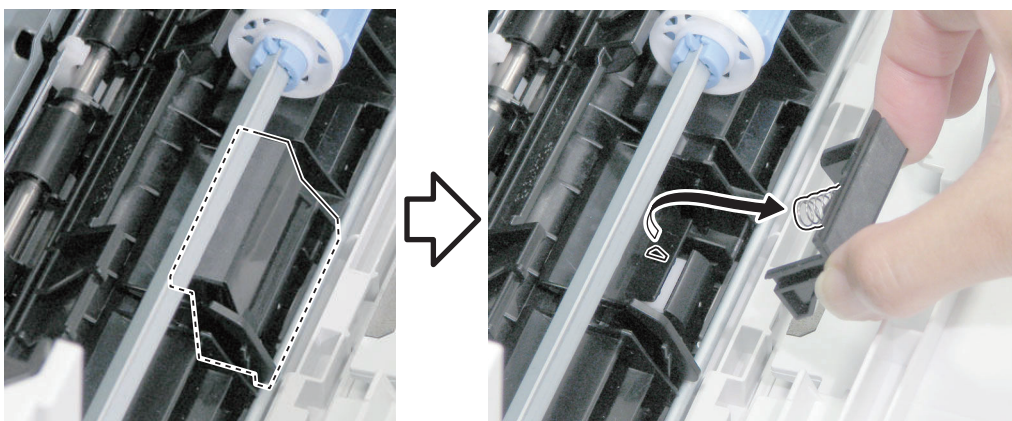
### ■ Preparation

1. “Removing the Cartridge” on page 97
2. “Removing the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Roller” on page 181

## ■ Procedure

**CAUTION:**

Do not touch the surface of the pad with bare hands, as doing so will attach skin oil on it and decrease feedability.

**1.****2.****3.**



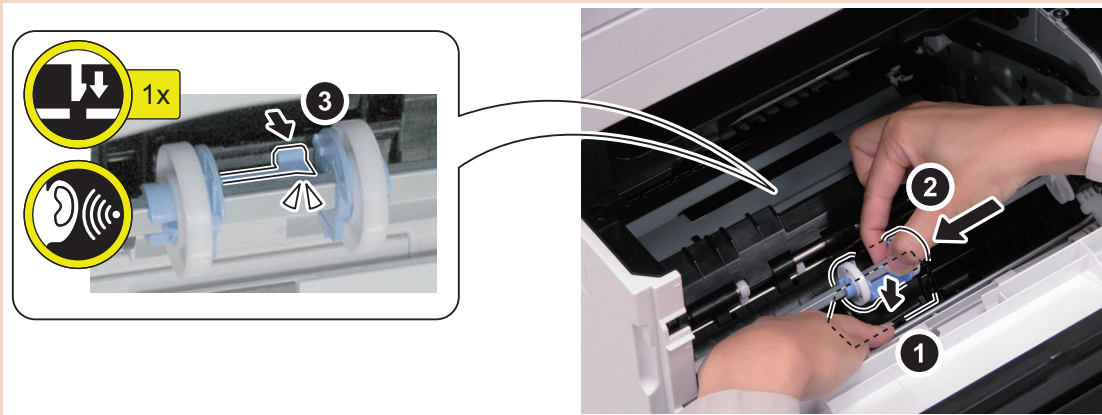
**CAUTION:**

## Points to Note at Installation

- When installing it, be sure that the grooves on the left and right and the spring are fitted correctly.



- Be sure to slide the Multi-purpose Tray Roller Holder until it clicks.





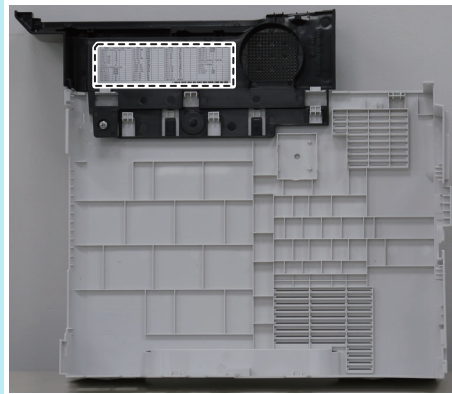
# Adjustment

Checking the Location Where the Service Label Is Affixed.....	185
Adjustment at Parts Replacement....	186

## Checking the Location Where the Service Label Is Affixed

**NOTE:**

The service label is affixed on the inside of the Right Cover Unit.



## Adjustment at Parts Replacement

### After Replacing the Control Panel

1. **Execute the following service modes and adjust the coordinate position of the Touch Panel.**
  - COPIER > ADJUST > PANEL > TOUCHCHK
2. **Check that the value of the following service mode is [1].**
  - COPIER > ADJUST > PANEL > TOUCH-R

**CAUTION:**

If the value has not changed to [1], perform the procedure from step 1 again.

### Before Replacing the Main Controller PCB

The following setting values are recorded in the Main Controller PCB. When the Main Controller PCB is replaced, these setting values are all returned to the default unless they are restored.

- User setting values
- Service mode setting values

These setting values can be restored by performing backup by any of the following methods:

Refer to the Backup List for the details of items that are backed up.

[“Backup Data List” on page 390](#)

1. **Enter the service mode shown below, and change the setting value to [1].**
  - COPIER > OPTION > USER > SMD-EXPT

**NOTE:**

The setting [SMD-EXPT] can be configured either from the Control Panel or remote UI.

2. **These setting values can be restored by performing backup by any of the following methods:**
  - COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > EXPORT
  - Menu > Management Settings > Data Management > Import/Export > Export
  - RUI > Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Data Management > Import/Export > Export

**CAUTION:**

- Perform backup immediately before replacing the Main Controller PCB.
- When the Main Controller PCB is replaced, the user data, service data, and logs are initialized and the system manager ID and password are changed back to the default values (ID: 7654321 / PWD: 7654321).

### After Replacing the Main Controller PCB

**CAUTION:**

The language displayed changes to English immediately after the replacement of the Main Controller PCB. Be sure to perform the following steps 1 to 5 in order to reflect the language of the country and the country-specific settings that had been configured before the replacement of the Main Controller PCB.

1. **Turn ON the power of the host machine.**
2. **Enter service mode.**

A Setup Guide screen (in English) for setting the time and date will appear. Forcibly open the service mode screen.

### 3. Location information setting

[Setting value]

- 1: Japan, 2: North America, 3: Korea, 4: China, 5: Taiwan, 6: Europe, 7: Asia, 8: Oceania, 9: Brazil, 10: Latin America
- COPIER > OPTION > BODY > LOCALE

### 4. Paper size configuration setting

[Setting value]

- 1: AB configuration, 2: Inch configuration, 3: A configuration, 4: AB/Inch configuration
- COPIER > OPTION > BODY > SIZE-LC

### 5. Clear the setting information

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > ALL

## ■ Clearing RCON Backup

1. Execute the following service mode to clear the backup data of RCON.
  - COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > R-CON

## ■ Entering the XYZ Values

Entering the values shown on the service label

1. Enter the values shown on the service label in service mode.
  - <W-PLT-X>
    - COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > W-PLT-X
  - <W-PLT-Y>
    - COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > W-PLT-Y
  - <W-PLT-Z>
    - COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > W-PLT-Z

## ■ Calculating the Target Value of B&W Shading

1. Turn OFF and then ON the power of the host machine, and then execute the following service mode.
  - COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BW-TGT

## ■ Entering the Value of the Stream Reading Position

Entering the value shown on the service label

1. Enter the value shown on the service label in service mode.
  - COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > STRD-POS

## ■ AGC Adjustment (Paper Front)

### 1. Enter a provisional value.

B&W mode

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 1,000.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-BW-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-BW-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-BW-B

Color mode

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 1,100.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-CL-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-CL-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-CL-B

## 2. Execute the following service mode.

### CAUTION:

Be sure to close the ADF before executing the following service mode. Also be sure not to open the ADF while the service mode is being executed.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BW-AGC
- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > CL-AGC

## 3. How to judge whether the operation was successful or failed

Whether the operation was successful or failed is not shown on the UI, so perform the following procedure to judge if the operation was successful or failed.

B&W mode

Check the following values. If all of them remain at "1,000", the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-BW-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-BW-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-BW-B

In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BW-AGC

Color mode

Check the following values. If all of them remain at "1,100", the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-CL-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-CL-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-CL-B

In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > CL-AGC

## 4. If the operation was "successful", this procedure is completed. (There is no need to write down the values on the service label.)

## ■ AGC Adjustment (Paper Back)

### 1. Enter a provisional value.

B&W mode

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 1,000.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWRBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWGBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWBBK

Color mode

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 1,100.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLRBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLGBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLBBK

### 2. Execute the following service mode.

### CAUTION:

Be sure to close the ADF before executing the following service mode. Also be sure not to open the ADF while the service mode is being executed.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BW-AGC2
- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > CL-AGC2

### 3. How to judge whether the operation was successful or failed

Whether the operation was successful or failed is not shown on the UI, so perform the following procedure to judge if the operation was successful or failed.

B&W mode

Check the following values. If all of them remain at "1,000", the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWRBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWGBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWBBK

In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BW-AGC2

Color mode

Check the following values. If all of them remain at "1,100", the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLRBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLGBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLBBK

In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > CL-AGC2

4. If the operation was "successful", this procedure is completed. (There is no need to write down the values on the service label.)

## ■ Paper Back Shading Initial Measurement

1. Execute the following service mode without placing anything on the Stream Reading Glass.

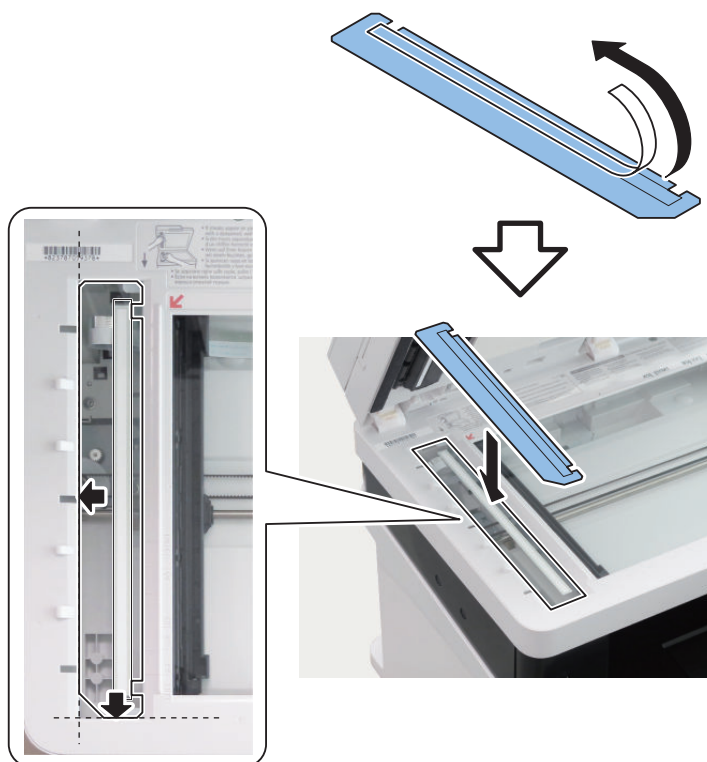
- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BK-SHD1

2. Place the Paper Back Shading Adjustment Member (FL1-4365) on the Stream Reading Glass, and execute the following service mode.

### CAUTION:

Be sure to close the ADF before executing the following service mode. Also be sure not to open the ADF while the service mode is being executed.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BK-SHD2



3. Check the following service mode to determine if it was [1] successful or [0] failed.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BK-SHDST

4. If it failed, clean the Stream Reading Glass and the Paper Back Shading Adjustment Member (FL1-4365), and perform the procedure from step 1 again.

## ■ DF White Level (DF Shading Target) Adjustment

In the case of entering the values shown on the service label

### 1. Enter the values shown on the service label in service mode.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-B
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-BW
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-B
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-BW

## ■ Copyboard Color Displacement Offset Adjustment

In the case of entering the values shown on the service label

### 1. Enter the values shown on the service label in service mode.

#### NOTE:

To reduce the number of label items, the values of 100-xx and 50-xx are the same.

<100-RG>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 50-RG
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 100-RG

<100-GB>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 50-GB
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 100-GB

## ■ ADF (Front/Back) Color Displacement Offset Adjustment

### 1. Enter the values shown on the service label in service mode.

#### NOTE:

To reduce the number of label items, the values of 100DF-xx and 50DF-xx are the same.

<100-DF-RG>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 50DF-RG
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 100DF-RG

<100-DF-GB>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 50DF-GB
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 100DF-GB

<100DF2RG>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 50DF2RG
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 100DF2RG

<100DF2GB>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 50DF2GB
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 100D2GB

## ■ PASCAL Adjustment

In the case of entering the values shown on the service label

### 1. Enter the value shown on the service label in service mode.

- COPIER > ADJUST > PASCAL > OFST-P-K



## ■ Copyboard Geometric Adjustment

In the case of entering the values shown on the service label

### 1. Enter the values shown on the service label in service mode.

- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-X
- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-Y
- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-X-MG

## ■ ADF (Front/Back) Geometric Adjustment

In the case of entering the values shown on the service label

### 1. Enter the values shown on the service label in service mode.

- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-Y-DF
- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJY-DF2
- FEEDER > ADJUST > DOCST
- FEEDER > ADJUST > DOCST2
- FEEDER > ADJUST > LA-SPEED
- FEEDER > ADJUST > LA-SPD2

## ■ Entering the MFT Values

### 1. Enter the following values shown on the service label in the following locations in service mode.

#### NOTE:

To reduce the number of label items, the setting values are the same.

- The values of MTF-M1, MTF-M4, and MTF-M7 are the same.
- The values of MTF-M2, MTF-M5, and MTF-M8 are the same.
- The values of MTF-M3, MTF-M6, and MTF-M9 are the same.

<MTF-M1>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF-M1
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF-M4
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF-M7

<MTF-M2>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF-M2
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF-M5
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF-M8

<MTF-M3>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF-M3
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF-M6
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF-M9

**NOTE:**

To reduce the number of label items, the setting values are the same.

- The values of MTF2-M1, MTF2-M4, and MTF2-M7 are the same.
- The values of MTF2-M2, MTF2-M5, and MTF2-M8 are the same.
- The values of MTF2-M3, MTF2-M6, and MTF2-M9 are the same.

## &lt;MTF2-M1&gt;

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF2-M1
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF2-M4
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF2-M7

## &lt;MTF2-M2&gt;

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF2-M2
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF2-M5
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF2-M8

## &lt;MTF2-M3&gt;

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF2-M3
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF2-M6
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF2-M9

**NOTE:**

To reduce the number of label items, the setting values are the same.

- The values of MTF3-M1, MTF3-M4, and MTF3-M7 are the same.
- The values of MTF3-M2, MTF3-M5, and MTF3-M8 are the same.
- The values of MTF3-M3, MTF3-M6, and MTF3-M9 are the same.

## &lt;MTF3-M1&gt;

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF3-M1
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF3-M4
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF3-M7

## &lt;MTF3-M2&gt;

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF3-M2
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF3-M5
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF3-M8

## &lt;MTF3-M3&gt;

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF3-M3
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF3-M6
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF3-M9

**NOTE:**

To reduce the number of label items, the setting values are the same.

- The values of MTF-S1, MTF-S4, and MTF-S7 are the same.
- The values of MTF-S2, MTF-S5, and MTF-S8 are the same.
- The values of MTF-S3, MTF-S6, and MTF-S9 are the same.

## &lt;MTF-S1&gt;

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF-S1
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF-S4
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF-S7

## &lt;MTF-S2&gt;

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF-S2
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF-S5
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF-S8

## &lt;MTF-S3&gt;

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF-S3
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF-S6
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF-S9

**NOTE:**

To reduce the number of label items, the setting values are the same.

- The values of MTF2-S1, MTF2-S4, and MTF2-S7 are the same.
- The values of MTF2-S2, MTF2-S5, and MTF2-S8 are the same.
- The values of MTF2-S3, MTF2-S6, and MTF2-S9 are the same.

<MTF2-S1>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF2-S1
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF2-S4
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF2-S7

<MTF2-S2>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF2-S2
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF2-S5
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF2-S8

<MTF2-S3>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF2-S3
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF2-S6
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF2-S9

**NOTE:**

To reduce the number of label items, the setting values are the same.

- The values of MTF3-S1, MTF3-S4, and MTF3-S7 are the same.
- The values of MTF3-S2, MTF3-S5, and MTF3-S8 are the same.
- The values of MTF3-S3, MTF3-S6, and MTF3-S9 are the same.

<MTF3-S1>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF3-S1
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF3-S4
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF3-S7

<MTF3-S2>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF3-S2
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF3-S5
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF3-S8

<MTF3-S3>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF3-S3
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF3-S6
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > MTF3-S9

## ■ Entering the Linearity Correction Values

### 1. Enter the values shown on the service label in service mode.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LNR-GA-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LNR-GA-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LNR-GA-B
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LNR-OF-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LNR-OF-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LNR-OF-B

## ■ Executing Initial Adjustment

### 1. To set the wireless LAN function, enter the service mode shown below and change the setting value to [1]. (In the case of the host machine having the wireless LAN function)

- COPIER > OPTION > ACC > WLAN

### 2. Setup Guide will be activated by turning OFF and then ON the power of the host machine. Configure the settings according to the instruction on the screen.

### 3. In the following service mode, adjust the Touch Panel.

- COPIER > ADJUST > PANEL > TOUCHCHK

## ■ Migrating the User Data and Service Mode Setting Information

### 1. Enter service mode, and set the following item to [1].

- COPIER > OPTION > USER > SMD-EXPT

#### NOTE:

The setting [SMD-EXPT] can be configured either from the Control Panel or remote UI.

### 2. Restore the data in the same way as that of backup.

Refer to the Backup List for the details of items that are restored.

“Backup Data List” on page 390

- COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > IMPORT
- Menu > Management Settings > Data Management > Import/Export > Import
- RUI > Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Data Management > Import/Export > Import

#### CAUTION:

Be sure to restore the data after replacing the Main Controller PCB.

### 3. Enter service mode, and set the following item to [0].

- COPIER > OPTION > USER > SMD-EXPT

#### NOTE:

The setting [SMD-EXPT] can be configured either from the Control Panel or remote UI.

## ■ Reinstalling the Drivers (Only When the MFNP Port Is Used)

#### NOTE:

- In the case of setting the print port in a TCP/IP environment, the drivers do not need to be reinstalled. Refer to "Setting Up the Network Environment" in the User's Guide, and set up the network environment again.
- The print port being used is shown in Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Devices and Printers > "Printer Properties" of the printer used.

### 1. Uninstall the following drivers on the user's PC.

- Printer driver
- Fax driver
- Scanner driver
- MF Scan Utility

### 2. Refer to the following items in Getting Started and install the drivers that were uninstalled.

- In case of network connection: "To connect via wired LAN"
- In case of USB connection: "To connect via USB"

#### NOTE:

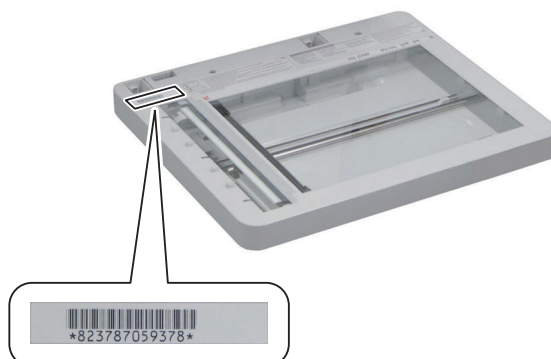
When the MFNP port is used, the MAC address information changes after replacement of the Main Controller PCB. Therefore, when the PC and the machine are connected by the network, the PC will not be able to recognize the machine on the network. When the PC and the machine are connected by USB, the PC will not be able to recognize the machine if the USB ID is changed. That is why the drivers need to be reinstalled.

## After Replacing the Reader Unit

### ■ Entering the XYZ Values

Entering the values shown on the barcode label

1. Check the setting value of the Standard White Plate.



2. After entering the X, Y, and Z values shown on the barcode on the Copyboard Glass in the following service mode items, and then write the entered values (the X, Y, and Z values shown on the barcode on the Copyboard Glass) on the service label.

#### NOTE:

The value of W-PLT-X: The first four digits of the value on the label

The value of W-PLT-Y: The four digits in the middle of the value on the label

The value of W-PLT-Z: The last four digits of the value on the label

<W-PLT-X>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > W-PLT-X

<W-PLT-Y>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > W-PLT-Y

<W-PLT-Z>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > W-PLT-Z

### ■ Calculating the Target Value of B&W Shading

1. Turn OFF and then ON the power of the host machine, and then execute the following service mode.
  - COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BW-TGT

### ■ Entering the Value of the Stream Reading Position

In the case of entering a provisional value

1. Enter a provisional value.

Change the value of the following service mode setting to -20.

- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > STRD-POS

2. Execute the following service mode.

#### CAUTION:

Be sure to close the ADF before executing the following service mode. Also be sure not to open the ADF while the service mode is being executed.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > STRD-POS

### 3. How to judge whether the operation was successful or failed

Whether the operation was successful or failed is not shown on the UI, so perform the following procedure to judge if the operation was successful or failed.

Check the following value. If it remains at "-20", the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > STRD-POS

### 4. In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > STRD-POS

### 5. If the operation was "successful", write down the following value on the service label.

- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > STRD-POS

## ■ AGC Adjustment (Paper Front)

### 1. Enter a provisional value.

B&W mode

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 1,000.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-BW-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-BW-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-BW-B

Color mode

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 1,100.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-CL-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-CL-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-CL-B

### 2. Execute the following service mode.

#### CAUTION:

Be sure to close the ADF before executing the following service mode. Also be sure not to open the ADF while the service mode is being executed.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BW-AGC
- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > CL-AGC

### 3. How to judge whether the operation was successful or failed

Whether the operation was successful or failed is not shown on the UI, so perform the following procedure to judge if the operation was successful or failed.

B&W mode

Check the following values. If all of them remain at "1,000", the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-BW-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-BW-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-BW-B

In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BW-AGC

Color mode

Check the following values. If all of them remain at "1,100", the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-CL-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-CL-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-CL-B

In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > CL-AGC

### 4. If the operation was "successful", this procedure is completed. (There is no need to write down the values on the service label.)

## ■ AGC Adjustment (Paper Back)

### 1. Enter a provisional value.

B&W mode

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 1,000.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWRBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWGBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWBBK

Color mode

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 1,100.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLRBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLGBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLBBK

### 2. Execute the following service mode.

#### CAUTION:

Be sure to close the ADF before executing the following service mode. Also be sure not to open the ADF while the service mode is being executed.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BW-AGC2
- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > CL-AGC2

### 3. How to judge whether the operation was successful or failed

Whether the operation was successful or failed is not shown on the UI, so perform the following procedure to judge if the operation was successful or failed.

B&W mode

Check the following values. If all of them remain at "1,000", the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWRBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWGBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWBBK

In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BW-AGC2

Color mode

Check the following values. If all of them remain at "1,100", the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLRBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLGBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLBBK

In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > CL-AGC2

### 4. If the operation was "successful", this procedure is completed. (There is no need to write down the values on the service label.)

## ■ Paper Back Shading Initial Measurement

### 1. Execute the following service mode without placing anything on the Stream Reading Glass.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BK-SHD1

- Place the Paper Back Shading Adjustment Member (FL1-4365) on the Stream Reading Glass, and execute the following service mode.

**CAUTION:**

Be sure to close the ADF before executing the following service mode. Also be sure not to open the ADF while the service mode is being executed.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BK-SHD2



- Check the following service mode to determine if it was [1] successful or [0] failed.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BK-SHDST

- If it failed, clean the Stream Reading Glass and the Paper Back Shading Adjustment Member (FL1-4365), and perform the procedure from step 1 again.

## ■ DF White Level (DF Shading Target) Adjustment

In the case of entering a provisional value

- Change the values of the following service mode settings to 299.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-R

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 309.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-G

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 307.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-B
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-B

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 315.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-BW
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-BW

- Place an A4 or LTR size paper on the Copyboard Glass and execute the following service mode.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1

- Place an A4 or LTR size paper on the ADF and execute the following service mode.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL2



#### 4. How to judge whether the operation was successful or failed

Whether the operation was successful or failed is not shown on the UI, so perform the following procedure to judge if the operation was successful or failed.

Check the following values, and if all the values remain the same as those you entered, the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-B
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-BW

#### 5. In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1
- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL2

#### 6. If the operation was "successful", write the entered values on the service label.

## ■ Copyboard Color Displacement Offset Adjustment

In the case of entering the values shown on the replacement label

#### 1. Enter the values shown on the replacement label in service mode.

##### NOTE:

To reduce the number of label items, the values of 100-xx and 50-xx are the same.

<100-RG>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 50-RG
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 100-RG

<100-GB>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 50-GB
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 100-GB

#### 2. Write the entered values on the service label.

## ■ PASCAL Adjustment

In the case of entering the values shown on the replacement label

#### 1. Enter the values shown on the replacement label in service mode.

- COPIER > ADJUST > PASCAL > OFST-P-K

#### 2. Write the entered values on the service label.

## ■ Copyboard Geometric Adjustment

In the case of manual adjustment

#### 1. On an image copied using the reader, check the non-image width in the X and Y directions and the expansion/contraction in the X direction.

If adjustment is necessary, adjust the values of the following service mode settings.

- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-X
- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-Y
- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-X-MG

#### 2. Write the entered values on the service label.

## ■ ADF (Front/Back) Geometric Adjustment

In the case of manual adjustment

**1. On an image duplex copied using the ADF, check the non-image width in the X and Y directions and the expansion/contraction in the X direction.**

If adjustment is necessary, adjust the values of the following service mode settings.

- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-Y-DF
- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJY-DF2
- FEEDER > ADJUST > DOCST
- FEEDER > ADJUST > DOCST2
- FEEDER > ADJUST > LA-SPEED
- FEEDER > ADJUST > LA-SPD2

**2. Write the entered values on the service label.**

## After Replacing the ADF Unit

### ■ Entering the Value of the Stream Reading Position

In the case of entering a provisional value

**1. Enter a provisional value.**

Change the value of the following service mode setting to -20.

- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > STRD-POS

**2. Execute the following service mode.**

**CAUTION:**

Be sure to close the ADF before executing the following service mode. Also be sure not to open the ADF while the service mode is being executed.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > STRD-POS

**3. How to judge whether the operation was successful or failed**

Whether the operation was successful or failed is not shown on the UI, so perform the following procedure to judge if the operation was successful or failed.

Check the following value. If it remains at "-20", the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > STRD-POS

**4. In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.**

- COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > STRD-POS

**5. If the operation was "successful", write down the following value on the service label.**

- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > STRD-POS

### ■ AGC Adjustment (Paper Back)

**1. Enter a provisional value.**

B&W mode

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 1,000.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWRBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWGBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWBBK

Color mode

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 1,100.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLRBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLGBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLBBK

## 2. Execute the following service mode.

### CAUTION:

Be sure to close the ADF before executing the following service mode. Also be sure not to open the ADF while the service mode is being executed.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BW-AGC2
- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > CL-AGC2

## 3. How to judge whether the operation was successful or failed

Whether the operation was successful or failed is not shown on the UI, so perform the following procedure to judge if the operation was successful or failed.

B&W mode

Check the following values. If all of them remain at "1,000", the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWRBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWGBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWBK

In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BW-AGC2

Color mode

Check the following values. If all of them remain at "1,100", the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLRBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLGBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLBBK

In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > CL-AGC2

## 4. If the operation was "successful", this procedure is completed. (There is no need to write down the values on the service label.)

## ■ Paper Back Shading Initial Measurement

### 1. Execute the following service mode without placing anything on the Stream Reading Glass.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BK-SHD1

- Place the Paper Back Shading Adjustment Member (FL1-4365) on the Stream Reading Glass, and execute the following service mode.

**CAUTION:**

Be sure to close the ADF before executing the following service mode. Also be sure not to open the ADF while the service mode is being executed.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BK-SHD2



- Check the following service mode to determine if it was [1] successful or [0] failed.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BK-SHDST

- If it failed, clean the Stream Reading Glass and the Paper Back Shading Adjustment Member (FL1-4365), and perform the procedure from step 1 again.

## ■ DF White Level (DF Shading Target) Adjustment

In the case of entering a provisional value

- Change the values of the following service mode settings to 299.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-R

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 309.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-G

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 307.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-B
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-B

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 315.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-BW
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-BW

- Place an A4 or LTR size paper on the Copyboard Glass and execute the following service mode.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1

- Place an A4 or LTR size paper on the ADF and execute the following service mode.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL2

#### 4. How to judge whether the operation was successful or failed

Whether the operation was successful or failed is not shown on the UI, so perform the following procedure to judge if the operation was successful or failed.

Check the following values, and if all the values remain the same as those you entered, the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-B
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-BW

#### 5. In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1
- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL2

#### 6. If the operation was "successful", write the entered values on the service label.

## ■ ADF (Front/Back) Color Displacement Offset Adjustment

### 1. Enter the values shown on the service label in service mode.

#### NOTE:

To reduce the number of label items, the values of 100DF-xx and 50DF-xx are the same.

<100-DF-RG>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 50DF-RG
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 100DF-RG

<100-DF-GB>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 50DF-GB
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 100DF-GB

<100DF2RG>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 50DF2RG
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 100DF2RG

<100DF2GB>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 50DF2GB
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 100D2GB

## ■ ADF (Front/Back) Geometric Adjustment

In the case of manual adjustment

### 1. On an image duplex copied using the ADF, check the non-image width in the X and Y directions and the expansion/contraction in the X direction.

If adjustment is necessary, adjust the values of the following service mode settings.

- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-Y-DF
- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJY-DF2
- FEEDER > ADJUST > DOCST
- FEEDER > ADJUST > DOCST2
- FEEDER > ADJUST > LA-SPEED
- FEEDER > ADJUST > LA-SPD2

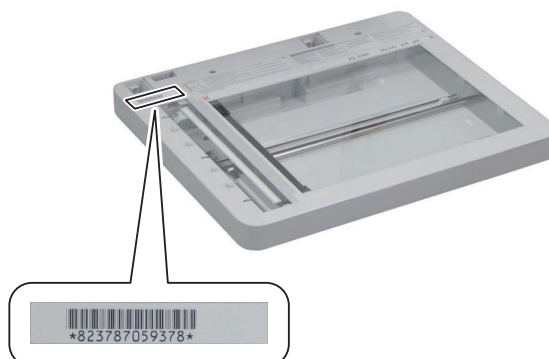
### 2. Write the entered values on the service label.

## After Replacing the Reader Upper Cover Unit

### ■ Entering the XYZ Values

Entering the values shown on the barcode label

1. Check the setting value of the Standard White Plate.



2. After entering the X, Y, and Z values shown on the barcode on the Copyboard Glass in the following service mode items, and then write the entered values (the X, Y, and Z values shown on the barcode on the Copyboard Glass) on the service label.

#### NOTE:

The value of W-PLT-X: The first four digits of the value on the label

The value of W-PLT-Y: The four digits in the middle of the value on the label

The value of W-PLT-Z: The last four digits of the value on the label

<W-PLT-X>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > W-PLT-X

<W-PLT-Y>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > W-PLT-Y

<W-PLT-Z>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > W-PLT-Z

### ■ Calculating the Target Value of B&W Shading

1. Turn OFF and then ON the power of the host machine, and then execute the following service mode.
  - COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BW-TGT

### ■ Entering the Value of the Stream Reading Position

In the case of entering a provisional value

1. Enter a provisional value.

Change the value of the following service mode setting to -20.

- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > STRD-POS

2. Execute the following service mode.

#### CAUTION:

Be sure to close the ADF before executing the following service mode. Also be sure not to open the ADF while the service mode is being executed.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > STRD-POS

### 3. How to judge whether the operation was successful or failed

Whether the operation was successful or failed is not shown on the UI, so perform the following procedure to judge if the operation was successful or failed.

Check the following value. If it remains at "-20", the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > STRD-POS

### 4. In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > STRD-POS

### 5. If the operation was "successful", write down the following value on the service label.

- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > STRD-POS

## ■ AGC Adjustment (Paper Front)

### 1. Enter a provisional value.

B&W mode

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 1,000.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-BW-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-BW-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-BW-B

Color mode

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 1,100.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-CL-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-CL-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-CL-B

### 2. Execute the following service mode.

#### CAUTION:

Be sure to close the ADF before executing the following service mode. Also be sure not to open the ADF while the service mode is being executed.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BW-AGC
- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > CL-AGC

### 3. How to judge whether the operation was successful or failed

Whether the operation was successful or failed is not shown on the UI, so perform the following procedure to judge if the operation was successful or failed.

B&W mode

Check the following values. If all of them remain at "1,000", the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-BW-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-BW-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-BW-B

In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BW-AGC

Color mode

Check the following values. If all of them remain at "1,100", the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-CL-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-CL-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-CL-B

In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > CL-AGC

### 4. If the operation was "successful", this procedure is completed. (There is no need to write down the values on the service label.)

## ■ AGC Adjustment (Paper Back)

### 1. Enter a provisional value.

B&W mode

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 1,000.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWRBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWGBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWBBK

Color mode

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 1,100.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLRBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLGBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLBBK

### 2. Execute the following service mode.

#### CAUTION:

Be sure to close the ADF before executing the following service mode. Also be sure not to open the ADF while the service mode is being executed.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BW-AGC2
- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > CL-AGC2

### 3. How to judge whether the operation was successful or failed

Whether the operation was successful or failed is not shown on the UI, so perform the following procedure to judge if the operation was successful or failed.

B&W mode

Check the following values. If all of them remain at "1,000", the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWRBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWGBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWBBK

In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BW-AGC2

Color mode

Check the following values. If all of them remain at "1,100", the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLRBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLGBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLBBK

In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > CL-AGC2

### 4. If the operation was "successful", this procedure is completed. (There is no need to write down the values on the service label.)

## ■ Paper Back Shading Initial Measurement

### 1. Execute the following service mode without placing anything on the Stream Reading Glass.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BK-SHD1



- Place the Paper Back Shading Adjustment Member (FL1-4365) on the Stream Reading Glass, and execute the following service mode.

**CAUTION:**

Be sure to close the ADF before executing the following service mode. Also be sure not to open the ADF while the service mode is being executed.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BK-SHD2



- Check the following service mode to determine if it was [1] successful or [0] failed.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BK-SHDST

- If it failed, clean the Stream Reading Glass and the Paper Back Shading Adjustment Member (FL1-4365), and perform the procedure from step 1 again.

## ■ DF White Level (DF Shading Target) Adjustment

In the case of entering a provisional value

- Change the values of the following service mode settings to 299.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-R

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 309.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-G

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 307.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-B
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-B

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 315.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-BW
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-BW

- Place an A4 or LTR size paper on the Copyboard Glass and execute the following service mode.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1

- Place an A4 or LTR size paper on the ADF and execute the following service mode.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL2

#### 4. How to judge whether the operation was successful or failed

Whether the operation was successful or failed is not shown on the UI, so perform the following procedure to judge if the operation was successful or failed.

Check the following values, and if all the values remain the same as those you entered, the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-B
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-BW

#### 5. In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1
- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL2

#### 6. If the operation was "successful", write the entered values on the service label.

## ■ Copyboard Geometric Adjustment

In the case of manual adjustment

#### 1. On an image copied using the reader, check the non-image width in the X and Y directions and the expansion/contraction in the X direction.

If adjustment is necessary, adjust the values of the following service mode settings.

- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-X
- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-Y
- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-X-MG

#### 2. Write the entered values on the service label.

## ● After Replacing the Reader CIS Unit

### ■ Entering the Value of the Stream Reading Position

In the case of entering a provisional value

#### 1. Enter a provisional value.

Change the value of the following service mode setting to -20.

- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > STRD-POS

#### 2. Execute the following service mode.

#### CAUTION:

Be sure to close the ADF before executing the following service mode. Also be sure not to open the ADF while the service mode is being executed.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > STRD-POS

#### 3. How to judge whether the operation was successful or failed

Whether the operation was successful or failed is not shown on the UI, so perform the following procedure to judge if the operation was successful or failed.

Check the following value. If it remains at "-20", the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > STRD-POS

#### 4. In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > STRD-POS

#### 5. If the operation was "successful", write down the following value on the service label.

- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > STRD-POS

## ■ AGC Adjustment (Paper Front)

### 1. Enter a provisional value.

B&W mode

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 1,000.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-BW-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-BW-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-BW-B

Color mode

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 1,100.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-CL-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-CL-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-CL-B

### 2. Execute the following service mode.

#### CAUTION:

Be sure to close the ADF before executing the following service mode. Also be sure not to open the ADF while the service mode is being executed.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BW-AGC
- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > CL-AGC

### 3. How to judge whether the operation was successful or failed

Whether the operation was successful or failed is not shown on the UI, so perform the following procedure to judge if the operation was successful or failed.

B&W mode

Check the following values. If all of them remain at "1,000", the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-BW-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-BW-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-BW-B

In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BW-AGC

Color mode

Check the following values. If all of them remain at "1,100", the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-CL-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-CL-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LED-CL-B

In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > CL-AGC

### 4. If the operation was "successful", this procedure is completed. (There is no need to write down the values on the service label.)

## ■ DF White Level (DF Shading Target) Adjustment

In the case of entering a provisional value

### 1. Change the values of the following service mode settings to 299.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-R

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 309.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-G

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 307.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-B
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-B

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 315.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-BW
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-BW

**2. Place an A4 or LTR size paper on the Copyboard Glass and execute the following service mode.**

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1

**3. Place an A4 or LTR size paper on the ADF and execute the following service mode.**

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL2

**4. How to judge whether the operation was successful or failed**

Whether the operation was successful or failed is not shown on the UI, so perform the following procedure to judge if the operation was successful or failed.

Check the following values, and if all the values remain the same as those you entered, the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-B
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-BW

**5. In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.**

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1
- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL2

**6. If the operation was "successful", write the entered values on the service label.****■ Copyboard Geometric Adjustment**

In the case of manual adjustment

**1. On an image copied using the reader, check the non-image width in the X and Y directions and the expansion/contraction in the X direction.**

If adjustment is necessary, adjust the values of the following service mode settings.

- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-X
- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-Y
- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-X-MG

**2. Write the entered values on the service label.****■ ADF (Front/Back) Geometric Adjustment**

In the case of manual adjustment

**1. On an image duplex copied using the ADF, check the non-image width in the X and Y directions and the expansion/contraction in the X direction.**

If adjustment is necessary, adjust the values of the following service mode settings.

- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-Y-DF
- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-Y-DF2
- FEEDER > ADJUST > DOCST
- FEEDER > ADJUST > DOCST2
- FEEDER > ADJUST > LA-SPEED
- FEEDER > ADJUST > LA-SPD2

**2. Write the entered values on the service label.****● After Replacing the ADF CIS Unit****■ Entering the Value of the Stream Reading Position**

In the case of entering a provisional value

**1. Enter a provisional value.**

Change the value of the following service mode setting to -20.

- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > STRD-POS

## 2. Execute the following service mode.

### CAUTION:

Be sure to close the ADF before executing the following service mode. Also be sure not to open the ADF while the service mode is being executed.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > STRD-POS

## 3. How to judge whether the operation was successful or failed

Whether the operation was successful or failed is not shown on the UI, so perform the following procedure to judge if the operation was successful or failed.

Check the following value. If it remains at "-20", the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > STRD-POS

## 4. In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > STRD-POS

## 5. If the operation was "successful", write down the following value on the service label.

- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > STRD-POS

## ■ AGC Adjustment (Paper Back)

### 1. Enter a provisional value.

B&W mode

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 1,000.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWRBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWGBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWBBK

Color mode

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 1,100.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLRBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLGBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLBBK

### 2. Execute the following service mode.

### CAUTION:

Be sure to close the ADF before executing the following service mode. Also be sure not to open the ADF while the service mode is being executed.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BW-AGC2
- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > CL-AGC2

### 3. How to judge whether the operation was successful or failed

Whether the operation was successful or failed is not shown on the UI, so perform the following procedure to judge if the operation was successful or failed.

B&W mode

Check the following values. If all of them remain at "1,000", the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWRBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWGBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-BWBBK

In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BW-AGC2

Color mode

Check the following values. If all of them remain at "1,100", the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLRBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLGBK
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > LE-CLBBK

In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > CL-AGC2

- If the operation was "successful", this procedure is completed. (There is no need to write down the values on the service label.)

## ■ Paper Back Shading Initial Measurement

- Execute the following service mode without placing anything on the Stream Reading Glass.
  - COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BK-SHD1
- Place the Paper Back Shading Adjustment Member (FL1-4365) on the Stream Reading Glass, and execute the following service mode.

### CAUTION:

Be sure to close the ADF before executing the following service mode. Also be sure not to open the ADF while the service mode is being executed.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BK-SHD2



- Check the following service mode to determine if it was [1] successful or [0] failed.
  - COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > BK-SHDST
- If it failed, clean the Stream Reading Glass and the Paper Back Shading Adjustment Member (FL1-4365), and perform the procedure from step 1 again.

## ■ DF White Level (DF Shading Target) Adjustment

In the case of entering a provisional value

- Change the values of the following service mode settings to 299.
  - COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-R
  - COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-R
 Change the values of the following service mode settings to 309.
  - COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-G
  - COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-G
 Change the values of the following service mode settings to 307.
  - COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-B
  - COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-B

Change the values of the following service mode settings to 315.

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTAR-BW
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-BW

**2. Place an A4 or LTR size paper on the Copyboard Glass and execute the following service mode.**

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1

**3. Place an A4 or LTR size paper on the ADF and execute the following service mode.**

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL2

**4. How to judge whether the operation was successful or failed**

Whether the operation was successful or failed is not shown on the UI, so perform the following procedure to judge if the operation was successful or failed.

Check the following values, and if all the values remain the same as those you entered, the operation result is judged to be "failed".

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-R
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-G
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-B
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > DFTBK-BW

**5. In the case of a failure, turn OFF and then ON the power, and execute the following service mode again.**

- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1
- COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL2

**6. If the operation was "successful", write the entered values on the service label.**

## ■ ADF (Front/Back) Color Displacement Offset Adjustment

**1. Enter the values shown on the service label in service mode.**

**NOTE:**

To reduce the number of label items, the values of 100DF-xx and 50DF-xx are the same.

<100-DF-RG>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 50DF-RG
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 100DF-RG

<100-DF-GB>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 50DF-GB
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 100DF-GB

<100DF2RG>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 50DF2RG
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 100DF2RG

<100DF2GB>

- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 50DF2GB
- COPIER > ADJUST > CCD > 100D2GB

## ■ ADF (Front/Back) Geometric Adjustment

In the case of manual adjustment

**1. On an image duplex copied using the ADF, check the non-image width in the X and Y directions and the expansion/contraction in the X direction.**

If adjustment is necessary, adjust the values of the following service mode settings.

- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJ-Y-DF
- COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > ADJY-DF2
- FEEDER > ADJUST > DOCST
- FEEDER > ADJUST > DOCST2
- FEEDER > ADJUST > LA-SPEED
- FEEDER > ADJUST > LA-SPD2

**2. Write the entered values on the service label.**



# Troubleshooting

Test Print.....	215
Cartridge Log Report.....	221
Troubleshooting Items.....	223
Debug Log.....	225



## Test Print

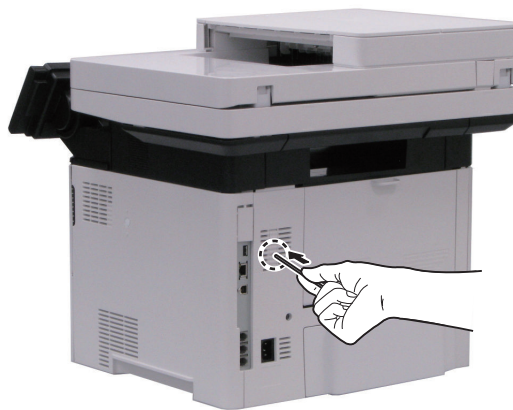
### Engine Test Print

This machine has an engine test print function to check whether the printer engine is operating normally.

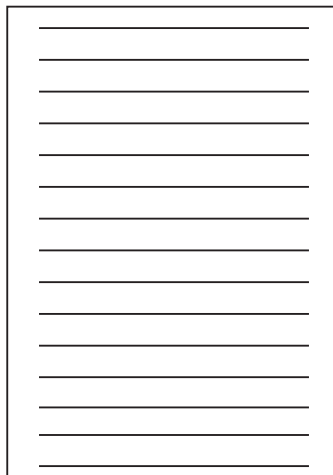
**NOTE:**

In the case of engine test print, a test print can be performed by using only the DC Controller.

1. Load A4/LTR paper in the Cassette or Multi-purpose Tray.
2. Press the test print switch on the PCB using a thin screwdriver through the hole on the rear of the host machine.



3. An engine test print is executed, and the test pattern as shown below is printed.



### Controller test print

The following test print types are available with this machine, and you can check for failure of an image with a circle 'Yes' described in the image check items in the table below. When no failure is found in the test print in normal output mode, it can be caused in PDL input or Reader.

The image of the test print is generated by the Main Controller PCB.

PG-TYPE	TYPE Pattern	Image check items										
		Grada- tion	Fog- ging	Trans- fer fail- ure	Black line	White line	Uneven pitch	Uneven density	Right angle	Straigh t lines	Magni- fication ration	
0	Grid Pattern									Yes	Yes	Yes
1	Halftone Pattern			Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes				
2	Black Pattern			Yes		Yes	Yes	Yes				
3	White Pattern		Yes		Yes							
4	Gradation 17 Pattern	Yes	Yes		Yes	Yes		Yes				
5	Thin Horizontal Line Pattern				Yes	Yes						
6	(For R&D use)											
7	(For R&D use)											

Follow the procedure shown below to output the test print.

**1. Select the following service mode.**

TESTMODE > PRINT > PG-TYPE

**2. Enter the PG number using the numeric keypad, and press the [Apply] key.**

**NOTE:**

If necessary, change the settings for test print in the following service mode.

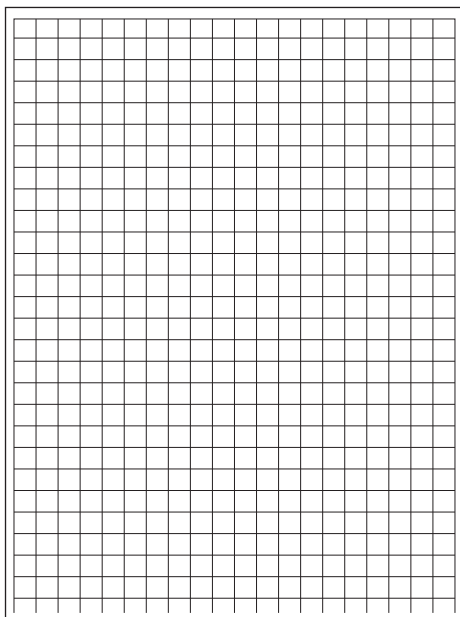
If the settings are not changed, a test print will be executed with the initial values of service mode settings.

- Setting of the number of output sheets:  
TESTMODE > PRINT > COUNT
- Setting of 1-sided/2-sided printing:  
TESTMODE > PRINT > PHASE
- Setting of the image formation method:  
TESTMODE > PRINT > MODE
- Setting of the image correction table:  
TESTMODE > PRINT > THRU
- Adjustment of test print density:  
TESTMODE > PRINT > DENS
- Setting of toner thinning process:  
TESTMODE > PRINT > MABK
- Setting of the paper source used when outputting a test print:  
TESTMODE > PRINT > FEED

**3. Execute the following service mode to output a test print.**

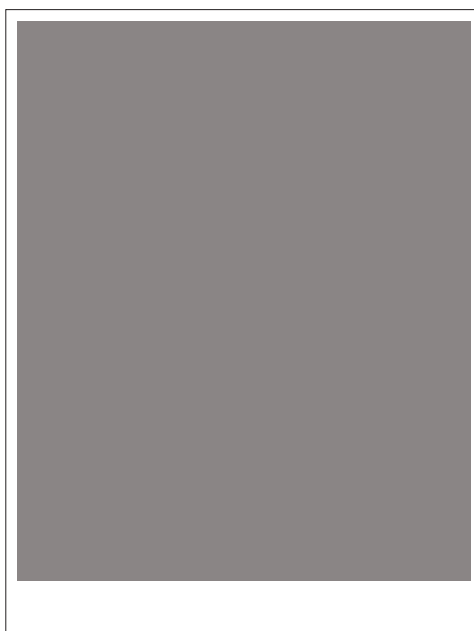
TESTMODE > PRINT > START

## ■ Grid Pattern (TYPE = 0)



Check item	Checking method	Assumed cause
Right Angle/ Straight Lines	Check that lines in horizontal/vertical scanning directions are paralleled to the paper. Check that these lines are at right angle to one another.	Failure of feed system Failure of Laser Scanner Unit
Magnification Ra- tion	Check that the grid is printed at 9.99 mm intervals. (Check the image on the second side at duplex printing.)	Failure of roller's feed system Failure of Photosensitive Drum Failure of Laser Scanner Unit

## ■ Halftone Pattern (TYPE = 1)



Check item	Checking method	Assumed cause
Transfer failure	Check the evenness of density.	Failure of transfer system Failure of Transfer Roller
Black line	Check that no black line appears on the image.	Failure of developing system Failure of cleaning (drum) Failure of Transfer Roller
White line	Check that no white line appears on the image.	Soiling on the laser light path Failure of developing system

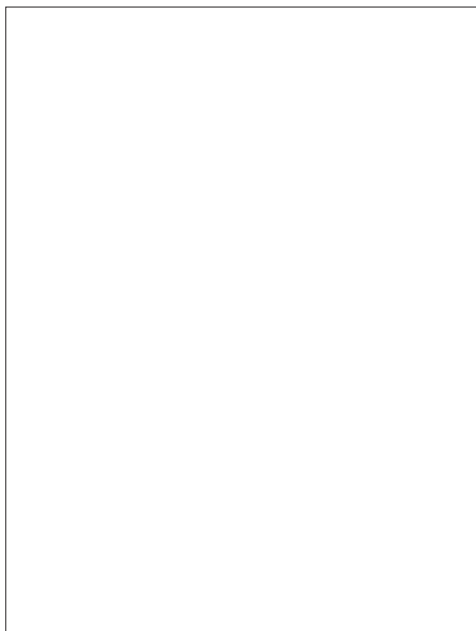
Check item	Checking method	Assumed cause
Uneven Pitch	Check that no line appears in the horizontal scanning direction of the image.	Failure of Photosensitive Drum Failure of developing system Failure of laser exposure system Drive-related failure
Uneven Density	Check the evenness of density.	Failure of Photosensitive Drum Failure of developing system Failure of Transfer Roller

### ■ Black Pattern (TYPE = 2)



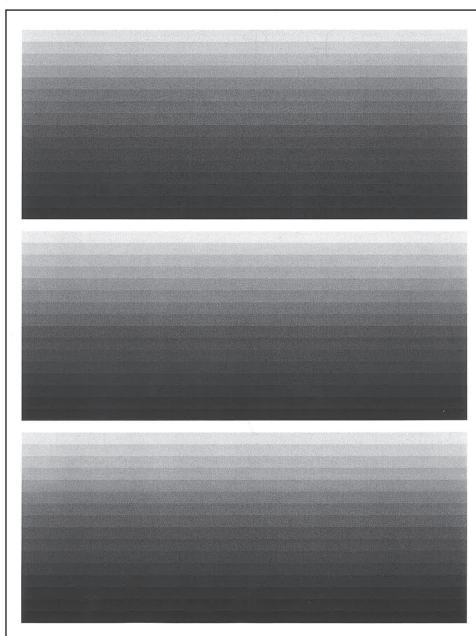
Check item	Checking method	Assumed cause
Transfer failure	Check the evenness of density.	Failure of transfer system Failure of Transfer Roller
White line	Check that no white line appears on the image.	Failure of developing system
Uneven Pitch	Check that no line appears in the horizontal scanning direction of the image.	Failure of Photosensitive Drum Failure of developing system Failure of laser exposure system Drive-related failure
Uneven Density	Check the evenness of density.	Failure of Photosensitive Drum Failure of developing system Failure of Transfer Roller

### ■ White Pattern (TYPE = 3)



Check item	Checking method	Assumed cause
Black line	Check that no black line appears on the image.	Failure of developing system Failure of cleaning (drum) Failure of Transfer Roller
Fogging	Check that no fogging appears on the image.	Failure of Photosensitive Drum Failure of laser exposure system Failure of developing system

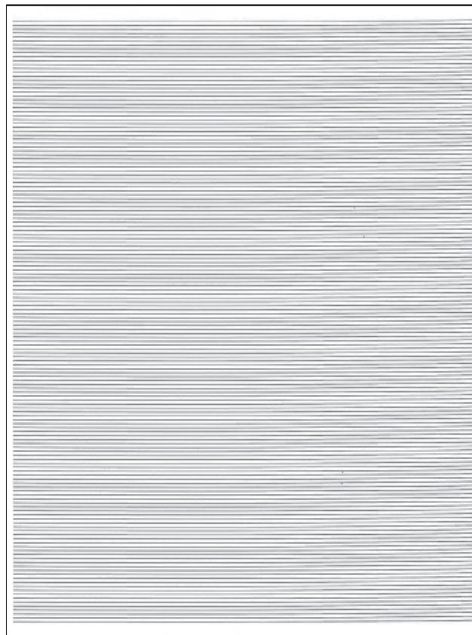
### ■ Gradation 17 Pattern (TYPE = 4)



Check item	Checking method	Assumed cause
Gradation	Check that gradation in density is made appropriately.	Failure of Photosensitive Drum Failure of laser exposure system Failure of developing system
Fogging	Check that no fogging appears in the blank area.	Failure of Photosensitive Drum Failure of laser exposure system Failure of developing system

Check item	Checking method	Assumed cause
Black line	Check that no black line appears on the image.	Failure of developing system Failure of cleaning (drum) Failure of Transfer Roller
White line	Check that no white line appears on the image.	Soiling on the laser light path Failure of developing system
Uneven Density	Check that there is no density difference between the front and rear sides.	Failure of Photosensitive Drum Failure of developing system Failure of Transfer Roller

### ■ Thin Horizontal Line Pattern (TYPE = 5)



Check item	Checking method	Assumed cause
Black line	Check that no black line appears on the image.	Failure of developing system Failure of cleaning (drum) Failure of Transfer Roller
White line	Check that no white line appears on the image.	Soiling on the laser light path Failure of developing system

## Cartridge Log Report

Logs such as history of cartridge replacement are output as a report.  
There are two types of cartridge log reports; one for users and one for service technicians.

### CAUTION:

Do not provide users with the cartridge log report for service technicians because it contains detailed information that is not disclosed to end users.

```

2018 05/10 8:51 SERVICE Monitor 0001
*****
*** CARTRIDGE LOG REPORT ***
*****

Serial Number [REDACTED] [1]

Black
(1) (2) (3) (4/6) (S1/S5) (5/7) (S2/S6) (S3/S7) (S4/S8)
Serial No. Type Cpcty. First/Last Used Pg. Count Left Toner Drum Parts
[REDACTED] 2018 04/17 11:14 00000100 93% 100% 93% -%
C1 Std. 2018 05/07 19:23 00000105 92% 100% 92% -%

C4: 00000 0000000000
C5: 00000 0000000000
C6: 00000 0000000000
C7: 00000 0000000000
C8: 00000 0000000000
  
```

[2] [3]

Cartridge Log Report (For service technicians)

No.	Description
[1]	Replacement logs
[2]	Cartridge type: The number of times a non-genuine cartridge has been detected
[3]	Non-genuine cartridge page count

### NOTE:

In addition to output as a report, cartridge logs can also be displayed on the remote UI service mode screen (for service technicians) or remote UI screen (for users).

- To display cartridge logs (for service technicians):  
SERVICE REPORT > CRG-LOG

- To display cartridge logs (for users)\*:  
Status Monitor/Cancel > Cartridge Log

\*: When not displaying the cartridge log to users, set the following service mode to "0" (OFF).

- ON/OFF of [Cartridge Log] display:  
COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW > CRG-LOG

### Output method

Execute the following service mode to output a cartridge log report for service technicians.

- To output a report on cartridge replacement history:  
COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > CRG-LOG

### NOTE:

- To output a cartridge log report (for users)\*:  
Menu > Output Reports > Print List > Cartridge Log Report

\*: When not allowing users to output the cartridge log report, set the following service mode to "0" (OFF).

- ON/OFF of [Cartridge Log Report] display:  
COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW > CRG-LOG

## Replacement logs

The record of replacement and usage of cartridges will be printed.

### CAUTION:

Just after the cartridge has been replaced with a genuine cartridge or when a non-genuine cartridge is used, accurate information cannot be obtained and a random or approximate value may be printed.

Item	Description	Remarks
(1) Serial No.	Serial number of the cartridge	
(2) Type	Cartridge type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• C1: Genuine</li> <li>• C2 to C8: Non-genuine</li> <li>• C0: Unknown</li> </ul>
(3) Cpcty.	Cartridge capacity	Displayed in accordance with the toner fillup amount
(4/6) First/Last Used	The date and time it was installed/last used	
(S1/S5) Pg. Count *	Cartridge page count (when it was installed/last used)	00000000 to 99999999
(5/7) Left	The amount remaining in the cartridge (when it was installed/ last used)	0 to 100% (New: 100%, Non-genuine: -)
(S2/S6) Toner *	The remaining life of the toner (when it was installed/last used)	-128 to 100 % (New: 100%, Indefinite: -%)
(S3/S7) Drum *	The remaining life of the drum (when it was installed/last used)	-128 to 100 % (New: 100%, Indefinite: -%)
(S4/S8) Parts *	Not used	

\*: S1 to S8 are printed only on reports for service technicians.

## Number of detections of non-genuine cartridge / Page count of non-genuine cartridge

When a non-genuine cartridge is installed, it is classified as a cartridge type C2 to C8 according to the reason for judging it nongenuine, and the number of detections of each type and the number of pages printed with the cartridge installed are recorded.

Reason for judging it non-genuine	Cartridge type		Description
	Report for users*	Report for service	
OEM	C3	C5	The number of detections of an OEM cartridge, and the number of pages printed
Communication error	C2	C4	The number of detections of a cartridge without memory and the number of pages printed
Refill	C3	C6	The number of detections of a cartridge prepared by refilling toner into a genuine cartridge, and the number of pages printed
Copied memory	C3	C7	The number of detections of a cartridge prepared by refilling toner into a genuine cartridge and copying the contents of a normal memory, and the number of pages printed
Authentication failed	C2	C8	The number of detections of a cartridge that cannot be authenticated, and the number of pages printed

\*: Only C2 and C3 are displayed. The total count of the values of the reasons for judging the cartridge non-genuine is displayed.

### NOTE:

The number of detections of non-genuine cartridge and the page count of non-genuine cartridge can be reset.

- To clear the cartridge replacement log:  
COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > CRGL-CNT



## Troubleshooting Items

### Remedy for Image Failure

When an image failure occurs, perform the remedy by referring to the following material.

- User's Guide > Top > Troubleshooting > When You Cannot Print Properly

**NOTE:**

URL of User's Guide -> <http://canon.com/oip-manual>

### Repetitive Image Defects Ruler

Cause of failure		Intervals (mm)	Symptom			
			Soiling	White spots	Soiled back	Fixing failure
Cassette Pickup Roller		Approx. 50	○	-	-	-
Cassette Separation Roller		Approx. 44	-	-	○	-
Cassette Feed Roller		Approx. 50	○	-	-	-
Registration Roller		Approx. 43	-	-	○	-
Cartridge	Primary Charging Roller	Approx. 28	-	○	-	-
	Photosensitive Drum	Approx. 75	○	○	-	-
	Developing Cylinder	Approx. 31	-	○	-	-
Transfer Roller		Approx. 39	-	○	○	-
Fixing Assembly	Fixing Film	Approx. 75	○	○	-	○
	Pressure Roller	Approx. 63	○	-	○	○

### Checking the Amount of Fixing Nip

Although the nip width of the Fixing Assembly cannot be adjusted with this machine, it can be checked.

By checking the nip width when fixing failure occurs, it is possible to judge whether there is a problem with the Fixing Assembly.

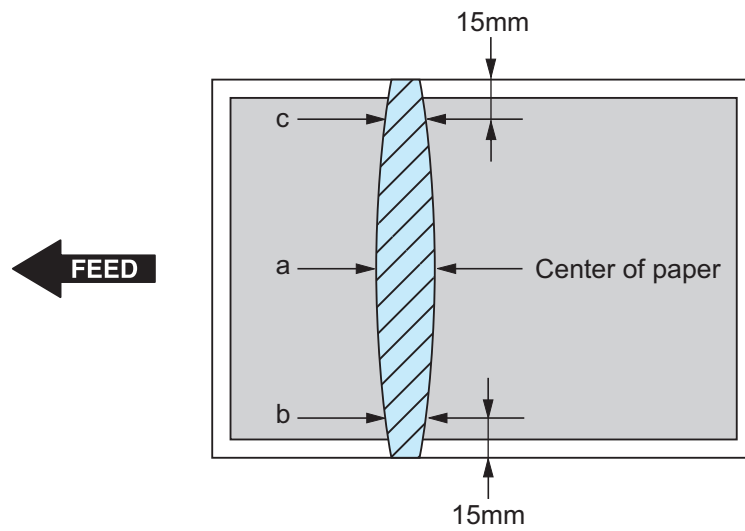
Check the nip width of the Fixing Assembly by the following procedure.

1. In the following service mode, print solid black using A4/LTR size paper.
  - TESTMODE > PRINT > PG-TYPE = 2
  - TESTMODE > PRINT > START
2. Load the printed paper with the solid black side facing up in a cassette of the machine.
3. In the following service mode, print solid white.
  - TESTMODE > PRINT > PG-TYPE = 3
  - TESTMODE > PRINT > START
4. When the leading edge of the paper comes out to the Delivery Outlet, open the Front Cover to cause a door open jam and then close the Front Cover immediately.

**CAUTION:**

Since pressure is released by opening the Front Cover, accurate fixing nip width cannot be measured while keeping the Front Cover opened.

5. About 20 seconds afterwards, open the Front Cover and remove the jammed paper.
6. Measure the widths of the glossy part of the toner on the printed paper, and check that they are within the range as follows.



- Check if the fixing nip width satisfies the reference values shown below.  
Fixing nip width (reference value): Center (a) =  $6.7 \pm 1.0$  mm, Edges (b and c) =  $6.2 \pm 1.0$  mm
- Check if the values "a - b", "b - c", and "a - c" are 1.5 mm (reference value) or less.

If either of the above conditions are not satisfied, fixing failure may occur.

## Debug Log

### Function Overview

The debug log is a log that analyzes the program behavior of the machine to enable developers to identify problems. This machine is embedded with a function that compiles the log of the behavior of each software module as debug log and outputs it as integrated log for analyzing problems.

Be sure to collect the debug log when the Support Dept. of sales company so instructs.

Note that there is no need for service technicians to check the content of collected debug log.

#### Cases in which collection of debug log is effective

Collection of debug log is effective in the following cases:

- Neither the Support Dept. of sales company nor CINC can reproduce the trouble that occurred at the customer site
- When the error frequency is low
- When the failure is suspected to be due to firmware rather than a mechanical/electrical failure.

#### CAUTION:

If the procedure for reproducing the failure is clear and the Support Dept. of sales company and CINC can reproduce it, collection of debug log is not necessary.

### Conditions for collecting logs

#### Conditions for not being able to collect logs

In the following cases, the procedure for obtaining logs is not required because logs cannot be obtained.

- Service mode screen cannot be accessed
- The machine cannot recognize a USB flash drive
- No USB port is installed in the machine (when the model has only a copy function)

#### What is necessary to collect logs

A USB flash drive that satisfies the following conditions is required to obtain the debug logs of the machine:

- Formatted in FAT 16/FAT32
- There is a free space of approx. 100MB.
- Can be recognized by the machine

### Collection procedure

The following shows the procedure for collecting the debug log from the Control Panel.

1. **Connect a USB flash drive to the machine. In the case of a model having a USB connector on a side of the Control Panel, be sure to connect the USB flash drive to the Control Panel. In the case of a model having a USB connector only on the rear side, connect the USB flash drive to the USB connector on the rear side.**

#### CAUTION:

In the case of a model having a USB connector on the Control Panel, if the USB flash drive is connected to the USB connector on the rear side, debug logs are not transferred to the USB flash drive.

2. **Execute the following service mode from the Control Panel or Remote UI.**

- COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > LOGWRITE

"Executing..." is displayed while log collection is executed. When it is completed, the screen shows the service mode screen again.

3. **Execute the following service mode from the Control Panel or Remote UI.**

- COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > LOG2USB

"Executing..." is displayed while log collection is executed. When it is completed, the screen shows the service mode screen again.

**4. Remove the USB flash drive by the correct procedure.**

Connect the USB flash drive to the PC, and check that the log file shown below has been saved.

- Output by LOGWRITE: SUBLOG.TXT
- Output by LOG2USB: SUBLOG\_YYYYMMDD.HHMMSS\_XXX.GZ (the file may be divided into multiple files)



# Error/Jam/Alarm

Overview.....	228
Error Code.....	231
Jam Code.....	238
Alarm Code.....	240

## Overview

### Outline

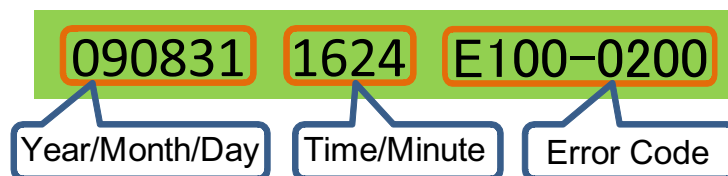
This chapter describes various codes which are displayed when a failure occurs on the product. These are classified into 3 codes as follows.

Code type	Explanation
Error code	This code is displayed when an error occurs on the machine.
Jam code	This code is displayed when a jam occurs inside the machine.
Alarm code	This code is displayed when a function of the machine is malfunctioned.

### ■ Error/Jam Log indication

#### Error log

SERVICE MODE > COPIER > DISPLAY > ERR



Indication example

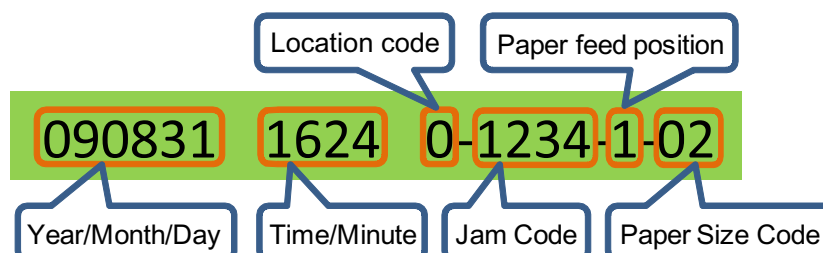
```

↳ ERR
090831 1624 E100-0200
-----
-----
-----
-----
-----

```

#### Jam log

SERVICE MODE > COPIER > DISPLAY > JAM



Indication example

```

↳ JAM
090831 1624 0-1234-1-02
-----
-----
-----
-----
-----

```

## ■ JAM/ERR LOG REPORT

Output procedure of the JAM/ERR LOG REPORT

Service Mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > ERR-LOG

```

*****
***   JAM/ERR LOG REPORT   ***
*****

JAM
    001  07/19 16:02 16:02  3  0  7907  000033  1  00002
    002  07/19 16:10 16:10  4  1  0002  000034  0  00000

ERROR
    001  03/19 07:20  3  733  0000  000010
    002  03/19 10:20  3  004  0002  000018

ALARM2
    001  03/19 06:20  3  100100  000072  000033
    002  03/19 06:20  3  100100  000073  000033
    003  03/19 06:20  3  100100  000074  000033
    004  03/19 06:20  3  100100  000071  000033

ALARM3

```

No.	Item
1	Month/Day Time/Minute
2	Position summary code
3	Location code
4	Jam code
5	Total counter
6	Pickup position code
7	Paper size
8	Position summary code
9	Error code
10	Error details code
11	Total counter
12	Alarm level (For R&D)
13	Alarm code
14	Alarm details code (For R&D)
15	Total counter

## ■ Position Summary Code

The position summary information is displayed in a single digit and has the meaning shown below.

Device	Position summary code
Host machine	3
ADF *1	4

\*1 : Printed only on Jam history.

## ■ Location Code

The jam codes of this machine contain information on the location.

The location information is displayed in a single digit and has the meaning shown below:

Device	Location code
Host machine	0
ADF	1

## ■ Pickup Position Code

When a jam occurs, the pickup location is indicated with the following pickup position code.

Pickup position	Pickup position code
Multi-purpose Tray	0
Cassette 1	1
Option cassette	2
At duplex printing	7

## ■ Paper Size Code

Paper size is coded and indicated with the size codes as shown below when a paper jam occurs.

Paper size	Paper size code	
	Control Panel (UI)	Jam/Err Log Report *1
A4	02	00002
B5	07	00007
A5	03	00003
A6	04	00004
16K	D4	00212
LGL	0C	00012
LTR	0D	00013
STMT	3C	00060
EXEC	0A	00010
Oficio	3E	00062
Oficio (Brazil)	CC	00204
Oficio (Mexico)	D2	00210
F4A	D6	00214
LTR (Government)	D0	00208
LGL (Government)	D1	00209
Foolscap/Folio	3D	00061
Foolscap (Australia)	CA	00202
LGL (India)	D7	00215
3 x 5 inch	40	00064
Envelope No.10 (COM10)	16	00022
Envelope Monarch	17	00023
Envelope C5	15	00021
Envelope DL	18	00024

\*1: Size code on the JAM/ERR LOG REPORT.



## Error Code

<b>E000-0000---</b>	<b>Error in temperature rising of the Fixing Assembly</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	The temperature of the Fixing Assembly did not reach a certain temperature within the specified period of time.
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the harness/connector between the Fixing Assembly and the DC Controller PCB.</li> <li>2. Replace the Fixing Assembly.</li> <li>3. Replace the DC Controller PCB.</li> </ol>
<b>E001-0000---</b>	<b>Abnormal high temperature of the Fixing Assembly</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	It was detected that the temperature of the Fixing Assembly was abnormally high.
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the harness/connector between the Fixing Assembly and the DC Controller PCB.</li> <li>2. Replace the Fixing Assembly.</li> <li>3. Replace the DC Controller PCB.</li> </ol>
<b>E003-0000---</b>	<b>Abnormal low temperature of the Fixing Assembly</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	It was detected that the temperature of the Fixing Assembly was abnormally low.
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the harness/connector between the Fixing Assembly and the DC Controller PCB.</li> <li>2. Replace the Fixing Assembly.</li> <li>3. Replace the DC Controller PCB.</li> </ol>
<b>E004-0000---</b>	<b>Drive circuit error</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	The zero cross signal was not detected for the specified period of time or more.
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the harness/connector between the Fixing Assembly and the DC Controller PCB.</li> <li>2. Replace the Fixing Assembly.</li> <li>3. Replace the DC Controller PCB.</li> </ol>
<b>E004-0005---</b>	<b>Fixing Relay fusion error</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	At power ON or recovery from sleep mode, a zero cross signal was detected three times during the period of 100 ms after completion of CPU initialization.
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the harness/connector between the Fixing Assembly and the DC Controller PCB.</li> <li>2. Replace the Fixing Assembly.</li> <li>3. Replace the DC Controller PCB.</li> </ol>
<b>E014-0000---</b>	<b>Error in startup of the Main Motor</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	Revolution of the Main Motor did not reach the specified value.
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the harness/connector between the Main Motor and the DC Controller PCB.</li> <li>2. Replace the Main Motor.</li> <li>3. Replace the DC Controller PCB.</li> </ol>
<b>E014-0001---</b>	<b>Error in startup of the Main Motor</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	Revolution of the Main Motor was out of the specified range.
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the harness/connector between the Main Motor and the DC Controller PCB.</li> <li>2. Replace the Main Motor.</li> <li>3. Replace the DC Controller PCB.</li> </ol>

E015-0001---	Cassette 1 lift-up error
<b>Detection Description</b>	After lift-up of the Lifting Plate of the cassette of the host machine started, ON status of the Paper Surface Sensor of the cassette of the host machine was not detected within the specified period of time.
<b>Remedy</b>	<p>1. Turn ON the power with the cassette of the host machine removed, insert the cassette, and then check the operation sound of the motor.</p> <p>When there is operation sound of the Lifter Motor, check if the Lifting Plate has been lifted up. &lt;When the Lifting Plate has been lifted up&gt;</p> <p>1. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller and the Paper Surface Sensor of the cassette of the host machine.</p> <p>2. Replace the DC Controller PCB.</p> <p>&lt;When the Lifting Plate has not been lifted up&gt;</p> <p>1. Check the condition of the gear at the host machine side (missing teeth, swing).</p> <p>2. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller and the Lifter Motor of the cassette of the host machine.</p> <p>3. Replace the Main Drive Unit (included the Lifter Motor).</p> <p>&lt;When there is no operation sound of the motor&gt;</p> <p>1. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller and the Lifter Motor of the cassette of the host machine.</p> <p>2. Replace the Main Drive Unit (included the Lifter Motor).</p> <p>3. Replace the DC Controller PCB.</p>
E015-0002---	Cassette 2 lift-up error
<b>Detection Description</b>	After lift-up of the Lifting Plate of the first cassette of the Paper Feeder started, ON status of the Paper Surface Sensor of the first cassette of the Paper Feeder was not detected within the specified period of time.
<b>Remedy</b>	<p>1. Turn ON the power with the cassette of the Paper Feeder removed, insert the cassette, and then check the operation sound of the Lifter Motor.</p> <p>When there is operation sound of the Lifter Motor, check if the Lifting Plate has been lifted up. &lt;When the Lifting Plate has been lifted up&gt;</p> <p>1. Check the harness/connector between the Paper Feeder Controller PCB and the Paper Surface Sensor of the Paper Feeder.</p> <p>2. Replace the Paper Feeder Controller PCB.</p> <p>3. Replace the DC Controller PCB.</p> <p>&lt;When the Lifting Plate has not been lifted up&gt;</p> <p>1. Check the condition of the gear of the Paper Feeder (missing teeth, swing).</p> <p>2. Check the harness/connector between the Paper Feeder Controller PCB and the PF Lifter motor.</p> <p>3. Replace the Drive Unit (included the Lifter Motor).</p> <p>&lt;When there is no operation sound of the motor&gt;</p> <p>1. Check the harness/connector between the Paper Feeder Controller PCB and the PF Lifter Motor of the Paper Feeder Unit.</p> <p>2. Replace the Cassette Feeder Controller PCB.</p> <p>3. Replace the DC Controller PCB.</p>

<b>E015-0003---</b>	<b>Cassette 3 lift-up error</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	After lift-up of the Lifting Plate of the second cassette of the Paper Feeder started, ON status of the Paper Surface Sensor of the second cassette of the Paper Feeder was not detected within the specified period of time.
<b>Remedy</b>	<p>1. Turn ON the power with the cassette of the Paper Feeder removed, insert the cassette, and then check the operation sound of the Lifter Motor.</p> <p>When there is operation sound of the Lifter Motor, check if the Lifting Plate has been lifted up.</p> <p>&lt;When the Lifting Plate has been lifted up&gt;</p> <p>1. Check the harness/connector between the Paper Feeder Controller PCB and the Paper Surface Sensor of the Paper Feeder.</p> <p>2. Replace the Paper Feeder Controller PCB.</p> <p>3. Replace the DC Controller PCB.</p> <p>&lt;When the Lifting Plate has not been lifted up&gt;</p> <p>1. Check the condition of the gear of the Paper Feeder (missing teeth, swing).</p> <p>2. Check the harness/connector between the Paper Feeder Controller PCB and the PF Lifter motor.</p> <p>3. Replace the Drive Unit (included the Lifter Motor).</p> <p>&lt;When there is no operation sound of the motor&gt;</p> <p>1. Check the harness/connector between the Paper Feeder Controller PCB and the PF Lifter Motor of the Paper Feeder Unit.</p> <p>2. Replace the Cassette Feeder Controller PCB.</p> <p>3. Replace the DC Controller PCB.</p>
<b>E015-0004---</b>	<b>Cassette 4 lift-up error</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	After lift-up of the Lifting Plate of the third cassette of the Paper Feeder started, ON status of the Paper Surface Sensor of the third cassette of the Paper Feeder was not detected within the specified period of time.
<b>Remedy</b>	<p>1. Turn ON the power with the cassette of the Paper Feeder removed, insert the cassette, and then check the operation sound of the Lifter Motor.</p> <p>When there is operation sound of the Lifter Motor, check if the Lifting Plate has been lifted up.</p> <p>&lt;When the Lifting Plate has been lifted up&gt;</p> <p>1. Check the harness/connector between the Paper Feeder Controller PCB and the Paper Surface Sensor of the Paper Feeder.</p> <p>2. Replace the Paper Feeder Controller PCB.</p> <p>3. Replace the DC Controller PCB.</p> <p>&lt;When the Lifting Plate has not been lifted up&gt;</p> <p>1. Check the condition of the gear of the Paper Feeder (missing teeth, swing).</p> <p>2. Check the harness/connector between the Paper Feeder Controller PCB and the PF Lifter motor.</p> <p>3. Replace the Drive Unit (included the Lifter Motor).</p> <p>&lt;When there is no operation sound of the motor&gt;</p> <p>1. Check the harness/connector between the Paper Feeder Controller PCB and the PF Lifter Motor of the Paper Feeder Unit.</p> <p>2. Replace the Cassette Feeder Controller PCB.</p> <p>3. Replace the DC Controller PCB.</p>
<b>E052-0000---</b>	<b>Duplex Feed Unit absent error</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	Connection of the Duplex Feed Unit was not correct.
<b>Remedy</b>	1. Replace the DC Controller PCB.
<b>E066-0000---</b>	<b>Environment Sensor error</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	When the Environment Sensor is judged to be in error
<b>Remedy</b>	<p>1. Check the harness/connector of the High Voltage Power Supply PCB and the DC Controller PCB.</p> <p>2. Replace the High Voltage Power Supply PCB (included the Environment Sensor).</p>
<b>E100-0000---</b>	<b>BD error</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	BD error
<b>Remedy</b>	<p>1. Check the harness, Flat Cable, and connector between the Laser Scanner Unit and the DC Controller PCB.</p> <p>2. Replace the Flat Cable.</p> <p>3. Replace the Laser Scanner Unit.</p> <p>4. Replace the DC Controller PCB.</p>

<b>E110-0000---</b>	<b>Error in startup of the Scanner Motor</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	Scanner area error (error in the initial operation of the Scanner Motor)
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB and the Laser Scanner Unit.</li> <li>2. Replace the Laser Scanner Unit (included the Scanner Motor).</li> <li>3. Replace the DC Controller PCB.</li> </ol>
<b>E110-0001---</b>	<b>Scanner Motor rotation error</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	Scanner area error (Scanner Motor rotation error)
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB and the Laser Scanner Unit.</li> <li>2. Replace the Laser Scanner Unit (included the Scanner Motor).</li> <li>3. Replace the DC Controller PCB.</li> </ol>
<b>E196-0000---</b>	<b>DC Controller error</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	Update of the DC Controller failed. (RFU mode right after the startup)
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace the DC Controller PCB.</li> </ol>
<b>E196-1000---</b>	<b>ROM writing/reading error (Main ROM)</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	Error in writing/reading of main program in the Main Controller PCB (Main ROM)
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Update the firmware.</li> <li>2. Replace the Main Controller PCB.</li> </ol>
<b>E196-2000---</b>	<b>ROM writing/reading error (ROM for storing setting values)</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	Error in writing/reading of the setting values storage area in the Main Controller PCB (ROM for storing setting values)
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Update the firmware.</li> <li>2. Replace the Main Controller PCB.</li> </ol>
<b>E196-3000---</b>	<b>ROM writing/reading error (eMMC)</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	Unable to read/write data from the eMMC. The eMMC failure occurred.
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Update the firmware.</li> <li>2. Replace the Main Controller PCB.</li> </ol>
<b>E196-3001---</b>	<b>ROM-ID mismatch (eMMC)</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	The eMMC has been replaced wrongly. The eMMC failure occurred.
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Update the firmware.</li> <li>2. Replace the Main Controller PCB.</li> </ol>
<b>E202-0001---</b>	<b>CIS Unit HP error (outward)</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	The CIS Unit could not detect the home position when starting scanning operation.
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the harness/connector between the Main Controller PCB and the CIS HP Sensor/Reader Motor.</li> <li>2. Replace the CIS HP Sensor.</li> <li>3. Replace the Reader Motor.</li> <li>4. Replace the CIS Unit.</li> <li>5. Replace the Main Controller PCB.</li> <li>6. Replace the Reader Unit.</li> </ol>
<b>E202-0002---</b>	<b>CIS Unit HP error (homeward)</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	The CIS Unit could not detect the home position when completing scanning operation.
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the harness/connector between the Main Controller PCB and the CIS HP Sensor/Reader Motor.</li> <li>2. Replace the CIS HP Sensor.</li> <li>3. Replace the Reader Motor.</li> <li>4. Replace the CIS Unit.</li> <li>5. Replace the Main Controller PCB.</li> <li>6. Replace the Reader Unit.</li> </ol>

<b>E246-0000---</b>	<b>System error</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	System error
<b>Remedy</b>	Contact the sales company.
<b>E247-0000---</b>	<b>System error</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	System error
<b>Remedy</b>	Contact the sales company.
<b>E302-0001---</b>	<b>Paper front light intensity error</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	The light intensity is low at shading.
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> <li>2. Check the harness/connector between the Main Controller PCB and the CIS Unit.</li> <li>3. Replace the CIS Unit.</li> <li>4. Replace the Main Controller PCB.</li> <li>5. Replace the Reader Unit.</li> </ol>
<b>E302-0002---</b>	<b>Error in image sampling for shading</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	Image sampling for shading was not completed.
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace the Main Controller PCB.</li> </ol>
<b>E350-0000---</b>	<b>System error</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	System error
<b>Remedy</b>	Contact the sales company.
<b>E351-0000---</b>	<b>Main Controller PCB error (Scanner system)</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	System error
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Update the firmware.</li> <li>2. Replace the Main Controller PCB.</li> </ol>
<b>E354-0000---</b>	<b>System error</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	System error
<b>Remedy</b>	Contact the sales company.
<b>E355-0000---</b>	<b>System error</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	System error
<b>Remedy</b>	Contact the sales company.
<b>E355-0004---</b>	<b>System error</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	System error
<b>Remedy</b>	Contact the sales company.
<b>E355-0005---</b>	<b>System error</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	System error
<b>Remedy</b>	Contact the sales company.
<b>E719-0000---</b>	<b>Error in communication with the new Card Reader (serial communication)</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	Unable to communicate with the new Card Reader.
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the connection of the new Card Reader.</li> </ol>
<b>E732-0001---</b>	<b>Scanner communication error</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	Scanner communication error
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Update the firmware.</li> <li>2. Replace the Main Controller PCB.</li> </ol>
<b>E736-0000---</b>	<b>Fax communication error</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	Error in communication with the CCU/modem
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the connection of the NCU PCB.</li> <li>2. Replace the NCU PCB.</li> <li>3. Replace the Main Controller PCB.</li> </ol>

<b>E736-0001---</b>	<b>Error in ROM for backing up fax data</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	An error occurred in ROM for backing up fax data.
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the connection of the NCU PCB.</li> <li>2. Replace the NCU PCB.</li> <li>3. Replace the Main Controller PCB.</li> </ol>
<b>E743-0000---</b>	<b>DDI communication error</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	Software sequence error
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Turn OFF and then ON the main power.</li> </ol>
<b>E744-0001---</b>	<b>Invalid combination of language file versions</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	Language file version was not matched with that of the main program.
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Update the firmware.</li> </ol>
<b>E744-0002---</b>	<b>Language file error</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	The size of the language file exceeded the allowed size.
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Update the firmware.</li> </ol>
<b>E744-1001---</b>	<b>Version mismatch between BOOTABLE and BOOTROM</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	Version of the main program and that of the start-up program were not matched.
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Update the firmware.</li> </ol>
<b>E744-4000---</b>	<b>Engine ID error</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	An invalid engine connection was detected.
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check that the correct DC Controller PCB is installed.</li> <li>2. Update the firmware.</li> <li>3. Replace the DC Controller PCB.</li> </ol>
<b>E744-5000---</b>	<b>Panel microcomputer error</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	Error in the Control Panel PCB (microcomputer).
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the harness/connector between the Main Controller PCB and the Control Panel Unit.</li> <li>2. Update the firmware.</li> <li>3. Replace the Control Panel Unit.</li> <li>4. Replace the Main Controller PCB.</li> </ol>
<b>E744-6000---</b>	<b>Error in communication with the Wireless LAN Board</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	Unable to communicate with the Wireless LAN PCB.
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the harness/connector between the Main Controller PCB and the Wireless LAN PCB.</li> <li>2. Update the firmware.</li> <li>3. Replace the Wireless LAN PCB.</li> <li>4. Replace the Main Controller PCB.</li> </ol>
<b>E744-7000---</b>	<b>Backup microcomputer error</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	An error in the microcomputer which retains fax job information of the Main Controller PCB.
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Update the firmware.</li> <li>2. Replace the Main Controller PCB.</li> </ol>
<b>E746-0000---</b>	<b>Main Controller PCB error (others)</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	A communication error of the Main Controller PCB occurred (other than scan-related communication error).
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Update the firmware.</li> <li>2. Replace the Main Controller PCB.</li> </ol>
<b>E766-9000---</b>	<b>Scanner power state error</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	Error in power state of the Laser Scanner Unit (firmware-dependent)
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Update the firmware.</li> <li>2. Replace the Laser Scanner Unit.</li> </ol>

<b>E805-0001---</b>	<b>Fan Motor 1 error</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	The Main Fan fails to rotate at the specified rotation speed.
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Check the connection of the Main Fan.</li><li>2. Replace the Main Fan.</li></ol>
<b>E805-0002---</b>	<b>Fan Motor 2 error</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	The Sub Fan fails to rotate at the specified rotation speed.
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Check the connection of the Sub Fan.</li><li>2. Replace the Sub Fan.</li></ol>
<b>E808-0000---</b>	<b>Low voltage power supply failure</b>
<b>Detection Description</b>	When the printer has detected a low-voltage power supply failure
<b>Remedy</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Check the harness/connector between the DC Controller PCB and the Low Voltage Power Supply PCB.</li><li>2. Replace the Low Voltage Power Supply PCB.</li><li>3. Replace the DC Controller PCB.</li></ol>

## Jam Code

Location code	Jam Code	Type	Sensor Name	Sensor ID	Area
0	0040	Size Error	The mismatch of the paper size	-	-
0	0801	Pickup Delay Jam 1	Pre-registration Sensor	PS11	Cassette1
0	0802	Pickup Delay Jam 1	Pre-registration Sensor	PS11	Multi-purpose Tray
0	0803	Pickup Delay Jam 1	Pre-registration Sensor	PS11	Option Cassette1
0	0804	Pickup Delay Jam 1	Pre-registration Sensor	PS11	Option Cassette2
0	0805	Pickup Delay Jam 1	Pre-registration Sensor	PS11	Option Cassette3
0	0807	Pickup Delay Jam 1	Pre-registration Sensor/TOP Sensor	PS11/PS2	Registration Area to Cartridge
0	0808	Pickup Delay Jam 1	TOPSensor/Fixing Delivery Sensor	PS2/PS13	Cartridge to Fixing Area
0	0809	Pickup Delay Jam 1	Fixing Delivery Sensor/Delivery Tray Full Sensor	PS13/PS4	Fixing Area to Delivery Area
0	080E	Pickup Delay Jam 1	Duplex Feed Sensor	PS22	Duplex Re-pickup Assembly
0	0903	Pickup Delay Jam 2	TOPSensor	PS2	Option Cassette1
0	0904	Pickup Delay Jam 2	TOPSensor	PS2	Option Cassette2
0	0905	Pickup Delay Jam 2	TOPSensor	PS2	Option Cassette3
0	0907	Pickup Delay Jam 2	Pre-registration Sensor/TOP Sensor	PS11/PS2	Registration Area to Cartridge
0	0908	Pickup Delay Jam 2	TOPSensor/Fixing Delivery Sensor	PS2/PS13	Cartridge to Fixing Area
0	0909	Pickup Delay Jam 2	Fixing Delivery Sensor/Delivery Tray Full Sensor	PS13/PS4	Fixing Area to Delivery Area
0	0A04	Pickup Delay Jam 3	PF Media Path Sensor	PS432	Option Cassette2
0	0A05	Pickup Delay Jam 3	PF Media Path Sensor	PS432	Option Cassette3
0	0A07	Pickup Delay Jam 3	PF Media Path Sensor	PS432	Registration Area to Cartridge
0	0A08	Pickup Delay Jam 3	PF Media Path Sensor	PS432	Cartridge to Fixing Area
0	0A09	Pickup Delay Jam 3	PF Media Path Sensor	PS432	Fixing Area to Delivery Area
0	1007	Pickup Stationary Jam 1	Pre-registration Sensor	PS11	Registration Area to Cartridge
0	1008	Pickup Stationary Jam 1	Pre-registration Sensor	PS11	Cartridge to Fixing Area
0	1009	Pickup Stationary Jam 1	Pre-registration Sensor	PS11	Fixing Area to Delivery Area
0	1807	Fixing Delivery Delay Jam1	Fixing Delivery Sensor	PS13	Registration Area to Cartridge
0	1808	Fixing Delivery Delay Jam1	Fixing Delivery Sensor	PS13	Cartridge to Fixing Area
0	1809	Fixing Delivery Delay Jam1	Fixing Delivery Sensor	PS13	Fixing Area to Delivery Area



Location code	Jam Code	Type	Sensor Name	Sensor ID	Area
0	2007	Fixing Delivery Stationary Jam1	Fixing Delivery Sensor	PS13	Registration Area to Cartridge
0	2008	Fixing Delivery Stationary Jam1	Fixing Delivery Sensor	PS13	Cartridge to Fixing Area
0	2009	Fixing Delivery Stationary Jam1	Fixing Delivery Sensor	PS13	Fixing Area to Delivery Area
0	2801	Power ON Jam 1	Pre-registration Sensor	PS11	Cassette1
0	2802	Power ON Jam 1	TOP Sensor	PS2	Multi-purpose Tray
0	2803	Power ON Jam 1	PF Media Path Sensor	PS432	Option Cassette1
0	2804	Power ON Jam 1	PF Media Path Sensor	PS432	Option Cassette2
0	2805	Power ON Jam 1	PF Media Path Sensor	PS432	Option Cassette3
0	2807	Power ON Jam 1	Pre-registration Sensor/TOP Sensor	PS11/PS2	Registration Area to Cartridge
0	2808	Power ON Jam 1	TOPSensor/Fixing Delivery Sensor	PS2/PS13	Cartridge to Fixing Area
0	2809	Power ON Jam 1	Fixing Delivery Sensor/Delivery Tray Full Sensor	PS13/PS4	Fixing Area to Delivery Area
0	280D	Power ON Jam 1	Duplex Feed Sensor	PS22	Duplex Re-pickup Assembly
0	2901	Power ON Jam 2	Pre-registration Sensor	PS11	Cassette1
0	2902	Power ON Jam 2	Pre-registration Sensor	PS11	Multi-purpose Tray
0	2903	Power ON Jam 2	Pre-registration Sensor	PS11	Option Cassette1
0	2904	Power ON Jam 2	Pre-registration Sensor	PS11	Option Cassette2
0	2905	Power ON Jam 2	Pre-registration Sensor	PS11	Option Cassette3
0	2907	Power ON Jam 2	Pre-registration Sensor/TOP Sensor	PS11/PS2	Registration Area to Cartridge
0	2908	Power ON Jam 2	TOPSensor/Fixing Delivery Sensor	PS2/PS13	Cartridge to Fixing Area
0	2909	Power ON Jam 2	Fixing Delivery Sensor/Delivery Tray Full Sensor	PS13/PS4	Fixing Area to Delivery Area
0	290D	Power ON Jam 2	Duplex Feed Sensor	PS22	Duplex Re-pickup Assembly
0	3001	Door Open Jam1	Pre-registration Sensor	PS11	Cassette1
0	3002	Door Open Jam1	Pre-registration Sensor	PS11	Multi-purpose Tray
0	3003	Door Open Jam1	Pre-registration Sensor	PS11	Option Cassette1
0	3004	Door Open Jam1	Pre-registration Sensor	PS11	Option Cassette2
0	3005	Door Open Jam1	Pre-registration Sensor	PS11	Option Cassette3
0	3007	Door Open Jam1	Pre-registration Sensor/TOP Sensor	PS11/PS2	Registration Area to Cartridge
0	3008	Door Open Jam1	TOPSensor/Fixing Delivery Sensor	PS2/PS13	Cartridge to Fixing Area
0	3009	Door Open Jam1	Fixing Delivery Sensor/Delivery Tray Full Sensor	PS13/PS4	Fixing Area to Delivery Area
0	300D	Door Open Jam1	Duplex Feed Sensor	PS22	Duplex Re-pickup Assembly
0	3807	Wrap Jam1	Pre-registration Sensor/TOP Sensor	PS11/PS2	Registration Area to Cartridge
0	3808	Wrap Jam1	TOPSensor/Fixing Delivery Sensor	PS2/PS13	Cartridge to Fixing Area
0	3809	Wrap Jam1	Fixing Delivery Sensor/Delivery Tray Full Sensor	PS13/PS4	Fixing Area to Delivery Area
0	4807	Duplex Re-pickup Assembly Jam1	Pre-registration Sensor/TOP Sensor	PS11/PS2	Registration Area to Cartridge
0	4808	Duplex Re-pickup Assembly Jam1	TOPSensor/Fixing Delivery Sensor	PS2/PS13	Cartridge to Fixing Area
0	4809	Duplex Re-pickup Assembly Jam1	Fixing Delivery Sensor/Delivery Tray Full Sensor	PS13/PS4	Fixing Area to Delivery Area
0	480C	Duplex Re-pickup Assembly Jam1	Duplex Feed Sensor	PS22	Duplex Re-pickup Assembly
0	480D	Duplex Re-pickup Assembly Jam1	Duplex Feed Sensor	PS22	Duplex Re-pickup Assembly

## Alarm Code

<b>10-0404</b>	<b>Toner Bottle empty alarm (BK)</b>
<b>A. Operation / B. Cause / C. Remedy</b>	When the Toner Bottle empty was detected



# Service Mode

Overview.....	242
COPIER (Service mode for printer)...	245
FEEDER (ADF service mode).....	324
FAX (FAX service mode).....	326
TESTMODE (Service mode for test print, operation check, etc.).....	332

## Overview

### Entering Service Mode

For information on how to enter service mode, contact the Support Dept. of the sales company.

### Backing up Service Mode

Because setting values and management data of the host machine are stored in the eMMC of the Main Controller PCB, they need to be backed up before replacing the Main Controller PCB. (Do not remove the eMMC PCB from Main Controller PCB.) Also, restoration of the backup data is necessary after replacing the Main Controller PCB.

**Backup: Connect a USB flash drive to the USB memory port.**

COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > EXPORT

**Restore: Restore backup data of the USB flash drive.**

COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > IMPORT

#### NOTE:

As for the user data (the Settings/Registration data, etc.), be sure to back up the user data before replacing the Main Controller PCB and then restore it after replacement by either of the following methods:

#### Backup

- Menu > Management Settings > Data Management > Import/Export > Export
- Remote UI > Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Data Management > Import/Export > Export

#### Restore

- Menu > Management Settings > Data Management > Import/Export > Import
- Remote UI > Settings/Registration > Management Settings > Data Management > Import/Export > Import

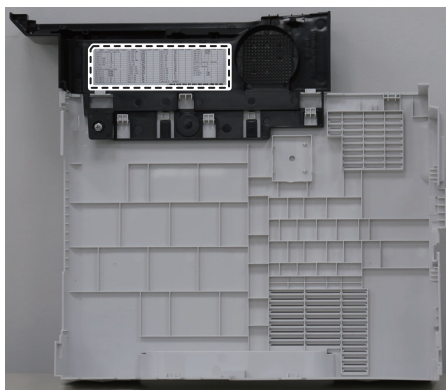
### Service Label

In factory setting, adjustments are made for each machine, and adjustment values are written in the service label.

In the case of the following, adjustment values for ADJUST or OPTION return to default. Therefore, when you made adjustments in the field.

- Changed Main Controller PCB
- Changed DC Controller PCB
- After RAM clear execution

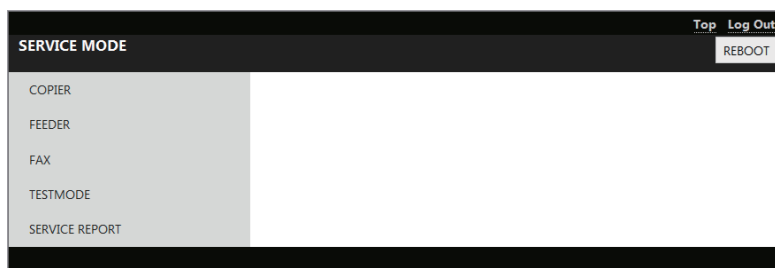
Therefore, when you made adjustments and changed values of the Service Mode in the field, be sure to write down the changed values in the service label. When there is no relevant field in the service label, write down the values in a blank field.



## Remote UI Service Mode

### Function Overview

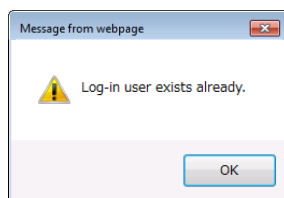
It is possible to display, configure, and execute various service mode modes as well as restart the host machine by using remote UI.



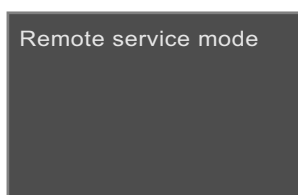
### Operating conditions

In order to operate service mode using Remote UI, the following conditions must be met.

- Service mode is not used on the Control Panel.  
If service mode is accessed from the Control Panel of the host machine, "Log-in user exists already." is displayed when service mode is accessed from Remote UI.



- When Remote UI service mode (this function) is not being logged in by other users  
When service mode is being accessed from Remote UI, "Remote service mode" is displayed on the UI of the host machine.



- When Remote UI is enabled in the setting on the Control Panel  
[Settings/Registration] > [System Settings] > [Remote UI Settings] > [Use Remote UI] > [ON]
- When the following setting (Remote UI service mode function) is enabled (setting value: 1) in service mode  
COPIER > OPTION > BODY > RMT-SW  
0:OFF(default), 1:ON

### How to Use

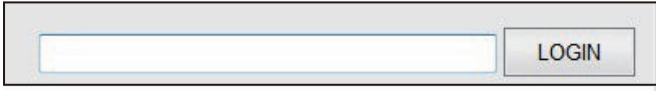
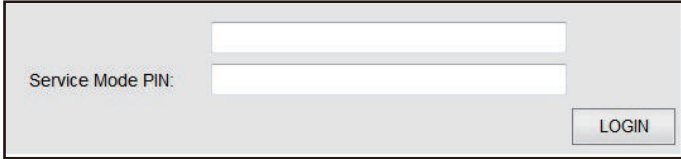

#### 1. Activate the Web browser, and access the following URL:

<http://<Host machine's IP address or host name>/servicemode.html>

**2. Enter the password, and click [LOGIN].**

Password required for authentication differs depending on the following service mode setting: COPIER > OPTION > BODY > PSWD-SW

### Combinations of service mode settings and required passwords

PSWD-SW setting value	Password required for authentication	Authentication screen
0	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Password of remote UI service mode</li> </ul>	
1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Password of remote UI service mode</li> <li>Service mode password</li> </ul>	
2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Password of RUI service mode</li> <li>User's system administrator ID</li> <li>Password of system administrator</li> <li>Service mode password</li> </ul>	

**NOTE:**

- If you do not know the password of remote UI service mode, contact the Support Dept. of the sales company.
- Password of service mode can be changed in COPIER > OPTION > BODY > PSWD-SW.

**3. If you do not know the password of remote UI service mode, contact the Support Dept. of the sales company. When finishing the operation, click [REBOOT] or [Log Out].****NOTE:**

If the user logged in and then closed the browser without logging out, connection status remains as "LOGIN". If the user attempts to log in to service mode under "LOGIN" status, exclusive control is executed so that the user cannot access service mode. In that case, wait for a fixed time (3 minutes) from the last access to let the user be automatically logged out, or turn OFF/ON the power of the machine to be forcibly logged out.

## COPIER (Service mode for printer)

### DISPLAY

#### ■ VERSION

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > DISPLAY > VERSION

<b>MAIN</b>	<b>Display of Bootable version</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To display the firmware version of Main Controller PCB.
<b>Use Case</b>	When upgrading the firmware
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	00.00 to 99.99
<b>BOOT</b>	<b>Display of BootROM version</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To display the version of Boot ROM (BOOT program).
<b>Use Case</b>	When upgrading the firmware
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	00.00 to 99.99
<b>LANG</b>	<b>Display of language pack version</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To display the version of language pack.
<b>Use Case</b>	When upgrading the firmware
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	00.00 to 99.99
<b>DEMODATA</b>	<b>Display of demo print data version</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To display the version of demo print data. For the models not having demo print function, "FF.FF" is displayed.
<b>Use Case</b>	When upgrading the firmware
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	00.00 to 99.99
<b>ECONT</b>	<b>Display of DC Controller version</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To display the version of DC Controller PCB.
<b>Use Case</b>	When upgrading the firmware
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	00.00 to 99.99
<b>PANEL</b>	<b>Display of firmware version of panel</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To display the firmware version of Control Panel CPU PCB.
<b>Use Case</b>	When upgrading the firmware
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	00.00 to 99.99
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> PANEL-UP
<b>ECO</b>	<b>For R&amp;D</b>

## ■ USER

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > DISPLAY > USER

SPDTYPE	Display of engine speed type
<b>Detail</b>	To display the engine speed type (ppm) of this machine.
<b>Use Case</b>	When checking the engine speed type
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 99
<b>Default Value</b>	0

## ■ CCD

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > DISPLAY > CCD

TARGET-B	Display of shading target value (B)
<b>Detail</b>	To display the shading target value of Blue. Continuous display of 0 (minimum) or 2048 (maximum) is considered as a failure of the Scanner Unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	At scanned image failure
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 2048
<b>Default Value</b>	1202
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> ADJUST> CCD> DFTAR-B
TARGET-G	Display of shading target value (G)
<b>Detail</b>	To display the shading target value of Green. Continuous display of 0 (minimum) or 2048 (maximum) is considered as a failure of the Scanner Unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	At scanned image failure
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 2048
<b>Default Value</b>	1163
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> ADJUST> CCD> DFTAR-G
TARGET-R	Display of shading target value (R)
<b>Detail</b>	To display the shading target value of Red. Continuous display of 0 (minimum) or 2048 (maximum) is considered as a failure of the Scanner Unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	At scanned image failure
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 2048
<b>Default Value</b>	1135
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> ADJUST> CCD> DFTAR-R
TARGETBW	Display of shading target value (B&W)
<b>Detail</b>	To display the shading target value at B&W jobs. Continuous display of 0 (minimum) or 2048 (maximum) is considered a failure of the Main Controller PCB.
<b>Use Case</b>	At scanned image failure
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 2048
<b>Default Value</b>	1072
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> ADJUST> CCD> DFTAR-BW



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; DISPLAY &gt; CCD

<b>BK-SHDST</b>	<b>Display paper back shading correct result</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To display the paper back shading correction result. Whether the results of BK-SHD1 and BK-SHD2 are correct is displayed.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: NG 1: OK
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BK-SHD1/2
<b>1P-ERR-A</b>	<b>Frt/bck clr dif calibr PG read rslt: frt</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To display the result of reading of PG for calibrating color difference between the front and back sides with the Scanner Unit (for front side). If 1 is displayed in both this item and 1P-ERR-B, it means that calibration for color difference on front and back sides has succeeded.
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 8 0: Reading is not executed 1: Reading is executed 2: Reading failed (e.g.: no originals placed, jam) 3: Detection of patch edge failed (e.g.: 1st/2nd side of original reversed) 4: Failed because the degree of skew of original was too large 5: Invalid patch reading value (e.g.: original was upside down) 6: Failed due to other causes 7 to 8: Not used
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-R> 1PSCLB-A COPIER> DISPLAY> CCD> 1P-ERR-B
<b>1P-ERR-B</b>	<b>Frt/bck clr dif calibr PG read rslt: bck</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To display the result of reading of PG for calibrating color difference between the front and back sides with the Scanner Unit (for back side). If 1 is displayed in both this item and 1P-ERR-A, it means that calibration for color difference on front and back sides has succeeded.
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 8 0: Reading is not executed 1: Reading is executed 2: Reading failed (e.g.: no originals placed, jam) 3: Detection of patch edge failed (e.g.: 1st/2nd side of original reversed) 4: Failed because the degree of skew of original was too large 5: Invalid patch reading value (e.g.: original was upside down) 6: Failed due to other causes 7 to 8: Not used
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-R> 1PSCLB-B COPIER> DISPLAY> CCD> 1P-ERR-A

## I/O (I/O display mode)

### ■ Reader (R-CON > P001)

Address	bit	Name	Symbol	Remarks
P001	7	-	-	-
	6	-	-	-
	5	-	-	-
	4	-	-	-
	3	-	-	-
	2	CIS HP Sensor	PS14	H : HP
	1	Document Sensor	PS16	H : Paper
	0	Document End Sensor	PS15	H : Paper

## ADJUST (Adjustment mode)

### ■ CCD

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > ADJUST (Adjustment mode) > CCD

W-PLT-X	Stdrd White Plt white lvl data (X) entry
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the white level data (X) for the Standard White Plate. When replacing the Reader Unit, Reader Upper Cover Unit or Main Controller PCB, enter "XXXX" of the value (XXXXYYYYZZZZ) shown on the barcode label affixed at the upper left of the Copyboard Glass.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Reader Unit - When replacing the Reader Upper Cover Unit - When replacing the Main Controller PCB
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	7000 to 9999
<b>Default Value</b>	8273
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER.> ADJUST> CCD> W-PLT-Y/Z
W-PLT-Y	Stdrd White Plt white lvl data (Y) entry
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the white level data (Y) for the Standard White Plate. When replacing the Reader Unit, Reader Upper Cover Unit or Main Controller PCB, enter "YYYY" of the value (XXXXYYYYZZZZ) shown on the barcode label affixed at the upper left of the Copyboard Glass.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Reader Unit - When replacing the Reader Upper Cover Unit - When replacing the Main Controller PCB
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	7000 to 9999
<b>Default Value</b>	8737
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER.> ADJUST> CCD> W-PLT-X/Z

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>W-PLT-Z</b>		<b>Stdrd White Plt white lvl data (Z) entry</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the white level data (Z) for the Standard White Plate. When replacing the Reader Unit, Reader Upper Cover Unit or Main Controller PCB, enter "ZZZZ" of the value (XXXXYYYYZZZZ) shown on the barcode label affixed at the upper left of the Copyboard Glass.	
<b>Use Case</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When replacing the Reader Unit</li> <li>- When replacing the Reader Upper Cover Unit</li> <li>- When replacing the Main Controller PCB</li> </ul>	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.	
<b>Caution</b>	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	7000 to 9999	
<b>Default Value</b>	9427	
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER.> ADJUST> CCD> W-PLT-X/Y	
<b>DFTAR-R</b>		<b>Shading target VL (R) entry: front side</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the shading target value of Red of the Scanner Unit (for front side) at stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. When replacing the Reader Unit, Scanner Unit, or Reader Upper Cover Unit, execute DF-WLVL1 and DF-WLVL2 and write the value which is automatically set in the service label. The setting is applied to only the image on the front side.	
<b>Use Case</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data</li> <li>- When replacing the Reader Unit</li> <li>- When replacing the Scanner Unit</li> <li>- When replacing the Reader Upper Cover Unit</li> </ul>	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 2048	
<b>Default Value</b>	1105	
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> DISPLAY> CCD> TARGET-R COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1/2	
<b>DFTAR-G</b>		<b>Shading target VL (G) entry: front side</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the shading target value of Green of the Scanner Unit (for front side) at stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. When replacing the Reader Unit, Scanner Unit, or Reader Upper Cover Unit, execute DF-WLVL1 and DF-WLVL2 and write the value which is automatically set in the service label. The setting is applied to only the image on the front side.	
<b>Use Case</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data</li> <li>- When replacing the Reader Unit</li> <li>- When replacing the Scanner Unit</li> <li>- When replacing the Reader Upper Cover Unit</li> </ul>	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 2048	
<b>Default Value</b>	1129	
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> DISPLAY> CCD> TARGET-G COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1/2	

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>DFTAR-B</b>		<b>Shading target VL (B) entry: front side</b>
<b>Detail</b>		To enter the shading target value of Blue of the Scanner Unit (for front side) at stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. When replacing the Reader Unit, Scanner Unit, or Reader Upper Cover Unit, execute DF-WLVL1 and DF-WLVL2 and write the value which is automatically set in the service label. The setting is applied to only the image on the front side.
<b>Use Case</b>		- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data - When replacing the Reader Unit - When replacing the Scanner Unit - When replacing the Reader Upper Cover Unit
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>		Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>		0 to 2048
<b>Default Value</b>		1151
<b>Related Service Mode</b>		COPIER> DISPLAY> CCD> TARGET-B COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1/2
<b>DFTAR-BW</b>		<b>Shading target VL (B&amp;W) entry: front</b>
<b>Detail</b>		To enter the B&W shading target value of the Scanner Unit (for front side) at stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. When replacing the Reader Unit, Scanner Unit, or Reader Upper Cover Unit, execute DF-WLVL1 and DF-WLVL2 and write the value which is automatically set in the service label. The setting is applied to only the image on the front side.
<b>Use Case</b>		- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data - When replacing the Reader Unit - When replacing the Scanner Unit - When replacing the Reader Upper Cover Unit
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>		Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>		0 to 2048
<b>Default Value</b>		1072
<b>Related Service Mode</b>		COPIER> DISPLAY> CCD> TARGETBW COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1/2
<b>DFTBK-R</b>		<b>Shading target VL (R) entry: back side</b>
<b>Detail</b>		To enter the shading target value of Red of the Scanner Unit (for back side) at stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. When replacing the Reader Unit, Scanner Unit, or Reader Upper Cover Unit, execute DF-WLVL1 and DF-WLVL2 and write the value which is automatically set in the service label. The setting is applied to only the image on the back side.
<b>Use Case</b>		- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data - When replacing the Reader Unit - When replacing the Scanner Unit - When replacing the Reader Upper Cover Unit
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>		Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>		0 to 2048
<b>Default Value</b>		1105
<b>Related Service Mode</b>		COPIER> DISPLAY> CCD> TARGET-R COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1/2

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>DFTBK-G Shading target VL (G) entry: back side</b>	
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the shading target value of Green of the Scanner Unit (for back side) at stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. When replacing the Reader Unit, Scanner Unit, or Reader Upper Cover Unit, execute DF-WLVL1 and DF-WLVL2 and write the value which is automatically set in the service label. The setting is applied to only the image on the back side.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data - When replacing the Reader Unit - When replacing the Scanner Unit - When replacing the Reader Upper Cover Unit
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 2048
<b>Default Value</b>	1129
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> DISPLAY> CCD> TARGET-G COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1/2
<b>DFTBK-B Shading target VL (B) entry: back side</b>	
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the shading target value of Blue of the Scanner Unit (for back side) at stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. When replacing the Reader Unit, Scanner Unit, or Reader Upper Cover Unit, execute DF-WLVL1 and DF-WLVL2 and write the value which is automatically set in the service label. The setting is applied to only the image on the back side.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data - When replacing the Reader Unit - When replacing the Scanner Unit - When replacing the Reader Upper Cover Unit
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 2048
<b>Default Value</b>	1151
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> DISPLAY> CCD> TARGET-B COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1/2
<b>DFTBK-BW Shading target VL (B&amp;W) entry: back</b>	
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the B&W shading target value of the Scanner Unit (for back side) at stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. When replacing the Reader Unit, Scanner Unit, or Reader Upper Cover Unit, execute DF-WLVL1 and DF-WLVL2 and write the value which is automatically set in the service label. The setting is applied to only the image on the back side.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data - When replacing the Reader Unit - When replacing the Scanner Unit - When replacing the Reader Upper Cover Unit
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 2048
<b>Default Value</b>	1072
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> DISPLAY> CCD> TARGETBW COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1/2

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>50-RG</b>	<b>RG clr displace correct: 50% book mode</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To correct the color displacement between R and G lines in vertical scanning direction that occurs at 50% copyboard reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key), and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-512 to 512
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 line
<b>Default Value</b>	-333
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	50% reading: 300 dpi in horizontal scanning direction x 600 dpi in vertical scanning direction
<b>50-GB</b>	<b>GB clr displace correct: 50% book mode</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To correct the color displacement between G and B lines in vertical scanning direction that occurs at 50% copyboard reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key), and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-512 to 512
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 line
<b>Default Value</b>	333
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	50% reading: 300 dpi in horizontal scanning direction x 600 dpi in vertical scanning direction
<b>100-RG</b>	<b>RG clr displace correct: 100% book mode</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To correct the color displacement between R and G lines in vertical scanning direction that occurs at 100% copyboard reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key), and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-512 to 512
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 line
<b>Default Value</b>	-333
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	100 reading: 600 dpi in horizontal scanning direction x 600 dpi in vertical scanning direction
<b>100-GB</b>	<b>GB clr displace correct: 100% book mode</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To correct the color displacement between G and B lines in vertical scanning direction that occurs at 100% copyboard reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key), and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-512 to 512
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 line
<b>Default Value</b>	333
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	100 reading: 600 dpi in horizontal scanning direction x 600 dpi in vertical scanning direction

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>50DF-RG</b>	<b>RG clr displace crct: 50% ADF, front</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To correct the color displacement between R and G lines in vertical scanning direction that occurs at 50% ADF mode. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to only the image on the front side.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key), and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-512 to 512
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 line
<b>Default Value</b>	-333
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	50% reading: 300 dpi in horizontal scanning direction x 600 dpi in vertical scanning direction
<b>50DF-GB</b>	<b>GB clr displace crct: 50% ADF, front</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To correct the color displacement between G and B lines in vertical scanning direction that occurs at 50% ADF mode. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to only the image on the front side.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key), and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-512 to 512
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 line
<b>Default Value</b>	333
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	50% reading: 300 dpi in horizontal scanning direction x 600 dpi in vertical scanning direction
<b>100DF-RG</b>	<b>RG clr displace crct: 100% ADF, front</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To correct the color displacement between R and G lines in vertical scanning direction that occurs at 100% ADF mode. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to only the image on the front side.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key), and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-512 to 512
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 line
<b>Default Value</b>	-333
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	100 reading: 600 dpi in horizontal scanning direction x 600 dpi in vertical scanning direction
<b>100DF-GB</b>	<b>GB clr displace crct: 100% ADF, front</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To correct the color displacement between G and B lines in vertical scanning direction that occurs at 100% ADF mode. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to only the image on the front side.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key), and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-512 to 512
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 line
<b>Default Value</b>	333
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	100 reading: 600 dpi in horizontal scanning direction x 600 dpi in vertical scanning direction

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>50DF2RG</b>	<b>RG clr displace crct: 50% ADF, back</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To correct the color displacement between R and G lines in vertical scanning direction that occurs at 50% ADF mode. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to only the image on the back side.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key), and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-512 to 512
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 line
<b>Default Value</b>	-333
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	50% reading: 300 dpi in horizontal scanning direction x 600 dpi in vertical scanning direction
<b>50DF2GB</b>	<b>GB clr displace crct: 50% ADF, back</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To correct the color displacement between G and B lines in vertical scanning direction that occurs at 50% ADF mode. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to only the image on the back side.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key), and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-512 to 512
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 line
<b>Default Value</b>	333
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	50% reading: 300 dpi in horizontal scanning direction x 600 dpi in vertical scanning direction
<b>100DF2RG</b>	<b>RG clr displace crct: 100% ADF, back</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To correct the color displacement between R and G lines in vertical scanning direction that occurs at 100% ADF mode. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to only the image on the back side.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key), and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-512 to 512
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 line
<b>Default Value</b>	-333
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	100 reading: 600 dpi in horizontal scanning direction x 600 dpi in vertical scanning direction
<b>100DF2GB</b>	<b>GB clr displace crct: 100% ADF, back</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To correct the color displacement between G and B lines in vertical scanning direction that occurs at 100% ADF mode. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to only the image on the back side.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key), and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-512 to 512
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 line
<b>Default Value</b>	333
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	100 reading: 600 dpi in horizontal scanning direction x 600 dpi in vertical scanning direction



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>MTF2-M1</b>	<b>MTF value 1 entry:ADF, front, horz scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in horizontal scanning direction on the front side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF2-M2</b>	<b>MTF value 2 entry:ADF, front, horz scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in horizontal scanning direction on the front side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF2-M3</b>	<b>MTF value 3 entry:ADF, front, horz scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in horizontal scanning direction on the front side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF2-M4</b>	<b>MTF value 4 entry:ADF, front, horz scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in horizontal scanning direction on the front side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>MTF2-M5</b>	<b>MTF value 5 entry:ADF, front, horz scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in horizontal scanning direction on the front side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF2-M6</b>	<b>MTF value 6 entry:ADF, front, horz scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in horizontal scanning direction on the front side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF2-M7</b>	<b>MTF value 7 entry:ADF, front, horz scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in horizontal scanning direction on the front side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF2-M8</b>	<b>MTF value 8 entry:ADF, front, horz scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in horizontal scanning direction on the front side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>MTF2-M9</b>	<b>MTF value 9 entry:ADF, front, horz scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in horizontal scanning direction on the front side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF2-S1</b>	<b>MTF value 1 entry:ADF, front, vert scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in vertical scanning direction on the front side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF2-S2</b>	<b>MTF value 2 entry:ADF, front, vert scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in vertical scanning direction on the front side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF2-S3</b>	<b>MTF value 3 entry:ADF, front, vert scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in vertical scanning direction on the front side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>MTF2-S4</b>	<b>MTF value 4 entry:ADF, front, vert scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in vertical scanning direction on the front side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF2-S5</b>	<b>MTF value 5 entry:ADF, front, vert scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in vertical scanning direction on the front side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF2-S6</b>	<b>MTF value 6 entry:ADF, front, vert scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in vertical scanning direction on the front side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF2-S7</b>	<b>MTF value 7 entry:ADF, front, vert scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in vertical scanning direction on the front side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>MTF2-S8</b>	<b>MTF value 8 entry: ADF, front, vert scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in vertical scanning direction on the front side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF2-S9</b>	<b>MTF value 9 entry: ADF, front, vert scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in vertical scanning direction on the front side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF-M1</b>	<b>MTF value 1 entry: Copyboard, horz scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in horizontal scanning direction at copyboard reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF-M2</b>	<b>MTF value 2 entry: Copyboard, horz scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in horizontal scanning direction at copyboard reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>MTF-M3</b>	<b>MTF value 3 entry: Copyboard, horz scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in horizontal scanning direction at copyboard reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF-M4</b>	<b>MTF value 4 entry: Copyboard, horz scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in horizontal scanning direction at copyboard reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF-M5</b>	<b>MTF value 5 entry: Copyboard, horz scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in horizontal scanning direction at copyboard reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF-M6</b>	<b>MTF value 6 entry: Copyboard, horz scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in horizontal scanning direction at copyboard reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>MTF-M7</b>	<b>MTF value 7 entry: Copyboard, horz scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in horizontal scanning direction at copyboard reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF-M8</b>	<b>MTF value 8 entry: Copyboard, horz scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in horizontal scanning direction at copyboard reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF-M9</b>	<b>MTF value 9 entry: Copyboard, horz scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in horizontal scanning direction at copyboard reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF-S1</b>	<b>MTF value entry: Copyboard, vert scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in vertical scanning direction at copyboard reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>MTF-S2</b>	<b>MTF value 2 entry: Copyboard, vert scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in vertical scanning direction at copyboard reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF-S3</b>	<b>MTF value 3 entry: Copyboard, vert scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in vertical scanning direction at copyboard reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF-S4</b>	<b>MTF value 4 entry: Copyboard, vert scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in vertical scanning direction at copyboard reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF-S5</b>	<b>MTF value 5 entry: Copyboard, vert scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in vertical scanning direction at copyboard reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>MTF-S6</b>	<b>MTF value 6 entry: Copyboard, vert scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in vertical scanning direction at copyboard reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF-S7</b>	<b>MTF value 7 entry: Copyboard, vert scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in vertical scanning direction at copyboard reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF-S8</b>	<b>MTF value 8 entry: Copyboard, vert scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in vertical scanning direction at copyboard reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF-S9</b>	<b>MTF value 9 entry: Copyboard, vert scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in vertical scanning direction at copyboard reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for front side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>MTF3-M1</b>	<b>MTF value 1 entry: ADF, back, horz scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in horizontal scanning direction on the back side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF3-M2</b>	<b>MTF value 2 entry: ADF, back, horz scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in horizontal scanning direction on the back side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF3-M3</b>	<b>MTF value 3 entry: ADF, back, horz scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in horizontal scanning direction on the back side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF3-M4</b>	<b>MTF value 4 entry: ADF, back, horz scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in horizontal scanning direction on the back side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>MTF3-M5</b>	<b>MTF value 5 entry: ADF, back, horz scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in horizontal scanning direction on the back side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF3-M6</b>	<b>MTF value 6 entry: ADF, back, horz scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in horizontal scanning direction on the back side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF3-M7</b>	<b>MTF value 7 entry: ADF, back, horz scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in horizontal scanning direction on the back side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF3-M8</b>	<b>MTF value 8 entry: ADF, back, horz scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in horizontal scanning direction on the back side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > ADJUST (Adjustment mode) > CCD

<b>MTF3-M9</b>	<b>MTF value 9 entry: ADF, back, horz scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in horizontal scanning direction on the back side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF3-S1</b>	<b>MTF value 1 entry: ADF, back, vert scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in vertical scanning direction on the back side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF3-S2</b>	<b>MTF value 2 entry: ADF, back, vert scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in vertical scanning direction on the back side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF3-S3</b>	<b>MTF value 3 entry: ADF, back, vert scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in vertical scanning direction on the back side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>MTF3-S4</b>	<b>MTF value 4 entry: ADF, back, vert scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in vertical scanning direction on the back side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF3-S5</b>	<b>MTF value 5 entry: ADF, back, vert scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in vertical scanning direction on the back side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF3-S6</b>	<b>MTF value 6 entry: ADF, back, vert scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in vertical scanning direction on the back side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF3-S7</b>	<b>MTF value 7 entry: ADF, back, vert scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in vertical scanning direction on the back side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>MTF3-S8</b>	<b>MTF value 8 entry: ADF, back, vert scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in vertical scanning direction on the back side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>MTF3-S9</b>	<b>MTF value 9 entry: ADF, back, vert scan</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To enter the setting value for calculating MTF filter coefficient in vertical scanning direction on the back side at ADF stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data, enter the value of the service label on the reader. When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side), enter the value of service label on a new unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing the Reader-related RAM data - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 100
<b>Default Value</b>	100
<b>OFST-BW0</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 1 offset:frt,B&amp;W,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the offset (black level) of the Image Reading Sensor 1 (Rear) of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in black mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC
<b>OFST-BW1</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 2 offset:frt,B&amp;W,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the offset (black level) of the Image Reading Sensor 2 (Center) of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in black mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC
<b>OFST-BW2</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 3 offset:frt,B&amp;W,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the offset (black level) of the Image Reading Sensor 3 (Front) of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in black mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>OFST2BW0</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 1 offset:frt,B&amp;W,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the offset (black level) of the Image Reading Sensor 1 (Rear) of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in black mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC
<b>OFST2BW1</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 2 offset:frt,B&amp;W,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the offset (black level) of the Image Reading Sensor 2 (Center) of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in black mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC
<b>OFST2BW2</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 3 offset:frt,B&amp;W,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the offset (black level) of the Image Reading Sensor 3 (Front) of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in black mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC
<b>OF-BW0BK</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 1 offset:bck,B&amp;W,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the offset (black level) of the Image Reading Sensor 1 (Rear) of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in black mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC2
<b>OF-BW1BK</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 2 offset:bck,B&amp;W,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the offset (black level) of the Image Reading Sensor 2 (Center) of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in black mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC2

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>OF-BW2BK</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 3 offset:bck,B&amp;W,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the offset (black level) of the Image Reading Sensor 3 (Front) of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in black mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC2
<b>OF2BW0BK</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 1 offset:bck,B&amp;W,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the offset (black level) of the Image Reading Sensor 1 (Rear) of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in black mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC2
<b>OF2BW1BK</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 2 offset:bck,B&amp;W,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the offset (black level) of the Image Reading Sensor 2 (Center) of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in black mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC2
<b>OF2BW2BK</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 3 offset:bck,B&amp;W,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the offset (black level) of the Image Reading Sensor 3 (Front) of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in black mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC2
<b>OFST-CL0</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 1 offset:frt,clr,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the offset (black level) of the Image Reading Sensor 1 (Rear) of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in color mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>OFST-CL1</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 2 offset:frt,clr,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the offset (black level) of the Image Reading Sensor 2 (Center) of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in color mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC
<b>OFST-CL2</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 3 offset:frt,clr,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the offset (black level) of the Image Reading Sensor 3 (Front) of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in color mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC
<b>OFST2CL0</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 1 offset:frt,clr,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the offset (black level) of the Image Reading Sensor 1 (Rear) of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in color mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB / clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	The offset value is automatically updated by executing CL-AGC.
<b>OFST2CL1</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 2 offset:frt,clr,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the offset (black level) of the Image Reading Sensor 2 (Center) of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in color mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB / clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	The offset value is automatically updated by executing CL-AGC.
<b>OFST2CL2</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 3 offset:frt,clr,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the offset (black level) of the Image Reading Sensor 3 (Front) of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in color mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB / clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	The offset value is automatically updated by executing CL-AGC.

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>OF-CL0BK</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 1 offset:bck,clr,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the offset (black level) of the Image Reading Sensor 1 (Rear) of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in color mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC2
<b>OF-CL1BK</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 2 offset:bck,clr,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the offset (black level) of the Image Reading Sensor 2 (Center) of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in color mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC2
<b>OF-CL2BK</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 3 offset:bck,clr,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the offset (black level) of the Image Reading Sensor 3 (Front) of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in color mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC2
<b>OF2CL0BK</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 1 offset:bck,clr,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the offset (black level) of the Image Reading Sensor 1 (Rear) of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in color mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC2
<b>OF2CL1BK</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 2 offset:bck,clr,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the offset (black level) of the Image Reading Sensor 2 (Center) of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in color mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC2

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>OF2CL2BK</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 3 offset:bck,clr,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the offset (black level) of the Image Reading Sensor 3 (Front) of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in color mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC2
<b>GAIN-BW0</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 1 gain: frt,B&amp;W,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the gain of the Image Reading Sensor 1 (Rear) of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in black mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC
<b>GAIN2BW0</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 1 gain: frt,B&amp;W,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the gain of the Image Reading Sensor 1 (Rear) of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in black mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC
<b>GAIN-CL0</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 1 gain: frt,clr,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the gain of the Image Reading Sensor 1 (Rear) of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in color mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC
<b>GAIN2CL0</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 1 gain: frt,clr,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the gain of the Image Reading Sensor 1 (Rear) of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in color mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>GA-BW0BK</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 1 gain: bck,B&amp;W,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the gain of the Image Reading Sensor 1 (Rear) of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in black mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC2
<b>GA2BW0BK</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 1 gain: bck,B&amp;W,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the gain of the Image Reading Sensor 1 (Rear) of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in black mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC2
<b>GA-CL0BK</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 1 gain: bck,clr,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the gain of the Image Reading Sensor 1 (Rear) of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in color mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC2
<b>GA2CL0BK</b>	<b>Adj Img Read Sns 1 gain: bck,clr,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the gain of the Image Reading Sensor 1 (Rear) of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in color mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 255
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC2
<b>LED-BW-R</b>	<b>Scan Unit LED lgt time(R):frt,B&amp;W,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the lighting time of the red color LED of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in black mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 4096
<b>Default Value</b>	609
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>LED-BW-G</b>	<b>Scan Unit LED lgt time(G):frt,B&amp;W,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the lighting time of the green color LED of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in black mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 4096
<b>Default Value</b>	609
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC
<b>LED-BW-B</b>	<b>Scan Unit LED lgt time(B):frt,B&amp;W,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the lighting time of the blue color LED of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in black mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 4096
<b>Default Value</b>	609
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC
<b>LED2BW-R</b>	<b>Scan Unit LED lgt time(R):frt,B&amp;W,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the lighting time of the red color LED of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in black mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 4096
<b>Default Value</b>	1121
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC
<b>LED2BW-G</b>	<b>Scan Unit LED lgt time(G):frt,B&amp;W,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the lighting time of the green color LED of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in black mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 4096
<b>Default Value</b>	1121
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC
<b>LED2BW-B</b>	<b>Scan Unit LED lgt time(B):frt,B&amp;W,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the lighting time of the blue color LED of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in black mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 4096
<b>Default Value</b>	1121
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>LED-CL-R</b>	<b>Scan Unit LED lgt time(R):frt,clr,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the lighting time of the red color LED of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in color mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 4096
<b>Default Value</b>	865
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC
<b>LED-CL-G</b>	<b>Scan Unit LED lgt time(G):frt,clr,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the lighting time of the green color LED of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in color mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 4096
<b>Default Value</b>	865
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC
<b>LED-CL-B</b>	<b>Scan Unit LED lgt time(B):frt,clr,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the lighting time of the blue color LED of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in color mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 4096
<b>Default Value</b>	865
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC
<b>LED2CL-R</b>	<b>Scan Unit LED lgt time(R):frt,clr,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the lighting time of the red color LED of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in color mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 4096
<b>Default Value</b>	1377
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC
<b>LED2CL-G</b>	<b>Scan Unit LED lgt time(G):frt,clr,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the lighting time of the green color LED of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in color mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 4096
<b>Default Value</b>	1377
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>LED2CL-B</b>	<b>Scan Unit LED lgt time(B):frt,clr,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the lighting time of the blue color LED of the Scanner Unit (for front side) in color mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 4096
<b>Default Value</b>	1377
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC
<b>LE-BWRBK</b>	<b>Scan Unit LED lgt time(R):bck,B&amp;W,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the lighting time of the red color LED of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in black mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 4096
<b>Default Value</b>	609
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC2
<b>LE-BWGBK</b>	<b>Scan Unit LED lgt time(G):bck,B&amp;W,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the lighting time of the green color LED of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in black mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 4096
<b>Default Value</b>	609
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC2
<b>LE-BWBBK</b>	<b>Scan Unit LED lgt time(B):bck,B&amp;W,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the lighting time of the blue color LED of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in black mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 4096
<b>Default Value</b>	609
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC2
<b>LE2BWRBK</b>	<b>Scan Unit LED lgt time(R):bck,B&amp;W,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the lighting time of the red color LED of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in black mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 4096
<b>Default Value</b>	1121
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC2

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>LE2BWGBK</b>	<b>Scan Unit LED lgt time(G):bck,B&amp;W,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the lighting time of the green color LED of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in black mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 4096
<b>Default Value</b>	1121
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC2
<b>LE2WBWBK</b>	<b>Scan Unit LED lgt time(B):bck,B&amp;W,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the lighting time of the blue color LED of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in black mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 4096
<b>Default Value</b>	1121
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC2
<b>LE-CLRBK</b>	<b>Scan Unit LED lgt time(R):bck,clr,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the lighting time of the red color LED of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in color mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 4096
<b>Default Value</b>	865
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC2
<b>LE-CLGBK</b>	<b>Scan Unit LED lgt time(G):bck,clr,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the lighting time of the green color LED of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in color mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 4096
<b>Default Value</b>	865
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC2
<b>LE-CLBBK</b>	<b>Scan Unit LED lgt time(B):bck,clr,300dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the lighting time of the blue color LED of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in color mode with 300 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 4096
<b>Default Value</b>	865
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC2



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>LE2CLRBK</b>	<b>Scan Unit LED lgt time(R):bck,clr,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the lighting time of the red color LED of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in color mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 4096
<b>Default Value</b>	1377
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC2
<b>LE2CLGBK</b>	<b>Scan Unit LED lgt time(G):bck,clr,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the lighting time of the green color LED of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in color mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 4096
<b>Default Value</b>	1377
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC2
<b>LE2CLBBK</b>	<b>Scan Unit LED lgt time(B):bck,clr,600dpi</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the lighting time of the blue color LED of the Scanner Unit (for back side) in color mode with 600 dpi. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 4096
<b>Default Value</b>	1377
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC2
<b>LNR-GA-R</b>	<b>Frt/bck linearity gain crrect coeffct (R)</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the red color gain correction coefficient of the front/back side linearity.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 65535
<b>Default Value</b>	10000
<b>LNR-GA-G</b>	<b>Frt/bck linearity gain crrect coeffct (G)</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the green color gain correction coefficient of the front/back side linearity.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 65535
<b>Default Value</b>	10000
<b>LNR-GA-B</b>	<b>Frt/bck linearity gain crrect coeffct (B)</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the blue color gain correction coefficient of the front/back side linearity.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 65535
<b>Default Value</b>	10000

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; CCD

<b>LNR-OF-R</b>		<b>Frnt/bck linearity offset crrct coeff (R)</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the red color offset correction coefficient of the front/back side linearity.	
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-128 to 127	
<b>Default Value</b>	0	
<b>LNR-OF-G</b>		<b>Frnt/bck linearity offset crrct coeff (G)</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the green color offset correction coefficient of the front/back side linearity.	
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-128 to 127	
<b>Default Value</b>	0	
<b>LNR-OF-B</b>		<b>Frnt/bck linearity offset crrct coeff (B)</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the blue color offset correction coefficient of the front/back side linearity.	
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-128 to 127	
<b>Default Value</b>	0	

## ■ PASCAL

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; PASCAL

<b>OFST-P-K</b>		<b>Adj Bk-color density at test print read</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the offset of Bk-color test print reading signal at auto gradation adjustment (full adjustment). When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. As the value is larger, the image after adjustment gets darker.	
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Reader Unit - When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key), and then press Apply key.	
<b>Caution</b>	After the setting value is changed, write the changed value in the service label.	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-128 to 128	
<b>Default Value</b>	0	

## ■ FEED-ADJ

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > ADJUST (Adjustment mode) > FEED-ADJ

<b>ADJ-MFY</b>	<b>Adjustment of write start position in feed direction at Multi-purpose Tray pickup (1-sided print/2nd side of 2-sided print)</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the image write start position in the feed direction at the time of pickup from the Multi-purpose Tray. As the value is changed by 1, the leading edge margin is changed by 0.001 mm. +: Leading edge margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the trailing edge side.) -: Leading edge margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the leading edge side.) When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to the 1st side at 1-sided print and the 2nd side at 2-sided print.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	This setting is linked with the setting of [Adjust Print Position] in [Settings/Registration]. The setting value is not cleared even if COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT is executed.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-5080 to 5080
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 mm
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT
<b>Additional Functions Mode</b>	Adjustment/Maintenance > Adjust Image Quality > Adjust Print Position
<b>ADJ-MFX</b>	<b>Adjustment of write start position in horizontal scanning direction at Multi-purpose Tray pickup (1-sided print/2nd side of 2-sided print)</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the write start position in the horizontal scanning direction for the image on the 1st side at the time of pickup from the Multi-purpose Tray. As the value is changed by 1, the left margin is changed by 0.001 mm. +: Left margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the right.) -: Left margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the left.) When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to the 1st side at 1-sided print and the 2nd side at 2-sided print.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	This setting is linked with the setting of [Adjust Print Position] in [Settings/Registration]. The setting value is not cleared even if COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT is executed.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-5080 to 5080
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 mm
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT
<b>Additional Functions Mode</b>	Adjustment/Maintenance > Adjust Image Quality > Adjust Print Position

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; FEED-ADJ

<b>ADJ-MFYR</b>	<b>Adjustment of write start position in feed direction at Multi-purpose Tray pickup (1st side of 2-sided print)</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the write start position in the feed direction for the image on the 2nd side at the time of pickup from the Multi-purpose Tray. As the value is changed by 1, the leading edge margin is changed by 0.001 mm. +: Leading edge margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the trailing edge side.) -: Leading edge margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the leading edge side.) When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to the 1st side at 2-sided print.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	This setting is linked with the setting of [Adjust Print Position] in [Settings/Registration]. The setting value is not cleared even if COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT is executed.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-5080 to 5080
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 mm
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT
<b>Additional Functions Mode</b>	Adjustment/Maintenance > Adjust Image Quality > Adjust Print Position
<b>ADJ-MFXR</b>	<b>Adjustment of write start position in horizontal scanning direction at Multi-purpose Tray pickup (1st side of 2-sided print)</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the write start position in the horizontal scanning direction for the image on the 2nd side at the time of pickup from the Multi-purpose Tray. As the value is changed by 1, the left margin is changed by 0.001 mm. +: Left margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the right.) -: Left margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the left.) When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to the 1st side at 2-sided print.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data.
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	This setting is linked with the setting of [Adjust Print Position] in [Settings/Registration]. The setting value is not cleared even if COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT is executed.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-5080 to 5080
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 mm
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT
<b>Additional Functions Mode</b>	Adjustment/Maintenance > Adjust Image Quality > Adjust Print Position

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; FEED-ADJ

<b>ADJ-C1Y</b>	<b>Adjustment of write start position in feed direction at Cassette 1 pickup (1-sided print/2nd side of 2-sided print)</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the image write start position in the feed direction at the time of pickup from the Cassette 1. As the value is changed by 1, the leading edge margin is changed by 0.001 mm. +: Leading edge margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the trailing edge side.) -: Leading edge margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the leading edge side.) When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to the 1st side at 1-sided print and the 2nd side at 2-sided print.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	This setting is linked with the setting of [Adjust Print Position] in [Settings/Registration]. The setting value is not cleared even if COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT is executed.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-5080 to 5080
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 mm
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT
<b>Additional Functions Mode</b>	Adjustment/Maintenance > Adjust Image Quality > Adjust Print Position
<b>ADJ-C1X</b>	<b>Adjustment of write start position in horizontal scanning direction at Cassette 1 pickup (1-sided print/2nd side of 2-sided print)</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the write start position in the horizontal scanning direction for the image on the 1st side at the time of pickup from the Cassette 1. As the value is changed by 1, the left margin is changed by 0.001 mm. +: Left margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the right.) -: Left margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the left.) When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to the 1st side at 1-sided print and the 2nd side at 2-sided print.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	This setting is linked with the setting of [Adjust Print Position] in [Settings/Registration]. The setting value is not cleared even if COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT is executed.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-5080 to 5080
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 mm
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT
<b>Additional Functions Mode</b>	Adjustment/Maintenance > Adjust Image Quality > Adjust Print Position

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; FEED-ADJ

<b>ADJ-C1YR</b>	<b>Adjustment of write start position in feed direction at Cassette 1 pickup (1st side of 2-sided print)</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the write start position in the feed direction for the image on the 2nd side at the time of pickup from the Cassette 1. As the value is changed by 1, the leading edge margin is changed by 0.001 mm. +: Leading edge margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the trailing edge side.) -: Leading edge margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the leading edge side.) When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to the 1st side at 2-sided print.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	This setting is linked with the setting of [Adjust Print Position] in [Settings/Registration]. The setting value is not cleared even if COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT is executed.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-5080 to 5080
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 mm
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT
<b>Additional Functions Mode</b>	Adjustment/Maintenance > Adjust Image Quality > Adjust Print Position
<b>ADJ-C1XR</b>	<b>Adjustment of write start position in horizontal scanning direction at Cassette 1 pickup (1st side of 2-sided print)</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the write start position in the horizontal scanning direction for the image on the 2nd side at the time of pickup from the Cassette 1. As the value is changed by 1, the left margin is changed by 0.001 mm. +: Left margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the right.) -: Left margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the left.) When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to the 1st side at 2-sided print.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	This setting is linked with the setting of [Adjust Print Position] in [Settings/Registration]. The setting value is not cleared even if COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT is executed.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-5080 to 5080
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 mm
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT
<b>Additional Functions Mode</b>	Adjustment/Maintenance > Adjust Image Quality > Adjust Print Position

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; FEED-ADJ

<b>ADJ-C2Y</b>	<b>Adjustment of write start position in feed direction at Cassette 2 pickup (1-sided print/2nd side of 2-sided print)</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the image write start position in the feed direction at the time of pickup from the Cassette 2. As the value is changed by 1, the leading edge margin is changed by 0.001 mm. +: Leading edge margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the trailing edge side.) -: Leading edge margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the leading edge side.) When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to the 1st side at 1-sided print and the 2nd side at 2-sided print.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	This setting is linked with the setting of [Adjust Print Position] in [Settings/Registration]. The setting value is not cleared even if COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT is executed.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-5080 to 5080
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 mm
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT
<b>Additional Functions Mode</b>	Adjustment/Maintenance > Adjust Image Quality > Adjust Print Position
<b>ADJ-C2X</b>	<b>Adjustment of write start position in horizontal scanning direction at Cassette 2 pickup (1-sided print/2nd side of 2-sided print)</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the write start position in the horizontal scanning direction for the image on the 1st side at the time of pickup from the Cassette 2. As the value is changed by 1, the left margin is changed by 0.001 mm. +: Left margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the right.) -: Left margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the left.) When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to the 1st side at 1-sided print and the 2nd side at 2-sided print.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	This setting is linked with the setting of [Adjust Print Position] in [Settings/Registration]. The setting value is not cleared even if COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT is executed.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-5080 to 5080
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 mm
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT
<b>Additional Functions Mode</b>	Adjustment/Maintenance > Adjust Image Quality > Adjust Print Position

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; FEED-ADJ

<b>ADJ-C2YR</b>	<b>Adjustment of write start position in feed direction at Cassette 2 pickup (1st side of 2-sided print)</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the write start position in the feed direction for the image on the 2nd side at the time of pickup from the Cassette 2. As the value is changed by 1, the leading edge margin is changed by 0.001 mm. +: Leading edge margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the trailing edge side.) -: Leading edge margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the leading edge side.) When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to the 1st side at 2-sided print.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	This setting is linked with the setting of [Adjust Print Position] in [Settings/Registration]. The setting value is not cleared even if COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT is executed.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-5080 to 5080
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 mm
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT
<b>Additional Functions Mode</b>	Adjustment/Maintenance > Adjust Image Quality > Adjust Print Position
<b>ADJ-C2XR</b>	<b>Adjustment of write start position in horizontal scanning direction at Cassette 2 pickup (1st side of 2-sided print)</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the write start position in the horizontal scanning direction for the image on the 2nd side at the time of pickup from the Cassette 2. As the value is changed by 1, the left margin is changed by 0.001 mm. +: Left margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the right.) -: Left margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the left.) When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to the 1st side at 2-sided print.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	This setting is linked with the setting of [Adjust Print Position] in [Settings/Registration]. The setting value is not cleared even if COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT is executed.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-5080 to 5080
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 mm
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT
<b>Additional Functions Mode</b>	Adjustment/Maintenance > Adjust Image Quality > Adjust Print Position



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; FEED-ADJ

<b>ADJ-C3Y</b>	<b>Adjustment of write start position in feed direction at Cassette 3 pickup (1-sided print/2nd side of 2-sided print)</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the image write start position in the feed direction at the time of pickup from the Cassette 3. As the value is changed by 1, the leading edge margin is changed by 0.001 mm. +: Leading edge margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the trailing edge side.) -: Leading edge margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the leading edge side.) When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to the 1st side at 1-sided print and the 2nd side at 2-sided print.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	This setting is linked with the setting of [Adjust Print Position] in [Settings/Registration]. The setting value is not cleared even if COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT is executed.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-5080 to 5080
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 mm
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT
<b>Additional Functions Mode</b>	Adjustment/Maintenance > Adjust Image Quality > Adjust Print Position
<b>ADJ-C3X</b>	<b>Adjustment of write start position in horizontal scanning direction at Cassette 3 pickup (1-sided print/2nd side of 2-sided print)</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the write start position in the horizontal scanning direction for the image on the 1st side at the time of pickup from the Cassette 3. As the value is changed by 1, the left margin is changed by 0.001 mm. +: Left margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the right.) -: Left margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the left.) When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to the 1st side at 1-sided print and the 2nd side at 2-sided print.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	This setting is linked with the setting of [Adjust Print Position] in [Settings/Registration]. The setting value is not cleared even if COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT is executed.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-5080 to 5080
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 mm
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT
<b>Additional Functions Mode</b>	Adjustment/Maintenance > Adjust Image Quality > Adjust Print Position

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; FEED-ADJ

<b>ADJ-C3YR</b>	<b>Adjustment of write start position in feed direction at Cassette 3 pickup (1st side of 2-sided print)</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the write start position in the feed direction for the image on the 2nd side at the time of pickup from the Cassette 3. As the value is changed by 1, the leading edge margin is changed by 0.001 mm. +: Leading edge margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the trailing edge side.) -: Leading edge margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the leading edge side.) When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to the 1st side at 2-sided print.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	This setting is linked with the setting of [Adjust Print Position] in [Settings/Registration]. The setting value is not cleared even if COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT is executed.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-5080 to 5080
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 mm
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT
<b>Additional Functions Mode</b>	Adjustment/Maintenance > Adjust Image Quality > Adjust Print Position
<b>ADJ-C3XR</b>	<b>Adjustment of write start position in horizontal scanning direction at Cassette 3 pickup (1st side of 2-sided print)</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the write start position in the horizontal scanning direction for the image on the 2nd side at the time of pickup from the Cassette 3. As the value is changed by 1, the left margin is changed by 0.001 mm. +: Left margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the right.) -: Left margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the left.) When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to the 1st side at 2-sided print.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	This setting is linked with the setting of [Adjust Print Position] in [Settings/Registration]. The setting value is not cleared even if COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT is executed.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-5080 to 5080
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 mm
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT
<b>Additional Functions Mode</b>	Adjustment/Maintenance > Adjust Image Quality > Adjust Print Position

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; FEED-ADJ

<b>ADJ-C4Y</b>	<b>Adjustment of write start position in feed direction at Cassette 4 pickup (1-sided print/2nd side of 2-sided print)</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the image write start position in the feed direction at the time of pickup from the Cassette 4. As the value is changed by 1, the leading edge margin is changed by 0.001 mm. +: Leading edge margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the trailing edge side.) -: Leading edge margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the leading edge side.) When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to the 1st side at 1-sided print and the 2nd side at 2-sided print.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	This setting is linked with the setting of [Adjust Print Position] in [Settings/Registration]. The setting value is not cleared even if COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT is executed.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-5080 to 5080
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 mm
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT
<b>Additional Functions Mode</b>	Adjustment/Maintenance > Adjust Image Quality > Adjust Print Position
<b>ADJ-C4X</b>	<b>Adjustment of write start position in horizontal scanning direction at Cassette 4 pickup (1-sided print/2nd side of 2-sided print)</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the write start position in the horizontal scanning direction for the image on the 1st side at the time of pickup from the Cassette 4. As the value is changed by 1, the left margin is changed by 0.001 mm. +: Left margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the right.) -: Left margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the left.) When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to the 1st side at 1-sided print and the 2nd side at 2-sided print.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	This setting is linked with the setting of [Adjust Print Position] in [Settings/Registration]. The setting value is not cleared even if COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT is executed.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-5080 to 5080
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 mm
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT
<b>Additional Functions Mode</b>	Adjustment/Maintenance > Adjust Image Quality > Adjust Print Position

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; FEED-ADJ

<b>ADJ-C4YR</b>	<b>Adjustment of write start position in feed direction at Cassette 4 pickup (1st side of 2-sided print)</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the write start position in the feed direction for the image on the 2nd side at the time of pickup from the Cassette 4. As the value is changed by 1, the leading edge margin is changed by 0.001 mm. +: Leading edge margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the trailing edge side.) -: Leading edge margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the leading edge side.) When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to the 1st side at 2-sided print.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	This setting is linked with the setting of [Adjust Print Position] in [Settings/Registration]. The setting value is not cleared even if COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT is executed.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-5080 to 5080
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 mm
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT
<b>Additional Functions Mode</b>	Adjustment/Maintenance > Adjust Image Quality > Adjust Print Position

<b>ADJ-C4XR</b>	<b>Adjustment of write start position in horizontal scanning direction at Cassette 4 pickup (1st side of 2-sided print)</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the write start position in the horizontal scanning direction for the image on the 2nd side at the time of pickup from the Cassette 4. As the value is changed by 1, the left margin is changed by 0.001 mm. +: Left margin becomes larger. (An image moves to the right.) -: Left margin becomes smaller. (An image moves to the left.) When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. The setting is applied to the 1st side at 2-sided print.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the DC Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	This setting is linked with the setting of [Adjust Print Position] in [Settings/Registration]. The setting value is not cleared even if COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT is executed.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-5080 to 5080
<b>Unit</b>	0.001 mm
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> SRVC-DAT
<b>Additional Functions Mode</b>	Adjustment/Maintenance > Adjust Image Quality > Adjust Print Position

## ■ PANEL

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; PANEL

<b>TOUCHCHK</b>	<b>Adj of coordinate pstn on Touch Panel</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the coordinate position on the Touch Panel of the Control Panel. By making adjustment, the setting of TOUCH-R becomes 1.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the LCD Panel
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Select the item, and then press Yes key. 2) Press the nine "+" keys in sequence.
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> ADJUST> PANEL> TOUCH-R

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; PANEL

TOUCH-R	Touch Panel coordinate pstn adj result
<b>Detail</b>	To set whether adjustment of the coordinate position on the Touch Panel of the Control Panel is completed. When adjustment with TOUCHCHK is completed, the setting of this item becomes 1.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the LCD Panel
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: Not completed 1: Completed
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> ADJUST> PANEL> TOUCHCHK

## ■ VIFADJ

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode) &gt; VIFADJ

DEV-HV-K	For R&D
FU-TMP	For R&D
CRG-HV-K	For R&D
LS-PWR-K	For R&D
TR-HV	For R&D

## FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode)

### ■ CCD

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; CCD

DF-WLVL1	White level adj in book mode: color
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the white level for copyboard scanning automatically by setting the paper which is usually used by the user on the Copyboard Glass.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Copyboard Glass - When replacing the Scanner Unit - When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Set a paper on the Copyboard Glass. 2) Select the item, and then press Yes key.
<b>Caution</b>	Be sure to execute DF-WLVL2 in a row.
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL2
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	The Scanner Unit (for front side) calculates the white level correction coefficient based on the luminance at copyboard reading detected with DF-WLVL1, the luminance at stream reading detected with DF-WLVL2, and the luminance at stream reading that the Scanner Unit (for back side) detected with DF-WLVL2.

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; CCD

<b>DF-WLVL2</b>	<b>White level adj: stream reading, color</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the white level for stream reading by setting the paper which is usually used by the user on the ADF.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Copyboard Glass - When replacing the Scanner Unit - When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Set paper on the ADF. 2) Select the item, and then press Yes key.
<b>Caution</b>	Be sure to execute this item after DF-WLVL1.
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> DF-WLVL1
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	The Scanner Unit (for front side) calculates the white level correction coefficient based on the luminance at copyboard reading detected with DF-WLVL1, the luminance at stream reading detected with DF-WLVL2, and the luminance at stream reading that the Scanner Unit (for back side) detected with DF-WLVL2.
<b>CL-AGC</b>	<b>Adj Scan Unit (frt) B&amp;W ref: stream, clr</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To automatically adjust the black/white reference level of the Scanner Unit (for front side) at stream reading in color mode. To make the adjustment with both resolutions 300 dpi and 600 dpi. When this item is executed, the values of OFST-CL0/CL1/CL2, GAIN-CL0, LED-CL-R/G/B, OFST2CL0/CL1/CL2, GAIN2CL0, and LED2CL-R/G/B are automatically calculated.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Reader Unit - When replacing the Scanner Unit
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Set paper on the ADF. 2) Select the item, and then press Yes key.
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC COPIER> ADJUST> CCD> OFST-CL0/CL1/CL2, GAIN-CL0, LED-CL-R/G/B, OFST2CL0/CL1/CL2, GAIN2CL0, LED2CL-R/G/B
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	AGC: Automatic Gain Control
<b>BW-AGC</b>	<b>Adj Scan Unit (frt) B&amp;W ref: stream, B&amp;W</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To automatically adjust the black/white reference level of the Scanner Unit (for front side) at stream reading in black mode. To make the adjustment with both resolutions 300 dpi and 600 dpi. When this item is executed, the values of OFST-BW0/BW1/BW2, GAIN-BW0, LED-BW-R/G/B, OFST2BW0/BW1/BW2, GAIN2BW0, and LED2BW-R/G/B are automatically calculated.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Reader Unit - When replacing the Scanner Unit
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Set paper on the ADF. 2) Select the item, and then press Yes key.
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC COPIER> ADJUST> CCD> OFST-BW0/BW1/BW2, GAIN-BW0, LED-BW-R/G/B, OFST2BW0/BW1/BW2, GAIN2BW0, LED2BW-R/G/B
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	AGC: Automatic Gain Control

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; CCD

<b>CL-AGC2</b>	<b>Adj Scan Unit (bck) B&amp;W ref: stream, clr</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To automatically adjust the black/white reference level of the Scanner Unit (for back side) at stream reading in color mode. To make the adjustment with both resolutions 300 dpi and 600 dpi. When this item is executed, the values of OF-CL0BK/CL1BK/CL2BK, GA-CL0BK, LE-CLRBK/GBK/BBK, OF2CL0BK/CL1BK/CL2BK, GA2CL0BK, and LE2CLRBK/GBK/BBK are automatically calculated.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Reader Unit - When replacing the Scanner Unit
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Set paper on the ADF. 2) Select the item, and then press Yes key.
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BW-AGC2 COPIER> ADJUST> CCD> OF-CL0BK/CL1BK/CL2BK, GA-CL0BK, LE-CLRBK/GBK/BBK, OF2CL0BK/CL1BK/CL2BK, GA2CL0BK, LE2CLRBK/GBK/BBK
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	AGC: Automatic Gain Control
<b>BW-AGC2</b>	<b>Adj Scan Unit (bck) B&amp;W ref: stream, B&amp;W</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To automatically adjust the black/white reference level of the Scanner Unit (for back side) at stream reading in black mode. To make the adjustment with both resolutions 300 dpi and 600 dpi. When this item is executed, the values of OF-BW0BK/BW1BK/BW2BK, GA-BW0BK, LE-BWRBK/GBK/BBK, OF2BW0BK/BW1BK/BW2BK, GA2BW0BK, and LE2BWRBK/GBK/BBK are automatically calculated.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Reader Unit - When replacing the Scanner Unit
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Set paper on the ADF. 2) Select the item, and then press Yes key.
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> CL-AGC2 COPIER> ADJUST> CCD> OF-BW0BK/BW1BK/BW2BK, GA-BW0BK, LE-BWRBK/GBK/BBK, OF2BW0BK/BW1BK/BW2BK, GA2BW0BK, LE2BWRBK/GBK/BBK
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	AGC: Automatic Gain Control
<b>BW-TGT</b>	<b>Set of B&amp;W shading target value</b>
<b>Detail</b>	After the white level data (X/Y/Z) for the Standard White Plate is set, read the Standard White Plate and set the black and white shading target value.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Copyboard Glass/Scanner Unit
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Select the item, and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	Be sure to execute this item after execution of W-PLT-X/Y/Z.
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> ADJUST> CCD> W-PLT-X/Y/Z COPIER> DISPLAY> CCD> TARGETBW
<b>BK-SHD1</b>	<b>Paper back shading correction 1</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To generate the paper back shading correction data by scanning the Standard White Plate of the Paper Back Reading Glass with the Scanner Unit (for back side).
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Clean the glass of the Scanner Unit (for back side) and the Reading Glass. 2) Close the ADF. 3) Select the item, and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	Execute BK-SHD1 and then BK-SHD2 in that order.
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BK-SHD2 COPIER> DISPLAY> CCD> BK-SHDST

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; CCD

<b>BK-SHD2</b>		<b>Paper back shading correction 2</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To generate the paper back shading correction data by scanning the Standard White Plate of the Paper Back Reading Glass with the Scanner Unit (for back side).	
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB - When replacing the Scanner Unit (for back side)	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Clean the glass of the Scanner Unit (for back side) and the Reading Glass. 2) Close the ADF. 3) Select the item, and then press Apply key.	
<b>Caution</b>	Execute BK-SHD1 and then BK-SHD2 in that order.	
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CCD> BK-SHD1 COPIER> DISPLAY> CCD> BK-SHDST	

## ■ CLEAR

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; CLEAR

<b>R-CON</b>		<b>Initialization of Reader/ADF</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To initialize the factory adjustment values of the Reader/ADF.	
<b>Use Case</b>	When clearing RAM data of the Reader/ADF	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Select the item, and then press Yes key.	
<b>Caution</b>	RAM data is cleared after the main power switch is turned OFF/ON.	
<b>SRVC-DAT</b>		<b>Clearing of service mode setting values</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To clear the service mode setting values. The user mode setting values are not cleared. The factory adjustment values of the Reader/ADF are not initialized.	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Select the item, and then press Yes key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.	
<b>COUNTER</b>		<b>Clearing of service counter</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To clear the counter by maintenance/part. The numerator printed on a system dump list becomes 0.	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Select the item, and then press Yes key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.	
<b>HIST</b>		<b>Clearing of logs</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To clear the communication management/print/jam/alarm/error log.	
<b>Use Case</b>	When clearing logs	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Select the item, and then press Yes key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.	
<b>CARD</b>		<b>Clearing of Card Reader connection info</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To clear the information on connection of the Copy Card Reader. The data related to the card ID (department) is cleared, and the ID and password of the system administrator are initialized.	
<b>Use Case</b>	When removing the Copy Card Reader	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Select the item, and then press Yes key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.	
<b>Caution</b>	Execute this item after disabling the department ID management.	
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> E719-CLR	
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	Procedure to remove the Copy Card Reader 1) Disable the department ID management. 2) Select the item, and then press Yes key. 3) Execute E719-CLR. 4) Turn OFF the main power switch. 5) Remove the Copy Card Reader. 6) Turn ON the main power switch.	



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; CLEAR

<b>E719-CLR</b>	<b>Clearing of E719 error</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To clear E719 error (communication error with the Copy Card Reader). The information on connection of the Copy Card Reader is also cleared.
<b>Use Case</b>	When removing the Copy Card Reader
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Select the item, and then press Yes key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> CARD
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	Procedure to remove the Copy Card Reader 1) Disable the department ID management. 2) Execute CARD. 3) Select the item, and then press Yes key. 4) Turn OFF the main power switch. 5) Remove the Copy Card Reader. 6) Turn ON the main power switch.
<b>ALL</b>	<b>Clearing of setting information</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To clear/initialize the following setting information according to the location set in LOCALE and SIZE-LC. - User mode setting values - Service mode setting values (excluding the service counter) - ID and password of the system administrator - Communication management/print/jam/alarm/error log - E719 error (counter meter-installed models only) The following items are not cleared/initialized. - Service counter - Factory adjustment values of the Reader/ADF
<b>Use Case</b>	At installation
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Select the item, and then press Yes key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> OPTION> BODY> LOCALE, SIZE-LC COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> E719-CLR
<b>ERDS-DAT</b>	<b>Initialize of Embedded-RDS setting value</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To initialize the Embedded-RDS setting values. ON/OFF of Embedded-RDS, UGW port number and communication error log set in ERDS, RGW-PORT, and COM-LOG are cleared.
<b>Use Case</b>	When upgrading the Bootable in the Embedded-RDS environment
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Select the item, and then press Yes key.
<b>Caution</b>	Use of the SRAM in Embedded-RDS differs depending on the Bootable version. Therefore, unless initialization is executed at the time of version upgrade, data inconsistency occurs.
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> ERDS, RGW-PORT, COM-LOG
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	Embedded-RDS: Function to send device information such as the device counter, failure, and consumables to UGW via SOAP protocol UGW (Universal Gate Way): Remote monitoring service system
<b>PLPW-CLR</b>	<b>Clear security policy setting password</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To clear the password of the security administrator set in the security policy settings.
<b>Use Case</b>	When clearing the password of the security administrator
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Select the item, and then press Yes key.

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; CLEAR

<b>CRGL-CNT</b>		<b>Clearing of cartridge replacement log</b>
<b>Detail</b>		To clear the cartridge replacement log.
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>		Select the item, and then press Yes key.
<b>Caution</b>		The number of detections of non-genuine cartridge and the page count of non-genuine cartridge can be reset. Replacement logs is not cleared.
<b>Related Service Mode</b>		COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> CRG-LOG

## ■ MISC-R

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; MISC-R

<b>SCANLAMP</b>		<b>Lighting check of CIS Unit LED: front</b>
<b>Detail</b>		To light up the Scanning LED of the Scanner Unit (for front side).
<b>Use Case</b>		When replacing the Scanner Unit
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>		Select the item, and then press Yes key.
<b>SCAN-ON</b>		<b>Execution of copyboard reading operation</b>
<b>Detail</b>		To execute reading of the original on the Copyboard Glass.
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>		1) Place paper on the Copyboard Glass. 2) Select the item, and then press Yes key.
<b>SCANLMP2</b>		<b>Lighting check of CIS Unit LED: back</b>
<b>Detail</b>		To light up the Scanning LED of the Scanner Unit (for back side).
<b>Use Case</b>		When replacing the Scanner Unit
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>		Select the item, and then press Yes key.
<b>1PSCLB-A</b>		<b>Exe frt/bck clr differ calibration: frt</b>
<b>Detail</b>		To read the PG for calibrating color difference between the front and back sides with the Scanner Unit (for front side) in order to correct the color difference between the front and back sides at duplex stream reading. A significant color difference may occur between the images on the front and back sides scanned with the ADF caused by variations in the LED and changes in durability. Such a color difference is corrected by executing 1PSCLB-B following 1PSCLB-A.
<b>Use Case</b>		When a significant color difference occurs between the front and back side at ADF duplex reading
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>		1) Place the paper on which PG is printed on the ADF. 2) Select the item, and then press OK key.
<b>Caution</b>		- Do not turn OFF/ON the main power switch during execution of 1PSCLB-A and then 1PSCLB-B. - Until 1 is displayed in both 1P-ERR-A and 1P-ERR-B, calibration of color difference between the front and back sides is not completed.
<b>Related Service Mode</b>		COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-R> 1PSCLB-B COPIER> DISPLAY> CCD> 1P-ERR-A/B
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>		The execution result of this item is displayed in 1P-ERR-A.

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; MISC-R

<b>1PSCLB-B</b>		<b>Exe frt/bck clr differ calibration: bck</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To read the PG for calibrating color difference between the front and back sides with the Scanner Unit (for back side) in order to correct the color difference between the front and back sides at duplex stream reading. A significant color difference may occur between the images on the front and back sides scanned with the ADF caused by variations in the LED and changes in durability. Such a color difference is corrected by executing 1PSCLB-B following 1PSCLB-A.	
<b>Use Case</b>	When a significant color difference occurs between the front and back side at ADF duplex reading	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Place the paper used by 1PSCLB-A on the ADF so that the front side is faced down and the cyan image is placed at the left rear side. 2) Select the item, and then press OK key.	
<b>Caution</b>	- Do not turn OFF/ON the main power switch during execution of 1PSCLB-A and then 1PSCLB-B. - Until 1 is displayed in both 1P-ERR-A and 1P-ERR-B, calibration of color difference between the front and back sides is not completed.	
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-R> 1PSCLB-A COPIER> DISPLAY> CCD> 1P-ERR-A/B	
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	The execution result of this item is displayed in 1P-ERR-B.	
<b>1PCLBUDR</b>		<b>ON/OFF frt/bck clr dif calibr l-lmt set</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set whether to set the lower limit of the target color difference for correction when correcting color difference between the front and back sides at duplex stream reading. In some cases, colors which do not need to be corrected are also corrected by performing color difference correction at duplex stream reading. When 1 is set, the correction level is adjusted to weaken the effect of correction. Unnecessary correction is not executed, but an expected effect may not be obtained for other colors. The result is reflected when color difference correction is executed again after the setting is made.	
<b>Use Case</b>	When color difference occurs on the colors which did not have any difference before correction	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.	
<b>Caution</b>	Expected correction result may not be obtained.	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: OFF 1: ON	
<b>Default Value</b>	0	
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-R> 1PSCLB-A/B, 1PCLBOVR	
<b>1PCLBOVR</b>		<b>ON/OFF frt/bck clr dif calibr u-lmt set</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set whether to set the upper limit of the target color difference for correction when correcting color difference between the front and back sides at duplex stream reading. Excessive correction is sometimes made when correcting color difference at duplex stream reading. When 1 or 2 is set, the correction level is adjusted to weaken the effect of correction. Excessive correction is not executed, but an expected effect may not be obtained for other colors. The result is reflected when color difference correction is executed again after the setting is made.	
<b>Use Case</b>	When color difference occurs on the colors which did not have any difference before correction	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.	
<b>Caution</b>	Expected correction result may not be obtained.	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 2 0: No control 1: Weak control 2: Strong control	
<b>Default Value</b>	0	
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-R> 1PSCLB-A/B, 1PCLBUDR	

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; MISC-R

1PCLBRST	Init frt/bck clr difference calibration
<b>Detail</b>	To initialize the correction result of calibration of color difference between the front and back sides. Execute this item when color difference is not corrected appropriately even though 1PSCLB-A/B is executed.
<b>Use Case</b>	When the calibration result is not appropriate
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Select the item, and then press Yes key.
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-R> 1PSCLB-A/B

## ■ MISC-P

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; MISC-P

SRVC-DAT	Output system data list/system dump list
<b>Detail</b>	To output the system data list and the system dump list in the form of a report. System data list: The service software switches and parameters used in FAX function System dump list: The number of sends/receives, the number of pages sent/received, the number of sheets printed/read, the number of errors, etc.
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Select the item, and then press Yes key.
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	FAX model only

SYS-DAT	Output of system data list
<b>Detail</b>	To output the system data list in the form of a report. The service software switches and parameters used in FAX function are output.
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Select the item, and then press Yes key.
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	FAX model only

SYS-DMP	Output of system dump list
<b>Detail</b>	To output the system dump list in the form of a report. The number of sends/receives, the number of pages sent/received, the number of sheets printed/read, the number of errors, etc. are output.
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Select the item, and then press Yes key.
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	FAX model only

CNTR	Output of counter report
<b>Detail</b>	To output the counter values in the form of a report. The usage of functions (reading, recording, communication and copy) is output.
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Select the item, and then press Yes key.

ERR-LOG	Output of error log report
<b>Detail</b>	To output the error log in the form of a report.
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Select the item, and then press Yes key.

SPEC	Output of spec report
<b>Detail</b>	To output the specifications in the form of a report. The current device specifications such as the location, model information, and ROM version are output.
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Select the item, and then press Yes key.

ERDS-LOG	Output of Embedded-RDS log report
<b>Detail</b>	To output the log relating to Embedded-RDS in the form of a report. The date, time, and code (8 digits) of each error that occurred are output.
<b>Use Case</b>	When using Embedded-RDS
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Select the item, and then press Yes key.
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> COM-LOG
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	Embedded-RDS: Function to send device information such as the device counter, failure, and consumables to UGW via SOAP protocol UGW (Universal Gate Way): Remote monitoring service system

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; MISC-P

CRG-LOG	Output cartridge replacement log report
<b>Detail</b>	To output the cartridge replacement log in the form of a report.
<b>Use Case</b>	When checking the cartridge replacement log
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Select the item, and then press Yes key.

## ■ SYSTEM

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; SYSTEM

DOWNLOAD	Upgrading of machine firmware: difference
<b>Detail</b>	To upgrade the machine firmware using a USB flash drive. Compare the versions of firmware in the machine and the USB flash drive, and update the differences.
<b>Use Case</b>	At upgrade
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Connect the USB flash drive. 2) Select the item, and then press Yes key. The machine restarts in download mode.
<b>Caution</b>	Do not turn OFF/ON the power before "Executing..." disappears.
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> DL-FORCE

PANEL-UP	Upgrading of Control Panel CPU PCB firm
<b>Detail</b>	To upgrade the firmware of the Control Panel CPU PCB using a USB flash drive. Upgrading is performed when PANEL exists in the root directory of the USB flash drive.
<b>Use Case</b>	At upgrade
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1. Connect the USB flash drive. 2. Select the item, and then press Yes. 3. Turn OFF/ON the main power.
<b>Caution</b>	Do not turn OFF/ON the power before "Executing..." disappears.
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> DISPLAY> VERSION> PANEL

LOGWRITE	Writing sublog to USB flash drive
<b>Detail</b>	To write sublog that includes the following information to the USB flash drive. - Job list (job names, user names, and destinations) - Communications log (destinations and user names) - Job log (user names and job names)
<b>Use Case</b>	When analyzing the cause of a problem
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1. Connect the USB flash drive. 2. Select the item, and then press Yes. 3. Turn OFF/ON the main power.
<b>Caution</b>	Do not turn OFF/ON the power before "Executing..." disappears.
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> LOG2USB

IMPORT	Read s-mode set VL from USB flash drive
<b>Detail</b>	To read the service mode setting information (excluding those related to Reader/ADF) from the USB flash drive.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the Main Controller PCB
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1. Connect the USB flash drive. 2. Select the item, and then press Yes. 3. Turn OFF/ON the main power.
<b>Caution</b>	Do not turn OFF/ON the power before "Executing..." disappears.
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> EXPORT

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; SYSTEM

<b>EXPORT</b>		<b>Writing of service mode setting value to USB memory</b>
<b>Detail</b>		To write the service mode setting information (excluding those related to Reader/ADF) to the USB flash drive.
<b>Use Case</b>		When replacing the Main Controller PCB
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>		1) Connect the USB flash drive. 2) Select the item, and then press Yes key. "Executing..." disappears when writing is completed.
<b>Related Service Mode</b>		COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> IMPORT
<b>LOG2USB</b>		<b>Writing of debug log to USB flash drive</b>
<b>Detail</b>		To write the debug log stored in the eMMC PCB to the USB flash drive.
<b>Use Case</b>		When analyzing the cause of a problem
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>		1) Connect the USB flash drive. 2) Select the item, and then press Yes key.
<b>Related Service Mode</b>		COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> LOGWRITE
<b>LOG-DEL</b>		<b>Deletion of debug log</b>
<b>Detail</b>		To delete the debug log stored in the eMMC PCB.
<b>Use Case</b>		When the debug log is no longer needed
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>		Select the item, and then press Yes key.
<b>DL-FORCE</b>		<b>Install machine firmware: overwriting</b>
<b>Detail</b>		To forcibly overwrite the machine firmware with the firmware stored in the USB flash drive.
<b>Use Case</b>		At upgrade/downgrade
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>		1) Connect the USB flash drive. 2) Select the item, and then press Yes key.
<b>Caution</b>		Do not turn OFF/ON the power before "Executing..." disappears.
<b>Related Service Mode</b>		COPIER> FUNCTION> SYSTEM> DOWNLOAD

## ■ SPLMAN

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; SPLMAN

<b>SPL14159</b>		<b>ON/OFF of USB device ID fixing</b>
<b>Detail</b>		To set whether to fix the USB device ID to "000000000000". A PC attempts to install the driver every time it is connected to a machine. However, by fixing the USB device ID, it recognizes that the same machine is connected so that it does not attempt to install the driver again.
<b>Use Case</b>		When saving the trouble of selecting a device used for printing from the candidate devices because the driver is installed every time a USB is connected
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>		1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>		0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
<b>Default Value</b>		0

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; SPLMAN

<b>SPL65677</b>	<b>Increase of paper leading edge margin</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To increase the margin on the leading edge of paper. As the value is incremented by 1, the margin is increased by 0.1 mm. Actually, a value where the setting value of SPL68676 is subtracted from the setting value of this item is applied. The margin settings which are job-specific or based on the printable area are applied regardless of the setting of this item.
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 20
<b>Unit</b>	0.1 mm
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> SPLMAN> SPL68676
<b>SPL68676</b>	<b>Decrease of paper leading edge margin</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To decrease the margin on the leading edge of paper. As the value is incremented by 1, the margin is decreased by 0.1 mm. Actually, a value where the setting value of this item is subtracted from the setting value of SPL65677 is applied. The margin settings which are job-specific or based on the printable area are applied regardless of the setting of this item.
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 20
<b>Unit</b>	0.1 mm
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> SPLMAN> SPL65677
<b>SPL68677</b>	<b>Increase of the left edge margin of paper</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To increase the margins on the left edge of paper. As the value is incremented by 1, the margin is increased by 0.1 mm. Actually, a value where the setting value of SPL25607 is subtracted from the setting value of this item is applied. The margin settings which are job-specific or based on the printable area are applied regardless of the setting of this item.
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 20
<b>Unit</b>	0.1 mm
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> SPLMAN> SPL25607
<b>SPL25607</b>	<b>Decrease of the left edge margin of paper</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To decrease the margins on the left edge of paper. As the value is incremented by 1, the margin is decreased by 0.1 mm. Actually, a value where the setting value of this item is subtracted from the setting value of SPL68677 is applied. The margin settings which are job-specific or based on the printable area are applied regardless of the setting of this item.
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 20
<b>Unit</b>	0.1 mm
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> SPLMAN> SPL68677

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; SPLMAN

<b>SPL93822</b>	<b>Setting of department ID count all clear</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set whether to disable clearing of all department ID counts.
<b>Use Case</b>	When prohibiting clearing of all department ID counts
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Caution</b>	Be sure to perform this mode after consulting with the system administrator at user's site.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> SPLMAN> SPL78788
<b>SPL78788</b>	<b>Setting of department ID count clear</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set whether to disable clearing of department ID count.
<b>Use Case</b>	When prohibiting clearing of department ID count
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Caution</b>	Be sure to perform this mode after consulting with the system administrator at user's site.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> SPLMAN> SPL93822
<b>SPL71100</b>	<b>Setting of the duty of Off-hook PCB</b>
<b>Detail</b>	This is the mode to make handsets of particular manufacturers to ring when fax reception mode is set to "Fax / Tel (Auto Switch)".
<b>Use Case</b>	When making the handsets of particular manufacturers to ring at the time of switching Fax/Tel
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	1 to 99
<b>Default Value</b>	50
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	FAX model only
<b>SPL00171</b>	<b>Set auto sleep shift time maximum value</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set the maximum auto sleep shift time displayed in [Auto Sleep Time] in [Settings/Registration]. When 0 is set, the time that can be set is 60 minutes maximum.
<b>Use Case</b>	When changing the setting time to shift to auto sleep mode
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: 60 minutes 1: Time specified for each model
<b>Default Value</b>	0 (Europe)/1 (Others)
<b>Additional Functions Mode</b>	Timer Settings> Auto Sleep Time



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; SPLMAN

<b>SPL80100</b>	<b>ON/OFF image left edge mask: book mode</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set whether to mask the left edge of the image at copyboard reading. When 0 is set, mask with the width based on the specification is applied for each job. When 1 is set, mask is canceled.
<b>Use Case</b>	Upon user's request (to print the left edge of the image)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: ON, 1: OFF
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>SPL27354</b>	<b>For R&amp;D</b>
<b>SPL84194</b>	<b>ON/OFF of Embedded-RDS</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set ON/OFF of Embedded-RDS function.
<b>Use Case</b>	When using Embedded-RDS
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: ON, 1: OFF
<b>Default Value</b>	It differs according to the location.
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	Embedded-RDS: Function to send device information such as the device counter, failure, and consumables to UGW via SOAP protocol UGW (Universal Gate Way): Remote monitoring service system
<b>SPL32620</b>	<b>ON/OFF of PC-less update function</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set whether to disable the PC-less update function.
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF / ON the main power switch.
<b>Caution</b>	When LCDSFLG is 1, the setting of this item is disabled (the PC-less update function is turned OFF).
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
<b>Default Value</b>	1
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> OPTION> FNC-SW> LCDSFLG
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	PC-less update: A function to directly download the firmware from the GDLS server and update it.
<b>SPL60061</b>	<b>Dspl/hide cloud print connct dest URL chng scrn</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set whether to display or hide the connection destination URL settings for Google Cloud Print on remote UI.
<b>Use Case</b>	When Google has changed the connection destination URL for cloud print
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF / ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: Display 1: Hide

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; SPLMAN

<b>SPL01734</b>	<b>ON/OFF of remote UI service mode</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set whether to allow using service mode on remote UI.
<b>Use Case</b>	When using service mode on remote UI
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Caution</b>	The setting value is linked with that of RMT-SW.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> OPTION> BODY> RMT-SW
<b>SPL78148</b>	<b>For R&amp;D</b>
<b>SPL39533</b>	<b>ON/OFF of department ID management</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set whether to disable the department ID management.
<b>Use Case</b>	When disabling the department ID management
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Select the item, and then press Yes key.
<b>SPL43810</b>	<b>Clear of system administrator settings</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To completely delete the following setting information. - System Manager ID - PIN After clearing of the information, it is necessary to set the system manager ID/PIN again.
<b>Use Case</b>	When the system manager ID/PIN has been forgotten
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Select the item, and then press Yes key.
<b>Caution</b>	Do not forget to set the system manager ID/PIN after clearing of the information.
<b>SPL08159</b>	<b>ON/OFF of fax image backup data clear</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set whether to clear the fax image data which has been backed up. When 1 is set, it is cleared at next startup.
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>SPL97097</b>	<b>ON/OFF of user setting backup data clear</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set whether to clear all the user setting data which has been backed up. When 1 is set, it is cleared at next startup.
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
<b>Default Value</b>	1
<b>SPL09876</b>	

## ■ INSTALL

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) > INSTALL

<b>STRD-POS</b>	<b>Auto adj of read position at stream read</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To automatically adjust the Scanner Unit position in feed direction when stream reading original with ADF. The adjustment result is reflected to COPIER> ADJUST> ADJ-XY> STRD-POS.
<b>Use Case</b>	- At ADF installation/uninstallation - When replacing the Scanner Unit/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Close the ADF. 2) Select the item, and then press Yes key. The operation automatically stops after the adjustment. 3) Write the value displayed by COPIER> ADJUST> ADJ-XY> STRD-POS in the service label.
<b>Caution</b>	Write the adjusted value in the service label.
<b>Required Time</b>	10 sec
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> ADJUST> ADJ-XY> STRD-POS
<b>CARD-NUM</b>	<b>Card first number setting</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set the card first number to be used for Copy Card Reader.
<b>Use Case</b>	At installation of the Card Reader
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	1 to 2701
<b>Default Value</b>	1
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> CARD
<b>CARD</b>	<b>Set of Copy Card Reader management info</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set the following management information at installation of the Card Reader. - Register numbers of 300 cards from the number set in CARD-NUM to the department ID. - Initialize ID and password of the system administrator.
<b>Use Case</b>	At installation of the Card Reader
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Select the item, and then press Yes key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> CARD-NUM
<b>ERDS</b>	<b>ON/OFF of Embedded-RDS</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set whether to use the Embedded-RDS function.
<b>Use Case</b>	When using Embedded-RDS
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Caution</b>	Be sure to use ERDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-RSLT, and COM-LOG as a set.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: OFF 1: ON
<b>Default Value</b>	It differs according to the location.
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-RSLT, COM-LOG
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	Embedded-RDS: Function to send device information such as the device counter, failure, and consumables to UGW via SOAP protocol UGW (Universal Gate Way): Remote monitoring service system

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode) &gt; INSTALL

<b>RGW-PORT</b>		<b>Setting of UGW port number when using Embedded-RDS</b>
<b>Detail</b>		To set the port number of UGW to be used for Embedded-RDS.
<b>Use Case</b>		When using Embedded-RDS
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>		1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Caution</b>		Be sure to use ERDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-RSLT, and COM-LOG as a set.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>		1 to 65535
<b>Default Value</b>		443
<b>Related Service Mode</b>		COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> ERDS, COM-TEST, COM-RSLT, COM-LOG
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>		Embedded-RDS: Function to send device information such as the device counter, failure, and consumables to the sales company's server via SOAP protocol
<b>COM-TEST</b>		<b>Execution of Embedded-RDS communication test</b>
<b>Detail</b>		To execute Embedded-RDS communication test. If the connection fails, the information is added to the communication error log.
<b>Use Case</b>		When using E-RDS
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>		Select the item, and then press Yes key.
<b>Caution</b>		Be sure to use ERDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-RSLT, and COM-LOG as a set.
<b>Related Service Mode</b>		COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> ERDS, RGW-PORT, COM-RSLT, COM-LOG
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>		Embedded-RDS: Function to send device information such as the device counter, failure, and consumables to UGW via SOAP protocol UGW (Universal Gate Way): Remote monitoring service system
<b>COM-RSLT</b>		<b>Display of Embedded-RDS comctn test result</b>
<b>Detail</b>		To display the Embedded-RDS communication test result.
<b>Use Case</b>		When using E-RDS
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>		N/A (Display only)
<b>Caution</b>		Be sure to use ERDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-RSLT, and COM-LOG as a set.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>		When not in execution: Unknown When connection is completed: OK When connection is failed: NG
<b>Default Value</b>		Unknown
<b>Related Service Mode</b>		COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> ERDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-LOG
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>		Embedded-RDS: Function to send device information such as the device counter, failure, and consumables to UGW via SOAP protocol UGW (Universal Gate Way): Remote monitoring service system
<b>COM-LOG</b>		<b>Display of Embedded-RDS comctn error log</b>
<b>Detail</b>		To display the Embedded-RDS communication error log. The dates, times, and error codes of the latest 5 errors that occurred are displayed. As for the error detail information, the report can be output by executing ERDS-LOG.
<b>Use Case</b>		When using Embedded-RDS
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>		N/A (Display only)
<b>Caution</b>		Be sure to use ERDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-RSLT, and COM-LOG as a set.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>		Date: 6 digits Time: 4 digits Error code: 8 digits
<b>Related Service Mode</b>		COPIER> FUNCTION> INSTALL> ERDS, RGW-PORT, COM-TEST, COM-RSLT COPIER> FUNCTION> MISC-P> ERDS-LOG
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>		Embedded-RDS: Function to send device information such as the device counter, failure, and consumables to UGW via SOAP protocol UGW (Universal Gate Way): Remote monitoring service system

## OPTION (Specification setting mode)

### ■ BODY

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > OPTION (Specification setting mode) > BODY

DFDST-L1	Adj image correction level: stream read
<b>Detail</b>	<p>To set whether to perform image correction between originals in the Scanner Unit at stream reading based on the result of dust detection.</p> <p>Increase the value when black lines appear. As the value is larger, the image is more likely to be corrected because the machine is more likely to respond to small dust.</p> <p>Decrease the value if a fine image portion is unclear as a result of dust detection correction control. As the value is smaller, the image is less likely to be corrected because the machine is less likely to respond to dust.</p>
<b>Use Case</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When black line occurs due to dust</li> <li>- Upon user's request</li> </ul>
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.</li> <li>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</li> </ol>
<b>Caution</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- If the value is too large, a fine image portion may be unclear. If the value is too small, black lines may appear on the image.</li> <li>- When the value of DFDST-L1 is changed to any value other than 0 while the values of DFDST-L1 and DFDST-L2 are 0, the value of DFDST-L2 is returned to the previous value (a value before setting 0).</li> <li>- When setting 0 for DFDST-L2, the value of DFDST-L1 also become 0 automatically (image correction is not performed).</li> </ul>
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	<p>0 to 255 0: OFF</p>
<b>Default Value</b>	200
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> OPTION> BODY> DFDST-L2
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	Black lines may appear on the image if there is dust. With dust detection correction control, the image is corrected to prevent black lines once dust is detected.
DF2DSTL1	Adj dust dtct level: stream read, back
<b>Detail</b>	<p>To adjust the level of dust detection that is executed between originals in the Scanner Unit (for back side) at stream reading.</p> <p>Reduce the value in the case of frequent display of cleaning instruction at the time of dust detection. As the value is smaller, dust is less likely to be detected.</p> <p>Increase the value when black lines appear. As the value is larger, the small dust is more likely to be detected.</p>
<b>Use Case</b>	Upon user's request
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.</li> <li>2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.</li> </ol>
<b>Caution</b>	<p>If the value is too large, the cleaning instruction screen may appear too often since even small dust that will not appear on the image can be detected.</p> <p>If the value is too small, black lines may appear.</p>
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	<p>1 to 255 1 to 84: Weakest 85 to 169: Weak 170 to 254: Moderate 255: Strong</p>
<b>Default Value</b>	200
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	Black lines may appear on the image if there is dust. With dust detection correction control, the image is corrected to prevent black lines once dust is detected.

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; BODY

LOCALE	Setting of location
<b>Detail</b>	To set the location. Set the location in this item and the paper size configuration in SIZE-LC, and then clear the setting information in ALL.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB - When changing the location information
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value in this item, and then press Apply key. 2) Set the paper size configuration in SIZE-LC. 3) Execute ALL. 4) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Caution</b>	The setting information such as user mode and service mode is initialized by executing ALL. The settings of this item and SIZE-LC are not initialized.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	1 to 10 1: Japan 2: North America 3: Korea 4: China 5: Taiwan 6: Europe 7: Asia 8: Oceania 9: Brazil 10: Latin
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> ALL COPIER> OPTION> BODY> SIZE-LC
SIZE-LC	Setting of paper size configuration
<b>Detail</b>	To set the paper size configuration. When replacing the Main Controller PCB, set the location in LOCALE and the paper size configuration in this item, and then clear the setting information in ALL.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When replacing the Main Controller PCB - Upon user's request
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Set the location in LOCALE. 2) Enter the setting value in this item, and then press Apply key. 3) Execute ALL. 4) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Caution</b>	The setting information such as user mode and service mode is initialized by executing ALL. The settings of this item and LOCALE are not initialized.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	1 to 4 1: AB configuration 2: Inch configuration 3: A configuration 4: AB/Inch configuration
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> CLEAR> ALL COPIER> OPTION> BODY> LOCALE

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; BODY

<b>MIBCOUNT</b>	<b>Set of charge counter MIB scope range</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set the range of counter information that can be obtained as MIB (Management Information Base).
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 2 0: All charge counters are obtained 1: Only displayed counter* is obtained 2: All charge counters are not obtained *: Counter specified by COUNTER 1 to 6
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> OPTION> USER> COUNTER1 - 6
<b>NS-CMD5</b>	<b>Limit CRAM-MD5 auth method: SMTP auth</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To restrict use of CRAM-MD5 authentication method at the time of SMTP authentication.
<b>Use Case</b>	Upon user's request
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: SMTP server-dependent 1: Not used
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	SMTP authentication: Protocol in which user authentication function is added to SMTP, which is the protocol to be used for e-mail transmission. At the time of e-mail transmission, this protocol executes authentication of the user account and the password between the SMTP server and the user to approve e-mail transmission only when it's authenticated.
<b>NS-PLN</b>	<b>Limit plaintext auth: SMTP auth, noencyr</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To restrict use of PLAIN/LOGIN authentication, which is plaintext, at the time of SMTP authentication under the environment where the communication packet is not encrypted.
<b>Use Case</b>	Upon user's request
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: SMTP server-dependent 1: Not used
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	SMTP authentication: Protocol in which user authentication function is added to SMTP, which is the protocol to be used for e-mail transmission. At the time of e-mail transmission, this protocol executes authentication of the user account and the password between the SMTP server and the user to approve e-mail transmission only when it's authenticated.
<b>NS-LGN</b>	<b>Limit LOGIN authentication: SMTP auth</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To restrict use of LOGIN authentication at the time of SMTP authentication.
<b>Use Case</b>	Upon user's request
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: SMTP server-dependent 1: Not used
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	SMTP authentication: Protocol in which user authentication function is added to SMTP, which is the protocol to be used for e-mail transmission. At the time of e-mail transmission, this protocol executes authentication of the user account and the password between the SMTP server and the user to approve e-mail transmission only when it's authenticated.

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; BODY

<b>SLPMODE</b>	<b>Setting of shift to sleep mode</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To restrict shift to sleep mode 1/sleep mode 3. When 1 is set, the machine does not shift to sleep mode.
<b>Use Case</b>	When sleep failure occurs
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0 : Shift is available. 1 : Shift is not available.
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>SDTM-DSP</b>	<b>ON/OFF of auto shutdown shift time dspl</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set whether to display [Auto Shutdown Time] in [Menu]. The setting is enabled only for the model with automatic shutdown function.
<b>Use Case</b>	When switching to display or hide the items related to auto shutdown
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	For the model without automatic shutdown function, the setting is disabled even if it is configured.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: OFF 1: ON
<b>Default Value</b>	It differs according to the location.
<b>Additional Functions Mode</b>	Preferences> Timer/Energy Settings> Auto Shutdown Time
<b>RMT-SW</b>	<b>ON/OFF of remote UI service mode</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set whether to allow using service mode on remote UI.
<b>Use Case</b>	When using service mode on remote UI
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>PSWD-SW</b>	<b>Set password type to enter service mode</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set the type of password that is required to enter when getting into service mode. 2 types are available: one for "service technician" and the other for "system administrator + service technician". When selecting the type for "system administrator + service technician", enter the password for service technician after the password entry by the user's system administrator.
<b>Use Case</b>	Upon request from the user who concerns security
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 2 0: No password 1: Service technician 2: System administrator + service technician
<b>Default Value</b>	0



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; BODY

SM-PSWD	Password setting for service technician
<b>Detail</b>	To set password for service technician that is used when getting into service mode.
<b>Use Case</b>	When password is required to get into service mode
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Caution</b>	Be sure to select 1 or 2 with PSWD-SW in advance.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	11111111 to 99999999
<b>Default Value</b>	11111111
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> OPTION> BODY> PSWD-SW

## ■ FNC-SW

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; FNC-SW

LCDSFLG	Enabling of local CDS server
<b>Detail</b>	To set whether to use the local CDS server.
<b>Use Case</b>	When using the local CDS server
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> FUNCTION> SPLMAN> SPL32620
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	When local CDS is used, iW EMC/MC device firmware update plug-in is required.
CRG-PROC	Set oprtn at cartridge estd life reach
<b>Detail</b>	To set the operation of the machine when the parts counter of the cartridge reaches the estimated life value.
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 2 0: Not stopped 1: Stopped once 2: Completely stopped
<b>Default Value</b>	0
CRGLF-K	Set replacement ref VL (Bk): drum, etc.
<b>Detail</b>	To set the reference values for judging replacement of the component other than toner (Photosensitive Drum, Developing Assembly, and waste toner) included in the life of Bk-color cartridge. These values are used as the basis for calculation of component other than toner when deriving the estimated life value of the cartridge.
<b>Use Case</b>	When toner consumption is low (when the life of the Photosensitive Drum or the Developing Assembly decreases faster than that of toner)
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	100 to 200
<b>Unit</b>	1%
<b>Default Value</b>	100

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; FNC-SW

<b>RPT2SIDE</b>	<b>Set of report 1-sided/2-sided output</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set whether to use 1-sided or 2-sided for report output of service mode.
<b>Use Case</b>	When making 1-sided report output
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: 1-sided 1: 2-sided
<b>Default Value</b>	1

## ■ DSPLY-SW

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; DSPLY-SW

<b>CRGLW-LV</b>	<b>ON/OFF ctrdg prep thrshld set scrn dsp</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set whether to display the screen to set the threshold value for the toner level to prompt preparation of a cartridge. When 1 is set, [Custom] is displayed in [Display Timing for Cartridge Prep. Notif.] so that the user can set the toner level (1 to 99%). When 0 is set, the item is not displayed, so the user cannot set the toner level.
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
<b>Default Value</b>	1
<b>Additional Functions Mode</b>	Preferences > Display Settings > Display Timing for Cartridge Prep. Notif.

<b>CRG-LOG</b>	<b>ON/OFF of [Cartridge Log Report] display</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set whether to display [Cartridge Log Report] in [Settings/Registration].
<b>Use Case</b>	When not allowing the user to output the cartridge log report
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: OFF 1: ON
<b>Default Value</b>	1
<b>Additional Functions Mode</b>	Output Report> Print List> Cartridge Log Report
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	ON/OFF of display of the remote UI (Status Monitor/Cancel > Cartridge Log) is also set at the same time.

## ■ IMG-MCON

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; IMG-MCON

<b>REGM-SEL</b>	<b>Adjustment of fine density correction</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the fine line and text density at 1200 dpi. As the value is larger, the image gets darker.
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key) and press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-1 to 1
<b>Default Value</b>	0

## ■ USER

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > OPTION (Specification setting mode) > USER

<b>COUNTER1</b>	<b>Display of software counter 1</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To display counter type for software counter 1 on the Counter Check screen.
<b>Use Case</b>	Upon user/dealer's request
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)
<b>Caution</b>	Display only. No change is available.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 999 0: No registration
<b>Default Value</b>	It differs according to the location.
<b>COUNTER2</b>	<b>Setting of software counter 2</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set counter type for software counter 2 on the Counter Check screen.
<b>Use Case</b>	Upon user/dealer's request
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 999 0: No registration
<b>Default Value</b>	It differs according to the location.
<b>COUNTER3</b>	<b>Setting of software counter 3</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set counter type for software counter 3 on the Counter Check screen.
<b>Use Case</b>	Upon user/dealer's request
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 999 0: No registration
<b>Default Value</b>	It differs according to the location.
<b>COUNTER4</b>	<b>Setting of software counter 4</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set counter type for software counter 4 on the Counter Check screen.
<b>Use Case</b>	Upon user/dealer's request
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 999 0: No registration
<b>Default Value</b>	It differs according to the location.
<b>COUNTER5</b>	<b>Setting of software counter 5</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set counter type for software counter 5 on the Counter Check screen.
<b>Use Case</b>	Upon user/dealer's request
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 999 0: No registration
<b>Default Value</b>	It differs according to the location.

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

<b>COUNTER6</b>		<b>Setting of software counter 6</b>
<b>Detail</b>		To set counter type for software counter 6 on the Counter Check screen.
<b>Use Case</b>		Upon user/dealer's request
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>		1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>		0 to 999 0: No registration
<b>Default Value</b>		It differs according to the location.
<b>CNT-SW</b>		<b>Set default Display items on charge counter</b>
<b>Detail</b>		To set default display items of the charge counter on the Counter Check screen. For details of each type, refer to the Service Manual.
<b>Use Case</b>		Upon user's request
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>		1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>		0 to 3 0: Type1 1: Type2 2: Type3 3: Type4
<b>Default Value</b>		0
<b>CONTROL</b>		<b>Charge setting of PDL job</b>
<b>Detail</b>		To set charge count transmission of PDL job to the connecting charging management device (Coin Manager or non-Canon-made control card).
<b>Use Case</b>		Upon user's request
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>		1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>		0 to 2 0: Output is available without control card. Not counted. 1: Output is available at insertion of the card. Counted. 2: Output is available at insertion of the card. Not counted.
<b>Default Value</b>		0
<b>CTCHKDSP</b>		<b>ON/OFF of charge counter list output</b>
<b>Detail</b>		To set whether to print the charge counter in the system management data list.
<b>Use Case</b>		Upon user's request
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>		1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>		0 to 1 0: ON, 1: OFF
<b>Default Value</b>		1
<b>Additional Functions Mode</b>		Output Report > Print List > System Manager Data List

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

<b>TNRB-SW</b>	<b>ON/OFF of toner replacement counter display</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set whether to display the toner replacement counter on the Counter Check screen. When 1 is set, the user can check the toner replacement counter.
<b>Use Case</b>	Upon user's request
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 3 0: Hide 1: Display (Toner replacement counters in the 190s) 2 to 3: Not used
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>PS-MODE</b>	<b>Setting of compatible mode at PS usage</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set the image processing at PS print. Set 8 when line width differs depending on the drawing position although the same line width is set. Setting of a value other than the setting values means that multiple settings are combined. (Example: 12=4+8)
<b>Use Case</b>	Upon user's request
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 63 8: strokeadjustment is enabled Any value other than those mentioned above: Not used
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>SMD-EXPT</b>	<b>Set of service mode set VL export target</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set whether to export "service mode data" from remote UI. When 1 is set, "service mode data" is displayed as the target data of export on remote UI. When installing more than 1 machine at the same time, the same service mode data can be registered.
<b>Use Case</b>	When installing more than 1 machine at the same time
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: Not targeted 1: Targeted
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	If selecting "service mode data" as the target data of export on remote UI after setting SMD-EXPT to 1, service mode data can be exported.
<b>ACC-SLP</b>	<b>Set shift to sleep3: Card Reader connect</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set whether to shift to sleep mode 3 when the Card Reader is connected.
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: Not shifted 1: Shifted
<b>Default Value</b>	1

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; USER

RPL-IMP	ON/OFF of replacement mode
<b>Detail</b>	To set whether to import the setting information of a machine which has been exported to a different one of the same model using DCM function. When 0 is set, the setting information which has been exported can be imported only to the same machine. When 1 is set, the machine-specific setting information such as IPv4 address setting can be imported to a different machine.
<b>Use Case</b>	When migrating the setting of a machine to a different machine of the same series that has been replaced
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: OFF, 1: ON
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	DCM (Device Configuration Management): A function to export/import the machine's setting information as a file.

## ■ ACC

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; ACC

CARD-SW	Set screen dsp1: Coin Manager connected
<b>Detail</b>	To set coin or card that the user is prompted to insert on the Control Panel when the Coin Manager is connected. When 1 is set, authentication operation using the Coin Manager is also required.
<b>Use Case</b>	Upon user's request
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 3 0 and 3: Card 1: Card + authentication 2: Coin/Card
<b>Default Value</b>	0
CC-SPSW	Setting of Control Interface Kit
<b>Detail</b>	To set whether to support the Control Interface Kit.
<b>Use Case</b>	At installation of Coin Manager
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Caution</b>	Parallel use with Card Reader is not available.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: Not supported 1: Supported
<b>Default Value</b>	0
WLAN	Setting of wireless LAN function
<b>Detail</b>	To set whether to enable the wireless LAN function.
<b>Use Case</b>	Upon user's request
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: Disabled 1: Enabled
<b>Default Value</b>	It differs according to the model.

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; ACC

UNIF-OF	Setting of uniFLOW function
<b>Detail</b>	To set whether to enable the uniFLOW function. If 1 is set for this item and power is turned OFF/ON while the uniFLOW function is in operation, the function stops. When the setting value is set to 1, the uniFLOW function is disabled.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When avoiding failure due to error of the uniFLOW function - When connecting to the uniFLOW server is failed due to the error in the machine
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key. 2) Turn OFF/ON the main power switch.
<b>Caution</b>	Be sure to change the value back to 0 after servicing.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: Enabled 1: Disabled
<b>Default Value</b>	0

## ■ LCNS-TR

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; LCNS-TR

ST-BRDIM	Install state Display of BarDIMM function
<b>Detail</b>	To display installation state of Barcode Printing for PCL when disabling and then transferring the license.
<b>Use Case</b>	When checking whether Barcode Printing for PCL is installed
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Select ST-BRDIM. 2) Enter 0, and then press Apply key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-BRDIM.
<b>Default Value</b>	According to the setting at shipment
TR-BRDIM	Trns lcns key Display of BarDIMM function
<b>Detail</b>	To display transfer license key to use Barcode Printing for PCL when disabling and then transferring the license.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the device
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Select ST-BRDIM. 2) Enter 0, and then press Apply key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-BRDIM.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	24 digits
ST-ENPDF	Install state dspl:encrypted PDF TX func
<b>Detail</b>	To display installation state of Encryption PDF when disabling and then transferring the license.
<b>Use Case</b>	When checking whether Encryption PDF is installed
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Select ST-ENPDF. 2) Enter 0, and then press Apply key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-ENPDF.
<b>Default Value</b>	According to the setting at shipment
TR-ENPDF	Trns lcns key dspl:encrypted PDF TX func
<b>Detail</b>	To display transfer license key to use Encryption PDF when disabling and then transferring the license.
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the device
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Select ST-ENPDF. 2) Enter 0, and then press Apply key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-ENPDF.
<b>Caution</b>	This mode is enabled when SEND function is installed.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	24 digits

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; LCNS-TR

<b>ST-DVPDF</b>		<b>Install state dspl: device sign PDF TX</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To display installation state of Device Signature PDF when disabling and then transferring the license.	
<b>Use Case</b>	When checking whether Device Signature PDF is installed	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Select ST-DVPDF. 2) Enter 0, and then press Apply key. When installation has been completed, the transfer license key is displayed under TR-DVPDF.	
<b>Default Value</b>	According to the setting at shipment	
<b>TR-DVPDF</b>		<b>Trns lcns key dspl: device sign PDF TX</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To display transfer license key to use Device Signature PDF when disabling and then transferring the license.	
<b>Use Case</b>	When replacing the device	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Select ST-DVPDF. 2) Enter 0, and then press Apply key. The transfer license key is displayed under TR-DVPDF.	
<b>Caution</b>	This mode is enabled when SEND function is installed.	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	24 digits	

## ■ LCNS-OF

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; OPTION (Specification setting mode) &gt; LCNS-OF

<b>ST-BRDIM</b>	<b>Not use</b>
<b>ST-ENPDF</b>	<b>Not use</b>
<b>ST-DVPDF</b>	<b>Not use</b>

## COUNTER (Counter mode)

### ■ TOTAL

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; TOTAL

<b>SERVICE1</b>		<b>Service-purposed total counter 1</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To count up when the printout is delivered outside the machine. Large size: 1, Small size: 1 A blank sheet is not counted.	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 99999999	
<b>Unit</b>	1 sheet	
<b>Default Value</b>	0	
<b>SERVICE2</b>		<b>Service-purposed total counter 2</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To count up when the printout is delivered outside the machine. Large size: 2, Small size: 1 A blank sheet is not counted.	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 99999999	
<b>Unit</b>	1 sheet	
<b>Default Value</b>	0	



COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; TOTAL

<b>TTL</b>		<b>Total counter</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To display the total of counters of COPY, PDL-PRT, FAX-PRT, RPT-PRT, and MD-PRT.	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 99999999	
<b>Unit</b>	1 sheet	
<b>Default Value</b>	0	
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> COUNTER> TOTAL> COPY, PDL-PRT, FAX-PRT, RPT-PRT, MD-PRT	
<b>COPY</b>		<b>Total copy counter</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To count up when the printout is delivered outside the machine. Large size: 1, Small size: 1 A blank sheet is not counted.	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 99999999	
<b>Unit</b>	1 sheet	
<b>Default Value</b>	0	
<b>PDL-PRT</b>		<b>PDL print counter</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To count up when the printout is delivered outside the machine/2-sided printout is stacked according to the charge counter at PDL print. Large size: 1, Small size: 1 A blank sheet is not counted.	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 99999999	
<b>Unit</b>	1 sheet	
<b>Default Value</b>	0	
<b>FAX-PRT</b>		<b>FAX reception print counter</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To count up when the FAX reception print is delivered outside the machine/2-sided printout is stacked. Large size: 1, Small size: 1 The counter is not advanced by blank paper or delivery in service mode.	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 99999999	
<b>Unit</b>	1 sheet	
<b>Default Value</b>	0	
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> COUNTER> TOTAL> TTL	
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	FAX model only	
<b>RPT-PRT</b>		<b>Report print counter</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To count up when the report print is delivered outside the machine/2-sided printout is stacked. Large size: 1, Small size: 1 The counter is not advanced by blank paper or delivery in service mode.	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 99999999	
<b>Unit</b>	1 sheet	
<b>Default Value</b>	0	
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> COUNTER> TOTAL> TTL	

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; TOTAL

<b>MD-PRT</b>		<b>Media print counter</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To count up when the media print is delivered outside the machine. Large size: 1, Small size: 1 The counter is not advanced by blank paper or delivery in service mode.	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 99999999	
<b>Unit</b>	1 sheet	
<b>Default Value</b>	0	
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	COPIER> COUNTER> TOTAL> TTL	
<b>2-SIDE</b>		<b>2-sided copy/print counter</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To count up the number of 2-sided copies/prints when the copy/printout is delivered outside the machine/2-sided copy/printout is stacked according to the charge counter. Large size: 1, Small size: 1 A blank sheet is not counted.	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 99999999	
<b>Unit</b>	1 time	
<b>Default Value</b>	0	
<b>SCAN</b>		<b>Scan counter</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To count the number of scan operations according to the charge counter when the scanning operation is complete. Large size: 1, Small size: 1	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 99999999	
<b>Unit</b>	1 time	
<b>Default Value</b>	0	

## ■ PICK-UP

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; PICK-UP

<b>C1</b>		<b>Cassette 1 pickup total counter</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To count up the number of sheets picked up from the Cassette 1. Large size: 1, Small size: 1 The counter is advanced by printout in service mode.	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 99999999	
<b>Unit</b>	1 sheet	
<b>Default Value</b>	0	
<b>C2</b>		<b>Cassette 2 pickup total counter</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To count up the number of sheets picked up from the Cassette 2. Large size: 1, Small size: 1 The counter is advanced by printout in service mode.	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 99999999	
<b>Unit</b>	1 sheet	
<b>Default Value</b>	0	

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; PICK-UP

<b>C3</b>		<b>Cassette 3 pickup total counter</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To count up the number of sheets picked up from the Cassette 3. Large size: 1, Small size: 1 The counter is advanced by printout in service mode.	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 99999999	
<b>Unit</b>	1 sheet	
<b>Default Value</b>	0	
<b>C4</b>		<b>Cassette 4 pickup total counter</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To count up the number of sheets picked up from the Cassette 4. Large size: 1, Small size: 1 The counter is advanced by printout in service mode.	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 99999999	
<b>Unit</b>	1 sheet	
<b>Default Value</b>	0	
<b>MF</b>		<b>Multi-purpose Tray pickup total counter</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To count up the number of sheets picked up from the Multi-purpose Tray Pickup Unit. Large size: 1, Small size: 1 The counter is advanced by printout in service mode.	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 99999999	
<b>Unit</b>	1 sheet	
<b>Default Value</b>	0	
<b>2-SIDE</b>		<b>2-sided pickup total counter</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To count up the number of sheets picked up in duplex mode. Large size: 1, Small size: 1 The counter is advanced by printout in service mode.	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 99999999	
<b>Unit</b>	1 sheet	
<b>Default Value</b>	0	

## ■ FEEDER

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; FEEDER

<b>FEED</b>		<b>ADF original pickup total counter</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To count up the number of originals picked up from the ADF regardless of the size.	
<b>Use Case</b>	When checking the total counter of original pickup by ADF	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 99999999	
<b>Unit</b>	1 sheet	
<b>Default Value</b>	0	

## ■ JAM

COPIER (Service mode for printer) > COUNTER (Counter mode) > JAM

<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>Total jam counter</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To count up the number of total jam occurrences.
<b>Use Case</b>	When checking the jam counter
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 99999999
<b>Unit</b>	1 time
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>FEEDER</b>	<b>ADF jam counter</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To count up the number of jam occurrences in the ADF.
<b>Use Case</b>	When checking the jam counter
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 99999999
<b>Unit</b>	1 time
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>2-SIDE</b>	<b>Duplex Unit jam counter</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To count up the number of jam occurrences in the Duplex Unit.
<b>Use Case</b>	When checking the jam counter
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 99999999
<b>Unit</b>	1 time
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>MF</b>	<b>Multi-purpose Tray jam counter</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To count up the number of jam occurrences in the Multi-purpose Tray. The counter is advanced even in the case of paper size mismatch or misprint.
<b>Use Case</b>	When checking the jam counter
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 99999999
<b>Unit</b>	1 time
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>C1</b>	<b>Cassette 1 jam counter</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To count up the number of jam occurrences in the Cassette 1. The counter is advanced even in the case of paper size mismatch or misprint.
<b>Use Case</b>	When checking the jam counter
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 99999999
<b>Unit</b>	1 time
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>C2</b>	<b>Cassette 2 jam counter</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To count up the number of jam occurrences in the Cassette 2. The counter is advanced even in the case of paper size mismatch or misprint.
<b>Use Case</b>	When checking the jam counter
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 99999999
<b>Unit</b>	1 time
<b>Default Value</b>	0

COPIER (Service mode for printer) &gt; COUNTER (Counter mode) &gt; JAM

<b>C3</b>		<b>Cassette 3 jam counter</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To count up the number of jam occurrences in the Cassette 3. The counter is advanced even in the case of paper size mismatch or misprint.	
<b>Use Case</b>	When checking the jam counter	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 99999999	
<b>Unit</b>	1 time	
<b>Default Value</b>	0	
<b>C4</b>		<b>Cassette 4 jam counter</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To count up the number of jam occurrences in the Cassette 4. The counter is advanced even in the case of paper size mismatch or misprint.	
<b>Use Case</b>	When checking the jam counter	
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	N/A (Display only)	
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 99999999	
<b>Unit</b>	1 time	
<b>Default Value</b>	0	

## FEEDER (ADF service mode)

### ADJUST (Adjustment mode)

FEEDER (ADF service mode) > ADJUST (Adjustment mode)

<b>DOCST</b>	<b>Adj img lead edge margin: stream, front</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the leading edge margin of the image on the front side at stream reading. Execute this item when the output image after ADF installation is displaced. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. As the value is incremented by 1, the margin is reduced by 0.1 mm. (The image moves upward.) The setting is applied to the image on the front side.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When installing the ADF - When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key), and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-30 to 30
<b>Unit</b>	0.1 mm
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>LA-SPEED</b>	<b>Fine adj img ratio:stream,vert scan,frt</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To make a fine adjustment of the image magnification ratio in vertical scanning direction on the front side at stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. As the value is incremented by 1, the image is reduced by 0.01% in vertical scanning direction. (The feeding speed increases, and the image is reduced.) The setting is applied to the image on the front side.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When installing the ADF - When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key), and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-200 to 200
<b>Unit</b>	0.01%
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>DOCST2</b>	<b>Adj img lead edge margin: stream, back</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the leading edge margin of the image on the back side at stream reading. Execute this item when the output image after ADF installation is displaced. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. As the value is incremented by 1, the margin is reduced by 0.1 mm. (The image moves upward.) The setting is applied to the image on the back side.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When installing the ADF - When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key), and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-30 to 30
<b>Unit</b>	0.1 mm
<b>Default Value</b>	0

FEEDER (ADF service mode) &gt; ADJUST (Adjustment mode)

LA-SPD2	Fine adj img ratio:stream,vert scan,bck
<b>Detail</b>	To make a fine adjustment of the image magnification ratio in vertical scanning direction on the back side at stream reading. When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data, enter the value of service label. As the value is incremented by 1, the image is reduced by 0.01% in vertical scanning direction. (The feeding speed increases, and the image is reduced.) The setting is applied to the image on the back side.
<b>Use Case</b>	- When installing the ADF - When replacing the Main Controller PCB/clearing RAM data
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key), and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-200 to 200
<b>Unit</b>	0.01%
<b>Default Value</b>	0

## FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode)

FEEDER (ADF service mode) &gt; FUNCTION (Operation / inspection mode)

MTR-ON	Operation check of ADF Motor
<b>Detail</b>	To start operation check of ADF Motor (M702).
<b>Use Case</b>	At operation check
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	1) Select the item, and then press Yes key. It is driven for approximately 5 seconds and is automatically stopped. 2) Press Yes key. The operation check is completed.
<b>Required Time</b>	5 seconds
FEED-ON	Operation check of ADF individual feed
<b>Detail</b>	To start operation check of the feed mode specified by FEED-CHK.
<b>Use Case</b>	At operation check
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Select the item, and then press Yes key.
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	FEEDER> FUNCTION> FEED-CHK
FEED-CHK	Specify ADF individual feed operation
<b>Detail</b>	To specify the feed mode for ADF. Feed operation is activated by FEED-ON.
<b>Use Case</b>	At operation check
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: 1-sided 1: 2-sided
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	FEEDER> FUNCTION> FEED-ON
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	In the case of ADF (1-path model), operation is the same when either value is set.

## FAX (FAX service mode)

### SSSW (Bit switch registration mode)

SSSW No.	Bit No.	Function
SW 01		(Switch relating to error and copy)
	Bit 0	Output of error code for service technician
	Bit 1	Error memory dump
SW 02		(Switch relating to settings for network connection condition)
	Bit 7	Connect the terminal as F network type 2
SW 03		(Switch relating to echo prevention)
	Bit 0	TCF EQM check
	Bit 7	Output 1080Hz before CED
SW 04		(Switch relating to prevention of communication problems)
	Bit 1	Frequency check of CI signal
	Bit 3	Prohibit T.30 node F kept by both parties
	Bit 4	T.30 node F echo timer
	Bit 5	Frequency check of CI signal at PBX settings
	Bit 6	No CNG transmission at the time of manual transmission
	Bit 7	No CED transmission at the time of manual transmission
SW 05		(Switch relating to standard functions and DIS signal settings)
	Bit 2	mm/inch conversion (text/photo mode / photo mode)
	Bit 3	Prohibition of bit transmission after DIS bit 33
	Bit 4	Declaration of cut paper
SW 06		(Switch relating to settings for reading condition)
	Bit 4	Scan width (0: A4, 1: LTR)
SW 07		Not in use
SW 08		Not in use
SW 09		Not in use
SW 10		Not in use
SW 11		Not in use
SW 12		(Switch relating to settings for page timer)
	Bit 0	Timeout period for 1 page (transmission)
	Bit 1	
	Bit 2	Timeout period for 1 page (Halftone transmission)
	Bit 3	
	Bit 4	Timeout period for 1 page (Reception)
	Bit 5	
Bit 7	Timeout period for 1 page	
SW 13	Bit 2	Execution of mm/inch conversion when sending the received image
SW 14	Bit 2	Setting whether to execute inch to mm conversion in horizontal and vertical scanning directions or in vertical scanning direction only
	Bit 4	Declaration of inch-configuration resolution
SW 15		Not in use
SW 16		Not in use
SW 17	Bit 1	Range of selection of transmission level of modem (0: 8 to 15, 1: 0 to 15)
SW 18	Bit 0	Detection of carrier disconnection between DCS and TCF
	Bit 1	Time to wait for carrier disconnection between DCS and TCF
	Bit 2	Prohibition of communication control for IP network
	Bit 3	Number of command retransmission (V1.7 or earlier) (0: 3 times, 1: 6 times)
	Bit 4	Retransmission request of all frames after frame loss at JBIG reception (0: Not requested, 1: Requested)
SW 19		Not in use
SW 20		Not in use



SSSW No.	Bit No.	Function
SW 21		Not in use
SW 22	Bit 3	Prohibition of manual polling operation
SW 23		Not in use
SW 24		Not in use
SW 25		(Setting for report display function)
	Bit 0	Prioritize the received abbreviated name to the dialed abbreviated name
SW 26		Not in use
SW 27		Not in use
SW 28	Bit 0	Prohibit calling party for V8 procedure
	Bit 1	Prohibit called party from V8 procedure
	Bit 2	Prohibit calling party from V8 late-start
	Bit 3	Prohibit called party from V8 late-start
	Bit 4	Prohibit V.34 called party from starting fallback
	Bit 5	Prohibit V.34 calling party from starting fallback
SW 29		Not in use
SW 30		Not in use
SW 31		Not in use
SW 32		Not in use

## MENU (Menu switch registration mode)

No.	Parameter	Selection
05	Not in use	-
06	Telephone line monitor	0 to 3 0: DIAL 1: SERVICE TECHNICIAN 1 2: SERVICE TECHNICIAN 2 3: OFF
07	Transmission level (ATT)	8 to 15
08	Upper limit of V.34 modulation speed	0 to 5 0: 3,429 BAUD 1: 3,200 BAUD 2: 3,000 BAUD 3: 2,800 BAUD 4: 2,743 BAUD 5: 2,400 BAUD
09	Upper limit of V.34 data speed	0 to 13 0: 33.6 kbps 1: 31.2 kbps 2: 28.8 kbps 3: 26.4 kbps 4: 24.0 kbps 5: 21.6 kbps 6: 19.2 kbps 7: 16.8 kbps 8: 14.4 kbps 9: 12.0 kbps 10: 9.6 kbps 11: 7.2 kbps 12: 4.8 kbps 13: 2.4 kbps
10	OFF Hook signal frequency	0 to 2 0: 50 Hz 1: 25 Hz 2: 17 Hz

## NUM (Numeric parameter setting mode)

No.	Parameter	Allowable setting range
002	RTN transmission criteria X	1 to 99 %
003	RTN transmission criteria n	2 to 99 times
004	RTN transmission criteria m	1 to 99 lines
005	NCC pause (before ID code)	1 to 60 sec
006	NCC pause (after ID code)	1 to 60 sec
008	STORED_DIAL_MODE wait timer	0 to 65 sec
010	T.30 T0 timer	0 to 9,999 (55 sec principally: 5,500)
011	T.30 T1 timer (for incoming transmission)	0 to 9,999 (France: 3,500, Others: 3,000)
012	Maximum incoming lines	0 to 65,535 lines (0: without limitation)
013	T.30 EOL timer	500 to 3,000 (default 13 sec: 1,300)
015	Threshold between hokking nad on-hook	0 to 999
016	Lead time to the first response when switching between FAX and TEL	0 to 9
017	Duration to activate pseudo-RBT cadence	0 to 999
018	Duration to deactivate pseudo-RBT cadence (short)	0 to 999
019	Duration to deactivate pseudo-RBT cadence (long)	0 to 999
020	Duration to activate pseudo-ring cadence	0 to 999
021	Duration to deactivate OFF Hook cadence (short)	0 to 999
022	Duration to deactivate OFF Hook cadence (long)	0 to 999
023	Not in use	-
024	Not in use	-
025	CNG monitor duration while the answering device is activated	0 to 999
026	Not in use	-
027	Not in use	-
029	Off-hook PCB duty settings (For NAC, setting can be made with SPL71100 in special management mode.)	1 to 99
049	NSX MODEL ID	0 to 4,095
051	Threshold to detect hook	0 to 9,999
053	Set DTMF calling counts when receiving FAX remotely	0 to 9,999 (default: 2)
054	Not in use	-

## NCU (NCU parameter setting mode)

### ■ TONE

Parameter No.	Function	Setting range
001	Tone signal sending time (PSTN)	10 to 9,999 msec
002	Minimum pause time (PSTN)	10 to 9,999 msec

### ■ PULSE

Item/Parameter No.	Function	Setting range
FORM	Pulse digit format	0: DP (N) 1: DP (N+1) 2: DP (10-N)
001	Not in use	

Item/Parameter No.	Function	Setting range
002	Not in use	
003	Pulse dial make ratio	10 to 90 %
004	Minimum pause time	10 to 9,999 msec

## ■ DIALTONE

### Bit Switch

Bit No.	Function	1	0
Bit 0	-	-	-
Bit 1	Cadence pattern check	Not detected	Detected
Bit 2	Signal frequency	Changed	Not changed
Bit 3	-	-	-
Bit 4	Judgment of intermittent signal	start from valid ON signal	start from either valid ON signal or OFF signal
Bit 5	-	-	-
Bit 6	Signal form	Continuous	Intermittent
Bit 7	Signal detection	Detected	Not detected

### Numeric value parameter

Parameter No.	Function	Setting range
001	T0 timer	0 to 9,999 (x 10 msec)
002	T1 timer	0 to 9,999 (x 10 msec)
003	T2 timer	0 to 9,999 (x 10 msec)
004	T3 timer	0 to 9,999 (x 10 msec)
005	T4 timer	0 to 9,999 (x 10 msec)
006	Signal detection table	0 to 16
007	Signal detection level	0 to 7
008	Number of signal frequency	0 to 9,999

## ■ 2ND DLTN (2nd DIAL TONE)

Not in use

## ■ BUSTONE0 (BUSY TONE 0)

### Bit Switch

Bit No.	Function	1	0
Bit 0	-	-	-
Bit 1	-	-	-
Bit 2	-	-	-
Bit 3	-	-	-
Bit 4	-	-	-
Bit 5	-	-	-
Bit 6	-	-	-
Bit 7	Signal detection	Detected	Not detected

### Numeric value parameter

Not in use

## ■ BUSTONE1 (BUSY TONE 1)

### Bit Switch

Bit No.	Function	1	0
Bit 0	-	-	-
Bit 1	-	-	-
Bit 2	-	-	-
Bit 3	-	-	-
Bit 4	-	-	-
Bit 5	-	-	-
Bit 6	-	-	-
Bit 7	Signal detection	Detected	Not detected

### Numeric value parameter

Parameter No.	Function	Setting range
001	-	-
002	T1 timer	0 to 9,999 (x 10 msec)
003	T2 timer	0 to 9,999 (x 10 msec)
004	T3 timer	0 to 9,999 (x 10 msec)
005	T4 timer	0 to 9,999 (x 10 msec)
006	Signal detection table	0 to 16
007	Signal detection level	0 to 7
008	Number of signal frequency	0 to 9,999

## ■ REORDRTN (REORDER TONE)

### Bit Switch

Bit No.	Function	1	0
Bit 0	-	-	-
Bit 1	-	-	-
Bit 2	-	-	-
Bit 3	-	-	-
Bit 4	-	-	-
Bit 5	-	-	-
Bit 6	-	-	-
Bit 7	Signal detection	Detected	Not detected

### Numeric value parameter

Parameter No.	Function	Setting range
001	-	-
002	T1 timer	0 to 9,999 (x 10 msec)
003	T2 timer	0 to 9,999 (x 10 msec)
004	T3 timer	0 to 9,999 (x 10 msec)
005	T4 timer	0 to 9,999 (x 10 msec)
006	Signal detection table	0 to 21
007	Signal detection level	0 to 7
008	Number of signal frequency	0 to 9,999

## ■ AUTO RX

### Numeric value parameter

Parameter No.	Function	Setting range
001	CI ON time	0 to 9,999 (x 10 msec)
002	CI LONG ON time	0 to 9,999 (x 10 msec)
003	CI OFF time	0 to 9,999 (x 10 msec)
004	CI LONG OFF time	0 to 9,999 (x 10 msec)
005	CI MAX OFF time	0 to 9,999 (x 10 msec)
006	CI WAIT time	0 to 9,999 (x 10 msec)
007	CI frequency	0 to 9,999 cycle
008	CI frequency lower limit	0 to 9,999 Hz
009	CI frequency upper limit	0 to 9,999 Hz

## ■ CNGDTCT (CNG DETECT)

### Numeric value parameter

Parameter No.	Description		Setting range
001	At F/T switching	CNG MIN ON time	0 to 9,999 (x 10 msec)
002		CNG MAX ON time	0 to 9,999 (x 10 msec)
006		-	-
007	At direct connecting to answering phone	CNG MIN ON time	0 to 9,999 (x 10 msec)
008		CNG MAX ON time	0 to 9,999 (x 10 msec)
009		Tolerable time of instantaneous interruption	0 to 9,999 (x 10 msec)
011		Number of detection	0 to 9,999 times
012		Hit ratio	0 to 9,999 %

## ■ SPECIALB

Not in use

## ■ SPECIALN

Not in use

## ■ RKEY

### Numeric value parameter

Parameter No.	Function	Setting range
001	Connection time of flash	0 to 9,999 (x 10 msec)
002	Connection time of grounding wire	0 to 9,999 (x 10 msec)

## ■ PBXDIALT (PBX DIAL TONE)

Not in use

## ■ PBXBUSYT (PBX BUSY TONE)

Not in use

## TESTMODE (Service mode for test print, operation check, etc.)

### PRINT (Print test mode)

TESTMODE (Service mode for test print, operation check, etc.) > PRINT (Print test mode)

PG-TYPE		Setting of PG number
	<b>Detail</b>	To set the PG number of the test print.
	<b>Use Case</b>	At trouble analysis
	<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
	<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 7 0: Grid Pattern 1: Halftone Pattern 2: Black Pattern 3: White Pattern 4: Gradation17 Pattern 5: ThinHorizontalLine Pattern 0 to 6: For R&D use
	<b>Default Value</b>	0
COUNT		Setting of PG output quantity
	<b>Detail</b>	To set the number of sheets for PG output.
	<b>Use Case</b>	At trouble analysis
	<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
	<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	1 to 99
	<b>Unit</b>	1 sheet
	<b>Default Value</b>	1
PHASE		Set 1-sided/2-sided print for PG output
	<b>Detail</b>	To set 1-sided/2-sided print for PG output. Even if 1 is set for a machine supporting 1-sided print, the setting is disabled.
	<b>Use Case</b>	At trouble analysis
	<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
	<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: 1-sided 1: 2-sided
	<b>Default Value</b>	0
MODE		Setting of test print image formation method
	<b>Detail</b>	To set the image formation method for the test print. If PG-TYPE is 0 or 1, this setting is disabled because a specific image formation method is applied.
	<b>Use Case</b>	At trouble analysis
	<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
	<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 4 0: TBIC 1: Resolution Dither 2: Gradation Dither 3: Tone Dither 4: Hi Resolution Dither
	<b>Default Value</b>	0
	<b>Related Service Mode</b>	TESTMODE> PRINT> PG-TYPE

TESTMODE (Service mode for test print, operation check, etc.) > PRINT (Print test mode)

<b>THRU</b>	<b>Setting of image correction table at test print</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set the image correction table that is used at the time of test print output. When 0 is set, normal gamma LUT is used so that the density characteristics by the density correction process can be checked. When 1 is set, linear gamma LUT is used so that the density characteristics of this machine can be checked.
<b>Use Case</b>	At trouble analysis
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: Normal gamma LUT 1: Through (linear) gamma LUT
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	Gamma LUT: Density gradation characteristic table
<b>DENS</b>	<b>Adjustment of test print density</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To adjust the density of the test print. As the value is larger, the image gets darker.
<b>Use Case</b>	At trouble analysis
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value (switch negative/positive by +/- key), and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	-4 to 4
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>MABK</b>	<b>Setting of toner thinning process at test print</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set the toner thinning process at test print. As the value is larger, toner scattering is reduced.
<b>Use Case</b>	When toner scattering occurs at test print
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 4 0: OFF, 1: Mode 1, 2: Mode 2, 3: Mode 3, 4: Mode 4
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>FEED</b>	<b>Setting of paper source at test print</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To set the paper source at the time of test print output. If this mode is set when there is no Cassette 2 (option Pickup Cassette), the output is made from Cassette 1 (standard Pickup Cassette).
<b>Use Case</b>	At trouble analysis
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	In case of using the Multi-purpose Tray, be sure to place paper on the tray before executing this item.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 4 0: Multi-purpose Tray 1: Cassette 1 2: Cassette 2 3: Cassette 3 4: Cassette 4
<b>Default Value</b>	1
<b>START</b>	<b>Output of test print</b>
<b>Detail</b>	To output a test print with the PG pattern set in PG-TYPE, MODE, etc.
<b>Use Case</b>	At trouble analysis
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Select the item, and then press Yes key.
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	TESTMODE> PRINT

## FAX (FAX test mode)

### ■ MODEM

TESTMODE (Service mode for test print, operation check, etc.) > FAX (FAX test mode) > MODEM

RELAY-1	NCU relay test 1
<b>Detail</b>	To test ON/OFF of relay and port switch of NCU. This mode is disabled for an NCU with no relay and port switch.
<b>Use Case</b>	When analyzing the cause of a problem
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	Be sure to set the value back to 0 after the test.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 6 0: All OFF 1: CML ON/OFF 2: P ON/OFF 3: S ON/OFF 4: H ON/OFF 5: HD ON/OFF 6: R ON/OFF
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	TESTMODE > FAX > MODEM > RELAY-2
RELAY-2	NCU relay test 2
<b>Detail</b>	To test ON/OFF of relay and port switch of NCU. This mode is disabled for an NCU with no relay and port switch.
<b>Use Case</b>	When analyzing the cause of a problem
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	Be sure to set the value back to 0 after the test.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 7 0: All OFF 1: CIST2 ON/OFF 2: C1 ON/OFF 3: NORG ON/OFF 4: DCSEL ON/OFF 5: DCLIM ON/OFF 6: IPSEL1 ON/OFF 7: IPSEL2 ON/OFF
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Related Service Mode</b>	TESTMODE > FAX > MODEM > RELAY-1



TESTMODE (Service mode for test print, operation check, etc.) &gt; FAX (FAX test mode) &gt; MODEM

FREQ	Frequency test
<b>Detail</b>	To test whether the specified frequency is oscillated. By closing or opening the DC circuit in accordance with the setting value, the specified frequency is oscillated by the tone transmission function of the modem. Check this with the speaker.
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	Be sure to set the value back to 0 after the test.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 7 0: OFF 1: 462 Hz 2: 1100 Hz 3: 1300 Hz 4: 1500 Hz 5: 1650 Hz 6: 1850 Hz 7: 2100 Hz
<b>Default Value</b>	0
G3TX	G3 signal transmission test
<b>Detail</b>	To test whether the specified G3 signal is transmitted. By closing or opening the DC circuit in accordance with the setting value, the specific G3 signal pattern is transmitted at the specified transmission speed by the G3 signal transmission function of the modem. Check this with the speaker.
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	Be sure to set the value back to 0 after the test.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 9 0: OFF 1: 300 bps 2: 2400 bps 3: 4800 bps 4: 7200 bps 5: 9600 bps 6: TC7200 bps 7: TC9600 bps 8: 12000 bps 9: 14400 bps
<b>Default Value</b>	0

TESTMODE (Service mode for test print, operation check, etc.) &gt; FAX (FAX test mode) &gt; MODEM

DTMFTX	DTMF transmission test
<b>Detail</b>	To test whether the specified DTMF signal is transmitted. By closing or opening the DC circuit in accordance with the setting value, the specified DTMF signal is transmitted by the DTMF transmission function of the modem. Check this with the speaker.
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	Be sure to set the value back to 0 after the test.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 12 0: OFF 1: 1 2: 2 3: 3 4: 4 5: 5 6: 6 7: 7 8: 8 9: 9 10: 0 11: * 12: #
<b>Default Value</b>	0
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>	DTMF (Dual Tone Multi Frequency): Signal method combining two specific frequencies like a push-tone phone.

TESTMODE (Service mode for test print, operation check, etc.) &gt; FAX (FAX test mode) &gt; MODEM

V34G3TX	V.34 G3 signal transmission test
<b>Detail</b>	To test whether the specified V.34 G3 signal is transmitted. By closing or opening the DC circuit in accordance with the setting value, the specific G3 signal pattern is transmitted at the specified transmission speed and modulation speed by the G3 signal transmission function (V.34) of the modem. Check this with the speaker. A setting value other than 0 is indicated as a 3-digit integer (1st digit: modulation speed, last 2 digits: transmission speed). A value other than the specified numerical value is invalid.
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	Be sure to set the value back to 0 after the test.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 614 0: OFF • First digit (Modulation speed/ baud rate) 1: 2400 baud 2: 2743 baud 3: 2800 baud 4: 3000 baud 5: 3200 baud 6: 3429 baud • Last 2 digits (Transmission speed) 01: 2400 bps 02: 4800 bps 03: 7200 bps 04: 9600 bps 05: 12000 bps 06: 14400 bps 07: 16800 bps 08: 19200 bps 09: 21600 bps 10: 24000 bps 11: 26400 bps 12: 28800 bps 13: 31200 bps 14: 33600 bps
<b>Default Value</b>	0

## ■ FACULTY

TESTMODE (Service mode for test print, operation check, etc.) &gt; FAX (FAX test mode) &gt; FACULTY

G34800TX	G3 4800 bps signal transmission test
<b>Detail</b>	To test whether the G3 signal is transmitted at 4800 bps. By closing or opening the DC circuit, the specific G3 signal pattern is transmitted at 4800 bps by the G3 signal transmission function. Check this with the speaker.
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>	Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>	Be sure to set the value back to 0 after the test.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>	0 to 1 0: OFF 1: ON
<b>Default Value</b>	0

TESTMODE (Service mode for test print, operation check, etc.) > FAX (FAX test mode) > FACULTY

<b>DETECT1</b>		<b>Ring detection</b>
<b>Detail</b>		To check the ON/OFF state of CI, FC, and hook from the line. The detection results are displayed on the console (UART).
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>		Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>		Be sure to set the value back to 0 after the test.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>		0 to 1 0: OFF 1: ON
<b>Default Value</b>		0
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>		CI (Calling Identification): Ring signal UART (Universal Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter): Console
<b>DETECT2</b>		<b>Calling tone detection test 1</b>
<b>Detail</b>		To check calling tone signal and FED. Set the CML relay to ON and detect the calling tone. The detection results are displayed on the console (UART).
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>		Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>		Be sure to set the value back to 0 after the test.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>		0 to 1 0: OFF 1: ON
<b>Default Value</b>		0
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>		CML (Connect Modem to Line) relay: Relay installed at the NCU (Network Control Unit) Board to switch between the telephone and fax.
<b>DETECT3</b>		<b>Calling tone detection test 2</b>
<b>Detail</b>		To check calling tone signal and FED. Set the CML relay to OFF and detect the calling tone. The detection results are displayed on the console (UART).
<b>Adj/Set/Operate Method</b>		Enter the setting value, and then press Apply key.
<b>Caution</b>		Be sure to set the value back to 0 after the test.
<b>Display/Adj/Set Range</b>		0 to 1 0: OFF 1: ON
<b>Default Value</b>		0
<b>Supplement/Memo</b>		CML (Connect Modem to Line) relay: Relay installed at the NCU (Network Control Unit) Board to switch between the telephone and fax.



# Installation







How to Utilize This Installation Procedure.....	340
MiCARD Attachment Kit-B1.....	341
Copy Card Reader-F1.....	353
Copy Control Interface Kit-C1.....	368







# How to Utilize This Installation Procedure

## Symbols

The frequently-performed operations are described with symbols in this procedure.

Screw

		 1x	 1x	 1x	 1x
Packaged Item	Unused Parts	Install	Remove	Tighten	Loosen

Harness (Common for Guides and Clamps)		Connector		Power Cord	
 1x	 1x	 1x	 1x		
Install	Remove	Connect	Disconnect	Connect	Disconnect

Power

						
ON	OFF	Check the sound	Check visually	Check	Push	Cleaning

## MiCARD Attachment Kit-B1

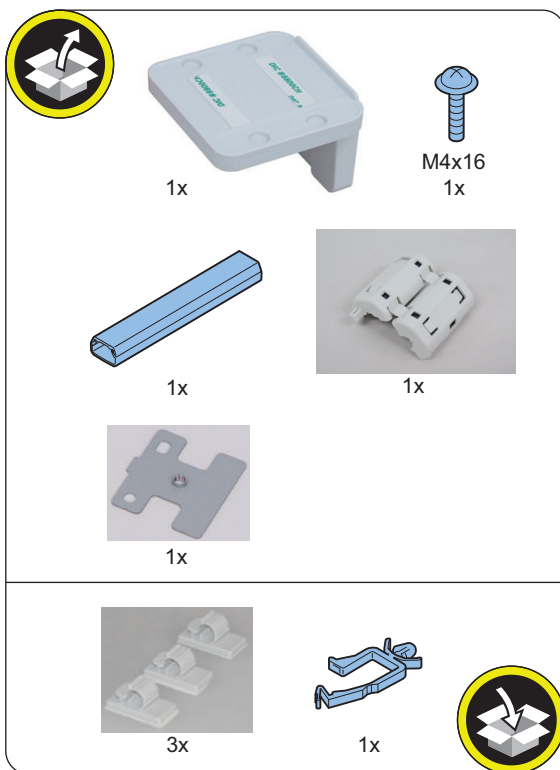
### Points to Note at Installation

Prepare a Card Reader (sales company's option) in advance. Regardless of the shape of the Card Reader, the installation method is the same. Use the shorter cable of the Card Reader.

The following options cannot be used in combination with this equipment.

- Copy Card Reader
- Copy Control Interface Kit

### Checking the Contents

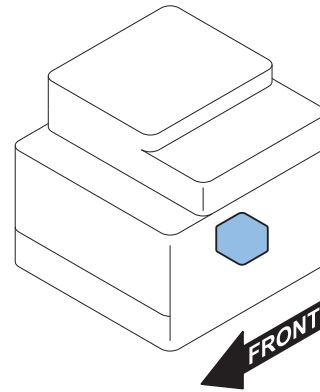


### Check Item When Turning OFF the Main Power

Check that the main power of the host machine is OFF.

1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
2. Check that the display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off, and then disconnect the power plug.

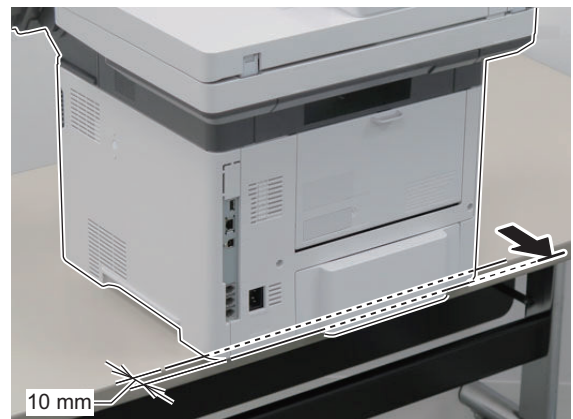
### Installation Outline Drawing



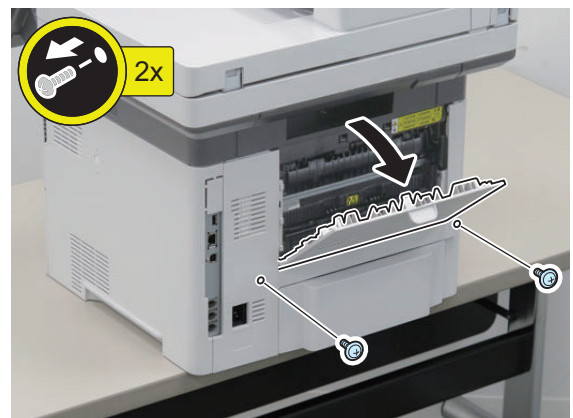
### Installation Procedure

#### ■ Installing the CR Plate

1.

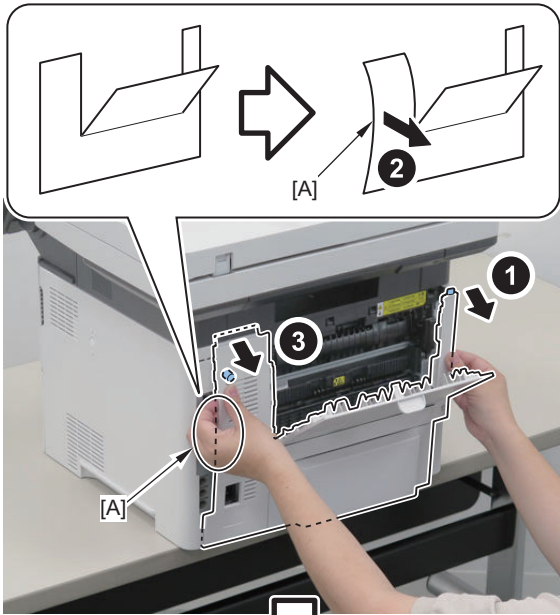


2.

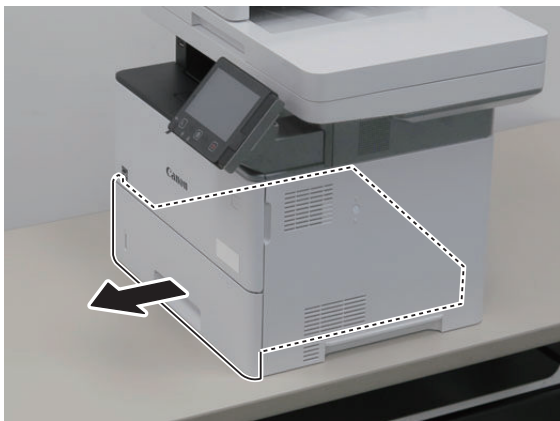


3.

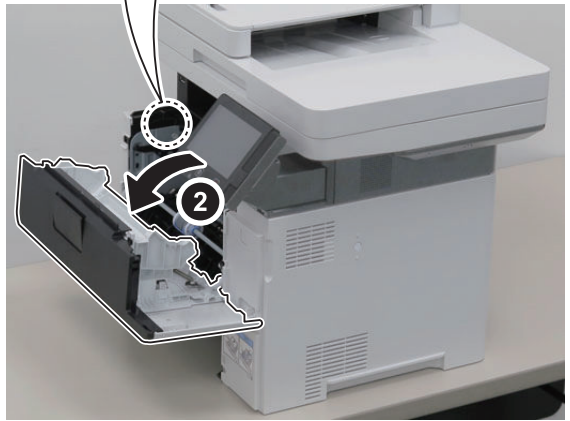
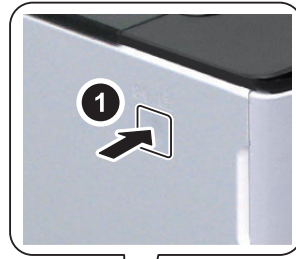
**NOTE:**  
Remove the Rear Door Unit by bending the [A] part.



4.



5.



6.

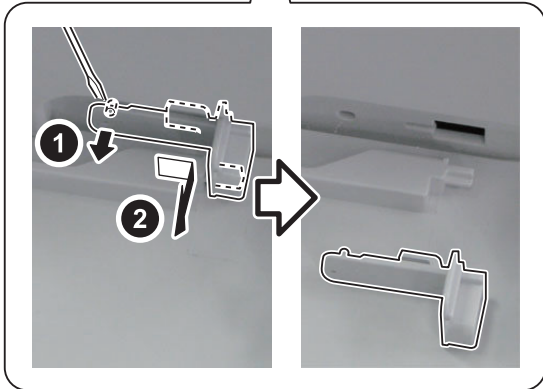
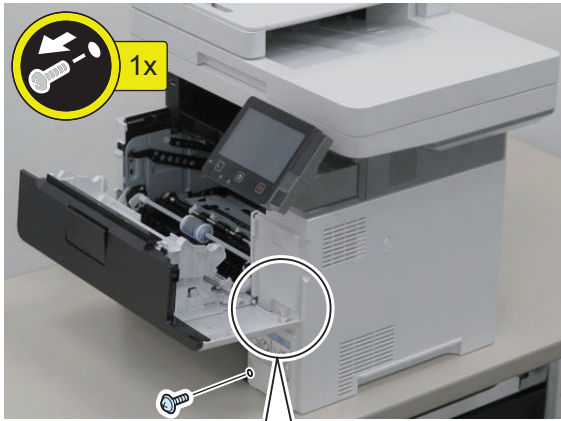
**CAUTION:**

- Be sure to remove the cartridge in advance because the Photosensitive Drum needs to be protected from light when the Cartridge Cover is opened.
- When handling the cartridge, be sure to follow the CAUTION shown below.
  1. When removing the cartridge, be sure to block light to the Photosensitive Drum. Cover the Photosensitive Drum with 5 or more sheets of paper to block light.
  2. Do not place the cartridge in a location where it is exposed to direct rays of the sun (e.g. near the window).





□  
7.



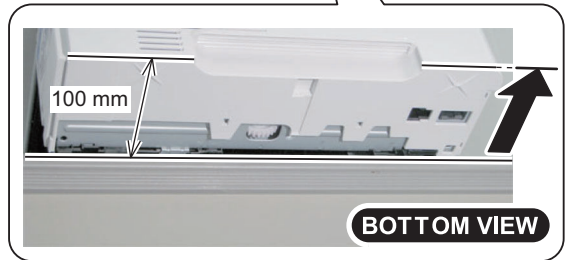
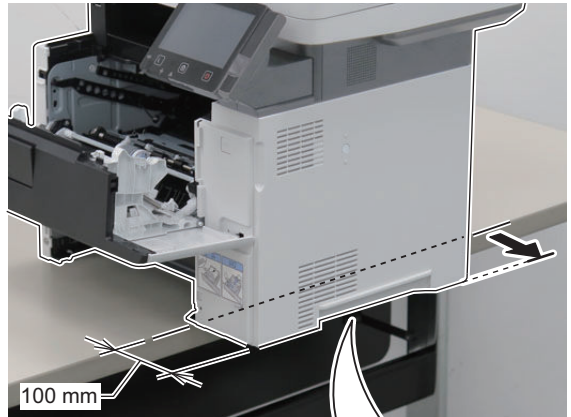
**NOTE:**  
The removed parts will be used in step 13.

**NOTE:**

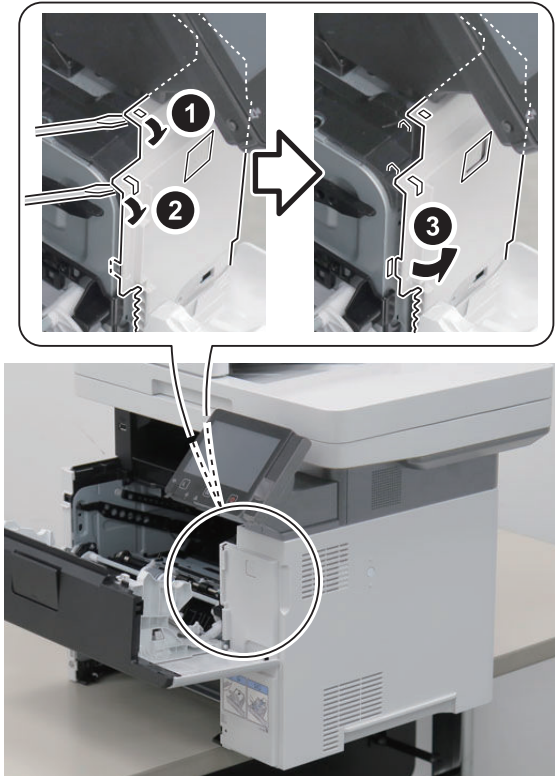
- To remove the Right Cover Unit without turning the host machine on its side: Proceed to step 8.
- To remove the Right Cover Unit with the host machine turned on its side: Proceed to step 9.

8. <To remove the Right Cover Unit without turning the host machine on its side>

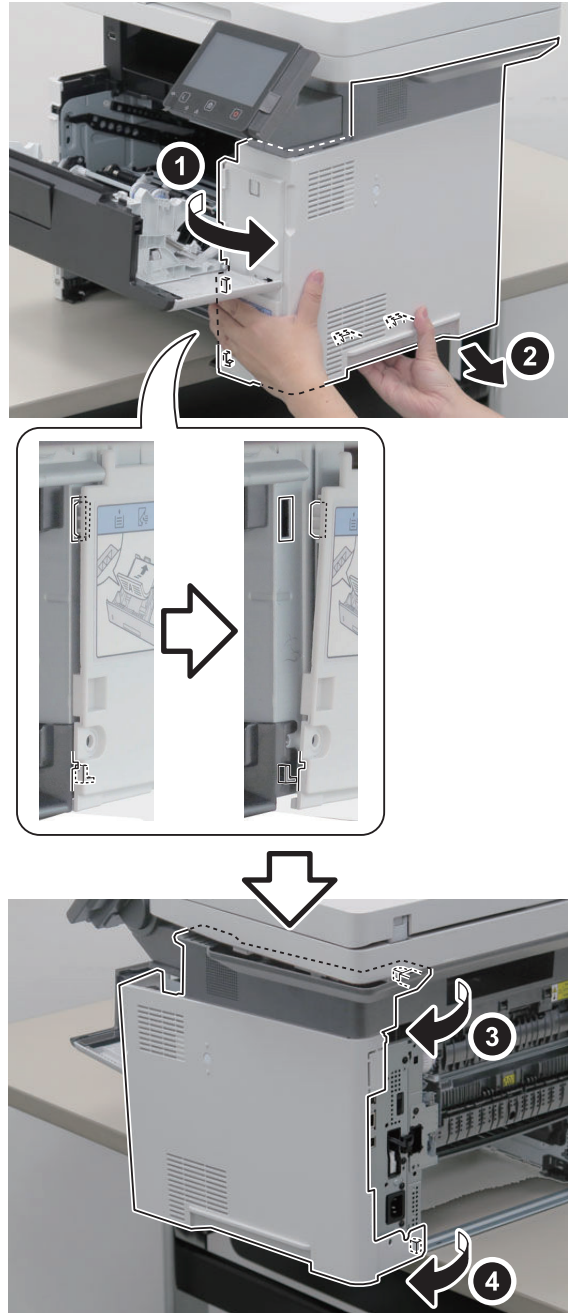
□  
8-1.



□  
8-2.



□  
8-3.



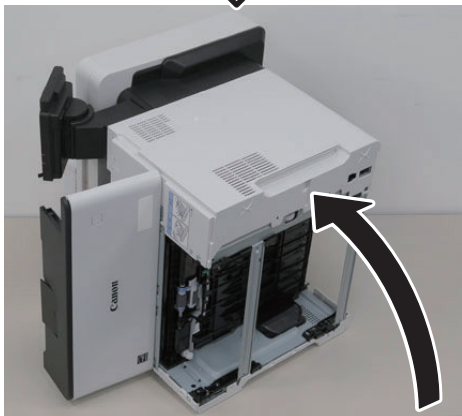
□  
8-4. Proceed to step 10.

**9.** <To remove the Right Cover Unit with the host machine turned on its side>

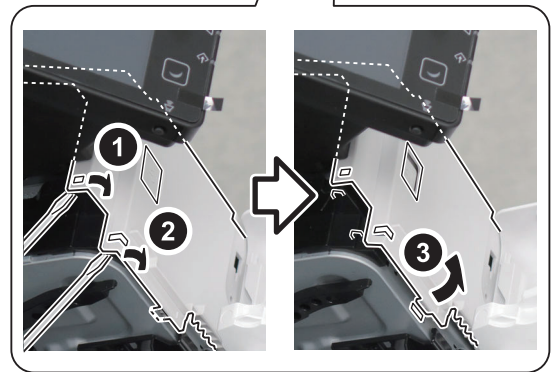
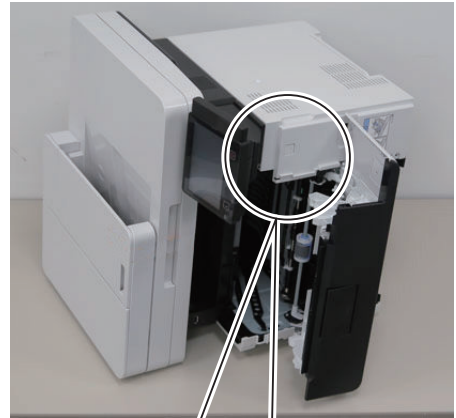
□  
9-1.

**CAUTION:**

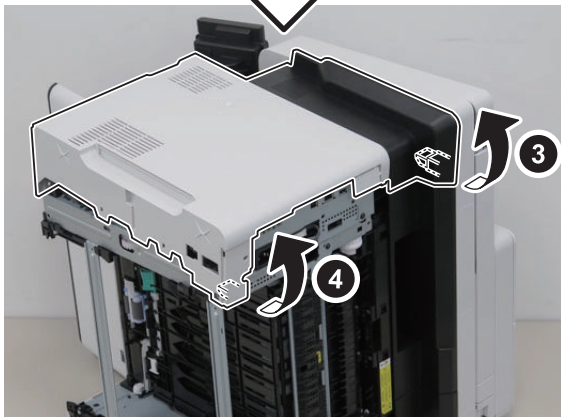
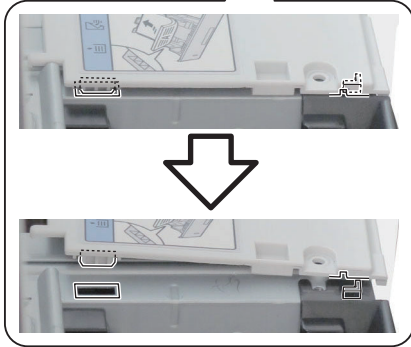
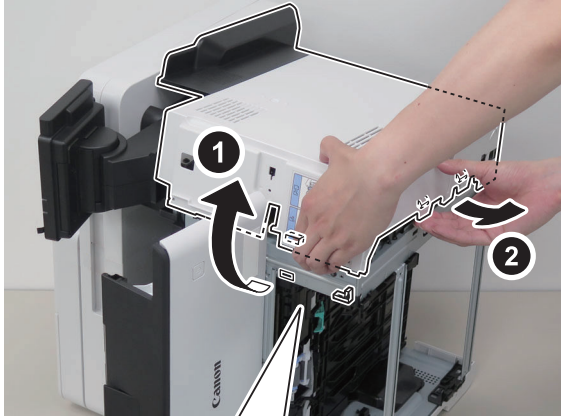
When turning the host machine on its side, be careful not to let the ADF open.



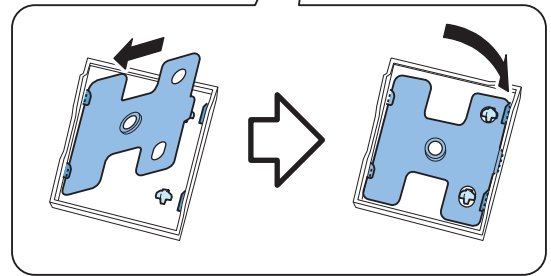
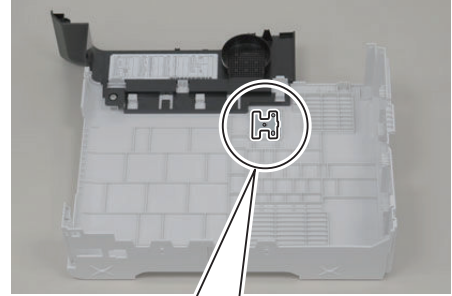
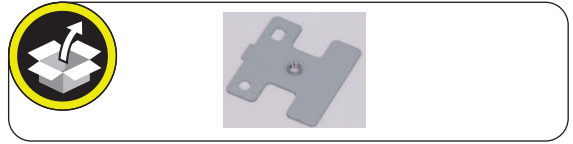
□  
9-2.



□  
9-3.



□  
**10.**

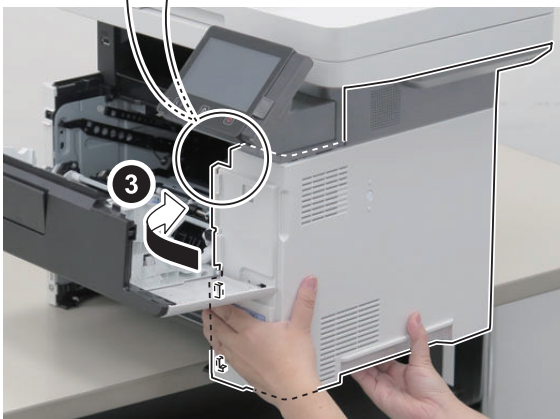
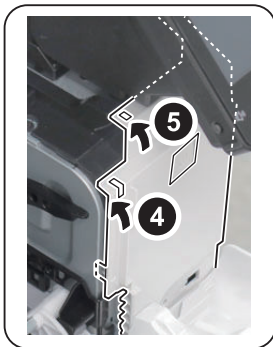
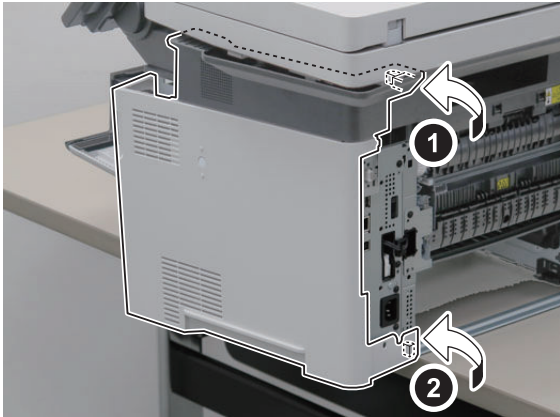


**NOTE:**

- To install the Right Cover Unit without turning the host machine on its side: Proceed to step 11.
- To install the Right Cover Unit with the host machine turned on its side: Proceed to step 12.

**11.** <To install the Right Cover Unit without turning the host machine on its side>

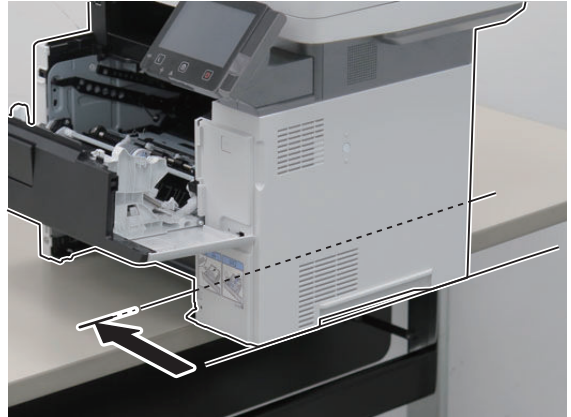
□  
11-1.



□  
11-2.

**CAUTION:**

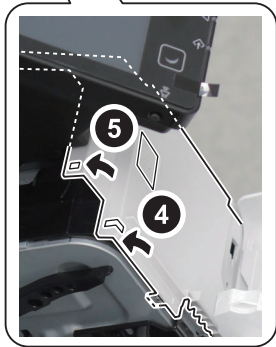
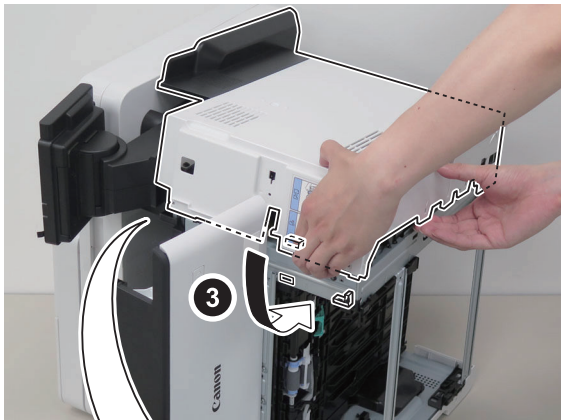
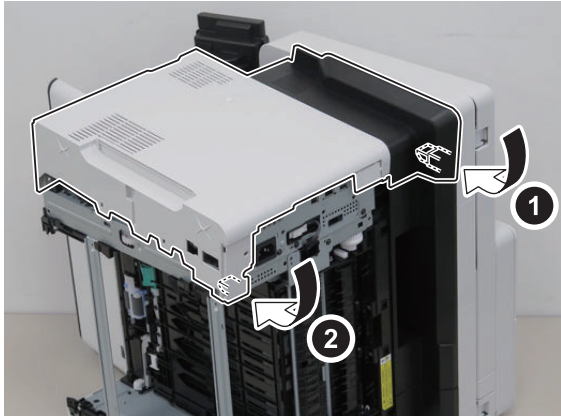
Shift the host machine back to the center of the working table to prevent it from falling down.



□  
11-3. Proceed to step 13.

# 12. <To install the Right Cover Unit with the host machine turned on its side>

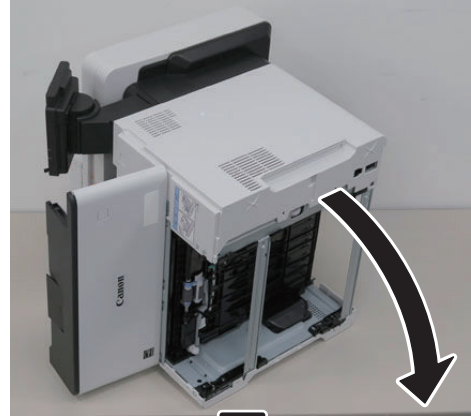
□  
12-1.



□  
12-2.

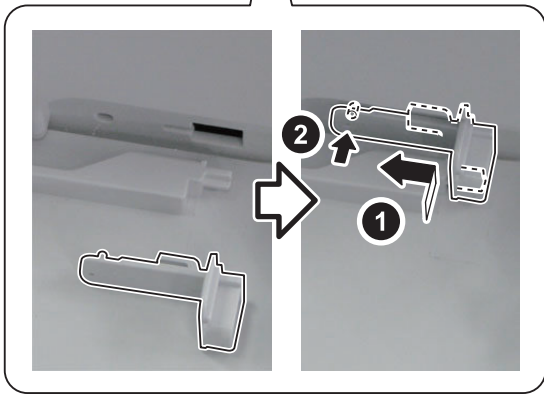
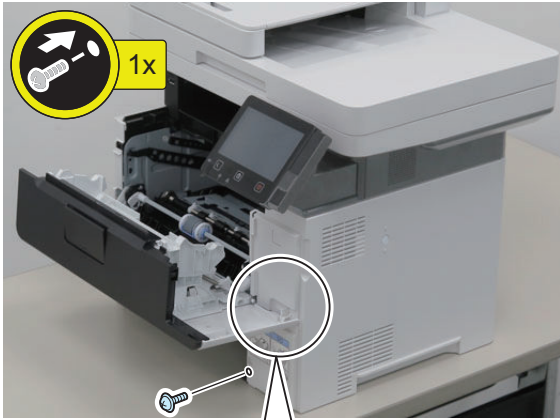
**CAUTION:**

When standing the host machine, be careful not to let the ADF open.

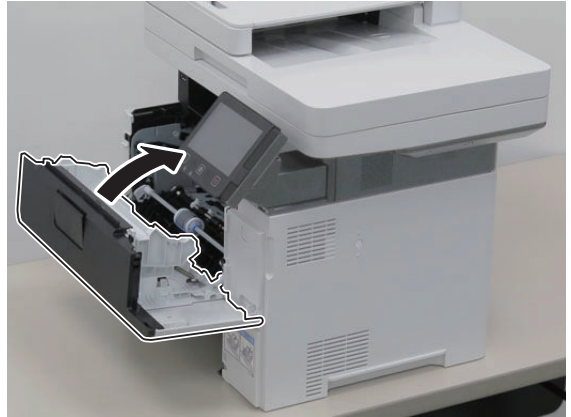


□  
13.

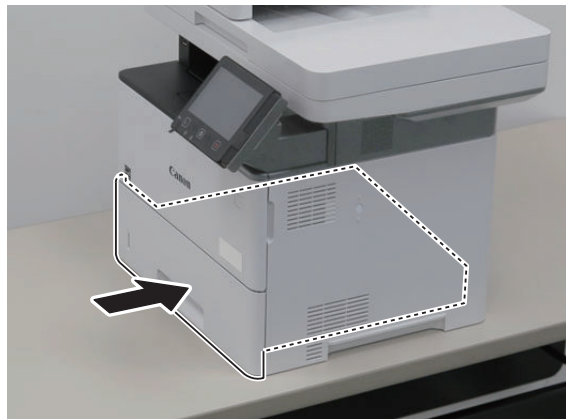
**NOTE:**  
Use the parts removed in step 7.



□  
15.



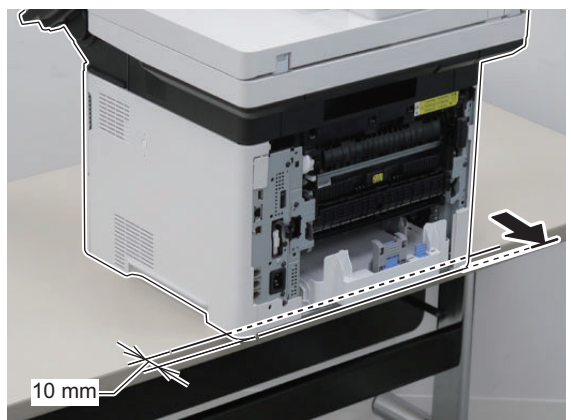
□  
16.



□  
14.

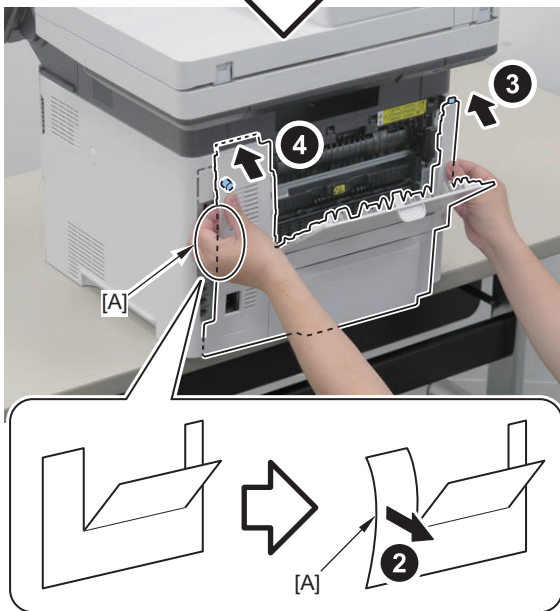


□  
17.

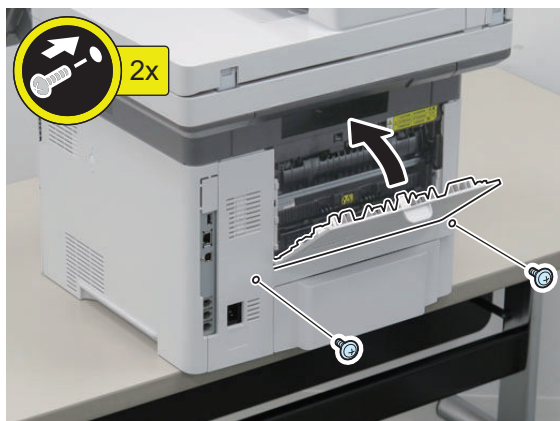


18.

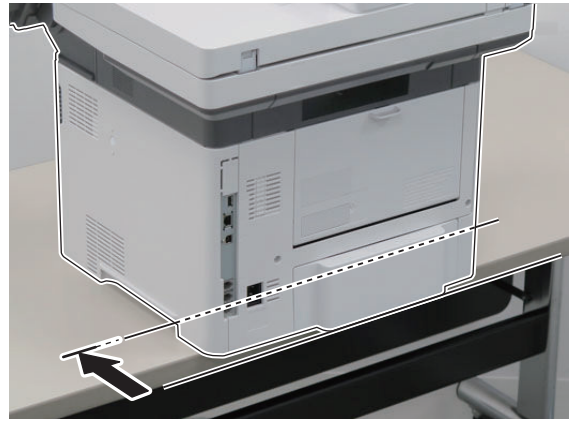
**NOTE:**  
Install the Rear Door Unit by bending the [A] part.



19.

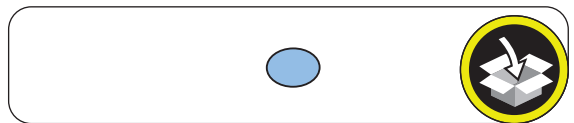
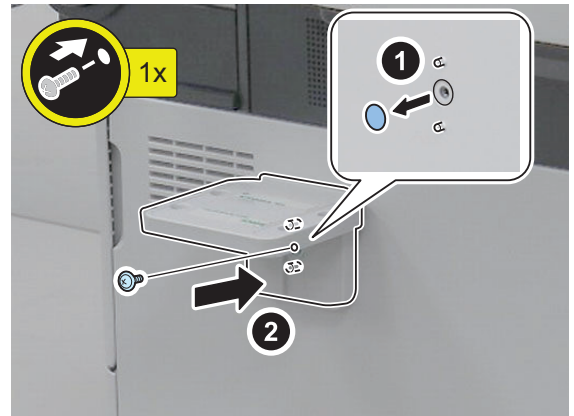


20.



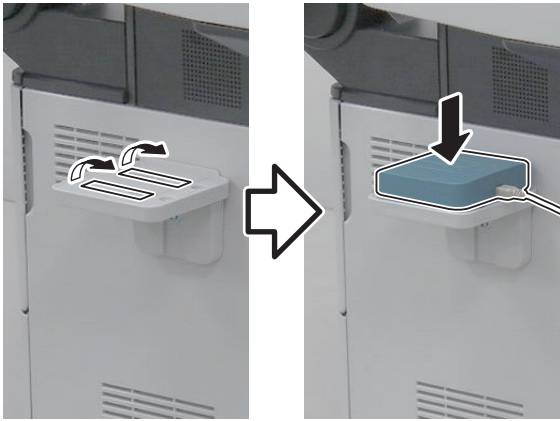
■ Installing the Card Reader

1.





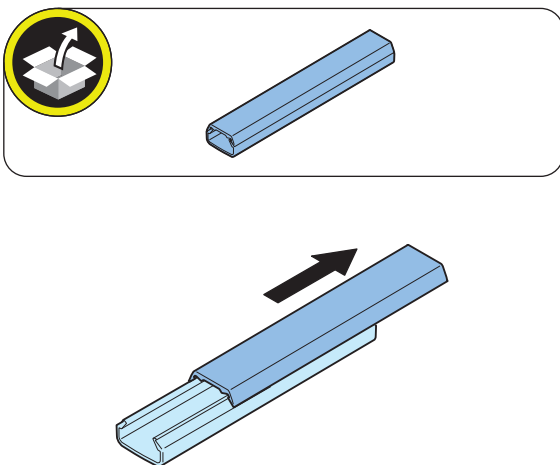
□  
2.



□  
3.



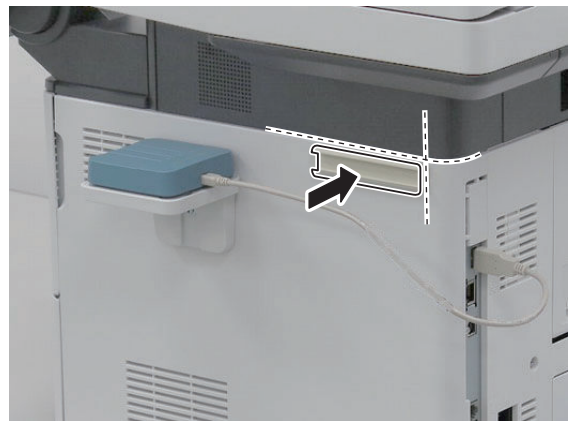
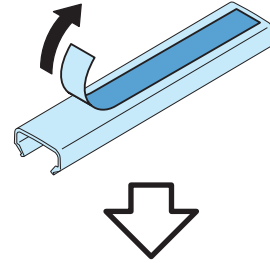
□  
4.



□  
5.

**NOTE:**

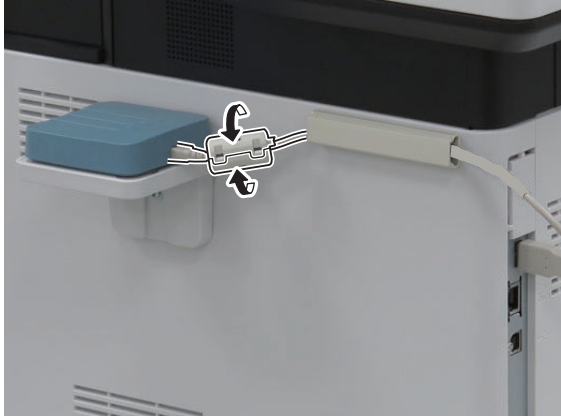
Be sure to affix it so that it does not cover any part of the curved portion of the Right Cover Unit.



□  
6.



**7.**



**8.** Connect the power plug to the outlet.

**9.** Turn ON the main power switch.

## Copy Card Reader-F1

### Points to Note at Installation

The Copy Card Reader Attachment is required for the installation of the equipment.  
The following options cannot be used in combination with this equipment.

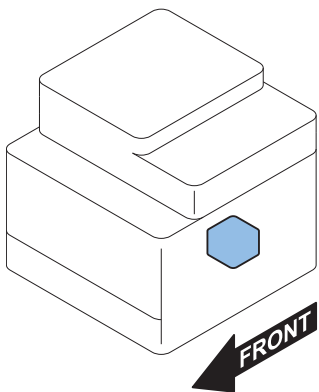
- MiCARD Attachment Kit + IC-Card Reader that is a sales company's option
- Copy Control Interface Kit

### Check Item When Turning OFF the Main Power

Check that the main power of the host machine is OFF.

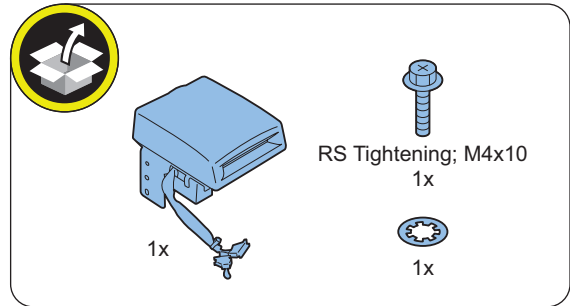
1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
2. Check that the display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off, and then disconnect the power plug.

### Installation Outline Drawing

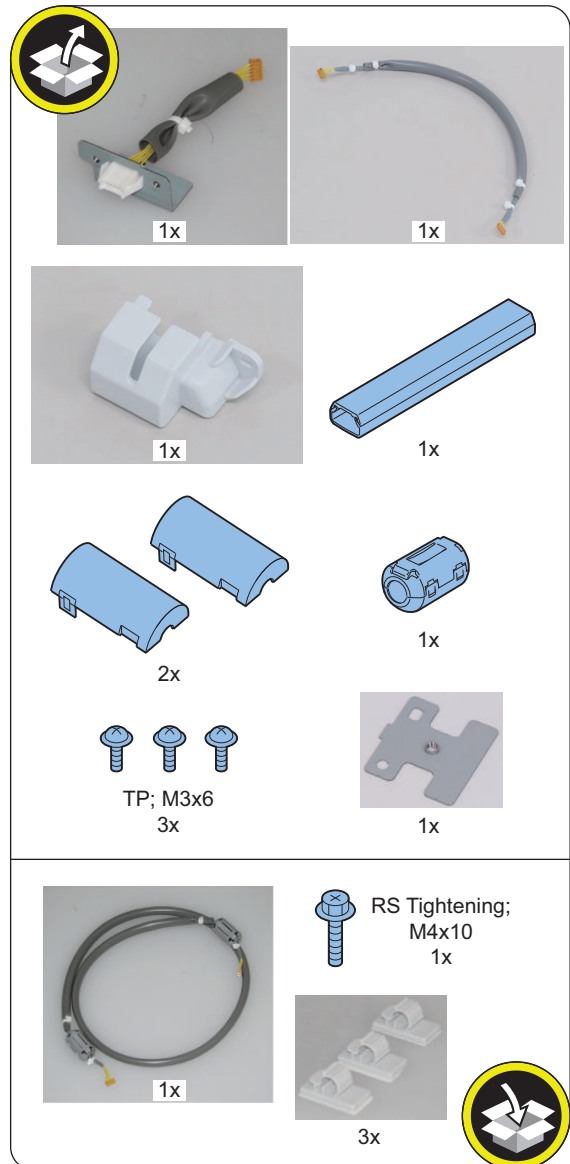


### Checking the Contents

#### <Copy Card Reader-F1>

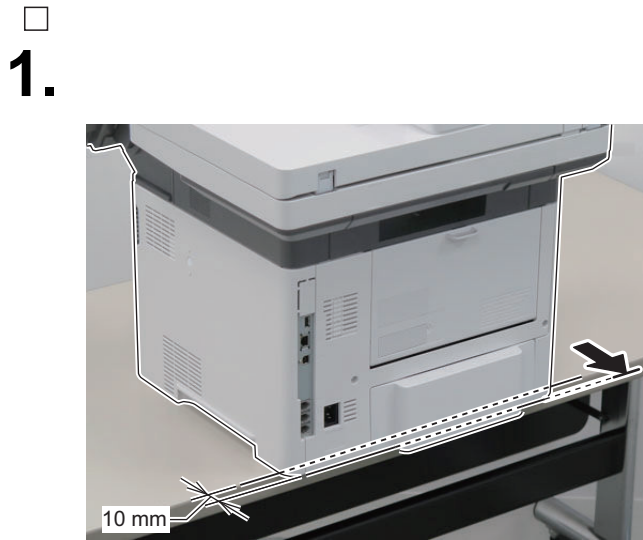


#### <Copy Card Reader Attachment-J1>



## Installation Procedure

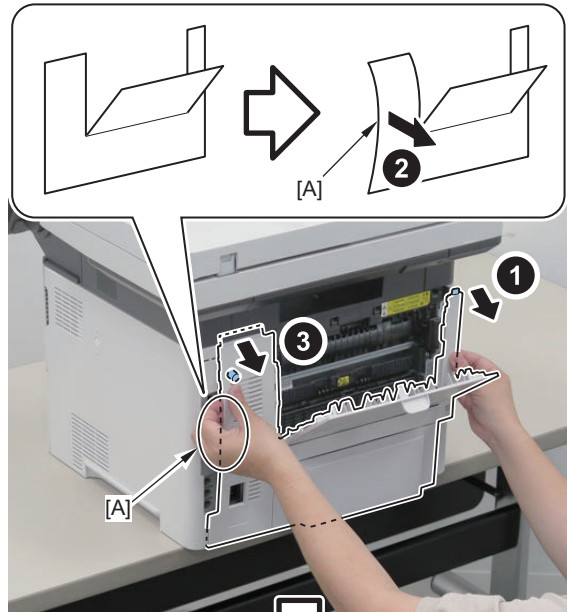
### ■ Installing the Connector Unit/CR Plate



□

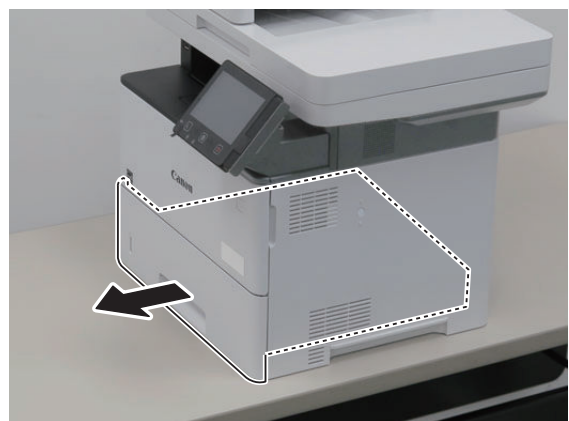
**3.**

**NOTE:**  
Remove the Rear Door Unit by bending the [A] part.

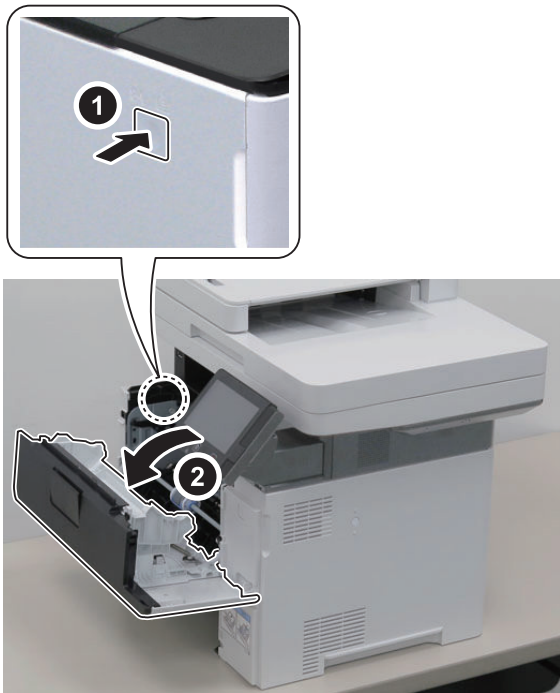


□

**4.**



□  
5.



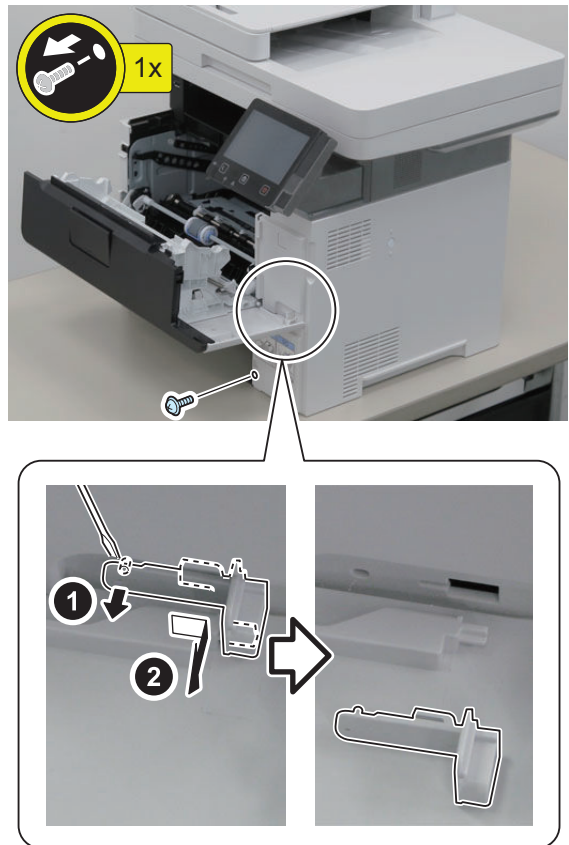
□  
6.

**CAUTION:**

- Be sure to remove the cartridge in advance because the Photosensitive Drum needs to be protected from light when the Cartridge Cover is opened.
- When handling the cartridge, be sure to follow the CAUTION shown below.
  1. When removing the cartridge, be sure to block light to the Photosensitive Drum. Cover the removed Photosensitive Drum with 5 or more sheets of paper to block light.
  2. Do not place the cartridge in a location where it is exposed to direct rays of the sun (e.g. near the window).



□  
7.



**NOTE:**

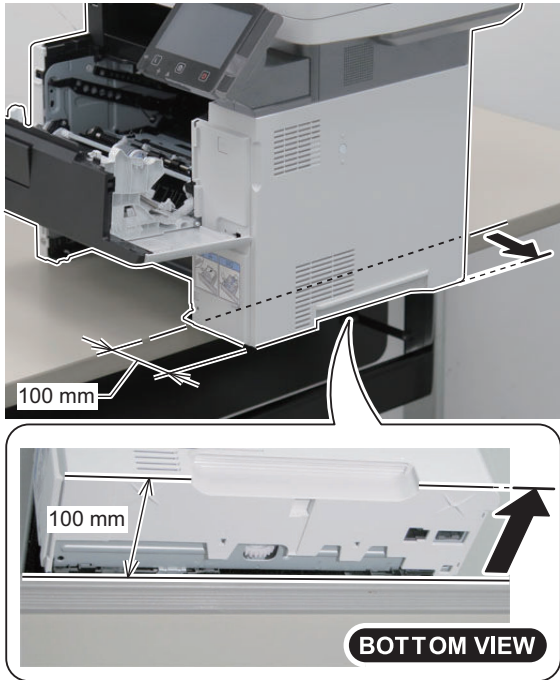
The removed parts will be used in step 15.

**NOTE:**

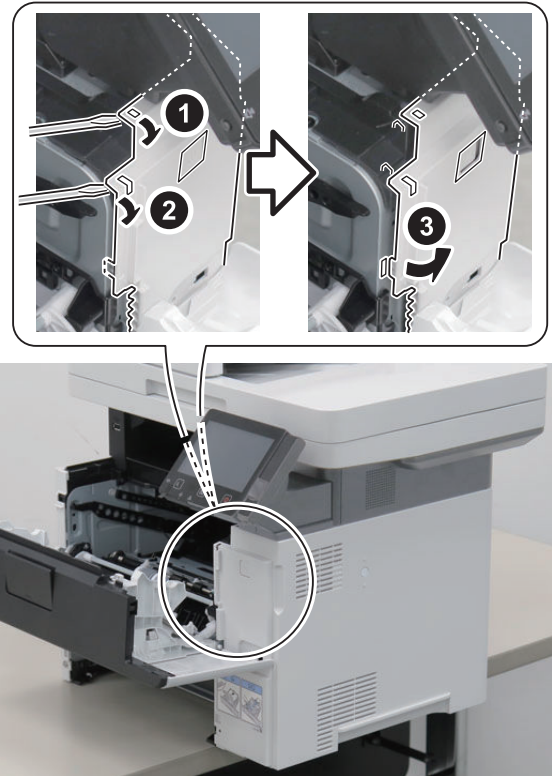
- To remove the Right Cover Unit without turning the host machine on its side: Proceed to step 8.
- To remove the Right Cover Unit with the host machine turned on its side: Proceed to step 9.

**8.** <To remove the Right Cover Unit without turning the host machine on its side>

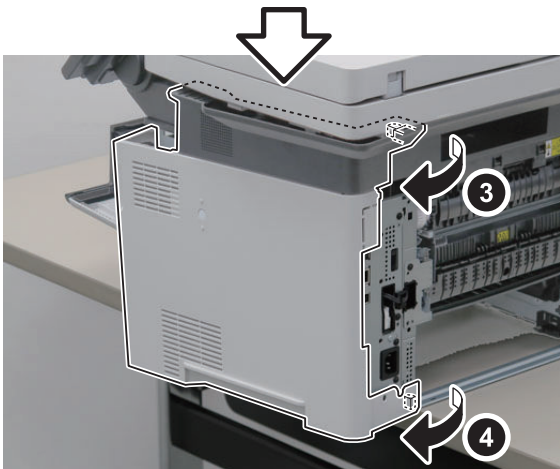
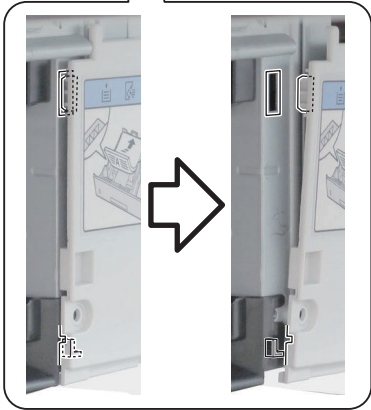
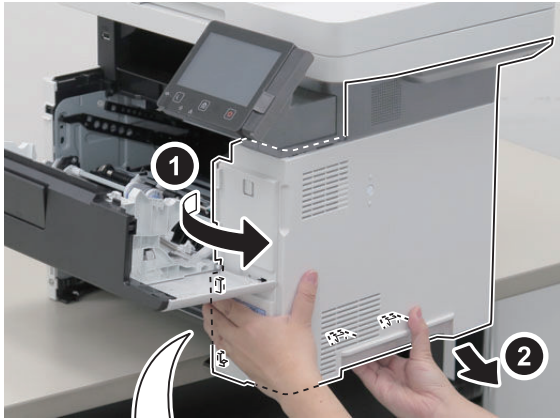
□  
8-1.



□  
8-2.



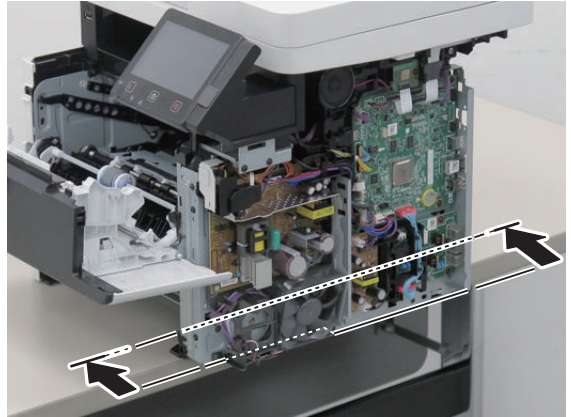
□  
8-3.



□  
8-4.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

Shift the host machine back to the center of the working table to prevent it from falling down.



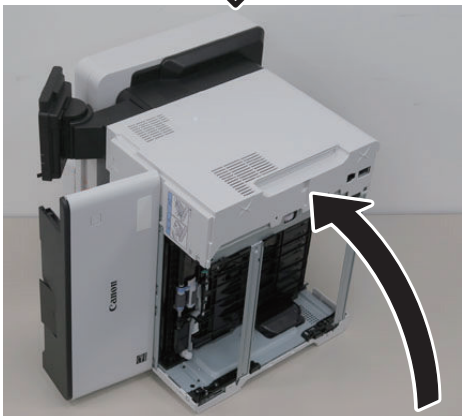
□  
8-5. Proceed to step 10.

**9.** <To remove the Right Cover Unit with the host machine turned on its side>

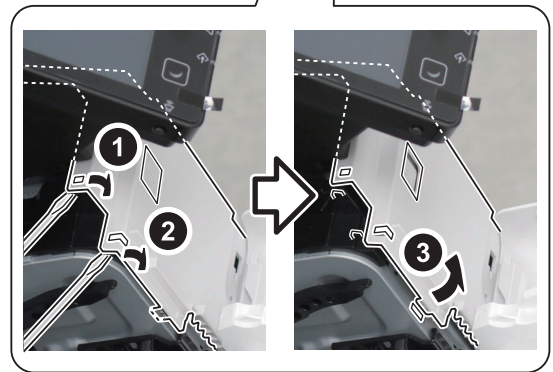
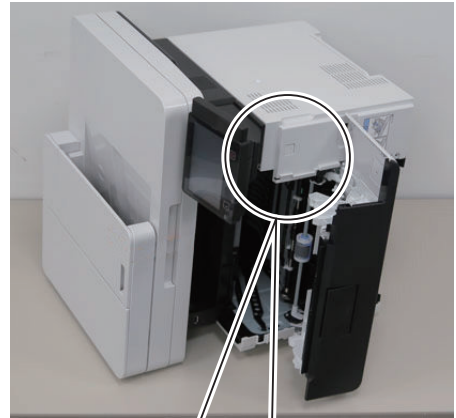
□  
9-1.

**CAUTION:**

When turning the host machine on its side, be careful not to let the ADF open.

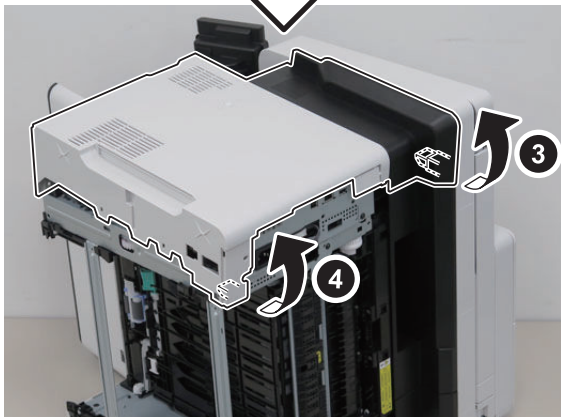
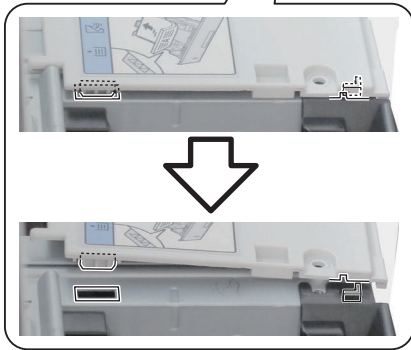
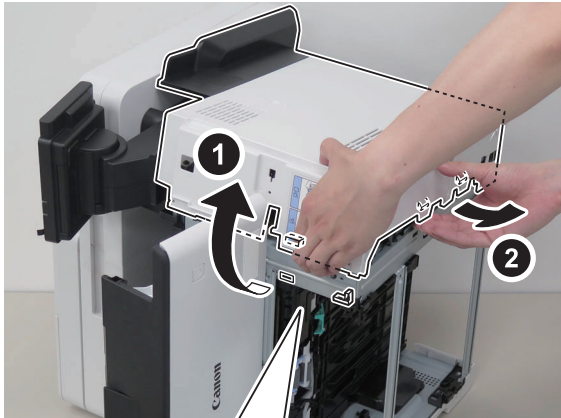


□  
9-2.



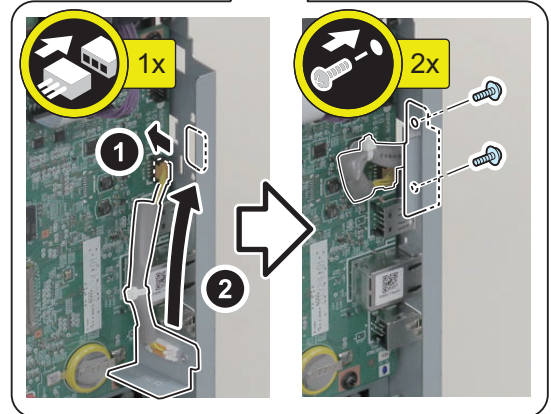
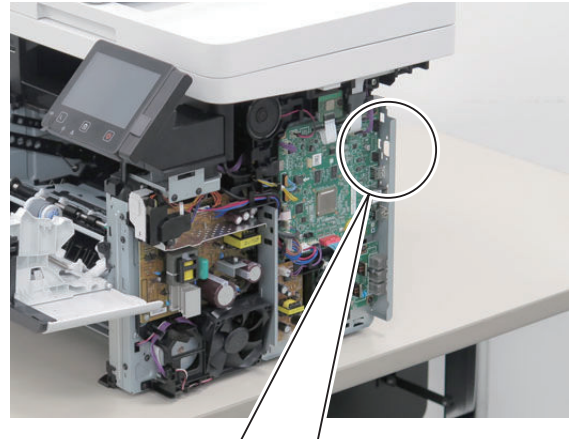
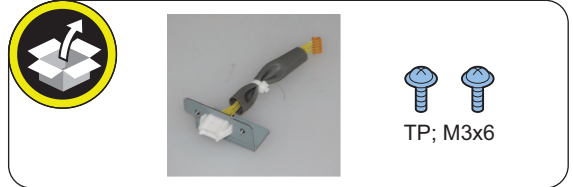


□  
9-3.

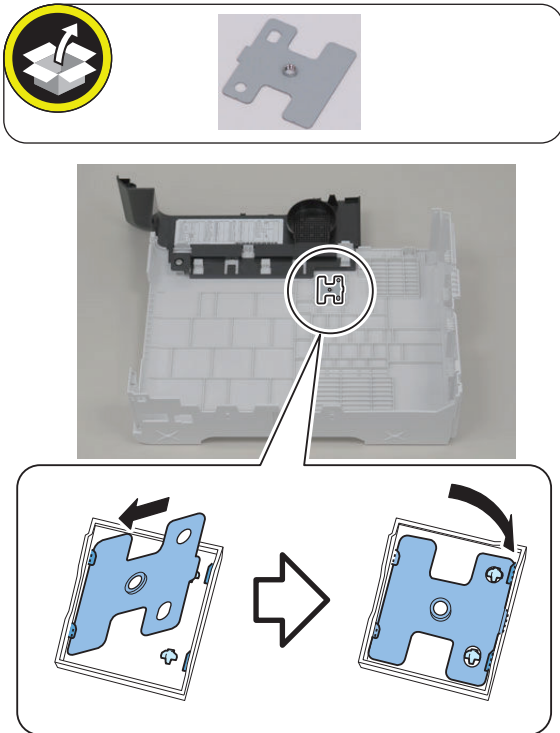


□  
**10.**

**NOTE:**  
Even if the host machine is turned on its side, the procedure is the same.

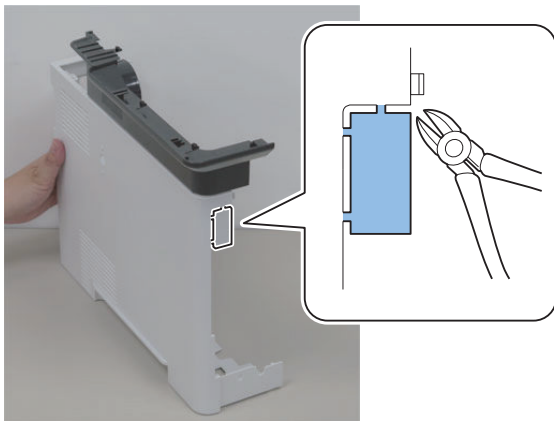


□  
11.



□  
12.

**CAUTION:**  
When cutting off the part, be sure not to make burrs.



**NOTE:**

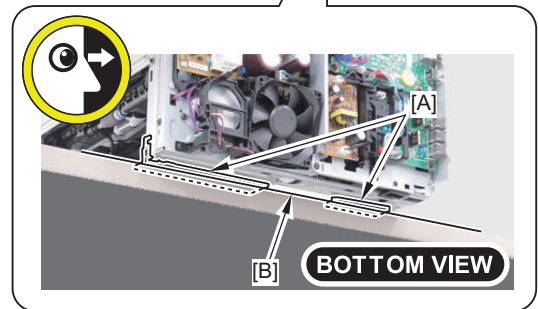
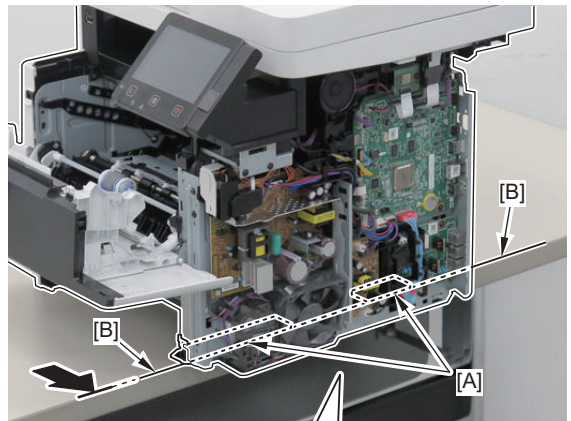
- To install the Right Cover Unit without turning the host machine on its side: Proceed to step 13.
- To install the Right Cover Unit with the host machine turned on its side: Proceed to step 14.

13. <To install the Right Cover Unit without turning the host machine on its side>

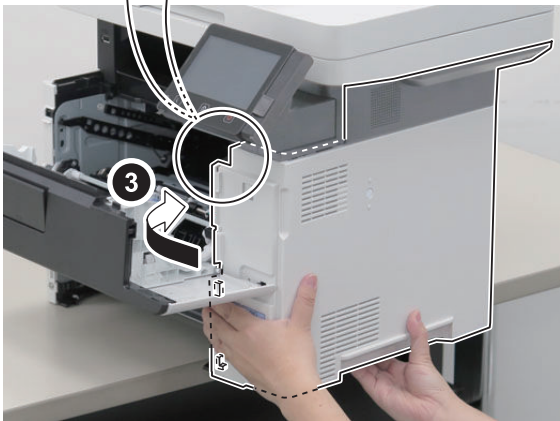
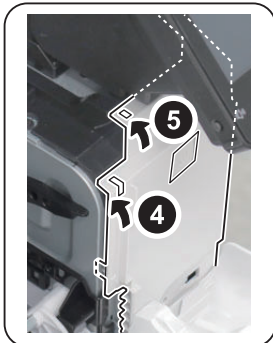
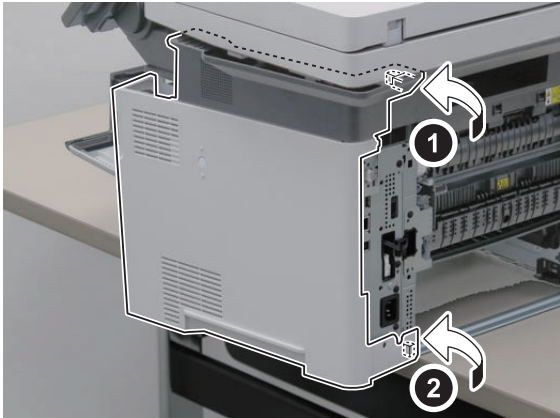
□  
13-1.

**NOTE:**

Shift the host machine so that its legs [A] are on the edge [B] of the working table.



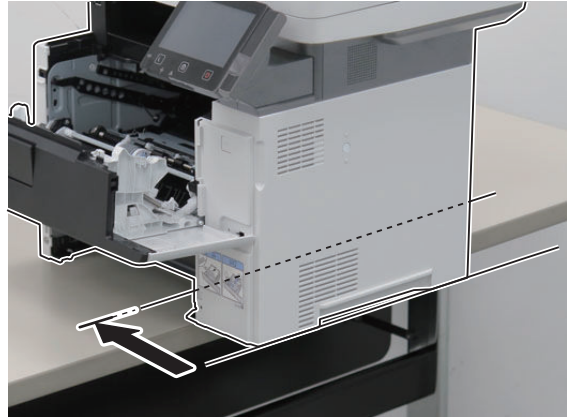
□  
13-2.



□  
13-3.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

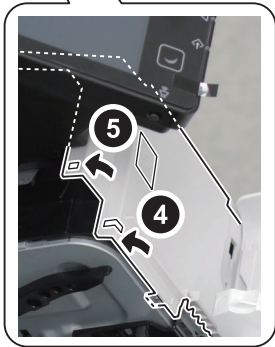
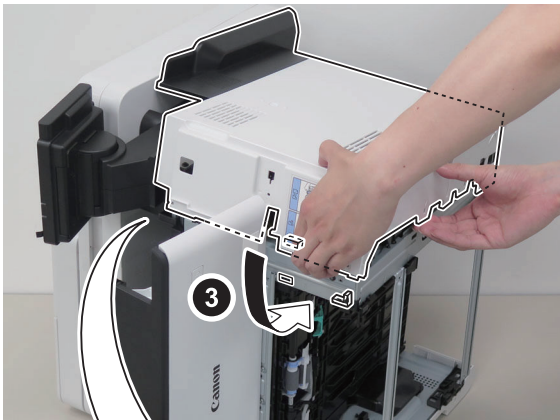
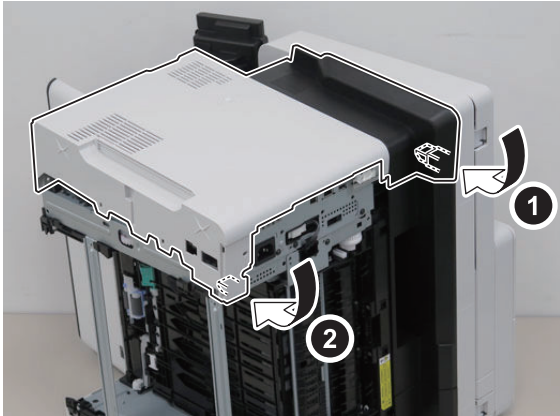
Shift the host machine back to the center of the working table to prevent it from falling down.



□  
13-4. Proceed to step 15.

**14.** <To install the Right Cover Unit with the host machine turned on its side>

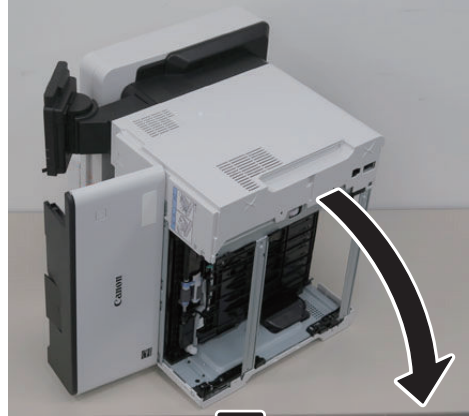
□  
14-1.



□  
14-2.

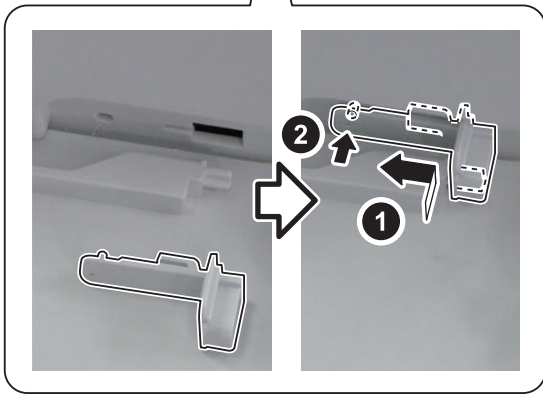
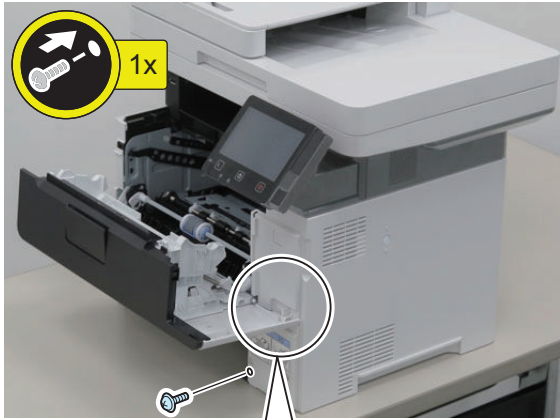
**CAUTION:**

When standing the host machine, be careful not to let the ADF open.



□  
15.

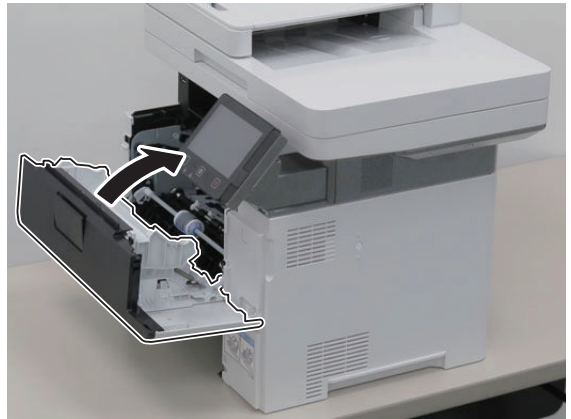
**NOTE:**  
Use the parts removed in step 7.



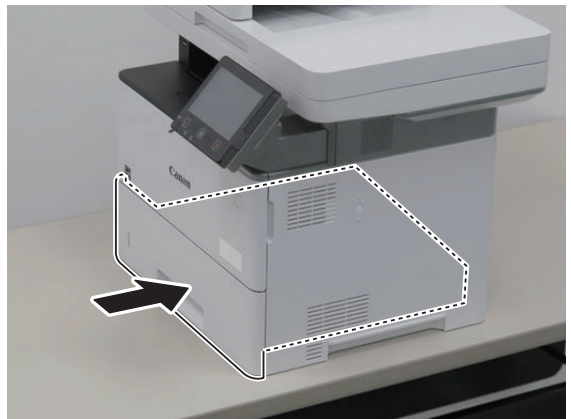
□  
16.



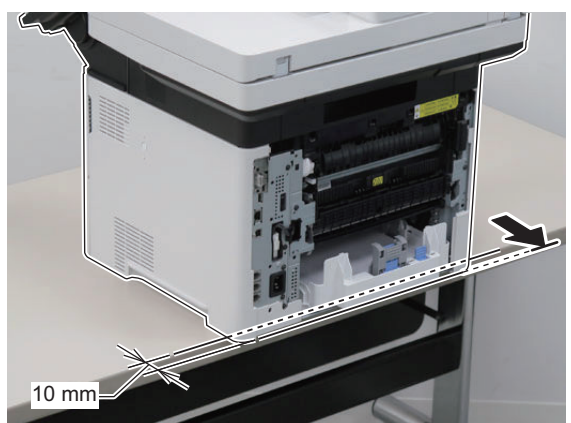
□  
17.



□  
18.

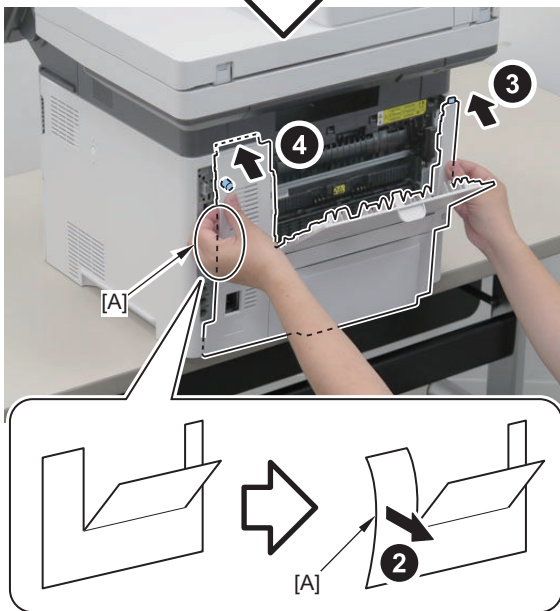


□  
19.



20.

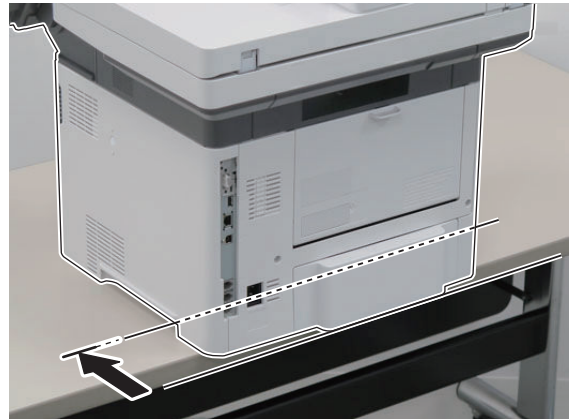
**NOTE:**  
Install the Rear Door Unit by bending the [A] part.



21.

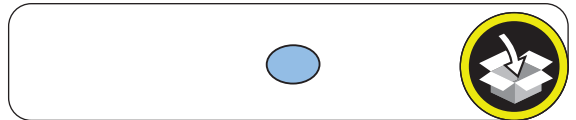
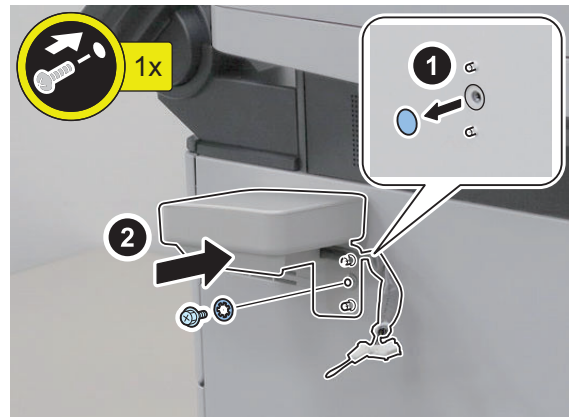
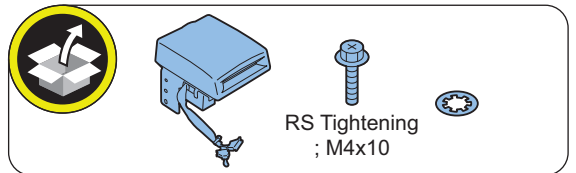


22.



■ Installing the Card Reader

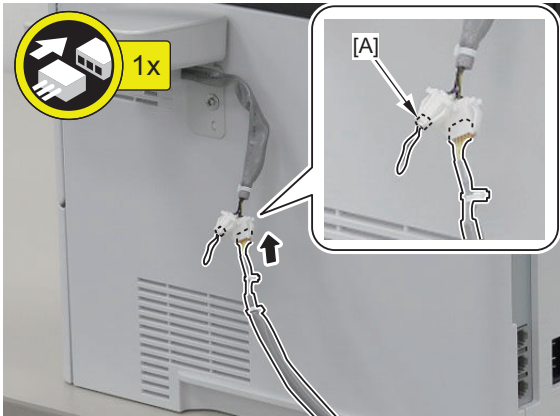
1.



□  
2.

**CAUTION:**

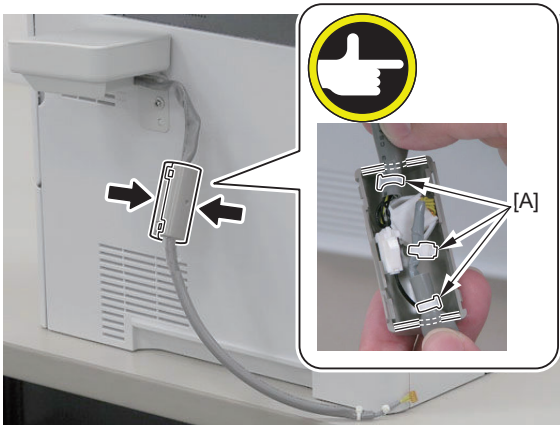
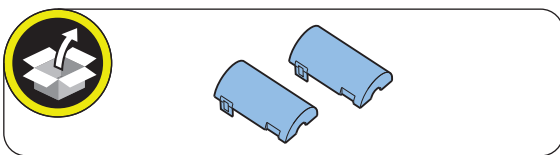
Do not disconnect the short connector [A].



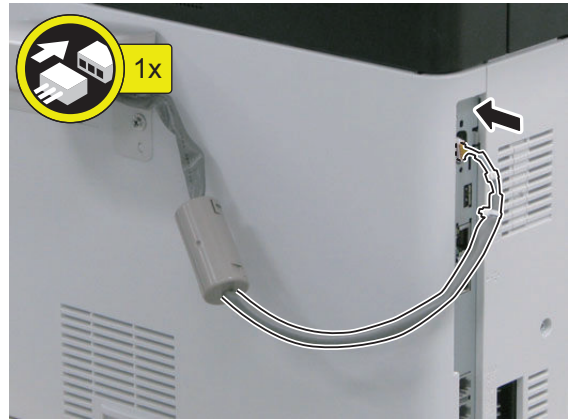
□  
3.

**CAUTION:**

- When installing the Connector Case, be sure to place the 3 Harness Bands [A] inside of the Connector Case.
- Do not let the cable trapped.



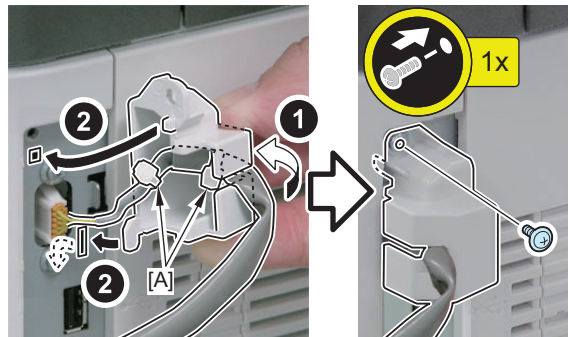
□  
4.



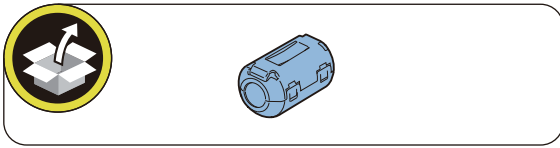
□  
5.

**NOTE:**

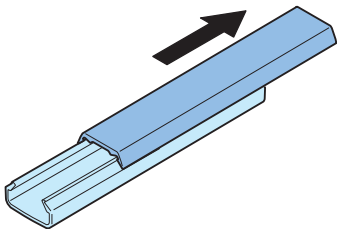
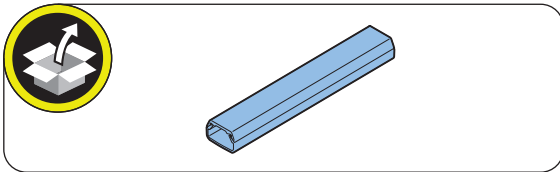
When installing the Connector Cover, be sure to place the 2 Harness Bands [A] inside of the Connector Cover.



□  
6.



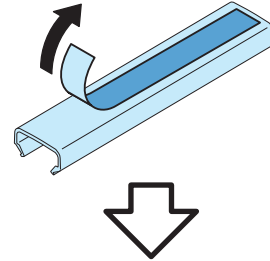
□  
7.



□  
8.

**NOTE:**

Be sure to affix it so that it does not cover any part of the curved portion of the Right Cover Unit.



□  
9.



□  
**10.** Connect the power plug to the outlet.

**11.** Turn ON the main power switch.



## Setting after Installation

Configure the card management information settings in service mode.



**1. Enter the lowest card number of the card to be used.**

Enter the smallest card number to be used by the user.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > CARD-NUM

**2. Sequential numbers beginning from the specified number are automatically registered.**

Starting from the card number set in CARD-NUM, 300 cards can be used.

- COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > CARD > Yes

**3. Select ON for the Department ID Management.**

[Menu] > [Management Settings] > [User Management] > [Department ID Management] > [ON]

**NOTE:**

System Manager Login

1. Enter the System Manager ID : 7654321. (Default value)
2. Enter the PIN : 7654321. (Default value)
3. Press Login.

**4. Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch to enable the settings.**

**5. Check that a message " Insert the card. " appears.**

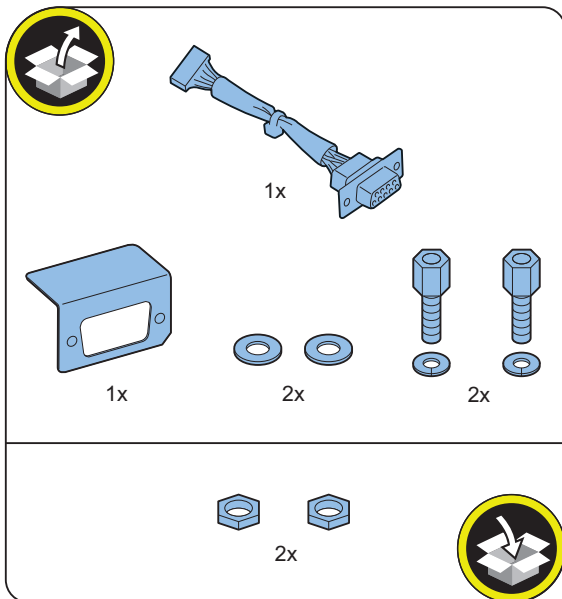
## Copy Control Interface Kit-C1

### Points to Note at Installation

The following options cannot be used in combination with this equipment.

- Copy Card Reader
- MiCARD Attachment Kit + IC-Card Reader that is a sales company's option

### Checking the Contents

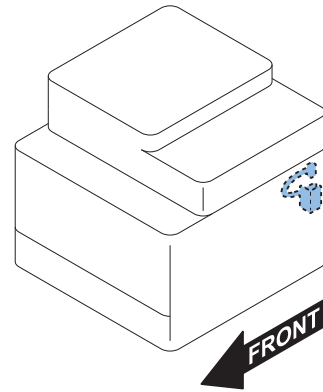


### Check Item When Turning OFF the Main Power

Check that the main power of the host machine is OFF.

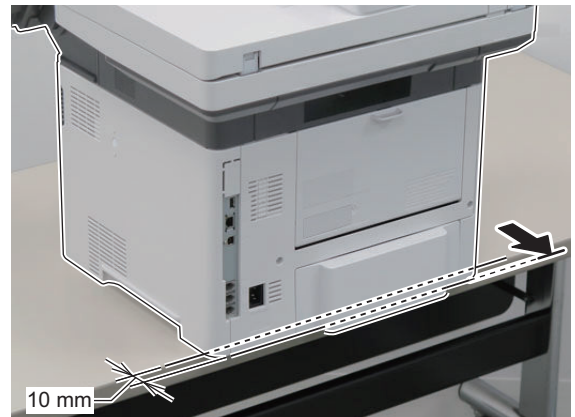
1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
2. Check that the display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off, and then disconnect the power plug.

### Installation Outline Drawing

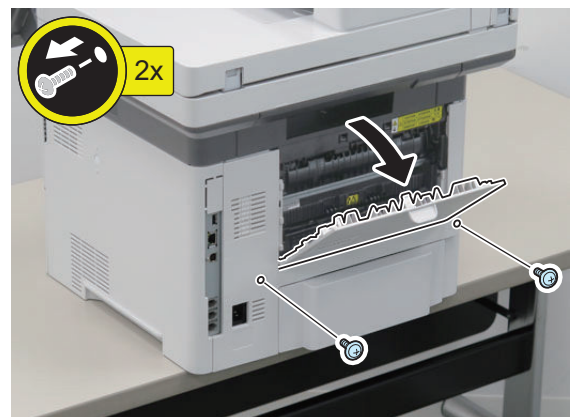


### Installation Procedure

1.

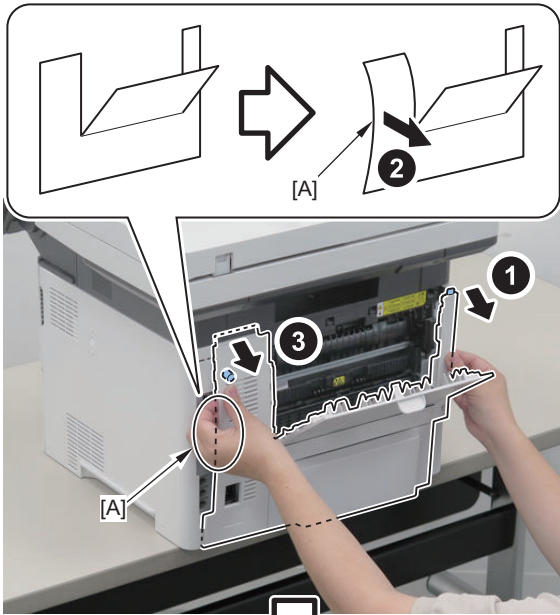


2.

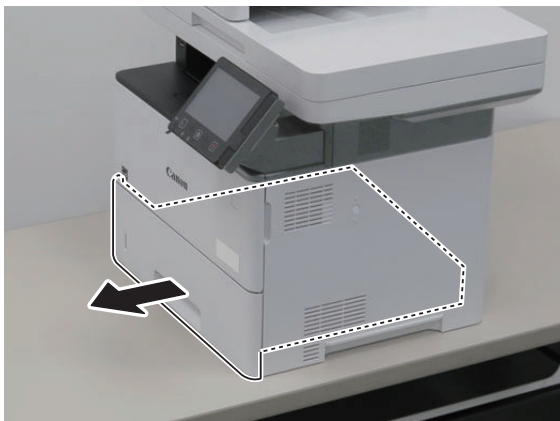


3.

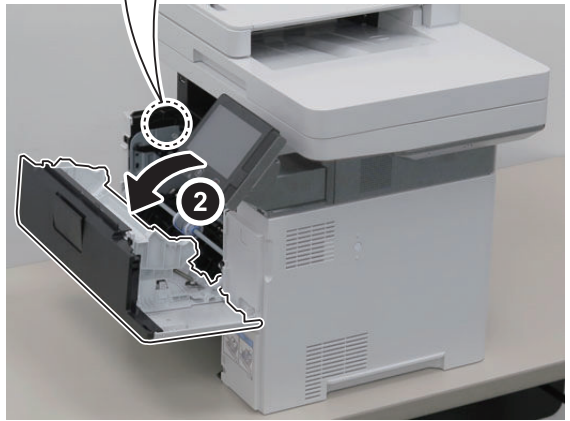
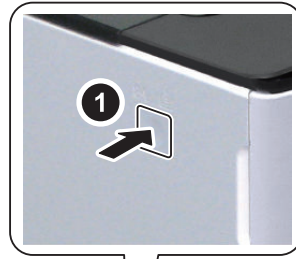
**NOTE:**  
Remove the Rear Door Unit by bending the [A] part.



4.



5.



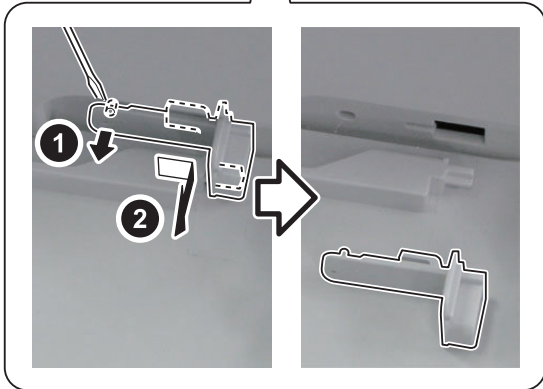
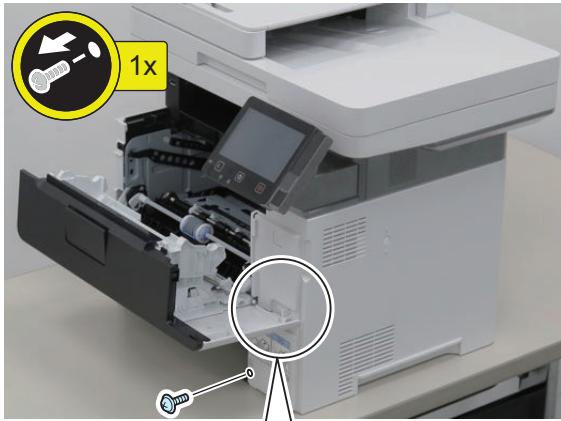
6.

**CAUTION:**

- Be sure to remove the cartridge in advance because the Photosensitive Drum needs to be protected from light when the Cartridge Cover is opened.
- When handling the cartridge, be sure to follow the CAUTION shown below.
  1. When removing the cartridge, be sure to block light to the Photosensitive Drum. Cover the removed drum with 5 or more sheets of paper to block light.
  2. Do not place the cartridge in a location where it is exposed to direct rays of the sun (e.g. near the window).



□  
7.



**NOTE:**

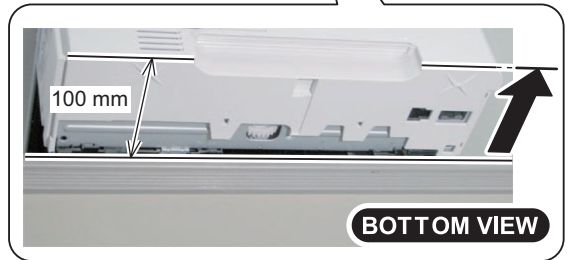
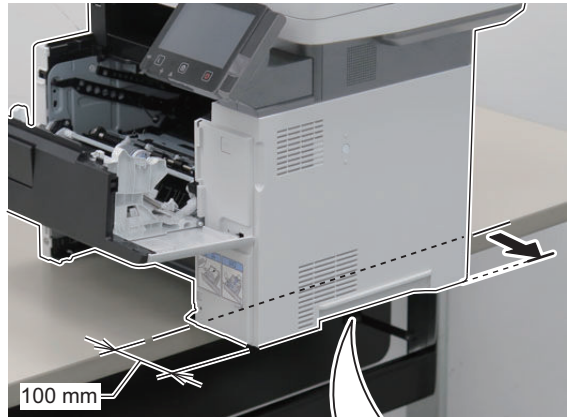
The removed parts will be used in step 15.

**NOTE:**

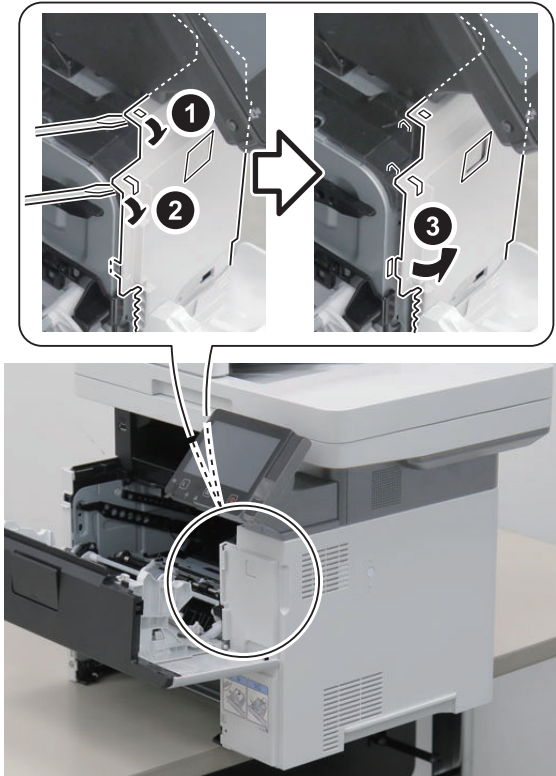
- To remove the Right Cover Unit without turning the host machine on its side: Proceed to step 8.
- To remove the Right Cover Unit with the host machine turned on its side: Proceed to step 9.

8. <To remove the Right Cover Unit without turning the host machine on its side>

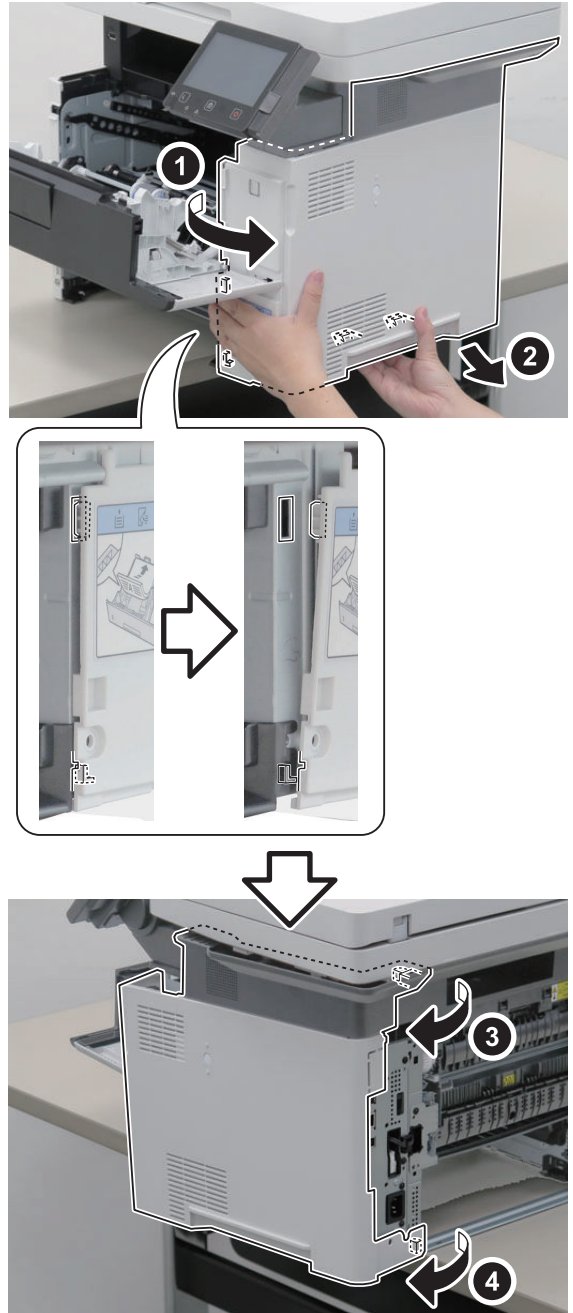
□  
8-1.



□  
8-2.

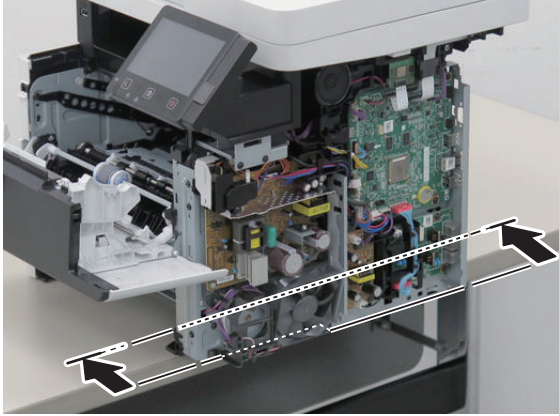


□  
8-3.



8-4.

**CAUTION:**  
Shift the host machine back to the center of the working table to prevent it from falling down.

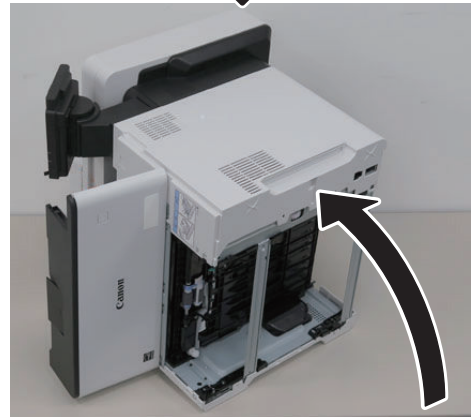


8-5. Proceed to step 10.

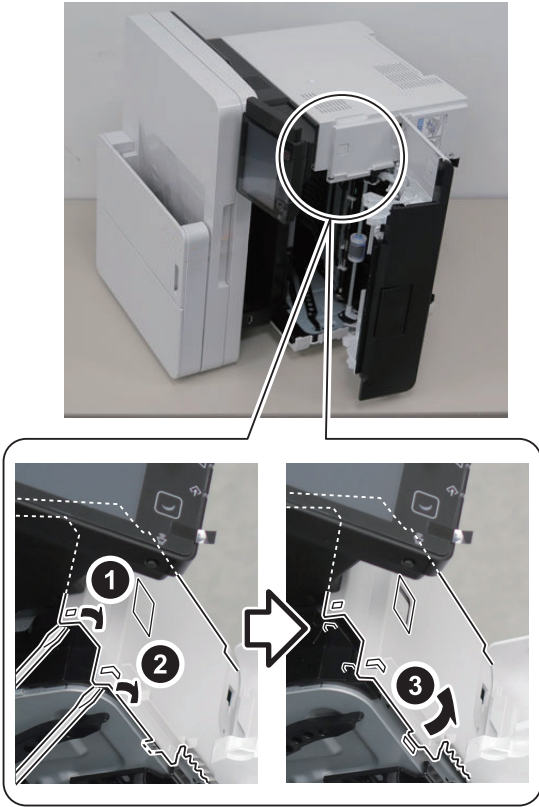
## 9. <To remove the Right Cover Unit with the host machine turned on its side>

9-1.

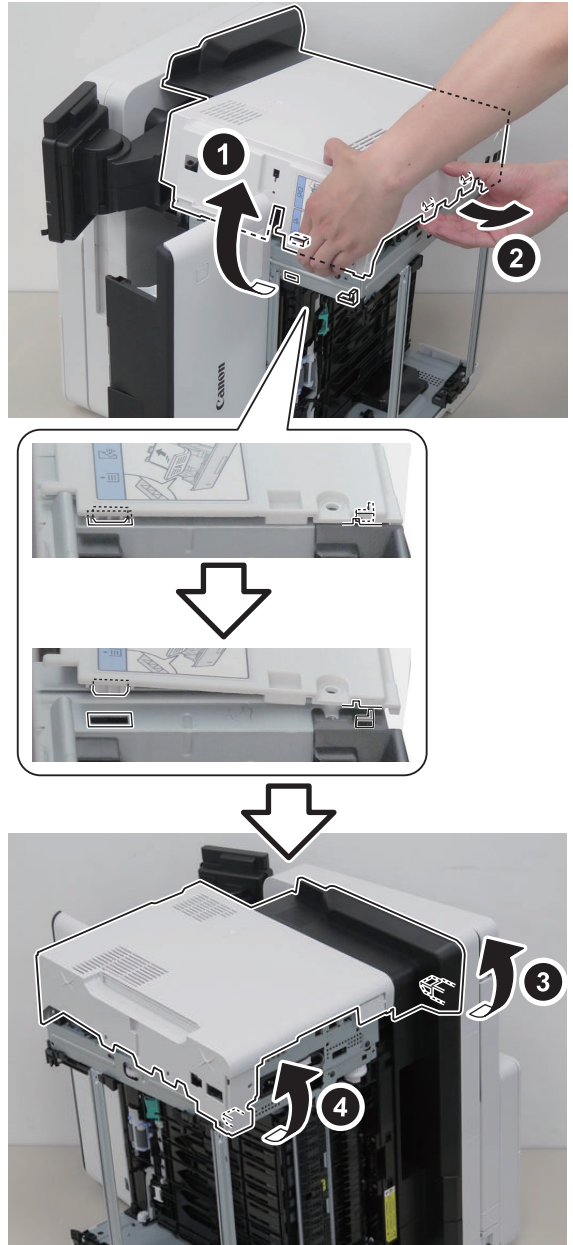
**CAUTION:**  
When turning the host machine on its side, be careful not to let the ADF open.



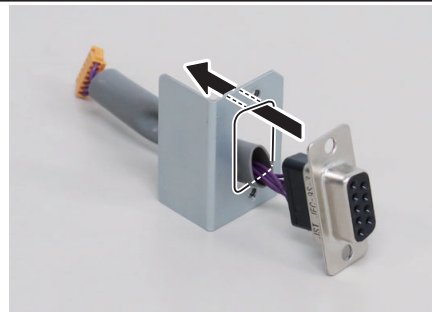
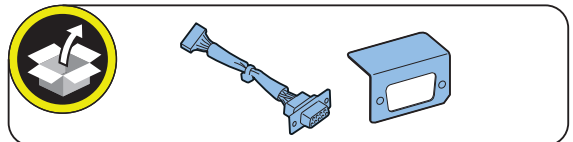
□  
9-2.



□  
9-3.



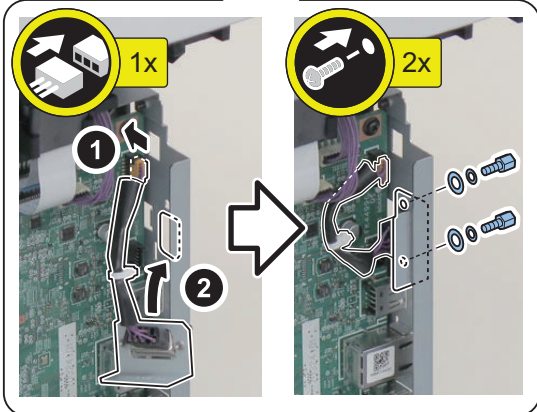
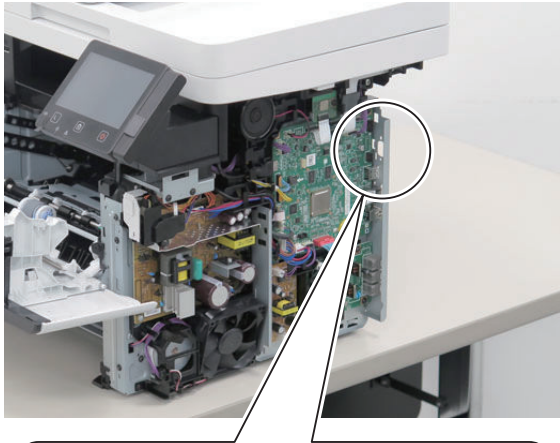
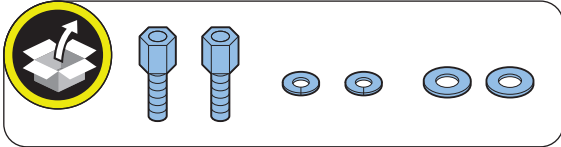
□  
**10.**



# 11.

**NOTE:**

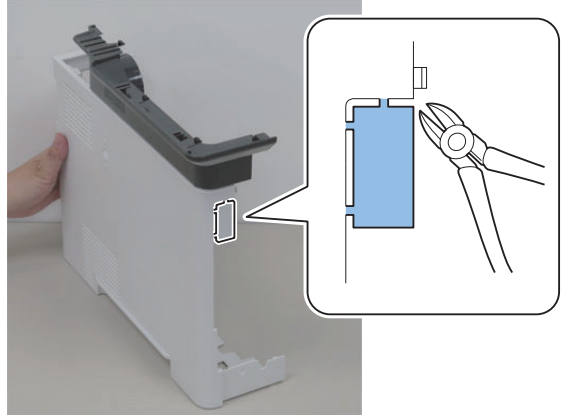
- Even if the host machine is turned on its side, the procedure is the same.
- Be sure to tighten the hexagon screws with needlenose pliers.



# 12.

**CAUTION:**

When cutting off the part, be sure not to make burrs.





**NOTE:**

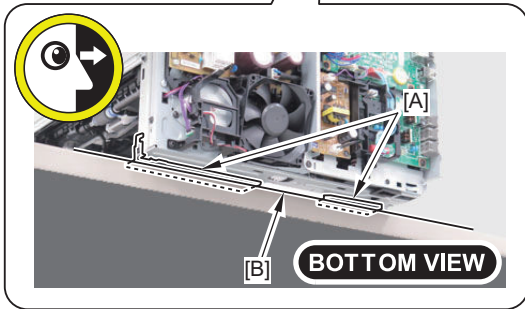
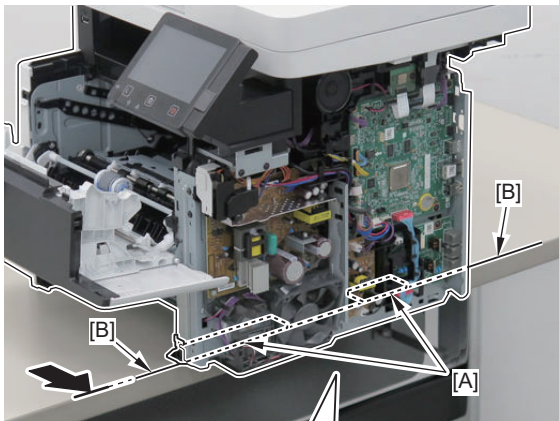
- To install the Right Cover Unit without turning the host machine on its side: Proceed to step 13.
- To install the Right Cover Unit with the host machine turned on its side: Proceed to step 14.

**13.** <To install the Right Cover Unit without turning the host machine on its side>

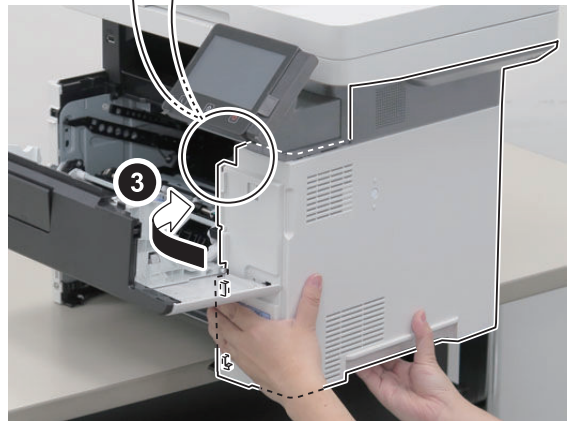
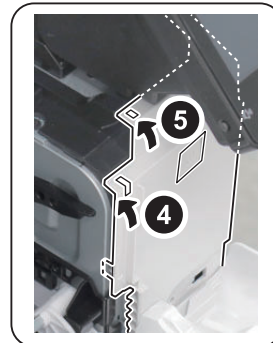
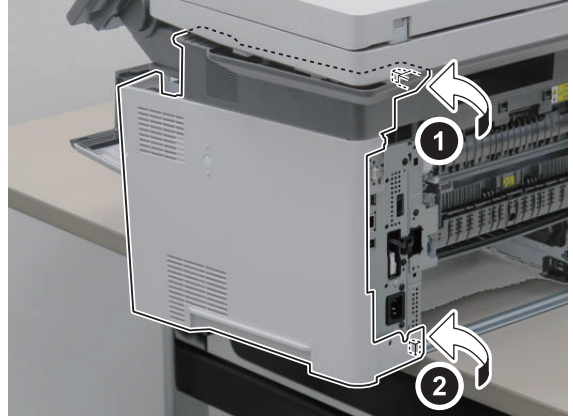
□  
13-1.

**NOTE:**

Shift the host machine so that its legs [A] are on the edge [B] of the working table.

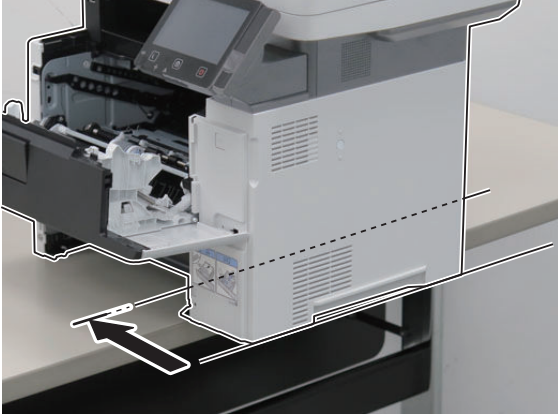


□  
13-2.



□  
13-3.

**CAUTION:**  
Shift the host machine back to the center of the working table to prevent it from falling down.

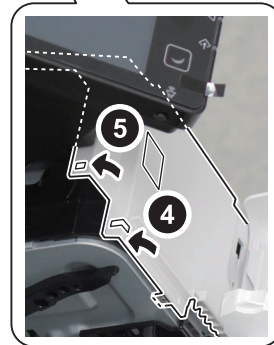
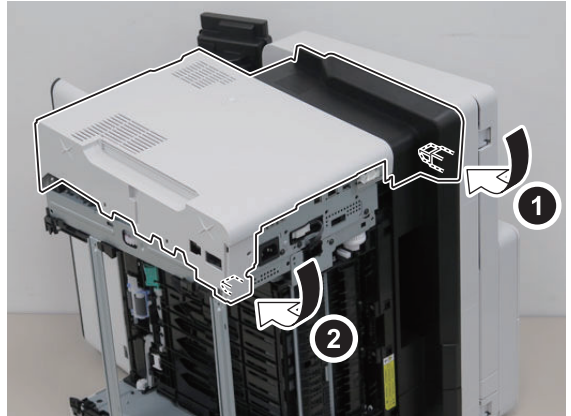


□  
13-4. Proceed to step 15.

# 14.

<To install the Right Cover Unit with the host machine turned on its side>

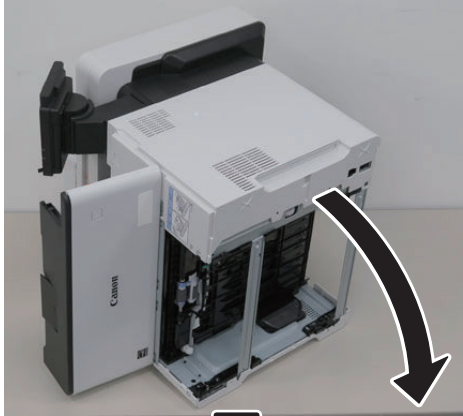
□  
14-1.



□  
14-2.

**CAUTION:**

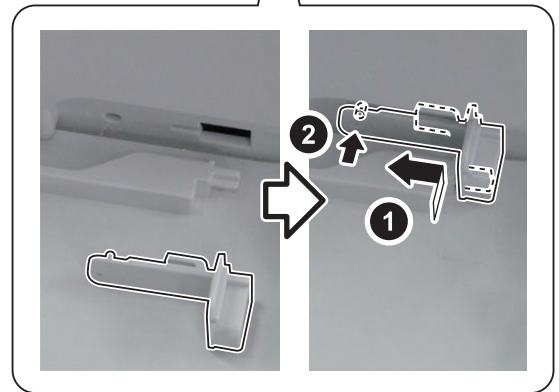
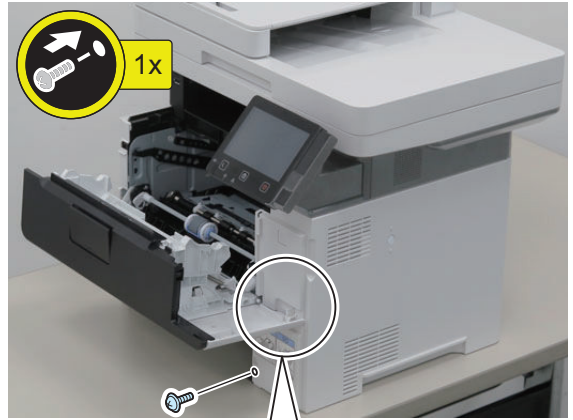
When standing the host machine, be careful not to let the ADF open.



□  
**15.**

**NOTE:**

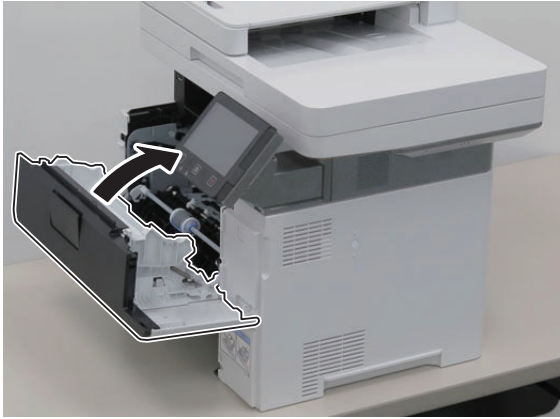
Use the parts removed in step 7.



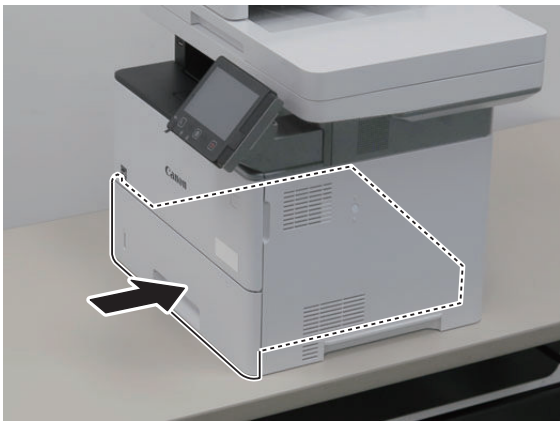
□  
**16.**



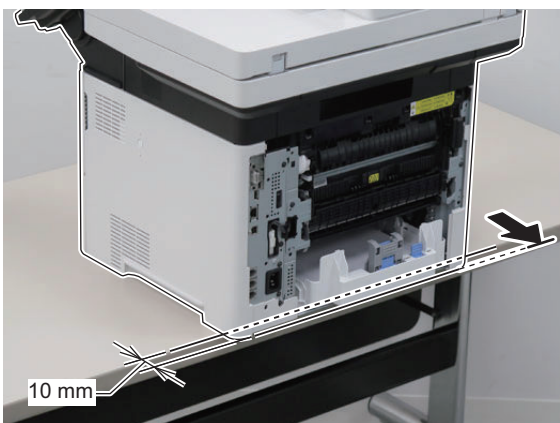
17.



18.

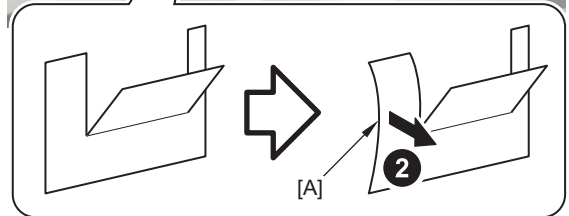
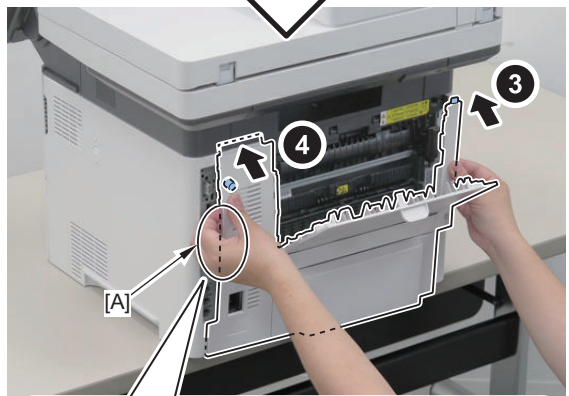


19.

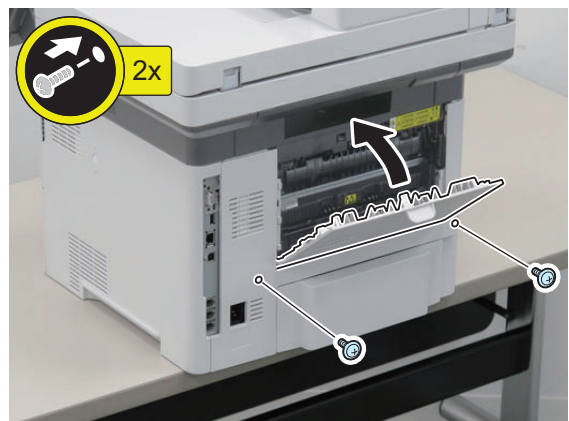


20.

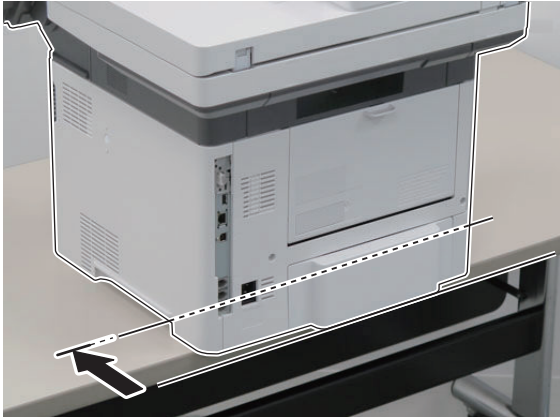
**NOTE:**  
Install the Rear Door Unit by bending the [A] part.



21.



□  
**22.**



□  
**23.** Connect the power plug to the outlet.

**24.** Turn ON the main power switch.



# APPENDICES

Service Tools.....	381
General Circuit Diagram.....	382
List of Items Which Can Be Imported .....	384
Backup Data List.....	390
Soft counter specifications.....	392

## Service Tools

### Special Tools

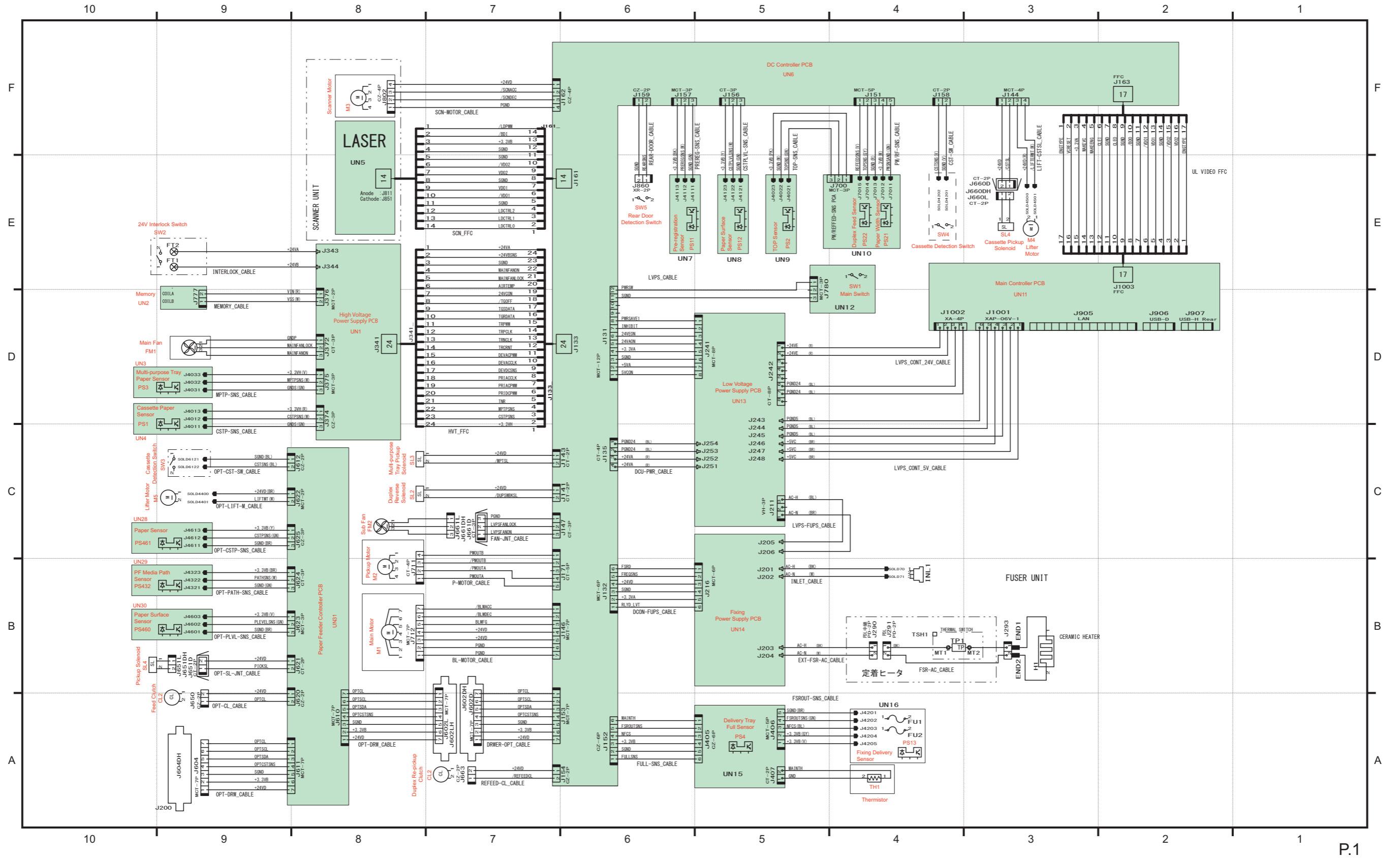
- No special tools are required when servicing the machine.

### Solvents and Oil List

Name	Purpose	Parts No.	Remark
Ethyl alcohol	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Cleaning: metal part, oil stains, toner stains</li></ul>	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Purchase locally</li><li>• Keep away from flame</li></ul>

# General Circuit Diagram

## General Circuit Diagram (1/2)







## List of Items Which Can Be Imported

The following shows the items to be imported for this model.

Note that the setting values are not imported in cases such as below:

- Items which are originally not included in a DCM file (e.g.: "Settings/Registration Basic Information" of a DCM file exported using service mode)
- Not included in the import coverage (Cases A to C)
- There are no options and functions related to setting values

The import coverage shown in the table below is as shown below. Those that are not described here cannot be imported.

Import coverage	Description
Case A: The same machine	Import to the same machine (for backup and restoration, etc.)
Case B: The same model	Import to a different machine of the same model (the same series)
Case C: Different model	Import to a different machine of a different model (a different series)

### Service mode items which can be imported

Initial screen	Main item	Intermediate item	Sub item	Case A	Case B	Case C
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-MFY	Yes	-	-
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-MFX	Yes	-	-
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-MFYR	Yes	-	-
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-MFXR	Yes	-	-
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-C1Y	Yes	-	-
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-C1X	Yes	-	-
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-C1YR	Yes	-	-
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-C1XR	Yes	-	-
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-C2Y	Yes	-	-
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-C2X	Yes	-	-
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-C2YR	Yes	-	-
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-C2XR	Yes	-	-
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-C3Y	Yes	-	-
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-C3X	Yes	-	-
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-C3YR	Yes	-	-
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-C3XR	Yes	-	-
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-C4Y	Yes	-	-
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-C4X	Yes	-	-
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-C4YR	Yes	-	-
COPIER	ADJUST	FEED-ADJ	ADJ-C4XR	Yes	-	-
COPIER	ADJUST	VIFADJ	DEV-HV-K	Yes	-	-
COPIER	ADJUST	VIFADJ	FU-TMP	Yes	-	-
COPIER	ADJUST	VIFADJ	CRG-HV-K	Yes	-	-
COPIER	ADJUST	VIFADJ	LS-PWR-K	Yes	-	-
COPIER	ADJUST	VIFADJ	TR-HV	Yes	-	-
COPIER	FUNCTION	SPLMAN	SPL14159	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	FUNCTION	SPLMAN	SPL65677	Yes	-	-
COPIER	FUNCTION	SPLMAN	SPL68676	Yes	-	-
COPIER	FUNCTION	SPLMAN	SPL68677	Yes	-	-
COPIER	FUNCTION	SPLMAN	SPL25607	Yes	-	-
COPIER	FUNCTION	SPLMAN	SPL93822	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	FUNCTION	SPLMAN	SPL78788	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	FUNCTION	SPLMAN	SPL71100 *1	Yes	-	-
COPIER	FUNCTION	SPLMAN	SPL00171	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	FUNCTION	SPLMAN	SPL80100	Yes	Yes	Yes

Initial screen	Main item	Intermediate item	Sub item	Case A	Case B	Case C
COPIER	FUNCTION	SPLMAN	SPL84194	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	FUNCTION	SPLMAN	SPL78148	Yes	-	-
COPIER	FUNCTION	INSTALL	ERDS	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	FUNCTION	INSTALL	RGW-PORT	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	BODY	MIBCOUNT	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	BODY	NS-CMD5	Yes	-	-
COPIER	OPTION	BODY	NS-PLN	Yes	-	-
COPIER	OPTION	BODY	NS-LGN	Yes	-	-
COPIER	OPTION	BODY	SLPMODE	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	BODY	SDTM-DSP	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	LCDSFLG	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	CRG-PROC	Yes	Yes	-
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	CRGLF-K	Yes	Yes	-
COPIER	OPTION	FNC-SW	RPT2SIDE	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	CRGLW-LV	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	DSPLY-SW	CRG-LOG	Yes	Yes	-
COPIER	OPTION	IMG-MCON	REGM-SEL	Yes	-	-
COPIER	OPTION	USER	COUNTER1	Yes	-	-
COPIER	OPTION	USER	COUNTER2	Yes	-	-
COPIER	OPTION	USER	COUNTER3	Yes	-	-
COPIER	OPTION	USER	COUNTER4	Yes	-	-
COPIER	OPTION	USER	COUNTER5	Yes	-	-
COPIER	OPTION	USER	COUNTER6	Yes	-	-
COPIER	OPTION	USER	CNT-SW	Yes	-	-
COPIER	OPTION	USER	CONTROL	Yes	-	-
COPIER	OPTION	USER	CTCHKDSP	Yes	-	-
COPIER	OPTION	USER	TNRB-SW	Yes	-	-
COPIER	OPTION	USER	SMD-EXPT	Yes	-	-
COPIER	OPTION	USER	ACC-SLP	Yes	Yes	Yes
COPIER	OPTION	ACC	CARD-SW	Yes	-	-
COPIER	OPTION	ACC	CC-SPSW	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW01 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW02 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW03 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW04 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW05 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW06 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW07 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW08 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW09 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW10 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW11 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW12 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW13 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW14 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW15 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW16 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW17 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW18 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW19 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW20 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW21 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW22 *1	-	Yes	-	-

Initial screen	Main item	Intermediate item	Sub item	Case A	Case B	Case C
FAX	SSSW	SW23 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW24 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW25 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW26 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW27 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW28 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW29 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW30 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW31 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	SSSW	SW32 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	MENU	005 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	MENU	006 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	MENU	007 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	MENU	008 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	MENU	009 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	MENU	010 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	002 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	003 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	004 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	005 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	006 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	008 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	010 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	011 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	012 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	013 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	015 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	016 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	017 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	018 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	019 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	020 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	021 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	022 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	023 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	024 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	025 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	026 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	027 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	029 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	049 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	051 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	053 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NUM	054 *1	-	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	TONE	001 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	TONE	002 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	PULSE	FORM *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	PULSE	001 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	PULSE	002 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	PULSE	003 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	PULSE	004 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	DIALTONE	BIT *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	DIALTONE	001 *1	Yes	-	-

Initial screen	Main item	Intermediate item	Sub item	Case A	Case B	Case C
FAX	NCU	DIALTONE	002 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	DIALTONE	003 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	DIALTONE	004 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	DIALTONE	005 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	DIALTONE	006 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	DIALTONE	007 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	DIALTONE	008 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	2ND DLTN	BIT *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	2ND DLTN	001 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	2ND DLTN	002 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	2ND DLTN	003 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	2ND DLTN	004 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	2ND DLTN	005 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	2ND DLTN	006 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	2ND DLTN	007 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	2ND DLTN	008 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	BUSTONE0	BIT *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	BUSTONE0	001 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	BUSTONE0	002 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	BUSTONE0	003 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	BUSTONE0	004 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	BUSTONE0	005 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	BUSTONE0	006 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	BUSTONE0	007 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	BUSTONE0	008 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	BUSTONE1	BIT *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	BUSTONE1	001 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	BUSTONE1	002 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	BUSTONE1	003 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	BUSTONE1	004 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	BUSTONE1	005 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	BUSTONE1	006 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	BUSTONE1	007 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	BUSTONE1	008 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	REORDRTN	BIT *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	REORDRTN	001 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	REORDRTN	002 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	REORDRTN	003 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	REORDRTN	004 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	REORDRTN	005 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	REORDRTN	006 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	REORDRTN	007 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	REORDRTN	008 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	AUTO RX	001 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	AUTO RX	002 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	AUTO RX	003 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	AUTO RX	004 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	AUTO RX	005 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	AUTO RX	006 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	AUTO RX	007 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	AUTO RX	008 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	AUTO RX	009 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	CNGDTCT	001 *1	Yes	-	-

Initial screen	Main item	Intermediate item	Sub item	Case A	Case B	Case C
FAX	NCU	CNGDTCT	002 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	CNGDTCT	006 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	CNGDTCT	007 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	CNGDTCT	008 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	CNGDTCT	009 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	CNGDTCT	011 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	CNGDTCT	012 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW01 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW02 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW03 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW04 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW05 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW06 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW07 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW08 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW09 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW10 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW11 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW12 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW13 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW14 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW15 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW16 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW17 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW18 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW19 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW20 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW21 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW22 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW23 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW24 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW25 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW26 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW27 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW28 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW29 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALB	SW30 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	004 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	005 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	006 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	007 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	008 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	009 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	011 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	012 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	013 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	014 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	015 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	016 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	017 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	019 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	020 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	024 *1	Yes	-	-

Initial screen	Main item	Intermediate item	Sub item	Case A	Case B	Case C
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	025 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	026 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	027 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	030 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	040 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	041 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	042 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	044 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	045 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	046 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	047 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	048 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	065 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	SPECIALN	066 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	RKEY	001 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	RKEY	002 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	PBXDIALT	BIT *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	PBXDIALT	001 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	PBXDIALT	002 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	PBXDIALT	003 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	PBXDIALT	004 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	PBXDIALT	005 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	PBXDIALT	006 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	PBXDIALT	007 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	PBXDIALT	008 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	PBXBUSYT	BIT *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	PBXBUSYT	001 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	PBXBUSYT	002 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	PBXBUSYT	003 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	PBXBUSYT	004 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	PBXBUSYT	005 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	PBXBUSYT	006 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	PBXBUSYT	007 *1	Yes	-	-
FAX	NCU	PBXBUSYT	008 *1	Yes	-	-

\*1 : FAX model only

# Backup Data List

Data	Location	Replace		Delete																	Backup by User			Backup by Service		
				Menu > System Management Settings									Service Mode > COPIER > FUNCTION >													
		DC Controller PCB	Main Controller PCB	Initialize All Data Settings	Initializing Key and Certificate	Initializing Address Book	Menu Clear					CLEAR								SPLMAN MAN						
							Preferences	Function Settings	Set Destination	Management Settings	Network Settings	Clear All	R-CON *1	"SRVC-DAT*2"	COUNTER	HIST *3	ALL	PLPW-CLR	DC-CON		SPL4381 0	Yes/No	Method	Location to be stored	Yes/No	Method
Address Book	Main Controller PCB	-	Clear	Clear	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	Yes	Remote UI *6 LUI *7	PC, USB memory	No	-	-	
Settings Menu																										
Preferences	Main Controller PCB	-	Clear	Clear	-	-	Clear*9	-	-	-	Clear*10	Clear	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	Yes	Remote UI *6 LUI *7	PC, USB memory	No	-	-	
Function Settings	Main Controller PCB	-	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	Yes	Remote UI *6 LUI *7	PC, USB memory	No	-	-	
Set Destination	Main Controller PCB	-	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	Yes	Remote UI *6 LUI *7	PC, USB memory	No	-	-	
Management Settings	Main Controller PCB	-	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	Clear	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	Yes	Remote UI *6 LUI *7	PC, USB memory	No	-	-	
Status Monitor/Cancel																										
Job Log	Main Controller PCB	-	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	No	-	-	No	-	-
Counter																										
Part counter (Main Controller)	Main Controller PCB	-	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	No	-	-	No	-	-	
Part counter (DC Controller)	DC Controller PCB	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	No	-	-	No	-	-	
Other																										
Key and Certificate Settings	Main Controller PCB	-	Clear	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	No	-	-	No	-	-	
Service mode																										
Service mode setting values (Reader)	Main Controller PCB	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	No	-	-	No	-	-	



Data	Location	Replace		Delete																	Backup by User			Backup by Service			
				Menu > System Management Settings									Service Mode > COPIER > FUNCTION >														
		DC Controller PCB	Main Controller PCB	Initialize All Data Settings	Initializing Key and Certificate	Initializing Address Book	Menu Clear					CLEAR							SPLMAN MAN								
							Preferences	Function Settings	Set Destination	Management Settings	Network Settings	Clear All	R-CON *1	"SRVC-DAT*2"	COUNTER	HIST *3	ALL	PLPW-CLR		DC-CON	SPL43810	Yes/No	Method	Location to be stored	Yes/No	Method	Location to be stored
Service mode setting values (Main Controller)	Main Controller PCB	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	Yes	Remote UI *6 LUI *7	PC, USB memory	Yes	Service mode*5	USB memory	
Service mode setting values (DC Controller)	DC Controller PCB	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	Yes	Remote UI *6 LUI *7	PC, USB memory	Yes	Service mode*5 *8	USB memory / Main Controller	
Password																											
System Administrator password	Main Controller PCB	-	Clear*4	Clear*4	-	-	-	-	Clear*4	-	Clear*4	-	-	-	-	Clear*4	-	-	-	Clear*11	No	-	-	No	-	-	
Security Policy Administrator password	Main Controller PCB	-	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	Clear	-	Clear	-	-	-	-	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	No	-	-	No	-	-	
Service Mode password* 12	Main Controller PCB	-	Clear	Clear	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	No	-	-	No	-	-	

\*1: The factory adjustment values of the Reader and ADF are initialized.

\*2: Service Data (Except COPIER > COUNTER, COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ) are cleared. The factory adjustment values of the Reader and ADF are not initialized.

\*3: The logs(Communication management, Print, Jam, Error, Alarm) are cleared.

\*4: The user data and service data and each history and the settings of the system administrator are cleared. (The system manager ID and password are changed back to the default values ID: 7654321/PWD: 7654321). The factory adjustment values of the Reader and ADF are not initialized.

\*5: COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > IMPORT / COPIER > FUNCTION > SYSTEM > EXPORT

\*6: Settings/Registration >Management Settings >Data Management > Import/Export

\*7: Settings Menu > Management Settings > Data Management > Import/Export

\*8: COPIER > FUNCTION > VIFFNC > STOR-DCN

\*9: Except "Preferences > Network Settings".

\*10: Clear only an item of the "Preferences > Network Settings".

\*11: Because the settings of the "System Manager ID and PIN" are cleared, set "System Manager ID and PIN" again.

\*12: COPIER > OPTION > BODY > SM-PSWD(Setup password by SM-PSWD)

## Soft counter specifications

The numbers entered for software counters are classified as follows:

No.	Counter Details	No.	Counter Details
100 to 199	Total	600 to 699	Memory Media Print
200 to 299	Copy	700 to 799	Receive Print
300 to 399	Print	800 to 899	Report Print
400 to 499	Copy + Print	900 to 999	Transmission/Remote/Media
500 to 599	Scan		

### 100 to 199

No.	Counter Name	No.	Counter Name
101	Total 1	137	Total A (Black & White/Small)
102	Total 2	138	Total A1 (2-Sided)
104	Total (Small)	139	Total A2 (2-Sided)
108	Total (Black & White 1)	141	Small A (2-Sided)
109	Total (Black & White 2)	150	Total B1
113	Total (Black & White/Small)	151	Total B2
114	Total 1 (2-Sided)	153	Total B (Small)
115	Total 2 (2-Sided)	156	Total B (Black & White 1)
117	Small (2-Sided)	157	Total B (Black & White 2)
126	Total A1	161	Total B (Black & White/Small)
127	Total A2	162	Total B1 (2-Sided)
129	Total A (Small)	163	Total B2 (2-Sided)
132	Total A (Black & White 1)	165	Small B (2-Sided)
133	Total A (Black & White 2)	194	Cartridge Replacement (Black)

### 200 to 299

No.	Counter Name	No.	Counter Name
201	Copy (Total 1)	228	Copy (Black & White/Small)
202	Copy (Total 2)	238	Copy (Black & White/Small/2-Sided)
204	Copy (Small)	249	Copy A (Black & White 1)
205	Copy A (Total 1)	250	Copy A (Black & White 2)
206	Copy A (Total 2)	256	Copy A (Black & White/Small)
208	Copy A (Small)	266	Copy A (Black & White/Small/2-Sided)
209	Local Copy (Total 1)	277	Local Copy (Black & White 1)
210	Local Copy (Total 2)	278	Local Copy (Black & White 2)
212	Local Copy (Small)	284	Local Copy (Black & White/Small)
221	Copy (Black & White 1)	294	Local Copy (Black & White/Small/2-Sided)
222	Copy (Black & White 2)		

### 300 to 399

No.	Counter Name	No.	Counter Name
301	Print (Total 1)	330	Print (Black & White/Small/2-Sided)
302	Print (Total 2)	331	Printer Driver Print (Total 1)
304	Print (Small)	332	Printer Driver Print (Total 2)
305	Print A (Total 1)	334	Printer Driver Print (Small)
306	Print A (Total 2)	339	Printer Driver Print (Black & White 1)
308	Print A (Small)	340	Printer Driver Print (Black & White 2)
313	Print (Black & White 1)	346	Printer Driver Print (Black & White/Small)
314	Print (Black & White 2)	356	Printer Driver Print (Black & White/Small/2-Sided)
320	Print (Black & White/Small)		

## 400 to 499

No.	Counter Name	No.	Counter Name
404	Copy + Print (Black & White/Small)	413	Copy + Print (2)
405	Copy + Print (Black & White 2)	414	Copy + Print (1)
406	Copy + Print (Black & White 1)	422	Copy + Print (Black & White/Small/2-Sided)
412	Copy + Print (Small)		

## 500 to 599

No.	Counter Name	No.	Counter Name
501	Scan (Total 1)	508	Black & White Scan (Small)
502	Scan (Total 2)	509	Color Scan (Total 1)
504	Scan (Small)	510	Color Scan (Total 2)
505	Black & White Scan (Total 1)	512	Color Scan (Small)
506	Black & White Scan (Total 2)		

## 600 to 699

No.	Counter Name	No.	Counter Name
631	Memory Media Print (Total 1)	640	Memory Media Print (Black & White 2)
632	Memory Media Print (Total 2)	646	Memory Media Print (Black & White/Small)
634	Memory Media Print (Small)	656	Memory Media Print (Black & White/Small/2-Sided)
639	Memory Media Print (Black & White 1)		

## 700 to 799

No.	Counter Name	No.	Counter Name
701	Receive Print (Total 1)	710	Receive Print (Black & White 2)
702	Receive Print (Total 2)	716	Receive Print (Black & White/Small)
704	Receive Print (Small)	726	Receive Print (Black & White/Small/2-Sided)
709	Receive Print (Black & White 1)		

## 800 to 899

No.	Counter Name	No.	Counter Name
801	Report Print (Total 1)	810	Report Print (Black & White 2)
802	Report Print (Total 2)	816	Report Print (Black & White/Small)
804	Report Print (Small)	826	Report Print (Black & White/Small/2-Sided)
809	Report Print (Black & White 1)		

## 900 to 999

No.	Counter Name	No.	Counter Name
921	TX Scan Total 5 (Color)	945	TX Scan/E-Mail (Color)
922	TX Scan Total 5 (Black & White)	946	TX Scan/E-Mail (Black & White)
939	Remote Scan (Color)	959	Memory Media Scan (Color)
940	Remote Scan (Black & White)	960	Memory Media Scan (Black & White)